Contemporary Living

Ryder/Harter

Book No.________________

Enter information in spaces below as instructed

THIS BOOK IS THE PROPERTY OF:

STATE________________

PROVINCE________________

COUNTY________________

PARISH________________

SCHOOL DISTRICT________________

OTHER________________

ISSUED TO	YEAR USED	CONDITION ISSUED	CONDITION RETURNED
Reid Wilson	2010/11		

PENN HIGH SCHOOL
X 1126442

Contemporary Living

Verdene Ryder
Family Life Education Consultant
Houston, Texas

Marjorie B. Harter, Ph.D.
Family Life Education Consultant
Washington, DC

Publisher
The Goodheart-Willcox Company, Inc.
Tinley Park, Illinois

Copyright © 2006

by

The Goodheart-Willcox Company, Inc.

Previous editions copyright 2004, 2002, 2000, 1995, 1990, 1987, 1985, 1981, 1979

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of The Goodheart-Willcox Company, Inc.

Manufactured in the United States of America.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 2004065002

ISBN-13: 978-1-59070-504-9
ISBN-10: 1-59070-504-1

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 – 06 – 11 10 09 08 07 06 05

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Ryder, Verdene.
Contemporary living / Verdene Ryder, Marjorie B. Harter,
p. cm.
Includes index.
ISBN 1-59070-504-1
1. Family life education—United States. I. Harter, Marjorie B. II. Title.
HQ10.5.U6R93 2006
158—dc22 2004065002

Cover image: ©Paul Barton/CORBIS

Introduction

Contemporary Living is written for you. It presents a fresh look at life in today's world. It helps you understand your development as an individual, as a family member, and as part of society.

Life today offers more alternatives than ever before. This book helps you evaluate the alternatives you face. It does not tell you what to do or how to live. Rather, it gives you the information you need to make your own decisions.

Contemporary Living explores all aspects of life: personality development, health, communication, relationships with family and friends, mate selection, marriage, parenting, handling crises, aging, death, and managing family living. Other topics you will find helpful and relevant include deciding on a career, getting and keeping a job, and lifestyle options and consequences. A chapter on balancing family and work is also featured. Practical information is given throughout the text to help you deal with real-life situations.

About the Authors

Verdene Ryder is a nationally recognized author and family life specialist. In addition to being an author of *Contemporary Living*, she is also the author of the popular parenting text, *Parents and Their Children*, and a text titled *Human Sexuality: Responsible Life Choices*. She is often consulted in interviews on radio and TV relating to family life issues. Verdene Ryder has extensive teaching experience at both the high school and university levels. She is a member of several professional organizations and has received numerous academic and leadership awards. A scholarship has been named in her honor to enable low-income women to attend college. Verdene Ryder has a master's degree in Family and Community Health.

Marjorie B. Harter, Ph.D., is a family life education and publications consultant who has written extensively and conducted numerous teacher education workshops on family life topics. A former family and consumer sciences teacher, she has developed classroom curricula for nonprofit organizations in the areas of teenage pregnancy prevention and population education as well as general family life education. Dr. Harter has also served as editor of several family and consumer sciences periodicals, including the former *Journal of Home Economics*. She is currently serving as a writer and editor of informational materials for the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Brief Contents

Part I:
Personal Development

1 You: Growing and Changing...20
2 Your Heredity...46
3 Your Environment...64
4 Your Response to Your Environment...84

Part II:
The Decisions You Face

5 It's Your Decision...118
6 Decisions Concerning Your Future Career...142
7 Decisions Affecting Your Health...172
8 Avoiding Harmful Substances...200
9 Lifestyle Options and Consequences...226

Part III:
Getting Along with Others

10 Communicating with Others...256
11 Developing Close Relationships...284

Part IV:
The Marriage Relationship

12 Choosing to Marry...314
13 Engagement and Marriage...330
14 Building a Marriage...352

Part V:
Dimensions of Families

15 Family Life Today...376
16 The Parenting Decision...400
17 A Baby Is Born...422
18 Your New Baby...442
19 Helping Children Grow and Develop...466

Part VI:
Families Face Change

20 Balancing Family and Work Concerns...502
21 Dealing with Family Crises...524
22 Divorce and Remarriage...560
23 Aging and Death...576

Part VII:
Managing Family Living

24 Providing for the Family's Physical Needs...602
25 Protecting the Family's Resources...634
26 Using Banking Services...650
27 Managing Your Finances...670

Table of Contents

Part I
Personal Development

Chapter 1
You: Growing and Changing 20

Your Personality 22
- Factors That Shape Personality 22

Your Growth 24
- Chronological Growth 24
- Physical Growth 24
- Intellectual Growth 27
- Emotional Growth 27
- Social Growth 28
- Philosophical Growth 28

Your Self-Concept 29
- How Is Your Self-Concept Formed? 30
- What Is Self-Esteem? 30

Your Character 33

Becoming a Responsible and Independent Adult 33
- Learning to Be Responsible 35
- What Does It Mean to Be a Good Citizen? 35

Contemporary Topic:
Volunteering Benefits Everyone 38
- Meeting Personal Expectations 39

Roadblocks to Responsible Adulthood 40
- What Are the Roadblocks? 40
- Concerns of Young Adults 40
- Finding Your Way 41

Chapter 2
Your Heredity 46

The Process of Heredity 47
- Chromosomes and Genes 48

Twins and Multiple Births 49
- Fraternal Twins 49
- Identical Twins 49
- Multiple Births 50

Inherited Characteristics 51
- Determination of Sex 51
- Intellectual Ability 52
- Blood Factors 53
- Longevity 53
- Physical Characteristics 54
- Diseases and Defects 56

Valuing Your Uniqueness 56

Contemporary Topic:
The Genetic Revolution 59

Chapter 3
Your Environment 64

Your Family 66
- Relating to Parents and Other Authority Figures 67
- Family Cultural Patterns 67
- Family Interactions 69
- Influences of Birth Order 70

Your Peers 72
- Peer Influence During Adolescence 72

Your Education 73
Your Occupation 74
Your Religion 75
Your Community and World 75
- Influence of Technology 75
- Changing Economic Conditions 77
- The Media 78

Contemporary Concern:
TV Violence: Its Cost to Society 80

Chapter 4
Your Response to Your Environment 84

How You Respond to Your Environment 85
- Erikson's Stages of Human Development 86
- Havighurst's Developmental Tasks of Adolescence 91
- Maslow's Theory of Human Needs 94
- Kohlberg's Stages of Moral Development 96

Defense Mechanisms 98

Contemporary Topic:
Rules! Rules! Rules! Why Do We Need Them? 105

Personal Response Patterns 104
- Anger 104
- Fear 106
- Depression 106
- Attitudes 108
- Prejudices 109
- Stereotypes 109

Part II
The Decisions You Face

Chapter 5
It's Your Decision 118

Your Personal Priorities 120
- What Are Personal Priorities? 120
- How Are Personal Priorities Formed? 121
- How Personal Priorities Influence Decisions 122
- Personal Priorities Change in Importance 123

Setting Your Goals 124
- Goals Are Based on Personal Priorities 124
- Your Individual Life Cycle and Time/Life Line 126

Contemporary Concern:
Risk Taking vs. Goal Achievement 125

Identify Your Resources 127
- Human Resources 129
- Nonhuman Resources 129

Set Your Standards 130
Making Decisions 131
- Types of Decisions 131
- Ways to Make Decisions 132
- The Decision-Making Process 132

- **The Management Process 135**
  - Setting a Goal 135
  - Making a Plan 135
  - Carrying out the Plan 136
  - Evaluating 136

Chapter 6
Decisions Concerning Your Future Career 142

- **Deciding on a Career 144**
  - Factors Affecting Career Choice 144
  - Knowledge of Career Alternatives 146
  - Making a Career Plan 146
  - Making the Most of Career Opportunities 147
  - Careers in Family Studies and Human Services 148
- **Decisions About Your Education 150**
  - Educational Options 151
- **Contemporary Topic: Education Pays Off 151**
  - Combining Work with Education 152
- **Developing Workplace Skills 154**
  - Leadership Skills 154
  - Teamwork Skills 156
- **Getting a Job 156**
  - Doing Job Research 157
  - Developing Job Contacts 158
  - Finding Job Vacancies 158
  - Writing a Resume and Cover Letter 159
  - The Job Interview 159
  - Following Up 163
- **Strategies for Job Success 163**
  - Work to the Best of Your Ability 163
  - Accept Advice and Learn from Your Mistakes 163
  - Maintain High Ethical Standards 164
  - Interpersonal Skills 165
- **Strategies That Lead to Advancement on the Job 166**
- **Changing Jobs 167**

Chapter 7
Decisions Affecting Your Health 172

- **Planning for Family Wellness 174**
- **Preventive Health Practices 174**
- **Nutrition and Your Health 175**
  - MyPyramid 175
  - Dietary Guidelines for Americans 177
  - Other Tips for Healthy Eating 179
  - Weight Control 179
  - Eating Disorders 181
- **Regular Exercise 181**
  - Adopting an Exercise Program 182
- **Rest and Sleep 184**
- **Other Aspects of Health 184**
  - Protecting Your Eyesight 184
  - Protecting Your Hearing 185
- **Contemporary Topic: What Happens During Sleep? 185**
  - Taking Care of Your Teeth 186
  - Protecting Your Skin 186
- **Making Time for Health 186**
- **Coping with Stress 187**
  - Change Causes Stress 187
  - Learning to Manage Stress 188

Health and Wellness Resources 191
- Community Facilities 191
- Health Education 191
- Health Screening 192
- Support Groups, Hotlines, and Helplines 192
- Computer-Related Resources 192
- Government Programs 194
- Nonprofit Organizations 195

Consumer Choices Related to Health 195

Chapter 8
Avoiding Harmful Substances 200

Tobacco 202
- How Smoking Affects Health 202
- Smokeless Tobacco 205
- Ways to Break the Tobacco Habit 205

Alcohol 207
- Health Consequences of Drinking Alcohol 208
- Why Do People Drink? 211
- Saying No to Alcohol 212

Drugs 213
- Drug Terminology 213
- Drugs Have a Wide Variety of Effects 213
- Types of Drugs 214

Contemporary Concern:
Legal Consequences of Marijuana and Alcohol Use 217
- Why Do People Abuse Drugs or Use Illegal Drugs? 218
- Drugs Prevent Young People from Learning How to Solve Problems 219
- Saying No to Drugs 219
- Sources of Help 219

Dealing with Peer Pressure 220

Chapter 9
Lifestyle Options and Consequences 226

Adult Lifestyle Options 228
- The Single Life—Living Independently 228
- Marriage 230
- Living Together 233

Lifestyle Consequences 235
- An Unplanned Pregnancy 235

Contemporary Concern:
Paternity Involves Responsibilities 238
- Sexually Transmitted Diseases 244

Responsible Behavior 248

Part III
Getting Along with Others

Chapter 10
Communicating with Others 256

What Is Communication? 257

Forms of Communication 258
- Listening 258
- Empathy 260

Nonverbal Communication 260
- Body Language Communicates 260
- Cultural Influences on Communication 261
- Your Appearance Communicates 262

Levels of Communication 263

Contemporary Topic: Communicating Socially 265

Assertiveness in Communication 266

Using I-messages, You-messages, and We-messages 267

Communicating with Parents 269
- Solving Family Communication Problems 269

Group Communication Patterns 273
- Cliques 273

Group Behaviors Involving Violence 274
- Hazing 275
- Bullying 275
- Gangs 275
- What Can Teens and Adults Do to Stop the Violence? 276

Sexual Harassment 278

Chapter 11
Developing Close Relationships 284

Friendship 286

Dating Patterns 287
- Functions of Dating 287
- Informal Group Dating 288
- Formal Pair Dating 288

Developing Relationships 289
- What Qualities Characterize a Serious Relationship? 290

Ending a Relationship 290
- Signs That a Relationship Should End 291
- How Not to Break Up 291

- Breaking up with Less Pain 292

Communication of Love 293
- What Does Love Mean? 293
- Types of Love 294

Physical Expressions of Affection 298
- Understanding Your Developing Sexuality 298
- Sexual Decision Making 299
- Saying No to Sexual Relations 303

Date or Acquaintance Rape 304

Contemporary Concern: Myths vs. Realities of Rape 305
- How to Avoid Date Rape 306
- What to Do if a Rape Occurs 306

Part IV
The Marriage Relationship

Chapter 12
Choosing to Marry 314

Forces Affecting Mate Selection 315
- Similarity 315
- Parent Image 316
- Proximity 316

Complementary Needs 316
Role Expectations 316
Choosing a Partner: Other Factors 317
Personal Priorities 317
Personality Traits 317
Family Background 318
Parent Approval 318
Health Factors 319
Leisure-Time Activities 320
Education 320
Age 321
Contemporary Topic:
Age at Marriage: How Much Does It Matter? 321
Mixed Marriages 322
International Marriages 322
Interracial Marriages 323
Interfaith Marriages 323

Chapter 13
Engagement and Marriage 330

Engagement 332
Testing Process of the Engagement Period 332
Communication During Engagement 333
Personality Traits 333
Career Goals in Marriage 334
Discussing Sexual and Reproductive Expectations 334
Medical Counseling 335
Future In-laws 336
Money Management 337
Future Living Arrangements 337
Religious Commitments 338
Assessing Friendships 338
Revealing the Past 339
Attitudes Toward Marriage Counseling 339
Breaking Engagements 339
Marriage Laws 341
Monogamy 341
Physical and Mental Qualifications 341
Prohibited Relationships 342
Common-law Marriage 342
Obtaining a License 343
The Marriage Officiate 343
Changing Your Name 343
Weddings 343
Wedding Plans 344
The Honeymoon 345
Contemporary Topic:
Your Wedding Budget 346

Chapter 14
Building a Marriage 352

Components of a Successful Marriage 353
Happiness in Marriage 354
Contemporary Topic:
Marital Happiness: Do Children Make the Difference? 356
Adjustments in Marriage 360
Compromise 361
Accommodation 362
Concession 363
Martyrdom 364
Ongoing Hostility 365

Time as a Factor in Making Adjustments 366
Functions of Conflict 366
  Conflict Can Lead to Problem Solving 366
  Conflict Can Release Tensions 367
  Productive Quarreling 367
  Destructive Quarreling 368
Marriage Counseling 368
  Finding a Marriage Counselor 368
  What Does the Counselor Provide? 369

Part V
Dimensions of Families

Chapter 15
Family Life Today 376

What Is a Family? 377
The Changing Family 378
  How Families Adapt to Change 379
Family Functions in Various Cultures 380
Roles and Responsibilities of Family Members 382
  Functional and Dysfunctional Families 383
Characteristics of Strong Families 383

Family Structures 384
  The Two-Parent Family 384
  The Single-Parent Family 384
  The Stepfamily 386
  The Extended Kinship Family 387
  The Foster Family 388
  The Adoptive Family 389
The Family Life Cycle 390
Contemporary Topic:
The Boomerang Age 392

Chapter 16
The Parenting Decision 400

Parental Roles and Responsibilities 402
Sharing Parenting Responsibilities 403
Parenthood Is a Choice 404
  Parenthood As a Personal Choice 404
  Parenthood As a Mutual Choice 405
Other Factors to Consider in the Parenting Decision 406
  Age of the Woman 406
  Career Considerations 407
  Financial Considerations 407
  Number and Spacing of Children 408
Planning Pregnancy 410
  The Female Reproductive System 410
Contemporary Topic:
"Onlies" Are OK! 411
  The Male Reproductive System 412
  Methods for Planning or Preventing Pregnancy 412
If a Couple Cannot Have Children 416
  Artificial Insemination 416
  In Vitro Fertilization 416
  Adoption 416
Genetic Counseling 416

Chapter 17
A Baby Is Born 422

Evidence of Pregnancy 423
- The Woman's Observations 424
- The Physician's Examination and Tests 424

The Developing Baby 425
- Conception 425
- Month-by-Month Development 426
- Changes the Mother Will Notice During Pregnancy 427

Care of the Mother 428
- Diet and Nutrition 428

Contemporary Concern:
Pregnancy Myths and Facts 429
- Exercise 430
- Employment 431
- Smoking 431
- Alcohol and Illegal Drugs 431
- Use of Medications and Exposure to X Rays 432

Miscarriage 432

Time for Delivery 433
- The Onset of Labor 433
- The Three Stages of Labor 434
- Methods of Childbirth 434

After the Baby Is Born 436
- Lactation 437

Chapter 18
Your New Baby 442

Parenthood Brings New Roles 444

The Newborn 444
- What Can Newborns Do? 445
- Planning a Schedule 445
- Crib Safety 446
- Feeding Your Baby 446
- Bathing Your Baby 447
- Clothing Your Baby 446
- Discomforts and Problems 449

Growth and Development During the First Year 450
- Physical Development 451
- Intellectual Development 451
- Social Development 455
- Emotional Development 457

Children with Special Needs 459
- Children with Physical Disabilities 459

Contemporary Concern:
Relating to Children with Disabilities 460
- Children with Mental Disabilities 461

Chapter 19
Helping Children Grow and Develop 466

Creating a Nurturing Environment for Your Child 468
- Positive Guidance Techniques 468

Creating a Safe and Healthy Environment for Your Child 469
- Food and Sleep 469
- Health Care 470
- Safety 470

Growth and Development During the Preschool Years 471
- Physical Development 471
- Intellectual Development 473

- Social Development 475
- Emotional Development 478

The Preschool Years 478

- Discipline 480
- Anxiety and Fears 481
- Anger 483
- Preparing for Another Child 483

Child Care Options 484

Contemporary Topic:
Evaluating Child Care: What to Look for 485

- In-Home Care 484
- Family Child Care 486
- Child Care Centers 486
- Day Care for Children Who Are Ill 488

The School Years 489

- Time for Family 489
- Children's Use of Computers 489
- Your Children's Friends 490
- Lying 491
- Developing Responsibility 491
- Children and Money 492

After-School Child Care 494

- Children in Self-Care 494

Parenting Information Online 495

Part VI
Families Face Change

Chapter 20
Balancing Family and Work Concerns 502

Why Work? 503

Changing Attitudes 504

Types of Work and Family Arrangements 504

- Dual-Career Families 505

- Families with Part-Time Workers 505
- Families with Full-Time Homemakers 505
- Single-Parent Families 506

Patterns of Work and Childbearing 507

Impact of Work and Family Life on Each Other 508

Employment Practices and Trends That Support Families 510

- Flexible Work Schedules 510
- Employer Benefits 511
- Family and Medical Leave Act 512

Realities of the Workplace 512

Techniques for Managing Family and Work 513

- Getting Organized 514

Contemporary Concern:
Sharing Household Chores: What's Fair? 516

- Communicating 516
- Using Technology for Managing Family and Work 516
- Spending Quality Time 518

Chapter 21
Dealing with Family Crises 524

Resources to Help Withstand Crises 526

- Mental Resources 526

- Physical Health 526
- Financial Resources 527
- Family Relationships 527
- Support of Friends 529
- Community Resources 529

Coping with Crises 532
- Recognize the Existence of a Crisis 532
- Seek Alternative Solutions to the Crisis 532
- Look to Each Other for Support 533
- Resume Efforts to Achieve Personal and Family Goals 533

Types of Crises 534
- Loss of Job 534
- Relocation 535
- Addictions to Alcohol and Other Drugs 535
- Compulsive Gambling 538
- Suicide 540

Contemporary Concern: Worried About a Friend? How You Can Help 541
- Criminal Attack 542
- Violent Behavior in Families 545
- Missing Children 552
- Runaway Children 553
- Community and National Crises 554

Chapter 22
Divorce and Remarriage 560

Divorce Trends and Issues 561

Legal Termination of Marriage 562
- Annulment 563
- Legal Separation 563
- Divorce 564

Remarriage 570
- Stepfamilies 570

Contemporary Concern: Do Remarriages Succeed? 571

Chapter 23
Aging and Death 576

Young Adulthood 578

Middle Age 579
- The Sandwich Generation and Intergenerational Caregiving 579

Old Age 581
- Impact of the Growing Population of Older Adults 581

Aspects of Aging 581

Contemporary Concern: Accidents and Aging 583
- Emotional Aspects 581
- Physical Aspects 584
- Financial Aspects 586
- Housing Arrangements 587

New Roles in the Later years 588
- Grandparenting 588
- Retirement 589

Accepting Death As a Reality of Life 590
- Hospice Care 590
- Stages of Dying 591

Those Left Behind 591
- Stages of Grieving 592
- Telling Children About Death 593
- Widows and Widowers 593

Legal Issues of Death 594
- Living Will 594
- Organ Banks 594
- Funeral Arrangements 595
- The Legal Will 596

Part VII
Managing Family Living

Chapter 24
Providing for the Family's Physical Needs 602

Needs versus Wants 604

Factors Affecting Consumer Decisions 605

- Consumer Rights and Responsibilities 605
- The Role of Advertising 606
- Consumer Protection Agencies 608

Environmental Responsibility 609

- Conserving Energy 609
- Environmentally Responsible Consumption 610

Contemporary Concern:

Thinking Environmentally: Ten Tips 611

Food Decisions 612

- Planning Meals 612
- Shopping for Food 614
- Understanding Food Labels 615
- Controlling Food Costs 616
- Handling and Storing Food Safely 617
- Eating in Restaurants 618

Clothing Decisions 618

- Methods for Acquiring Clothing 619
- Clothing Selection 621

- Controlling Clothing Costs 621
- Understanding Clothing Labels 621

Housing Decisions 622

- Housing Costs 622
- Renting a Home 623
- Buying a Home 624

Transportation Decisions 626

- Types of Transportation 626
- Costs of Buying and Owning a Car 627

Leisure-Time Decisions 628

- Time for Family 628

Chapter 25
Protecting the Family's Resources 634

Life Insurance 636

- Types of Life Insurance 637

Contemporary Concern:

Do Young Adults Need Life Insurance? 639

- Who Should Be Covered? 639

Health Insurance 639

- Understanding Health Insurance 640
- Group Health Insurance 642

Auto Insurance 642

- Basic Types of Coverage 643
- No-Fault Insurance 644
- Auto Insurance Claims 644

Homeowner's Insurance 645

Re-evaluating Your Insurance Needs 646

Chapter 26
Using Banking Services 650

Your Income 652

- Your Paycheck 652
- Federal Income Tax 653
- Social Security 654

Financial Institutions 655
  Financial Services 655
Contemporary Topic:
Banking at Home 659
Checking Accounts 656
  Writing Checks 657
  Endorsing Checks 660
  Depositing Money in Your Account 660
  Your Bank Statement 661
  Overdrafts 662
  Automated Teller Machines 662
Saving and Investing Money 663
  Savings Accounts 663
  U.S. Savings Bonds 664
  Certificates of Deposit 664
  Money Market Accounts 665
  Retirement Accounts 665

Chapter 27
Managing Your Finances 670

Budgeting 671
  Why Budget? 672
  Setting up a Budget 672
Using Credit 675
  Types of Credit 675
Contemporary Concern:
Your Credit Card: Staying in Control 677
  How to Obtain Credit 678
  Making Credit Work for You 678
  Loans 680
Glossary 685
Index 700

Features

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Volunteering Benefits Everyone...38
The Genetic Revolution...59
Rules! Rules! Rules! Why Do We Need Them?...105
Education Pays Off...151
What Happens During Sleep?...185
Communicating Socially...265
Age at Marriage: How Much Does It Matter?...321
Your Wedding Budget...346
Marital Happiness: Do Children Make the Difference?...356
The Boomerang Age...392
"Onlies" Are OK!...411
Evaluating Child Care: What to Look for...485
Banking at Home...659

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

TV Violence: Its Cost to Society...80
Risk Taking vs. Goal Achievement...125
Legal Consequences of Marijuana and Alcohol Use...217
Paternity Involves Responsibilities...238
Myths vs. Realities of Rape...305
Pregnancy Myths and Facts...429
Relating to Children with Disabilities...460
Sharing Household Chores: What's Fair?...516
Worried About a Friend? How You Can Help...541
Do Remarriages Succeed?...571
Accidents and Aging...583
Thinking Environmentally: Ten Tips...611
Do Young Adults Need Life Insurance?...639
Your Credit Card: Staying in Control...677

Part I

Personal Development

Chapter 1
You: Growing and Changing

Chapter 2
Your Heredity

Chapter 3
Your Environment

Chapter 4
Your Response to Your Environment

Chapter 1

You: Growing and Changing

Terms to Know

personality
heredity
inherited traits
environment
acquired traits
growth pattern
puberty
pituitary gland
emotional growth
self-concept
self-esteem
character
citizen
citizenship
volunteerism
goal

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- identify the three forces that shape personality.
- describe six patterns of growth.
- define self-concept and self-esteem.
- explain how a person's character is revealed by his or her behavior.
- describe what it means to be a responsible adult.
- identify possible roadblocks to responsible adulthood.

The future holds many opportunities for you. It may also hold some obstacles or "roadblocks." The goal for you as you enter adulthood will be to overcome the roadblocks and seize the opportunities.

This can be a challenge. How you meet this challenge depends, in part, on how you feel about yourself.

You have been expressing yourself through your actions since you were born. You influence others you meet, and they, in turn, influence you. This "connectedness" with others is one of the basic fundamentals of life.

You are a unique individual, but you function within a family, a community, and a society. There are boundaries within which you must function, but you have freedom within these boundaries. As you grow and mature, you will learn to recognize the balance between rights and responsibilities this freedom requires.

Your Personality

In order to understand yourself and those around you, you need to understand the factors that help shape your personality. **Personality** is defined as the group of behavioral and emotional traits that distinguishes an individual. It is all that a person has been, is now, and hopes to be. It can also be defined as the sum of all the traits that you have inherited (been born with) or acquired (learned).

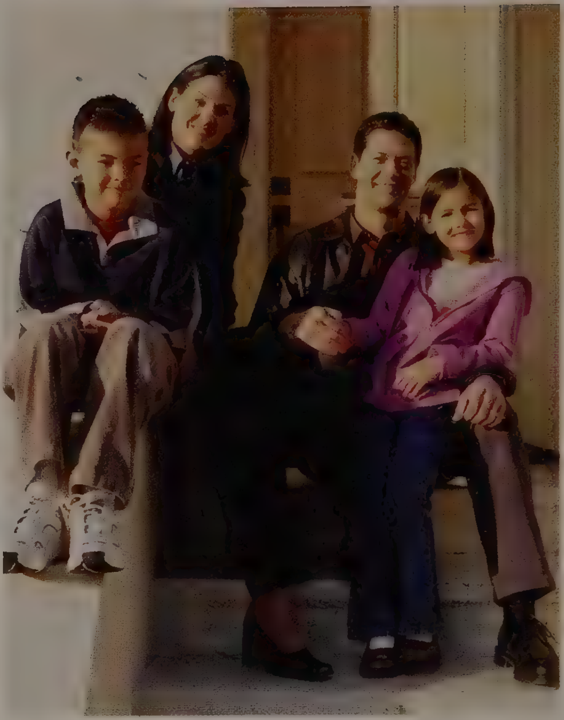
This book will help you explore the many factors that shape your personality. Once you are familiar with the many aspects of your personality, you will be able to answer the important questions, "Who am I?" and "How do I deal with who I am?" You will learn to recognize the many possibilities that can be a part of your life.

Factors That Shape Personality

Heredity, the sum of the traits that are passed from your ancestors to you, has a great effect on your personality, 1-1. Because you are a human being, you have many traits in common with other human beings. You have two eyes, two ears, a nose, a mouth, two arms, and two legs. These are human traits determined by heredity and are called **inherited traits**.

Heredity also causes differences among humans. The color of eyes, the shape of ears, and the length of arms vary from person to person. How many of your classmates have black hair? How many have blue eyes?

Heredity influences more than your appearance. It also affects such traits as your attitude, intelligence, and behavior. Thus, heredity is one factor in shaping your total personality.



1-1 **Family members tend to look alike because of their inherited characteristics.**

Your environment also plays a major role in your personality development, 1-2. **Environment** is all of the conditions, objects, and circumstances that surround an individual. You and your classmates share parts of your environment. You attend the same school and have the same teachers. You participate in the same activities. Other parts of your environment are different from those of your classmates. Factors such as your family situation, neighborhood, religion, and friends make your environment unique to you. Your environment affects your thoughts, feelings, and actions. It helps shape your personality. Traits developed as a result of environmental factors are called **acquired traits**.

1-2 Your peers, or persons in your age group, are part of your environment. They influence your personality development.

A third factor that helps shape your personality is your response to your environment. In some situations, your responses may be like those of your peers. In other cases, your responses may be different. For instance, suppose you went with a group of your friends to a movie. You were all in the same theater, saw the same scenes, and heard the same words, but you may have had different responses. Some of your friends may have thought the movie was funny or boring or confusing. Some may have thought it was well written, but poorly acted. Others may have paid special attention to the scenery, costumes, special effects, or music. Each person might have responded to the movie in a different way.

Both environmental and hereditary factors affect your personality development, but authorities disagree about how these affect personality development, 1-3. Some authorities think environmental factors are more important. They say people inherit only the potential for various personality traits. They think a certain social environment is needed to develop these traits. Other authorities think hereditary forces are more important.

You, as an individual, have inborn qualities determined by heredity. You are in a particular environment, and you respond uniquely to that environment. Together, these three factors shape your personality. They determine how you deal with the challenges, successes, and

1-3 **Both heredity and environment play a role in personality development.**

frustrations you meet in your daily life. Much of your future will be determined by the decisions you make as you balance these three forces. Because of their importance, these factors will be discussed in more depth in the subsequent chapters.

Your Growth

Adolescence is a time of growth and change. It is a time for leaving childhood behind and becoming an adult. Although growth is usually measured in terms of age, height, and weight, people really grow in six different areas. They grow chronologically, physically, intellectually, emotionally, socially, and philosophically.

Each person grows at a unique pace, 1-4. For instance, one person's physical growth may be slow while intellectual growth is rapid. Another person's physical growth may be rapid while intellectual growth is slow. The possible variations in growth rates are endless. The term **growth pattern** is used to describe the unique way a person grows. People's growth patterns and their responses to their growth patterns affect their personality development.

Chronological Growth

Everyone ages at the same chronological rate, 1-5. You grow older every minute and every day. Chronological age is determined at birth and cannot be altered. You add another year to your age with each calendar year.

Our culture has done much to form our attitudes toward age. The advertising industry and mass media make youth look appealing. Young people are pictured as having fun and being successful. The image of aging people in today's world is more positive than that of previous generations. Today this age group is often portrayed as enjoying an active and abundant life. How you feel about your aging will affect your personality throughout your life.

Physical Growth

The physical growth of humans follows the same general pattern from childhood

1-4 People grow in six different areas. The rate of growth varies from area to area as well as from person to person.

through puberty and adulthood. Changes in physical growth may happen at different times for different people, but the sequence of the basic changes will be similar.

Physical growth is the easiest to observe. For instance, by age three, children are twice as tall and four times as heavy as they were at birth. This rate of growth slows down and then remains steady until about the age of ten.

At puberty, the growth rates of boys and girls begin to differ. **Puberty** is the time when the body first becomes capable of reproducing sexually. The body changes from that of a boy or girl to that of a man or woman. This sudden growth and change is triggered by the **pituitary gland** at the base of the brain. This gland secretes hormones that affect other parts of the body. At puberty, hormones from the pituitary gland stimulate the reproductive

1-5 **Each birthday adds another year to a person's chronological growth.**

glands. The reproductive glands then produce other hormones that cause changes in boys' and girls' bodies.

The age at which puberty begins varies. Most girls reach puberty at about age 12. Most boys reach puberty two years later, at about age 14. At puberty a girl grows rapidly in height and weight. Her hip cage widens, her breasts enlarge, and she begins her menstrual cycle. Hair appears in the pubic region, under the armpits, and on the legs.

A boy also undergoes many physical changes during puberty. He grows rapidly in height, his neck thickens and broadens, his shoulders widen, and his waist narrows. His muscles develop rapidly, and his strength virtually doubles between the ages of 12 and 16. See 1-6. His vocal cords lengthen, causing squeaks as his voice deepens. Hair appears on his body, especially on his face and in the pubic region.

Physical growth is hardly noticeable in adulthood. Adults rarely grow in height, although they often gain weight. The body of an adult works to maintain itself rather than to grow in size.

Your response to your physical growth affects your personality development. You may be taller, shorter, heavier, or thinner than the average person. You may have reached physical maturity earlier or later than others. If you can accept your physical traits and growth pattern, this will have a positive effect on your personality.

1-6 **Muscle development allows strength in boys to double between the ages of 12 and 16.**

Intellectual Growth

You inherit your potential for intelligence. However, all people grow differently in this area based on their environment and their response to that environment.

A person born with a high potential for intelligence can fail to be motivated and thus never develop a sharper mind. A person who has an average potential for intelligence can study hard and work hard to become successful—even in a career that requires a great deal of intelligence.

Environment can influence intelligence in other ways, too. Nutritious food and adequate rest and exercise make you feel better and allow you to learn more. Your family, friends, and school provide many opportunities for new learning experiences. Such experiences include everything from family talks, to a day out with friends, to a part in a school play. Every time you see something, read something, or talk with someone, you have the chance to expand your intellectual growth.

If you respond positively to your inherited potential and to the opportunities your environment offers, you can increase your intellectual growth. This is probably the greatest step toward personal independence you can take. Intelligence gives you the capability to function well in the world around you.

Emotional Growth

Your emotions are your feelings. These feelings are often revealed to those around you through different behaviors. Many emotions are expressed outwardly for all to see. Babies who are unhappy may cry uncontrollably. Happy children may laugh excitedly. Teens may be sullen and retiring when they feel sad. Other emotions are kept inside or suppressed, invisible to family and friends.

Emotional growth refers to the continuing refinement of emotions or mental states that causes an individual to act in a certain way. Each person has a unique timetable for learning to control and express emotions. Some people are emotionally mature at a fairly young age. On the other hand, some people act like children in the way they handle their emotions even after they become adults.

How you handle your emotions will be an indication of your emotional maturity. During your teen years you will experience many emotions, 1-7. You may also notice that your emotions change rapidly. You may be happy and excited one minute and sad and depressed the next. This is normal. The important thing is that you recognize these emotional shifts and learn to manage them to help you live an

1-7 You may feel many new and different emotions during your teen years.

effective life. You also need to learn to express your emotions and not keep them bottled up inside. This, too, is a part of growing emotionally.

Another part of emotional growth is learning the best way to respond to emotional situations. For instance, if you feel anger toward someone, you will find a way to resolve this anger without using hurtful words or violent behavior. You may try mentally counting to ten rather than yelling out words you might regret later. You may even suggest that you both calm down and talk about the problem again when you aren't so upset. Learning to handle your feelings and actions in ways that are acceptable to others will help you grow emotionally.

Social Growth

You also grow socially as you learn to relate to others around you. This growth begins at an early age. Babies smile when parents or caregivers "talk" to them. Children first play alone, and then they learn the fun of playing with others, 1-8. As a teen you are opening up new avenues for social growth. This will continue throughout your life.

In your family you learn to grow in your roles as a child, son or daughter, and brother or sister as you pass through different stages of social growth. You grow from self-centeredness to being considerate of others. You learn to share and take turns. You learn to listen to the views of others.

In your community you learn what is acceptable as a pattern for social behavior. These experiences in a social setting help you meet new people and learn behaviors that are acceptable and unacceptable. You mature socially as you adopt standards of responsibility for living in an organized society. You learn to adopt as your own the rules and guidelines that allow a society to function for the benefit of all.

1-8 Children grow socially through the give and take of play activities.

Philosophical Growth

As you grow philosophically, you may search for deeper meaning and purpose in your life. You are learning to study truth and knowledge using reflective thinking and reasoned inquiry. As a child you related to specific objects. As a teen you are thinking more abstractly of things you cannot see or feel.

Questions such as "Who are you?" "Where are you from?" and "Where are you going?" were easy to answer when you were young. You simply stated your name, the city in which you lived, and the place you were going—to school, home, or the store. As you grow philosophically, you sense there are other ways to answer these questions. You begin to think more deeply about who you are, why you are here, and your goals for life, 1-9.

Young people are looking for a sense of direction. They are also trying to gain deeper insight into other people and the world around them.

Your Self-Concept

Your **self-concept** is the way you see yourself. There is no one else in the world exactly like you. Look around and you will never find anyone quite like you. You may have your hair cut as your friends do, and you may wear the same styles of clothes. However, even if you try to look like others, you will never be exactly like others. You are unique, and this makes you special.

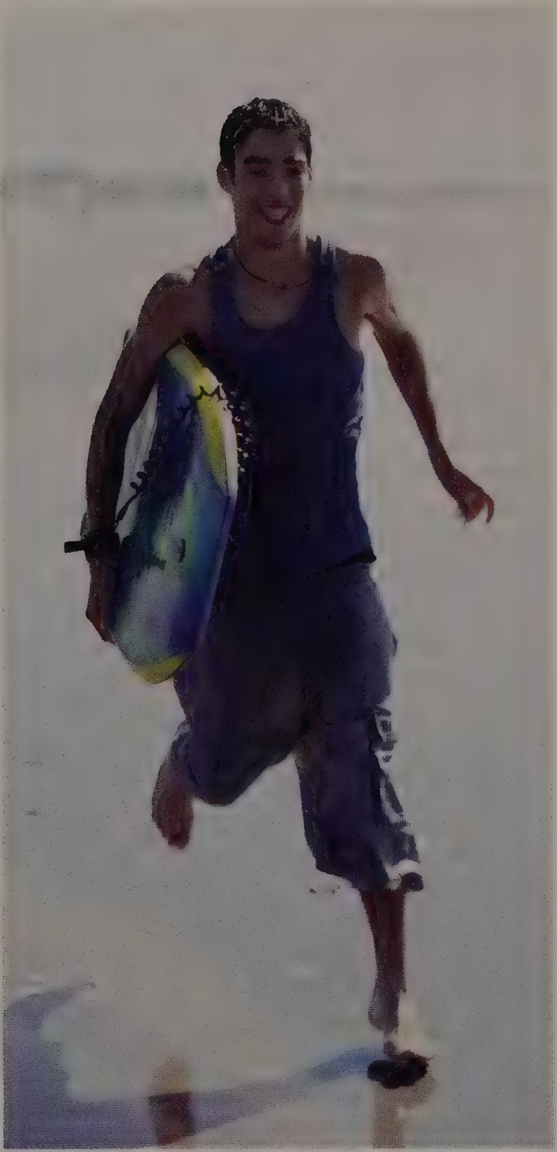
1-9 As you mature, you begin to think more deeply about yourself and the world around you.

What is included in your self-concept—this picture you have of yourself? Several factors are a part of this image, such as your appearance, your personality traits, and your abilities.

Your appearance forms a part of your self-concept. Everyone has different physical characteristics. Some of your characteristics you may like, and others you may not like. Maybe you think you're too tall or too short. Maybe you think your nose is too big. If you feel good about your appearance, you feel good about yourself. This leads to a positive self-concept. If you don't feel good about the way you look, this contributes to a negative self-concept. If you don't care how you look, this too can be a part of your self-concept. Many things about your appearance you cannot change, but you can make the most of your good qualities. If you do this, you can still have a positive self-concept.

Another part of your self-concept is your personality. You have certain personality traits that are different from your friends' personality traits. You may enjoy being with a lot of people and you may like to be involved with what is going on. On the other hand, maybe you feel more comfortable staying in the background, reading a book, or listening to music. These individual personality traits are a part of your self-concept. If you feel comfortable with your personality, you have a positive self-concept, 1-10. If you wish you could change your personality, you may have a negative self-concept.

Each of you has certain skills that are different from those of your peers. You may already realize you cannot do a few things as well as some of your friends. Perhaps your ability to excel in a sport is not your main strength, but you may be at



1-10 **With a positive self-concept, a person has the confidence to accept challenges and try new things.**

ease with the computer. You may be able to design original costumes for the school play or compete on the school debate team. Each of you has different talents and skills, and these also form a part of your self-concept.

How Is Your Self-Concept Formed?

It is natural to compare yourself with others. This is one way your self-concept is formed. If you think you are as good as the next person, this shapes your self-concept. Even if you think you're not as good as others, this still influences the concept you have of yourself. Knowing what you can and cannot do shapes your self-concept.

From the time you were very young, your parents, other family members, your teachers, and friends all have played a part in shaping your self-concept. They did this by reacting to your behavior. Sometimes you were doing well and they told you so. You felt proud of yourself. You told yourself "Hey, I can do this!" Sometimes they may have told you the opposite, and another image formed. That image was of someone who wasn't as good as others, and again, your self-concept was influenced.

You have your own strengths and weaknesses. Everyone does. If you dwell on your weaknesses, however, you will tend to feel overwhelmed. Others may not realize the strengths you do have. You will feel more worthwhile when you focus on your strengths.

What Is Self-Esteem?

Self-esteem is how you feel about yourself. If you have self-esteem, you feel that you are a good and worthwhile person. You believe in yourself. When you have self-esteem, you are able to accept your weaknesses but you do not dwell on them. You make the most of your strengths, and this is reflected in your attitudes.

Your self-esteem influences your behavior. If you have self-esteem, you have confidence in yourself and believe in your ability to relate to others and to accomplish tasks. With self-esteem, you can learn new skills and take reasonable risks as you seek new experiences. See 1-11.

If a teen has high self-esteem, he or she can say "I count," "I have something to offer," and "I am somebody." With low self-esteem, the words might be "I'll always be second-rate" or "I don't deserve to be loved."

Thousands of everyday occurrences influence how you feel about yourself. Your self-esteem may increase or decrease. One moment you may be upset by a negative remark someone made about you and judge yourself in the same way. The next hour someone may compliment you, and you feel fine again, 1-12. This is normal. With time, however, you will be able to pay less attention to those events that lower your self-esteem. You will be able to focus more on your positive qualities and get on with your life.

Building Self-Esteem

Your feeling of self-esteem holds a promise of what you can become. A feeling of self-esteem empowers you to look ahead with optimism. It expands your horizons and helps you focus on what you want to become. Self-esteem can give you the feeling "I am everything because of what I can become." You may not like everything about your life today, but your tomorrow will be what you want to make it. Your feeling of self-esteem will help you look ahead and see the positive possibilities. It is up to you.

What are the steps to this feeling of empowerment? How can you catch hold of a feeling of self-esteem? Begin with the following:

- Measure yourself honestly. Make a list of your strengths and weaknesses. You may ask a parent or a friend to help you. List your good qualities. Think about how these qualities can help you

How Self-Esteem Influences Behavior

With Self-Esteem	***Without Self-Esteem***
Can express strong opinions	Uncertain of own opinions
Trusts own judgment	Afraid to trust own judgment
Is not afraid of criticism	Overly sensitive to criticism
Accepts consequences of own behavior	May blame others or oneself too much
Enjoys being with others	May be shy and withdrawn
Self-confident	Reluctant to try new things
Independent	More dependent on others
Creative in problem solving	Lacks creativity in problem solving
Participates in a variety of activities	Participates in few activities
Shows initiative	Lacks initiative
May devote more time to others	Is preoccupied with self
Assertive	Unassertive
Can take leadership roles	More of a follower

1-11 Self-esteem, as well as a lack of self-esteem, influences a person's behavior.

1-12 **When a teacher recognizes your contribution to a class discussion, it increases your self-esteem.**

reach your goals. Be aware of your weaknesses, but do not dwell on them.

- Practice positive self-talk. Tell yourself there is promise in what you are doing. If you have a job, tell yourself "I'm doing this job better every day, and I'm going to learn how to move ahead." This belief in your future will give you strength. Avoid negative self-talk. If you say to yourself "I'm a loser," you give yourself an excuse for not trying.
- Accept the things about yourself you cannot change. Tell yourself "This is the way it is for me now." Your success in the future will depend on what you can do. Part of this is learning to accept what you cannot do.
- Focus on the present, but keep an eye on the future. Dwelling on the past may increase feelings of helplessness. Do the best you can today, and keep your eye on the promise of the future.
- Take one step at a time. Many tasks may seem overwhelming during the teen years. Try taking small steps, but make each one count. Look ahead realistically to where you are headed.
- Be a friend to yourself. You have to like yourself before you can like others. If you feel inadequate or hopeless, pause and focus on something that you feel good about. Remember, a feeling of self-esteem is within everyone's reach.

Your Character

Another important part of you is your character. **Character** can be defined as a sense of right and wrong that guides your behavior. It is the part of your personality that helps you make choices that are in line with your personal priorities.

Character development begins in childhood. As children interact with parents and other adults, they begin to learn which behaviors are acceptable and which are not. Children begin to accept these standards as their own. These acquired standards guide their behavior, and thus their character develops.

In the early years, children's behavior is often guided by forces outside their control. They try to conform to the behavior guidelines set by their parents in order to receive their praise. Children like to avoid punishment and gain rewards. As they grow older, children's behavior is shaped by the approval or disapproval of others outside the family. Social pressures come into play. Behavior is influenced by what is socially acceptable or unacceptable.

Your behavior may often be guided by rules that have been established by authorities. Self-discipline in following these rules protects you in many ways. It also helps maintain order in our society. Obeying these rules will help you build character. When the controls become a part of you, character is developing. You will act in accordance with your own conscience. You will be able to control your own behavior as you meet new situations throughout your life.

As a human being, you have the freedom to decide your own fate. Your life will include many new and exciting experiences. You will meet new friends who will influence you. You will find yourself in many new environments. Your character will be revealed as you respond to all the new situations in your life.

Virtues are traits that indicate character. In 1-13, seven virtues and their definitions are listed. Read the definition of each virtue. Then review the descriptive phrases in the two columns. You will be able to evaluate whether or not your behavior enhances or impedes your character development.

Becoming a Responsible and Independent Adult

One of the tasks of adolescence is to become a responsible, independent adult. Adults, like children and teenagers, have many challenges. They must earn a living, provide for their families, and save money for their old age. They must play a variety of family roles, including those of spouse, parent, adult child of aging parents, grandparent, brother or sister, uncle or aunt, and friend. They must also be responsible citizens and consumers.

Adult life is an ever-changing series of circumstances involving joy, sadness, success, setbacks, and points in between. As an adult, you will have more options and independence than you will at any other time of your life. You will likely experience the joys offered by interesting work, satisfying marriage and family life, and rewarding friendships.

However, you must also be prepared to cope with the challenges of life. Difficult times will come not only to you, but to people you love and for whom you are responsible. Career setbacks, job loss, illness, accidents, divorce, substance abuse, and death are only some of the tough challenges with which adults are confronted.

Virtues That Help Build Character

Tends to Impede Character Development	*Definition*	*Tends to Enhance Character Development*
Finds difficulty in disciplining self to achieve goals. Unable to control behavior when pressured. Finds difficulty in setting goals and waivers in achieving them.	**Self-discipline** To be able to direct self and control behavior in achieving goals.	Believes self-discipline is the means for achieving goals. Able to discipline self in setting goals. Able to control behavior.
Shuns taking responsibility for any action. Finds excuses for not completing tasks. Blames others for own inadequacy.	**Responsibility** To be accountable for your actions.	Accountable for all tasks assigned. Completes tasks without being reminded. Thinks before acting and then accepts responsibility for own actions.
Thinks the end justifies the means if lying will help. Thinks lying is O.K. if no one is hurt. Thinks stretching the truth is justified.	**Honesty and Integrity** To be real, genuine, truthful. To respect self and others.	Word can be counted on. Fulfills promises. Knows the right thing to do and has the will to pursue it. Exhibits integrity in all relationships.
Places well-being of self above the well-being of others. Code of ethical conduct changes depending on situation. Cannot be counted on to react in an honorable way.	**Loyalty** To care sincerely about the well-being of family, friends, and country.	Exhibits steadfastness in attachments to others. Uses intellect in evaluating issue of loyalty. Can be counted on to act in an honorable way.
Self-centered; self-preservation is main objective. Unable to sense needs of others. Indifferent to needs of other human beings.	**Compassion and Mercy** To take seriously the realities of other persons, their lives, and their emotions, as well as their external circumstances.	Feels moral awareness of those around. Natural inclination to help those in distress. Supportive of others in distress.
Needs someone or something to cause person to start and to continue. Willing to settle for job half-done.	**Motivation and Hard Work** Inner urge that prompts individual to take positive action.	Self starter. Wants to accomplish goals. Able to continue hard work even if no rewards given.
Tires of task or goal before finishing. No feeling of accomplishment. Unwilling to sacrifice own desires or comforts in order to finish tasks.	**Perseverance** Sets realistic goals and works hard to achieve them.	Sets realistic goals and works to finish. Persists in action to improve self and others. Willing to sacrifice own desires or comforts in order to finish tasks.

Adapted from The Book of Virtues by Wm. J. Bennett.

1-13 By reading the descriptive phrases, you can evaluate whether or not your behavior enhances or impedes character development.

Success in meeting these challenges requires a positive, constructive outlook and the ability to put troubles in perspective. You will need to know how to get help when help is needed. As a teen, you have a chance to learn responsibility as you mature.

Learning to Be Responsible

Teens are capable of handling many new responsibilities. Fulfilling these responsibilities is one way you become more independent.

Independence is something you earn by proving you can handle responsibility. Many teens wish they could press a button and be awarded instant independence, but it doesn't work that way. For instance, Jeff lamented that his parents never allowed him to take the family car anywhere without them. He was 16 and had his driver's license. Jeff couldn't understand why, so he asked his dad. His dad explained, "Jeff, we asked you to mow the yard every week, but many weeks I had to do the job myself. We asked you to let us see your homework. You always said you had done it. Then we were called by your teacher, who said you might fail because you didn't turn in your homework. You have not followed through on these responsibilities. We can't give you any more freedom because you have not yet learned to act responsibly."

Greater rewards have to be earned by fulfilling responsibilities—big and small. Mowing the lawn may not seem important, but someone has to do it. You can't always pick and choose responsibilities. You accept what needs to be done to help your family. Then you fulfill the job to the best of your ability.

Becoming responsible is not simply a matter of performing tasks assigned to you. Responsible people also take charge of their conduct. They own up to their actions and answer for them. If your actions are questioned or if your behavior is not acceptable, you may try to blame someone or something else. "He made me do it," you may say. If you fail a test, you may say your friend borrowed your book, or you had to work late. The truth is you did not take time to study.

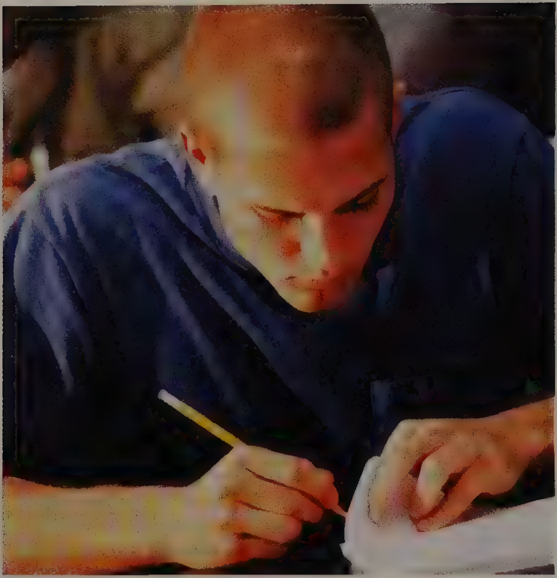
Many people are ready to claim credit for successes, but if mistakes are made they try to disclaim any responsibility. Making mistakes is normal. By denying your mistakes, you give the impression that you believe you are above making mistakes. This is behaving irresponsibly.

One of the most unkind things anyone can do is to take away your opportunity to be responsible. Some people trade responsibility for a crippling attitude that seems to say, "I want someone to take care of me." They lose their desire to succeed on their own. They become content with letting others run their lives.

As a teen today, you have many opportunities to become a responsible adult. Take the opportunity to increase your freedom by behaving like one. Accept responsibility when you do make a mistake, and try to make amends. Fulfill your responsibilities in your family, school, and community, 1-14. You will be learning to fulfill your broader role as a responsible citizen.

What Does It Mean to Be a Good Citizen?

An important part of being a responsible adult is being a good citizen. A **citizen** is



1-14 Your responsibilities as a teenager include doing your best in school.

a person who owes loyalty to a government and, in return, is entitled to the protection of the government. In our country, **citizenship** (the status of being a citizen) gives you both rights and responsibilities. By law, citizens are entitled to the following:

- The right to vote
- The right to equal treatment under the law
- Freedom of speech, worship, and other privileges listed in the Bill of Rights (the first ten amendments to the Constitution)
- Government services at various levels, from municipal to national (for example, police protection and military defense)

Along with these rights, citizens have responsibilities. These include the following:

- Obeying laws to maintain a well-ordered society
- Paying taxes to support government services
- Staying informed on public affairs
- Voting

Voting is both a right and a responsibility, as is keeping up on current events so that you can vote intelligently. You will be reaching 18 soon. At that time you will gain the right to vote on government matters. You should be learning all you can about your government—local, state, and national. Listen to the news, read newspapers, and become active in citizens' groups, 1-15. It is important that you maintain an ongoing interest in what is happening in your local community and in your country. Critical thinking about the issues will give you the background you will need to meet your citizenship responsibilities. You are only one person, but your vote can make a difference.

A Citizen of Your Local Community

Your local community is where you live and go to school or work. Every member of

1-15 Reading newspapers will keep you informed of what is happening in your local community and in the world.

the community plays a part in keeping it a good place to live. In some communities, many people do not seem to care. In others, citizens have a real sense of community pride. As you enter adulthood, you can begin to make a difference in your community. You can become more involved. You can play a role in keeping or making the community a good place to live.

You can begin now to make a difference in your community by showing that you care. Is an elderly person living alone in your neighborhood? Just picking up a carelessly delivered newspaper and placing it by the door is a simple, caring gesture. Perhaps you could offer to mow the lawn or shovel the snow. Just watching for the elderly person to see if he or she is up and about each day shows you care.

In one neighborhood, a young man was upset because of the accumulation of trash on the streets. He started picking up the trash on Saturday mornings. Children came out and helped him. Other teens and adults started picking up the trash in their yards. Within two months, the street was clean and orderly. A young teen showed he cared about his neighborhood, and he made a difference.

Your local community has many organizations that can use your help. They are always looking for volunteers. **Volunteerism** is giving or offering services of your own free will. Show you care and take an active role in making your community better by volunteering your time and talents.

A Citizen of the Larger Community

The world is at your doorstep. What you do in your local community and what our society does as a nation impacts the world. Likewise, what happens in local communities around the world can impact you.

Many of the products you buy are imported from other countries. Likewise, many of the products made in this country are exported worldwide. You have only to look in your home to see the many items that are imported from other countries. Your television may have components that came from other countries. Fabrics may have come from mills in one country, but may be sent to other nations to be sewn into clothing. We live in a global economy that combines the raw materials from one country and the technology available in another country to produce a final product.

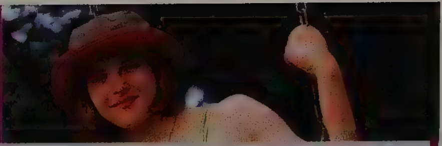
How we care for our environment today can affect the future quality of life on this planet. For example, both the production and use of fuel can damage the environment. Oil spills in the oceans can foul the waters. Fumes from burning fuels can pollute the air. Nuclear waste, if improperly handled, can have long-lasting environmental effects. These are concerns that can affect the entire world community. As a citizen of the world, you need to be informed of the environmental benefits and risks of energy production as well as other trends (such as population growth) that affect global well-being. You can then make your concerns known. Responsible adults need to be informed about what is happening in the world and how it impacts lives.

Community Leadership

Assuming responsibility sometimes means taking a leadership role. Leaders are needed within the local community, as well as in state and national forums. The role of a leader is one of the responsibilities you may assume as an adult.

You have many opportunities to develop leadership skills now as a teenager. You can exercise these skills in school,

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens



Volunteering Benefits Everyone

You can return something to your community, your country, and your world by volunteering. Volunteering is choosing freely to provide a service for others without pay. Many community successes are the result of volunteers who decided to do something to make life better for the citizens of their community. Such projects range from beautification plans to recycling programs to garden plots for people to grow their own produce.

Globally, volunteerism is a growing movement. Across the world, people are in need. Governments are not able to help all who suffer. Volunteer organizations step in when needed to ease suffering wherever possible. All of these organizations rely on volunteer help, either to provide the aid directly or to raise funds to support the work of the organization.

Teens have youth and energy, and many young people want to help others. Volunteering is the answer for many. Once you start volunteering, you will discover that giving to others brings much personal satisfaction. Even though your time may be limited, every minute can count. With volunteer work, you can decide how much time you have to give.

By volunteering, you not only help others, but you also help yourself. You can develop a wide range of skills as you work to benefit others. You may ask, "What is in it for me?" There are several good reasons for young people to volunteer. Volunteering gives you the opportunity to

- learn to be responsible.
- put your special talents to use.
- test your skills and learn new ones.
- make new friends.
- explore a related career or field of work.
- work with people in different age groups.
- make important contacts in your community.
- be recognized for a job well done.

There are various ways you can volunteer. You can work through an already established organization that uses volunteer help. Such organizations include the American Red Cross, the Salvation Army, Habitat for Humanity, and Big Brothers/Big Sisters. Every community has programs already in place that always need volunteers. These include museums, zoos, animal shelters, libraries, park districts, and nursing homes. Some communities have Voluntary Action Committees to coordinate volunteer work in their area.

(continued)

Another way to get involved as a volunteer is to work through organizations to which you already belong. Your group may wish to launch its own volunteer program to fill a need they see in your community.

The following are some ways teenagers have volunteered:

- **Acting as counselors in camps for children with special needs.**
- **Planting trees in areas damaged by fire.**
- **Reading to elderly people in nursing homes.**
- **Cleaning beaches and roadsides.**
- **Helping with home construction as a part of community projects to build housing for low-income people.**
- **Tutoring elementary school children.**
- **Participating in clothing and food drives for the needy.**
- **Collecting materials for recycling.**

Can you think of other ways you can volunteer to help make your community, country, and world a better place to live?

religious, and community groups to which you may belong. The experience you gain will be very useful in helping you reach later goals in life. As you continue your education or work after high school, your ability to lead will help you move ahead, 1-16.

Meeting Personal Expectations

Each of you has expectations for your personal life. Some of your expectations are for what you hope to accomplish. For instance, today you may hope to pass your chemistry exam. If you don't pass this one, and you continue to have trouble, your future expectations may not be met. Your future expectations may include education, a career, marriage, and becoming a parent.

Some of your personal expectations may not be measurable. They may involve more abstract feelings that bring you contentment and satisfaction with your life. Your hopes for finding happiness, love, affection, and fulfillment are equally important expectations.

1-16 Leadership skills developed in school can help you in the working world.

Goal-Setting in Your Teen Years

Expectations become your goals. A **goal** is something you want to achieve or to have. Maybe as a teenager you haven't spent much time thinking about goals, but you have probably thought about your future. If so, then some goals may have entered your mind. For instance, your parents have probably asked you what you plan to do when you get out of school. From an early age, others also may have asked, "What do you want to be when you grow up?" You probably have answered that question many times through the years, but now is the time to commit to an answer. If you do know what career field interests you, then you are ready to start setting some goals for yourself.

It is important to begin to focus on goals during your teen years. Goals help you steer toward a satisfying future. They can give you a purpose for making the most of every day. Goals help you think more critically when faced with decisions. Even if circumstances cause you to detour slightly, you know you can still reach your goals using other plans. With goals in mind, you have a sense of promise as you look toward your future.

Roadblocks to Responsible Adulthood

Every young person will encounter obstacles on the path to adulthood. These obstacles will require extra effort to overcome. Major roadblocks may cause some people to give up altogether. Other young people will be challenged all the more to do their best and try their hardest.

What Are the Roadblocks?

Every generation has roadblocks. Some roadblocks have been around for hundreds of years. Your parents faced them, and you may face them also. These are the roadblocks of poverty and unemployment, crime and violence in the home and on the streets, abuse of alcohol and other drugs, and sexual abuse. Sexually transmitted diseases have also been around for hundreds of years, but AIDS is the most recent killer. An unplanned pregnancy too early in life can also be a roadblock. More than one million of the nine million girls in the U.S. between the ages of 15 and 19 get pregnant every year. About half give birth. Nearly one-third of all babies are born out of wedlock.

Many young people today are overwhelmed by these roadblocks. Out of frustration, some drop out of school, run away, or join a gang where they hope to survive. Some become early victims. They may become victims of the gang violence that has been escalating in recent years. The abuse of drugs, including alcohol, claims some young lives. Sexually transmitted diseases, especially HIV, may ultimately cause the death of other young people. Tragically, some take their own lives. For the survivors, the biggest roadblock may be the loss of faith in any promise of a better future.

Somehow, though, these survivors have to find a way to move past these roadblocks. Many teens have found a formula that works for them, 1-17. Even with devastating problems, they recognize that their future depends on their ability to take responsibility for their own lives.

Concerns of Young Adults

Fortunately, not all young people are faced with these major roadblocks. All teens, however, have many of the same concerns. In a number of surveys, teenagers have consistently listed the following as their most important concerns:

- Having enough money
- Staying healthy
- Avoiding wrong decisions
- The future of the country
- Choosing the right career
- Getting a good job
- Finding the right person to marry
- Dealing with family problems

Finding Your Way

You can find a way around the roadblocks, and there are ways of dealing with your concerns. Reading this book is a start. In the chapters to follow, you will learn more about yourself and your relationships with others. You will learn about the decisions facing you. You will find help in making these decisions. You will be learning about families—how they are changing and the responsibilities family members must share.

1-17 **Most young people find ways to overcome the roadblocks they encounter.**

Your future depends on your ability to take responsibility for your life. You may think life has not given you what others have. You may not have had a choice in some of the circumstances in your life, but you do have a choice about what you are going to do with your future.

There are many people who can help you sort out your options. Though many young people turn to their friends for advice, they also look to their parents. If you have a good relationship with your parents, you are more likely to turn to them for guidance. Other family members, too, can help you find answers. Don't be afraid to ask for help.

As you prepare for responsible adulthood, keep the following in mind:

- Seek reliable information resources, and ask questions.
- Identify your options, and think through possible consequences.
- If you make judgments, take responsibility for the results.
- Have opinions, but listen to the opinions of others as well.
- Recognize what is important to you.
- Respect your heritage.
- Be able to communicate, negotiate, and compromise.
- Learn how to create your future.

Your life is a continuum—a long, straight line. What happens to you today will always be a part of you. What you do today is a part of your future. Keep a vision for your entire life before you—not just today. You have positive possibilities!

Chapter 1 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Your personality development is dependent on three factors: your heredity, your environment, and your response to your environment.
- Growth may be measured in six ways: chronologically, physically, intellectually, emotionally, socially, and philosophically.
- The image of yourself that is your self-concept begins to form at an early age. Your parents, other family members, your teachers, and friends all play a part in shaping your self-concept.
- A positive self-concept leads to self-esteem. Your feeling of self-esteem influences your behavior.
- With a sense of self-esteem, you feel confident in your ability to reach the goals you have set for your life.
- Character is the part of your personality that helps you make choices that are in line with your personal priorities.
- One of the tasks of adolescence is to become a responsible and independent adult. As you take on more responsibilities, you probably will be given more independence.
- As a citizen, you have both rights and responsibilities. You can begin fulfilling your rights and responsibilities as a teenager.
- Your personal expectations include that which you hope to accomplish. Some expectations are measurable and some are not. These expectations become your goals.
- It is not always easy to become a responsible adult. There are roadblocks, such as poverty, drug abuse, and violence, which can make the road difficult to travel.
- Your future will depend on your ability to take responsibility for your life.

Review

1. Identify the term being defined in each of these statements:
   - A. How you feel about yourself.
   - B. The unique way a person grows.
   - C. All the conditions, objects, and circumstances that surround an individual.
   - D. A sense of right and wrong that guides behavior.
   - E. Group of behavioral and emotional traits that distinguish an individual.
   - F. The way you see yourself.
   - G. The sum of traits that are passed from your ancestors to you.
2. Name two similarities heredity causes in humans.
3. Name two differences heredity causes in humans.
4. List two parts of your environment that you share with your peers and two parts of your environment that are unique.
5. Identify the type of growth being described in each of the following statements:
   - A. Development of a deeper feeling of meaning and purpose in life.
   - B. Growth in months and years.
   - C. Growth in height and weight.
   - D. Development of ability to get along with other people.
   - E. Growth in knowledge and mental abilities.
   - F. Development of ability to control and express feelings.
6. When do the physical growth patterns of boys and girls begin to differ?
7. What is character?
8. Explain the relationship between responsibility and independence.
9. List two rights and two responsibilities of citizenship.
10. Identify three possible roadblocks to responsible adulthood.

React

1. Design a bulletin board titled "Six Ways We Grow." Find pictures to illustrate each type of growth.
2. In small groups, develop lists of ways teens can volunteer in your local community.
3. Research one of the organizations listed in this chapter that use volunteer help. Prepare a report for the class on the organization's history, goals, and activities.
4. Make a list of obstacles or "roadblocks" teens face in your community. Then make a list of suggestions for overcoming each of these roadblocks.
5. Conduct a survey of the students in your school on the concerns of teens. Use the list of concerns of teens given in this chapter, or make a list of your own. Have students rank the concerns in order of importance. After tabulating the results of the survey, write an article on your findings for the school paper.

Reflect

1. Determine ways in which your response to your environment can modify some hereditary tendencies. Show how these changes can be beneficial or detrimental to your well-being.
2. Point out ways in which a feeling of self-esteem can help you believe in your future. Cite examples of people who have had difficult childhoods but have become successful (as you define success).
3. Compile a list of ways in which responsibility can be reflected in work habits, personal relationships, dating, family relationships, sports activities, and school government.
4. If you had time to do volunteer work in your community, what would you do? Why would this activity be of interest to you?

Chapter 2

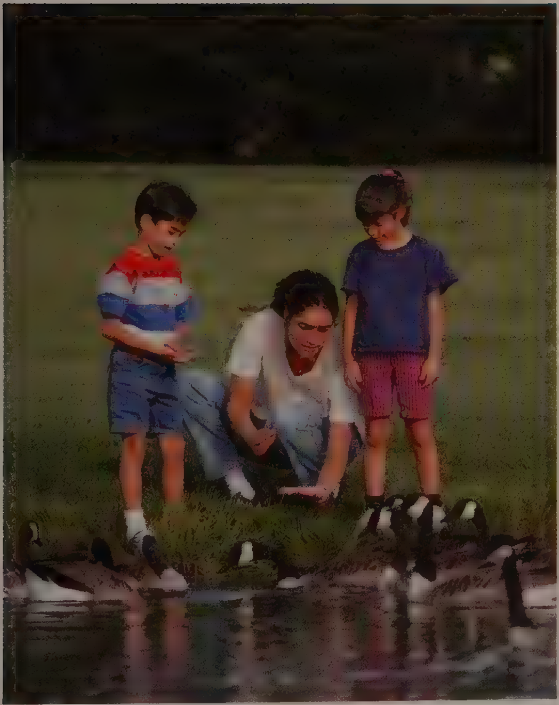
Your Heredity

Terms to Know

- chromosomes
- gene
- dominant gene
- recessive gene
- mutations
- fraternal twins
- identical twins
- autosomes
- blood type
- Rh factor

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- explain the process of heredity.
- describe how twins and multiple births occur.
- identify the characteristics that a person inherits.
- explain the role of heredity as only one of many factors influencing life success.



2-1 Heredity has caused this mother, daughter, and son to have similar physical characteristics.

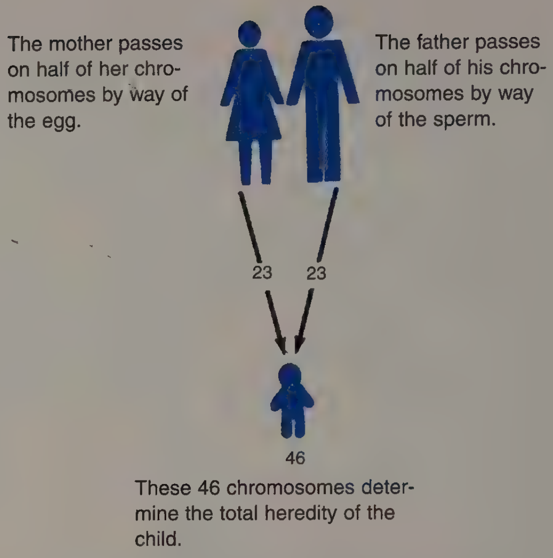
You have a heritage that has been given to you by your ancestors. Because of your family heritage, you have unique characteristics. Some of these characteristics are visible, 2-1, and some are invisible, but they all influence development. For instance, bone structure, musical ability, and certain diseases can be traced through generations of families.

As you study about heredity, you should consider your responsibilities to any future children you may have. Heredity is a repetitive cycle. Your hereditary potentials were determined by your parents, and through you, these potentials will be passed on to future generations.

The Process of Heredity

Hereditary information is contained in **chromosomes**. Humans have 23 pairs of chromosomes (46 total) in every cell of their bodies.

When a man and woman mate, both pass on half of their chromosomes to the offspring. The sperm from the father contains 23 chromosomes. The egg from the mother contains 23 chromosomes. Thus, when the sperm and egg unite, the new offspring receives 23 chromosomes from each parent, or 46 chromosomes in all. See 2-2. The chromosomes reproduce themselves, so each cell of the body contains 46 chromosomes that are identical to the original 46.


The mother passes on half of her chromosomes by way of the egg.
The father passes on half of his chromosomes by way of the sperm.
23
23
46
These 46 chromosomes determine the total heredity of the child.

2-2 As the chromosomes from the sperm and egg unite, they determine the total heredity of the offspring.

Chromosomes and Genes

Each chromosome can be viewed as a strand of thousands of genes. The **gene** is the basic unit of heredity. Genes carry all the characteristics that will be transferred. Genes occur in pairs. In each pair of genes, one gene is from the mother, and one gene is from the father. Many pairs of genes work together to form each trait.

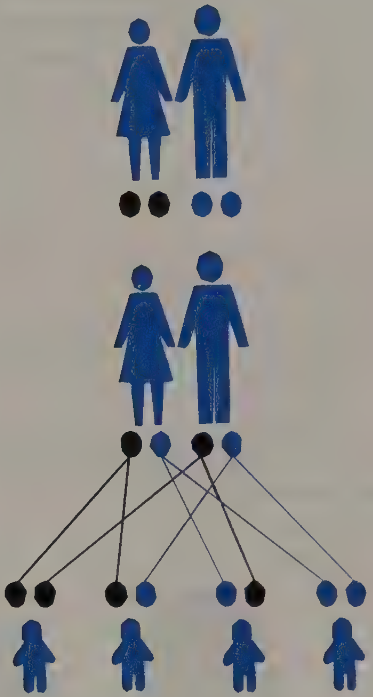
Dominant and Recessive Genes

The traits of each person are determined by the way genes from the two parents combine. Gregor Mendel, an Austrian monk, founded the laws of dominant and recessive genes in the 1800s. Mendel's laws are illustrated in 2-3. They can be summarized as follows:

- Inherited traits are determined by genes. These genes are passed unchanged from generation to generation.
- Genes occur in pairs. A parent gives one of each pair of genes to an offspring.
- Where the two genes in a pair act differently, one gene often dominates the other. Thus, one gene is **dominant** (more influential or prevalent) and the other is **recessive** (less influential or prevalent).
- The effect of a recessive gene may be masked by that of a dominant gene. However, if two recessive genes are paired, the effect will be noticed.
- When traits are governed by different genes, the genes for each trait are transmitted independently. Thus, the genes for one trait have no effect on the genes for other traits.

Mutations

The sperm and egg contain genes exactly like the genes that the man and woman received from their parents. The rare exceptions to this rule occur when genes have mutations. **Mutations** are chemical changes in genes. They are caused by either spontaneous error in genetic mechanisms or through some outside influence such as radiation. The atom bomb dropped in Japan during World War II caused severe radiation damage. As a result, many offspring with birth defects were born.



First generation
One parent has a pair of dominant genes (●●). The other parent has a pair of recessive genes(●●).

Second generation
Each offspring receives one dominant gene and one recessive gene. All offspring exhibit the dominant trait and are carriers of the recessive trait.

Third generation
If two people having genes like those of the second generation would mate, their offspring would have varying gene combinations. Statistically, one out of four would have a pair of dominant genes. Two out of four would have one dominant gene and one recessive gene. One out of four would have a pair of recessive genes and would exhibit the recessive trait.

2-3 This is a representative view of how dominant and recessive genes work in the process of heredity.

Twins and Multiple Births

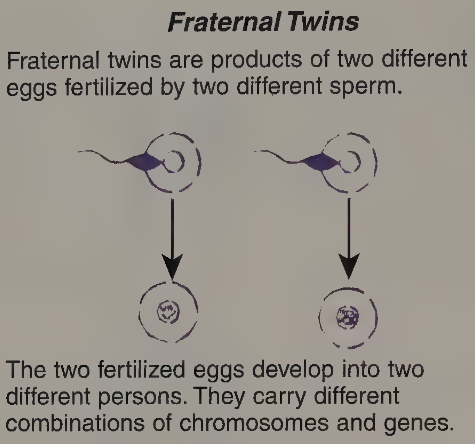
The role of heredity in twins remains uncertain. Medical scientists do know that once a mother has had twins, her chances of having twins again are three to ten times greater. The sister of a twin-bearing mother also has an above-average chance of having twins. Twinning (having twins) often "skips" generations. In other words, a woman who is a twin may not have twins, but may be the grandmother of twins.

Fraternal Twins

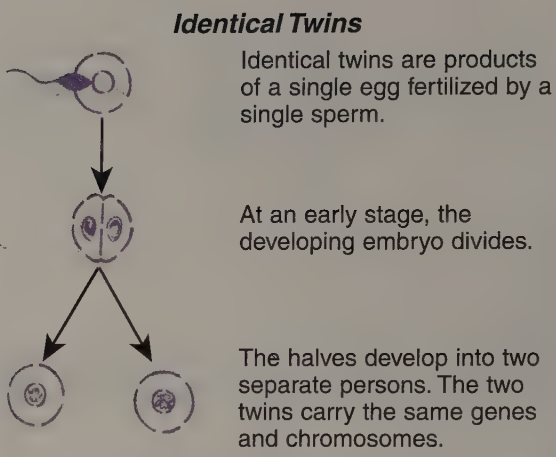
Fraternal twins are the products of two eggs fertilized by two sperm. They are no more alike than brother and sister except they are born at the same time. They may be of the same sex or of opposite sexes. See 2-4 for an explanation of how fraternal twins develop. A set of fraternal twins is pictured in 2-5.

Identical Twins

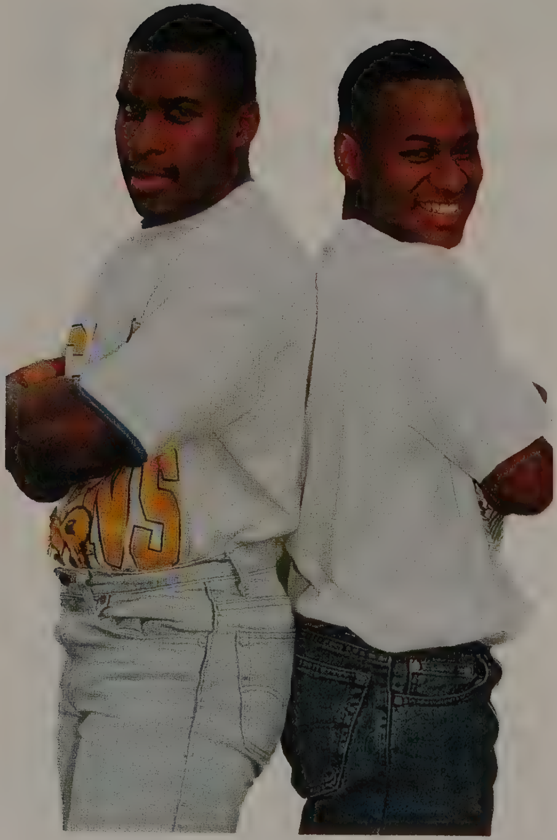
Identical twins are products of a single fertilized egg that divides as shown in 2-6. They have the same hereditary factors, so they are always of the same sex. They also have identical physical traits. See 2-7. The only exception is that the fingerprints of identical twins are never the same.


Fraternal Twins
Fraternal twins are products of two different eggs fertilized by two different sperm.
The two fertilized eggs develop into two different persons. They carry different combinations of chromosomes and genes.

2-4 **Apart from having been born together, fraternal twins are no more alike than any two siblings.**


Identical Twins
Identical twins are products of a single egg fertilized by a single sperm.
At an early stage, the developing embryo divides.
The halves develop into two separate persons. The two twins carry the same genes and chromosomes.

2-6 **Identical twins are always of the same sex—either two identical boys or two identical girls.**



David Hopper

2-5 **Fraternal twins may be of the same sex or opposite sexes.**

Mirror imaging, or reverse patterning, sometimes occurs in identical twins. In mirror imaging, some body details that appear on the right side of one twin appear on the left side of the other. Examples are hair whorls, birthmarks, and tooth defects. Sometimes opposite handedness is also evident.

Conjoined twins are identical twins who are born physically linked. They are formed when the fertilized egg fails to split completely apart. The linkage may be slight, such as at the hips or sides, or it may involve internal organs as well. Sometimes conjoined twins can be separated so the two persons can live normal lives. The chances for a successful separation are best when no major internal organs are involved.

Multiple Births

Triplets, quadruplets (4), quintuplets (5), sextuplets (6), septuplets (7), and even octuplets (8) have been born. They may be identical, fraternal, or mixed sets. One of the most sensational quintuplet births occurred

Christi Edgar

2-7 Identical twins are always alike in physical traits and are always the same sex.

when five girls were born to the Dionne family in Canada in 1934. What was most amazing was that they were an identical set. The original egg fertilized by one sperm divided and redivided to form quadruplets. Three of these developed into girls, who were named Yvonne, Annette, and Cecile. The fourth divided again and produced Emilie and Marie. These two girls were frailer and smaller than the others. They manifested mirror imaging. They were more farsighted than the other three. Also, both remained mildly cross-eyed long after the condition disappeared in the other girls.

The Fischer quintuplets, born in South Dakota in 1963, were an example of a three-egg combination. Three identical girls and two fraternal twins, a girl and a boy, made up this set of quintuplets.

In 1998, a Houston woman gave birth to octuplets, of whom seven survived. The world's third set of septuplets—five boys and two girls—was born in Washington, D.C., in 2001.

A fertility hormone is often used by women who are having difficulty becoming pregnant. This hormone is largely responsible for the increase in multiple births occurring today. The hormone stimulates ovulation of more than one egg and increases the chances for multiple deliveries.

Inherited Characteristics

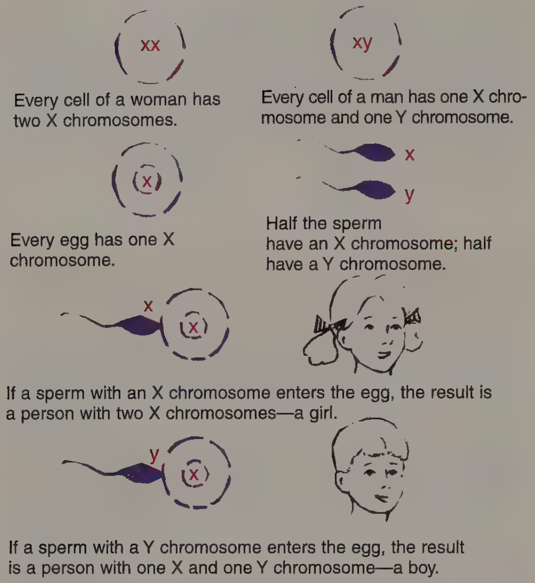
Heredity affects almost every aspect of your life. It controls some traits completely, such as gender (male or female) and eye color. It works with your environment in determining other traits, such as intelligence and longevity. By examining the characteristics you have inherited, you can learn more about your total personality and future potential.

Determination of Sex

Perhaps the most important of all inherited characteristics is that of gender. Of the 23 pairs of chromosomes, 22 are alike in both the male and female. These are called the **autosomes**. The chromosomes of the 23rd pair are the sex chromosomes.

In the male, the pair of sex chromosomes consists of one X chromosome and one Y chromosome. Thus, when the pair of genes splits, one sperm has an X chromosome, and one sperm has a Y chromosome.

In the female, the pair of sex chromosomes consists of two X chromosomes. Thus, each egg contains one X chromosome. If a sperm with an X chromosome combines with an egg, the fertilized egg will have two X chromosomes. It will be female. If a sperm with a Y chromosome combines with an egg, the fertilized egg will have one X chromosome and one Y. It will be male. See 2-8 to review the process of determining gender.



Every cell of a woman has two X chromosomes.

Every cell of a man has one X chromosome and one Y chromosome.

Every egg has one X chromosome.

Half the sperm have an X chromosome; half have a Y chromosome.

If a sperm with an X chromosome enters the egg, the result is a person with two X chromosomes—a girl.

If a sperm with a Y chromosome enters the egg, the result is a person with one X and one Y chromosome—a boy.

2-8 The sex chromosome from the sperm determines the sex or gender of the offspring.

Sex-linked Characteristics

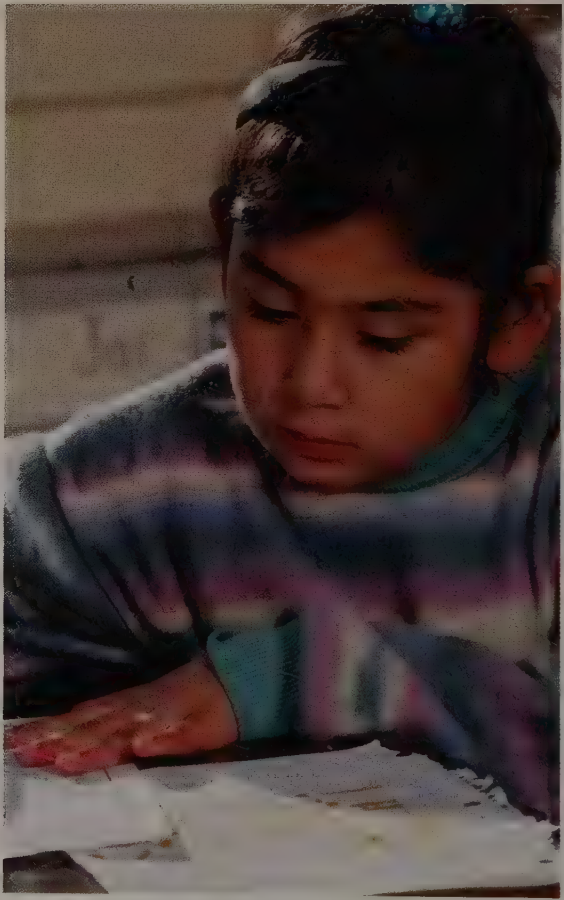
Characteristics that are determined by genes on the X chromosome are called sex-linked characteristics. Examples are color blindness and hemophilia. *Color blindness* is the inability to distinguish between colors, usually red and green. About eight percent of the males in the United States are troubled with this to some degree.

Hemophilia is a bleeding disorder in which blood clots very slowly. Even a slight bruise or cut can cause a large loss of blood. With modern methods of treatment and with care, hemophiliacs can live close to a normal life span.

Males have greater tendencies toward sex-linked characteristics than females. This is because a male has only one X chromosome. If it carries the defective gene, the male will have the characteristic. A female has two X chromosomes. She will have the characteristic only if both X chromosomes carry the defective gene.

Intellectual Ability

Your intellectual potential is inherited, though your environment and your response to your environment affect it greatly, 2-9. Generally, parents who are highly intelligent will probably produce intelligent children. However, an intelligent child may be born to parents of low to



2-9 Your potential for intelligence is inherited, but your motivation to learn affects your actual intellectual ability.

average intelligence. Heredity is also responsible for many mental defects.

Any data interpreting intelligence today is based on IQ (intelligence quotient) tests. Authorities vary in the importance they attach to IQ tests, but they are the only standardized tests available for comparing intelligence. The IQ score is obtained by dividing mental age by chronological age. Suppose a child, age eight, has a mental performance of an average 10-year-old. Then 10 would be divided by eight, giving a quotient of 1.25 or an IQ of 125. Scores between 90 and 110 are considered "normal." Scores above 140 are considered "genius."

An IQ score is only a score, however. It does not reflect the role of personal motivation, interpersonal skills, and other factors in attaining success. With dedication and hard work, many individuals with IQ scores far from the genius level can achieve very highly.

Blood Factors

Two important blood factors are determined by heredity. They are blood type and the Rh factor.

Blood types are divided into four main groups: O, A, B, and AB. A person's specific blood type is determined by genes. About 42 percent of the people in the United States have type O blood. They are known as universal donors because type O blood can be given to anyone. Persons with blood type AB are known as universal receivers because they can receive any type of blood. Only about eight percent of the population has blood type AB. About 40 percent has type A blood, and about 10 percent of the population has type B blood.

The **Rh factor** is a specific blood element. Persons who have inherited the element are called Rh-positive. Persons who have not inherited it are called Rh-negative. About 85 percent of the Caucasian race is Rh-positive. Other races are almost 100 percent Rh-positive.

The Rh factor creates a problem only when an Rh-negative mother is carrying a baby who has received the dominant Rh-positive factor from the father. During pregnancy and childbirth, some of the baby's blood cells may enter the mother's bloodstream. The mother then produces antibodies to counteract this factor. This seldom creates a problem with the first child. However, if the mother carries another Rh-positive baby, her antibodies can enter the baby's system and attack the red blood cells. Anemia, jaundice, and stillbirth are possible results.

Today, a vaccine is available to prevent this problem. An Rh-negative mother is given the Rh vaccine after the birth of each child. It neutralizes any Rh-positive blood cells that have entered her body. This prevents her system from producing antibodies.

Longevity

If your relatives have tended to have long lives, you may inherit that tendency. Within certain limits, the life span of humans seems to be set by heredity. However, environment also plays a major role in determining longevity, 2-10.

Improvements in environment, such as increased medical knowledge, have extended people's life spans. The average life expectancy of the early American colonists was about 35 years. Today, the life expectancy of the average American is more than 70 years. On the other hand, environment sometimes shortens lives. Accidents, wars, and natural catastrophes

2-10 **The tendency to live a long life is inherited, but environmental factors such as exercise and diet affect it greatly.**

can negate hereditary potential for long lives.

Another factor in longevity is the tendency for women to live longer than men. More male children are born, but more boys than girls die during childhood. Thus, the number of male and female young adults is about even. More men tend to die at a younger age in adult life, but this is changing. As careers and lifestyles change, men and women are facing similar pressures and hazards. The result is that the gap in life spans is narrowing.

Physical Characteristics

Most of a person's physical characteristics are based on heredity. Examples include skin color, hair, facial features, and height and bone structure.

The genes that govern people's skin color are inherited from their parents. See 2-11. These genes determine the amount of *melanin* (pigment) in a person's skin. People with more melanin have darker skin, and people with less melanin have lighter skin.

As you look through your family album, you probably will notice certain hair and facial features that appear repeatedly in your family. These features are the result of many genes working together.

Look at the lists of inherited traits in 2-12. Analyze your features and compare them with those of other members of your family. Which features do you have in common? Are they the result of dominant or recessive genes? Which features will probably appear in your offspring?

A person's potentials for height and bone structure are inherited, 2-13. However, good health and proper diet (environmental factors) also affect these traits. A person's body cannot reach its potential if it lacks sufficient nutrients or if it is diseased.

In our culture today, people are growing taller. College students are more than two inches taller than college students 50 years ago. Many basketball teams have five members who are all close to seven feet tall. This increase in height is probably the result of a combination of factors. Because tallness is dominant over shortness, people in some families tend to become taller. Other reasons could include improvements in diet, living conditions, and medical care.

David Hopper

2-11 Although children inherit many physical and mental traits from their parents, each person is unique.

Dominant and Recessive Traits

Dominant	Recessive
curly or wavy hair	straight hair
black or brown hair	blonde or red hair
long, full eyelashes	short, thin eyelashes
brown eyes	blue eyes
full lips	thin lips
free earlobes	fixed earlobes
dimples	no dimples
chin cleft	smooth chin
high, narrow nose	low, broad nose
freckles	no freckles

2-12 An understanding of dominant and recessive traits can give you an idea of how certain features are passed from generation to generation.

Diseases and Defects

Certain diseases and defects are hereditary. Some genes carry the potential for them, as others carry the potential for hair color or height. The list of inherited diseases and defects is long. A few of them are described in 2-14. Genetic roles have also been identified in some forms of cancer (for example, breast and colon), heart disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Lou Gehrig's disease), and mental illnesses such as schizophrenia and manic depression.

Some inherited diseases are noticeable at birth; others may not appear until much later in life. Some defects are minor; others can be fatal. Some can be corrected; others are permanent.

Valuing Your Uniqueness

Of all the human beings who have ever lived, you are uniquely and wonderfully yourself! This in itself is cause for reflection and celebration.

Inborn physical influences play a significant role in who you become. Some traits, such as crooked teeth, can be changed. Other traits, such as height or bone structure, cannot.

David Hopper

2-13 These people are similar in age, but they differ widely in height and bone structure. Heredity is the main cause of the differences, although environmental factors may also be involved.

Inherited Defects and Diseases

Disease/ Defect	Symptoms	Cause	Treatment
Cleft lip/palate	Noticeable at birth. A cleft lip occurs when the two sides of the upper lip fail to grow together properly. A cleft palate occurs when an opening remains in the roof of the mouth. This creates problems in breathing, talking, hearing, and eating.	Variable; often caused by a number of factors working together.	Corrective surgery and speech therapy.
Cystic fibrosis	A chemical failure affects lungs and pancreas. Thick, sticky mucus forms in the lungs, causing breathing problems. Reduced amounts of digestive juices cause poor digestion of food. An excess amount of salt is excreted in perspiration.	Recessive gene.	Physical therapy, synthetic digestive enzymes, salt tablets, and antibodies can lessen the effect of the symptoms. However, there is no known cure. Patients usually have shorter-than-normal life spans because they are highly susceptible to respiratory diseases.
Diabetes	Metabolic disorders cause high blood sugar. The patient feels thirsty, hungry, and weak and usually loses weight.	A number of factors working together.	The disease can be controlled by insulin injections and careful diet and exercise. It cannot be cured.
Down syndrome	Distinct physical features are evident. Slanting eyes; large, misshapen forehead; oversized tongue; single crease across palm of each hand; and varying degrees of mental retardation are typical.	Chromosome abnormality. More likely to occur when mother is over age 45.	Special education. Life span may be nearly normal.
Huntington's chorea	The brain and central nervous system gradually deteriorate when the patient is between 30 and 40 years old. This causes involuntary jerking, loss of mental abilities, insanity, depression, and finally death.	Dominant gene.	None.
Hydrocephalus	Extra fluid is trapped in the brain. The patient's head is larger than normal.	A number of factors working together.	Surgical removal of excess fluid. Without treatment, children rarely survive.
Muscular dystrophy	A group of disorders which damage muscles. They cause progressive weakness and finally death.	Often sex-linked.	There is no cure, but therapy and braces offer some relief.
Phenylketonuria (PKU)	An enzyme deficiency makes the patient unable to digest a certain amino acid. The baby appears healthy at birth, but slowly develops mental retardation because the amino acid builds up in the body and causes brain damage.	Recessive gene.	A carefully prescribed diet that balances the enzyme deficiency. The effects of the disease can usually be avoided if treatment begins within the first six weeks of birth.
Sickle-cell anemia	Red blood cells are sickle-shaped rather than round. They cannot carry oxygen efficiently throughout the body. Patients become pale, tired, and short of breath. They have occasional pains and low resistance to infection. Their life span is often shorter than normal.	Recessive gene.	There is no cure. Various treatments relieve some symptoms, and blood transfusions are needed occasionally.

2-14 Inherited defects and diseases have many different causes and effects.

People achieve the greatest happiness regarding their perceived "faults" if they learn to change what they can change and to accept that which is beyond their control. You cannot change the hand you have been dealt in life, but you have a great deal of control over how you play the cards you have been given. How each person deals with his or her own unique set of strengths and limitations tells the world how this person has decided to live life.

Some people focus on their faults and use them as an excuse for failure. "I didn't get asked to the prom because my nose is too big" or "No one will ask me out because I'm so tall" are common complaints.

Other people do what they can to either improve or downplay their self-perceived faults and then get on with life. They may decide to focus on developing other physical or emotional aspects of themselves instead of worrying about things that are beyond their control. For example, a short teenage boy may decide to concentrate on developing his interpersonal skills. He may use his friendliness and sense of humor to cope with situations where he would be at a disadvantage (for example, in a bullying situation). People may forget his height because they enjoy being around him. He may go on to use these skills to become highly successful in later life.

Similarly, a teenage girl in a wheelchair may develop an outgoing, cheerful personality. She may learn to forget her self-consciousness by reaching out to others and learning to put them at ease. When others feel challenged in situations of their own, they may look to her for lessons on how to face the ups and downs of life with courage and humor.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

The Genetic Revolution

Personal genetic codes determine a wide range of physical characteristics. These include the likelihood of contracting genetically transmitted diseases. Medical researchers are making remarkable strides in helping doctors detect and prevent many such illnesses. All forms of a disease may not be genetically based. However, those that are genetically transmitted often can be detected through a blood test.

Tests for many diseases (see box) are available now. Researchers expect other tests to be available soon. These include tests for genetically based forms of Alzheimer's disease, breast cancer, and colon cancer.

A person with a strong family history of a particular disease may wish to be tested for it. Testing can provide useful input in personal life decisions such as career choices. For example, if a person knows that a terminal disease is likely to strike in midlife, perhaps he or she will be less likely to choose a career requiring long years of preparation. Perhaps such a person will plan to reach major goals, such as career success or travel, earlier in life.

A positive test result may also alert a person to the importance of a healthy lifestyle and early detection of disease. A person who is a potential "carrier" of a genetically based disease may wish to weigh childbearing decisions carefully.

Often, people who are tested find that genetic counseling is useful in helping them deal with test results. Other individuals would prefer not to know whether or not they have a genetic potential for a disease.

Some Available Genetic Tests

Cystic fibrosis
Down syndrome
Fragile X syndrome (causes mental retardation)
Hemophilia
Huntington's disease
Lou Gehrig's disease (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis)
Melanoma (skin cancer)
Muscular dystrophy
Myotonic dystrophy (degenerative muscular disease)
Neurofibromatosis (nerve disease)
PKU (phenylketonuria)
Sickle-cell anemia
Tay-Sachs disease (metabolic disorder)

Chapter 2 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- A study of personality development must include the whole personality, including hereditary contributions.
- Heredity is a repetitive cycle. Your hereditary potentials were determined by your parents, and through you, these potentials will be passed on to future generations.
- Hereditary information is contained in chromosomes. When a man and woman mate, each gives 23 chromosomes to the offspring. Together, these 46 chromosomes determine the total hereditary potential of the offspring.
- The genes in chromosomes are the basic units of heredity. Genes occur in pairs. In mating, only one gene from each pair is passed on to the offspring.
- The effect of a recessive gene may be masked by that of a dominant gene.
- Identical twins are formed by a single fertilized egg that divides. Fraternal twins are formed by two eggs fertilized by two sperm. Multiple births may include combinations of identical and fraternal twins.
- Heredity affects such characteristics as gender, intellectual ability, blood type, longevity, skin color, hair and facial features, height, bone structure, and certain diseases and defects.
- Some hereditary traits cannot be changed, and some can.
- Successful people learn to do what they can with their hereditary limitations while developing other aspects of themselves.

Review

1. Humans have _____ pairs of chromosomes in every cell of their bodies.
2. True or False. Traits such as bone structure, musical ability, and certain diseases can be traced through generations of families.
3. Which of the following statements is NOT true?
   A. Genes are strands of thousands of chromosomes.
   B. The gene is the basic unit of heredity.
   C. Genes occur in pairs.
   D. Many pairs of genes work together to form each trait.
4. Will a person with two dominant genes for a particular trait exhibit that trait?
5. Will a person with two recessive genes for a particular trait exhibit that trait?
6. What happens when a person has one dominant gene and one recessive gene?
7. Explain the difference between fraternal and identical twins.
8. True or False. In mating, the sex chromosome of the female determines the sex or gender of the offspring.
9. Which gender has the greater tendency toward inheriting sex-linked characteristics—males or females?
10. Your IQ score is obtained by dividing your _____ age by your _____ age.
11. Persons with blood type _____ are known as universal donors.
12. Describe the problem that could occur if an Rh-negative pregnant mother is carrying an Rh-positive fetus.
13. Name four physical features that are controlled by dominant genes. Name four that are controlled by recessive genes.
14. Describe two hereditary diseases or defects.

React

1. Have several small group discussions and share the results with the rest of the class. For each group, appoint a leader to record responses and report them to the class.

   Group A: Should heredity be an important factor in selecting a mate? Consider potentials for intelligence, beauty, body build, longevity, and birth defects.

   Group B: Suppose your neighbor fell in love with a person whose heritage included an obvious hereditary defect. What would you advise your neighbor to do?

   Group C: Should people be able to select the gender of their future children? Consider the consequences if all firstborn children were boys, or if all were girls. Consider the impact on business, politics, education, marriage, and families if gender selection were possible.
2. Chart your family tree for as many generations as you can, noting dates of birth and death for each person. Does longevity run in your family? Do your ancestors have any other traits in common, such as skin color, facial features, obesity or thinness, musical ability, or artistic talent?

Reflect

1. In what ways do you look like your mother? Your father? In what ways are you uniquely yourself?
2. In what ways do you think like your mother? Your father? In what ways are you uniquely yourself? Do you think these traits are due to inborn temperament or to learning?
3. Suppose you knew that a serious disease ran in your family. Would you want to get tested to know whether you were likely to develop the disease? Why or why not? Would you want your medical insurance company to know about it?
4. If you were found to have a genetic predisposition toward a serious disease, would you tell a prospective spouse about it? Why?

Chapter 3

Your Environment

Terms to Know

- authority figures
- culture
- role
- siblings
- sibling rivalry
- peer group
- peer pressure
- telecommuting

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- describe environmental influences on your personality development.
- explain the role of the family in the development of the child's personality.
- summarize the role of peers in personality development.
- analyze ways in which education, occupation, religion, changing economic conditions, and the mass media may influence personality development.

Which has the greater effect on human development: heredity or environment? Scholars have debated this question for years. Almost all experts would agree, however, that the effects of your heredity cannot be easily separated from the impact of your environment. You are a product of the interaction between the two. Your hereditary traits affect your functioning within your environment, and your environment affects the development of your inherited traits.

Evidence of this interaction is all around you. Look, for instance, at the highlights that enhance the hair of some of your friends. Those highlights may be achieved by many hours of exposure to the sun's rays or simply by a chemical treatment. In either case, the inherited hair color is changed by environmental factors.

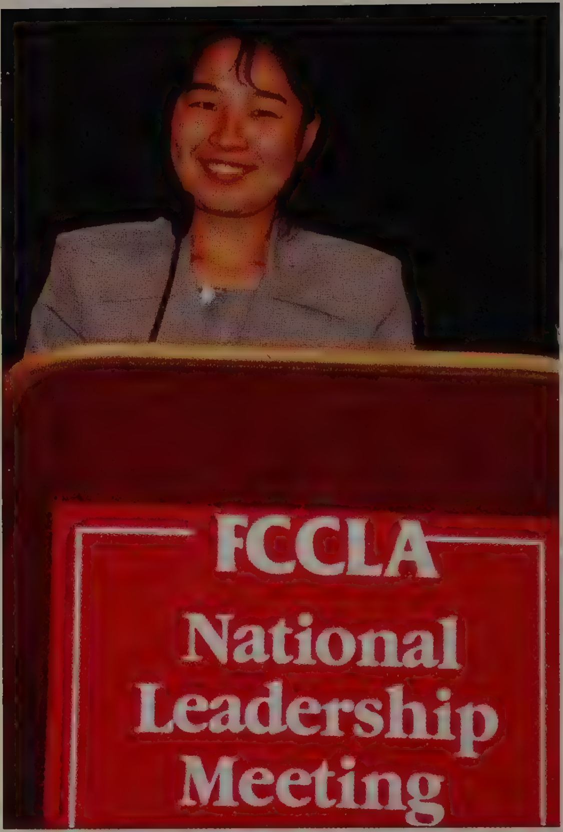
You might also consider your friends' personal appearance. Each friend is born with a set of physical traits (heredity).

Your friends modify their appearance to some degree with hairstyles and clothing (environment). Still, it is difficult for them to change their appearance very far beyond the limits set by heredity.

Your personality development is also affected by your surroundings, 3-1. Environmental factors that influence personality will be studied in this chapter. By looking at 3-2, you can see some of the environmental factors that affect your life now. The influence of these factors will probably shift within the next five years, as shown in 3-2.

Your Family

The family undoubtedly provides the single most important environmental influence on a child's personality development. It is within the family that the infant first learns to love and trust others. This sense of trust is gained in the early years through the love and consistency with which the baby's caregiver responds to the baby's needs. Family members also shape the child's personality development through the beliefs and behaviors they impart to the child.



©Family, Career, and Community Leaders of America

3-1 Your environment—all of the conditions, objects, and circumstances that surround you—plays a major role in your personality development.

Environmental Factors That Affect Personality Development

Now	*Five Years After High School*
Family is a primary factor.	Marriage may be primary family influence.
Peers gain in importance.	Peers may be several different "sets" of friends.
Formal education has an influential position.	Formal education remains as part of past influence.
Occupation can become important.	Occupation can become a primary factor.
Religion is an individual choice.	Religion is an individual choice.
Community becomes important.	Community gains in importance.

3-2 Several environmental factors affect the personality development of high school students. These factors shift in importance during the years after high school.

In a positive and nurturing family environment, children learn they are loved and valued. As part of this process, they acquire a healthy level of self-esteem. Because they know they are loved, they are able to take the psychological risks necessary to learn new things. They know the important thing is to try their best. If they fail, their family will be there to comfort them and help them try again.

As children grow, they learn to be sensitive to, and considerate of, the feelings of other family members. They learn to empathize with their brothers and sisters, and to treat others as they themselves would like to be treated. This understanding influences the environment which children later provide as adults for their own children. Thus, positive (or negative) family values and behaviors are often passed from generation to generation.

As part of family living, children also are taught the difference between right and wrong. Ideally, discipline is administered in a firm but loving, consistent, and fair manner. In this way, children learn healthy ways of relating to **authority figures** (people who make final decisions, such as parents, teachers, and supervisors). They also learn to respect the limits and boundaries of others.

Relating to Parents and Other Authority Figures

It is important for children and teenagers to learn to relate well to parents and other authority figures because authority figures are an ever-present part of life. Almost everyone is accountable to someone. Workers must report to supervisors. Elected officials must be responsive to the people who elected them. Even a company president must answer to a board of directors. Later in life, you are likely to become an authority figure yourself—perhaps as a work supervisor or as a parent. Just as you will do the best you can when it is your turn to be "in charge," so today's authority figures are doing their best now. Just as you are not always perfect, neither are they.

Some teenagers have difficulty accepting guidance from people in authority. They may feel that they are better judges of what is appropriate behavior than are their parents and teachers. You will find that you get farther in life if you can learn to accept the judgments of those in charge, whether you agree with those judgments or not. Even if you disagree with an authority figure, you can still accept his or her direction gracefully. Later, you may find that the parent or teacher was right, and you were wrong.

As long as authority figures are responsible for you and your behavior, you should try to cooperate with them. Even when they are wrong, you can still learn from them so that when it is your turn to be in charge, you will be that much better prepared to do so fairly and effectively. When you become a parent, teacher, or supervisor yourself, you may be surprised to find yourself imitating the same parents, teachers, or supervisors you used to resent. One generation learns from another. People try to avoid repeating their elders' mistakes while maintaining and building on that which is good.

Family Cultural Patterns

What do you know about your family background? In what country did your ancestors live? One of the most interesting and enriching parts of life is to look into your past and to see how your ancestors lived their lives. The total social environment of a people or group is called its **culture**.

Our society is culturally diverse. It is made up of families representing many different cultures. Successive generations blend these cultural characteristics into their current way of life. They celebrate their individual cultural backgrounds while also valuing the many things they have in common with the larger human family.

Each family learns its customary beliefs and modes of behavior from its country of origin. Are you aware of how your cultural background influences your life? Special holiday traditions, foods, heirlooms, and ancestral costumes all remind you of your cultural roots, 3-3. You can learn many important lessons from your ancestors. Many of them lived their lives with pride and dignity despite hardship and suffering.

It is interesting to note ways in which a family's cultural heritage may influence family relationships. Some families, for example, are influenced by cultures in which family members do not outwardly show their affection for one another. In contrast, families from other cultures may bestow hugs and kisses on one another as a matter of course.

Families from some cultures tend to place a high value on close, frequent interaction, even after children have become adults. Adult children and parents may call one another several times a week. Much of their leisure time is spent in family-centered social events. In other, equally loving families, contact among family members is less frequent.

Appreciating Cultural Diversity

Family traditions and customs help to make each family unique. People can benefit, however, from learning about the priorities, beliefs, and behaviors of families in other cultures. In this culturally diverse nation and world, it is important to appreciate the contributions of cultures other than your own. If you happen to marry someone from another culture, knowledge of your spouse's background may be helpful in understanding him or her. An understanding of other cultures will also be useful to you when you enter the workforce. There will probably be workers from different backgrounds. An understanding of various cultures will help you work better as a team player.

Cholla Runnels

3-3 A young boy demonstrates a dance and the ceremonial dress of his culture.

To expand your appreciation of cultural diversity, why not learn to enjoy the food dishes of other cultures? Why not learn about the ways other cultures observe family events such as births and weddings? Even everyday events such as family mealtimes reflect cultural practices. Studying the modern dress and traditional folk costumes of various cultures also provides an interesting perspective.

An awareness of the ways in which other cultures influence the behavior of their members may lead us to ask searching questions about our own culture. How do cultural influences affect our behavior? For example, would some Americans have started smoking if they had lived in a culture in which this practice was considered unglamorous and self-destructive? Would some people so readily resort to violence if they had seen less of it on television and at the movies?

On the other hand, would Americans value freedom and individual initiative so highly if this nation had not been founded on these principles? Such questions can be useful not only in understanding our culture but in recognizing our roles in shaping it. Our individual choices affect not only our own lives, but the overall cultural environment in which future generations will live. We are not just "victims" of unhealthy cultural influences. We are responsible for working to make a better culture for ourselves and future generations.

Family Interactions

Your family provides you with daily experiences no other setting can give you. Each family member interacts with each other member.

Every member of a family fulfills certain roles. A **role** is a socially expected behavior pattern. Your primary role now is that of a son or daughter. However, you may fill other roles as well. If your grandparents are living, you may also have the role of a grandson or granddaughter. If there are **siblings** (brothers or sisters) in your family, you are also a brother or sister.

By now, you have learned to get along with different members of your family. Your reaction to each is different. The "give and take" of sibling relationships helps your social development. Sometimes you may compete with your brothers and sisters for a parent's love or attention. This is normal. In fact, this sense of competition with your brothers and sisters, called **sibling rivalry**, can even be a good thing if it helps you develop an understanding of sharing and compromise.

Siblings offer companionship, 3-4. This is also true in later life. Although a young

David Hopper

3-4 The companionship of siblings adds to their personality development.

child may not seem to have much in common with a sibling who is several years older, the age differences between children seem much less significant when they become adults. Loving family members provide a source of emotional support to one another throughout life.

Influences of Birth Order

Each of your brothers and sisters has a different personality. Some of these personality traits are shaped by the age of each child in relation to the rest of the children.

Oldest-Child Influences

If you were the firstborn, you were the center of your parents' attention until the next child arrived. Because you were first, each of your achievements was new and exciting for your parents. As you mature, you will be the first to be treated as an adult and a friend by your parents.

Firstborn children usually grow up rapidly and have more responsibility than other children. Parents may pin high hopes on their first child. Statistics show that the oldest child is the most likely to go to college.

Oldest children usually have the strongest desire to achieve, 3-5. More is expected of them. They are often asked to take care of their younger siblings and to set an example for them. Later, they may seek a marriage partner who will let them "take charge."

Oldest children tend to be comfortable with respect and admiration. They often make good dating and marriage partners. They are usually more independent and may be less outwardly affectionate than other siblings.

Middle-Child Influences

If you were the second child born in your family, you did not have the advantage of individual attention from parents, but you had the companionship of a sibling, 3-6. The second child often has less responsibility and is less independent than the first child.

A second child who becomes a "middle child" may feel some pressure. The middle child never knows the feeling of being an only child, and has the advantages of being the youngest child only until the next child is born. A middle child

3-5 **Oldest children often push themselves to do well in school.**

3-6 A second-born child has the advantage of companionship with his or her older sibling.

may feel less interesting than an older sibling and not as "cute" as a younger sibling.

Middle children tend to be good all-around students. If they feel overshadowed by an older sibling, they may put extra effort into a special skill. Thus, a middle child from an athletic family might turn to music or some other interest for recognition.

Middle children may not like the role of following in their elder sibling's footsteps. However, the middle child's path is often easier. Parents are usually less demanding of middle children than of their elder siblings.

Middle children often become particularly good at dealing with the ups and downs of human relationships. They often function as peacemakers. They tend to make calm, even-tempered marriage partners and parents.

Youngest-Child Influences

Youngest children may be given a lot of attention, but they also have more family members telling them what to do. See 3-7. In some families, the youngest child is expected to mature quickly in order to "catch up" with the others. On the other hand, the child may be pampered and indulged. Sometimes parents have difficulty allowing the youngest child to become independent. Youngest children may become confused about whether they really want the responsibilities of growing up.

Some youngest children may become used to getting a lot of attention and being protected. They may seek a partner in marriage who is warm and capable of "taking charge."

Your personality development has been and will continue to be affected by the arrangement of the children in your family with respect to age. Your personality may have been somewhat different if this aspect of your environment had been different.

3-7 A youngest child may get a lot of attention from older siblings, especially when the baby is still new to the family.

No matter what position you have in your family, you are contributing to the environment of all family members. The way you interact with other members of your family affects their personality development as well as your own.

Your Peers

The influence of your **peer group** (people about your own age) may be one of the strongest forces in your life. Your family will continue to be a strong influence, but your peers will also emerge as an important force. The impact of the two influences will vary as you pass through different developmental stages of your life.

Peer Influence During Adolescence

At this time of your life, your peers probably are very important to you, 3-8. You share many experiences with them that contribute to the development of your self-esteem and personality. Your friends can be a source of strength and reinforcement. Such peer influence is natural and even essential in the development of healthy adolescents.

As an adolescent, you are searching for an identity (sense of who you are) and social acceptance. You are particularly vulnerable to peer pressure. **Peer pressure** is the influence exerted by a person's age group. Many young people go along with their peers' choices, thinking that they are

EXPRESS LANE
ONE TRANSACTION ONLY

David Hopper

3-8 Peers are a strong influence in the life of almost every teen.

asserting their individuality. In reality, they are conforming to (fitting in with) the decisions made by others.

Peer-group pressure is a powerful force in establishing conformity, especially during the adolescent years. Most people want to be accepted and valued by their peers. However, if your choices simply reflect your friends' choices, you will not be reinforcing your own self-esteem. Also, you will not be learning the process of decision making. You may become dependent on others to make your decisions for you. It is important to remember that you can make your own choices. You do not have to conform to the choices of your peers just to be accepted by them.

If your friends are influencing you toward behaviors that go against what you think is right, it will be necessary for you to stand up for what you believe. Those peers who are truly your friends will admire you more for adhering to your convictions.

Loyalties between your friends and you may be tested if they have standards that are unlike yours. If you become aware that your standards are quite different from those of your friends, you may wish to become closer to people with whom you have more in common. The old saying "You are known by the friends you keep" will continue to apply.

Changes in family structure in our society today have tended to strengthen the influence of peers. As ties in some families grow weaker, peer influence becomes stronger. In today's society, some families are unable to provide the authority and discipline that young people need. Teens may feel "emotionally abandoned" by busy or absent parents. There may be no close relatives nearby to provide a stabilizing force.

These young adults are often attracted to peers who are similarly free of strong family ties. They may join with one another, sometimes in gangs, with few restraints imposed on them by their families. In such cases, peer influence becomes so powerful that it can completely overshadow the influence of the family.

Learn to identify and live by your own personal priorities. If they are similar to those of your friends, it simply indicates that your ideas and lifestyles are similar. Your choices should be your own, though you can benefit from sharing ideas with others.

Your Education

Your educational environment provides another important influence on your personality development. A positive school environment provides you with information and problem-solving skills, 3-9. It also gives you a sense of yourself as a learner. Whether your individual learning style is fast or slow is of minor significance. The important thing is that you learn to the best of your ability. An appreciation for learning will equip you to seek information to help you solve problems throughout life.

A positive educational environment teaches other useful skills as well. Students learn to relate effectively to authority figures, such as teachers, coaches, and club sponsors. In competitive events, students see the importance of playing by the rules. They observe the role that authority figures play in enforcing the rules fairly. Occasionally, students observe situations in which life isn't fair, and they learn to live with those occurrences, too.

3-9 **Good teachers help students develop problem-solving skills that can last a lifetime.**

The classroom provides an arena in which you learn both to compete and to cooperate with others. You are also presented with opportunities to develop and test standards of right and wrong, for example, in deciding whether or not to cheat on an exam. All of these experiences and opportunities help you develop your personality. They also provide a valuable training ground for later life.

Your Occupation

One of the most influential factors in your environment is your occupation. Many students have part-time jobs. Such jobs offer a number of benefits. They give people a chance to develop their personalities. Part-time work can also contribute to their self-knowledge.

As people perform their jobs, they can evaluate their assets (good points) and their liabilities (negative aspects). As these people are faced later with career choices, their decisions will probably reflect this self-knowledge.

Individuals' occupations contribute to their personalities throughout their lives. A job or career identity is one of the first aspects of personality people reveal to each other. When people are introduced, a career or pre-career label is often used to identify them. They may say, for example, "Mary is an architect" or "Joe is a student teacher."

As you move into the future, new skills will become part of your identity. Now you are a student, and your developmental environment is determined largely by your family, your peers, and your school. Your career is in its formative stages, but soon it will expand to consume a major portion of your time. As it gains importance in your life, it will have increasing influence on your lifestyle. Your career will affect the hours you work, the money you make, and the place you live. It will challenge you to develop new aspects of your personality, 3-10. Career success can be an important source of self-esteem.

Your Religion

Religion is one of the most personal aspects of your environment. Religion means different things to different people. For many people, religion provides a sense of meaning and purpose for life. They feel that their religious faith offers them direction as they strive to reach their goals and become responsible family and community members.

The freedom to choose a religion is one of the basic freedoms we enjoy in this country. If religion is one of your personal priorities, you will be influenced by it throughout your life.

Religion offers psychological security, which can be helpful in living life and in facing death. It also broadens the dimensions of your faith in yourself and in others, and may make you a more loving and caring person. People who are religious often are better able to handle personal crises. Trust, tolerance, and humility are often obvious in people who practice a faith.

The importance religion plays in your life is one of the most personal elements in your environment. Many teens uphold the religious beliefs they learned in their childhood. See 3-11. Others who did not have early religious training begin investigating religious beliefs during their teenage years.

3-10 This preschool teacher enjoys her work with young children. Her work role forms a part of her identity.

Your Community and World

The world is constantly changing. The social and economic conditions that affected your grandparents or even your parents have changed. The trends affecting you today may not affect your children or grandchildren. Each generation develops within its own set of environmental conditions.

Influence of Technology

One of the most profound changes in our environment in recent decades has been the shift from an industrial society to an information society. This shift has had a dramatic impact on individuals and families. Rather than just producing commodities, people are now increasingly expected

3-11 Religion is a vital factor in the lives of many people.

to be "computer literate." They are expected to be able to gather and exchange information using sophisticated equipment based on computer technology.

Personal computers are becoming commonplace in our lives. Computers are found in the workplace, in schools, and in most homes. Some businesses allow their employees to telecommute. (**Telecommuting** is the practice of working at home—rather than commuting, or traveling, to work—by using a computer and the Internet.) This option is especially helpful for employees who wish to avoid a long commute or who have a legitimate reason for working at home.

For children and teenagers, computer games and online chat rooms provide a popular source of recreation. Some computer programs help students research and write papers for school assignments. Many families are connecting their home computers via modems to the Internet. The Internet allows access to millions of different resources worldwide. The Internet can be used to communicate with others, gather information, and shop without leaving home, 3-12. Several hours each day can be spent clicking a mouse and staring at a computer screen. Sometimes, these hours compete with other activities such as family responsibilities, physical exercise, and social events.

New advances also allow people to automate the processes by which they shop, engage in banking activities, and pay bills. By going online, people can communicate with others by sending e-mail (electronic mail) messages. Bills can be paid automatically using a computer to transfer funds between accounts. The fax machine is also a common form of communication today, at work and at home.

Technology enables you to keep in touch with others throughout the day. By simply punching buttons on a telephone, you can communicate with others from any location. Some family members have their own cell phones so parents and children can be in touch at all times. Even when cell phones are turned off, messages can be left and retrieved later. Some parents e-mail their children at home from their workplace. Parents also e-mail older children when they are away at college.

3-12 **More and more people are doing their shopping online.**

Technology has brought about a new awareness of global conditions. With TV and computers, people have a window on the entire world. You can see how others live, and they can see how you live.

These advances in technology provide you with information, convenience, and recreational opportunities that could only have been imagined a few decades ago. Care must be taken, however, to prevent technological devices from replacing valuable one-to-one contact between people. Children as well as adults will increasingly interact with electronic devices instead of with other people. As this occurs, individuals may need to make a greater effort to communicate with each other. Families will need to balance openness to learning about and using new technologies with concern and emotional support for one another.

Changing Economic Conditions

In our country, we witness an ever-changing economy. There are periods of inflation and periods of recession. The economy has a continuing impact on people's lives. Young people must learn to live with both affluence and scarcity.

Many young people today have few worries about their basic needs. The money they have is spent most often for luxuries and recreation. Teens are major consumers of everything from soft drinks and clothes to compact discs and cars.

The teen market is one of the most lucrative in the economy. Teens who have money to spend are establishing new buying habits. Businesses realize this, so they direct much of their advertising to the teen market. They want to encourage teens to establish the habit of buying and using their products, 3-13. Adolescent consumers may be too easily swayed by

3-13 **Businesses are eager to attract teenage customers. They hope the teens will develop a habit of buying their products.**

advertisements for products that hold out the promise of physical attractiveness or popularity. They may need to develop the side of their personality that is reflected in realism, thrift, and sensible spending behavior.

Many teens view spending as an expression of adult behavior. What they do not realize is that truly adult behavior involves spending for necessities and saving for a rainy day as well as paying for recreation. Choosing more adult attitudes toward saving money in times of affluence can be a healthy aspect of teens' personality development.

In regions where the economy is weak, teens are likely to feel pressure. The job market for young people entering the work world may be tight. Financial funds for college or training programs may be limited. Such situations may help adolescents appreciate the importance of an education and a steady job. It may also help them develop personal qualities such as determination and willingness to work hard to achieve an objective.

Teens may be able to help their families by getting part-time jobs, 3-14. As they contribute to their families, teens also learn valuable lessons. They learn the significance of managing money wisely. They learn that life isn't always easy. They learn the importance of being able to adapt to changing economic conditions. They also learn that families can pull together to make it through difficult times.

The Media

Probably one of the most significant influences on your personality development

3-14 **This young man has a part-time job. He is able to help with family expenses and gain valuable work experience.**

is that of the mass media. Television, movies, magazines, newspapers, music, and the Internet are only a few examples of such media. It is unrealistic for adults to think that youth can be totally protected from exposure to media influences. However, parents have a responsibility to exert some guidance in this area.

The media are an important source of both information and entertainment. For example, educational programs, news reports, and political analyses keep you informed. The mass media provide ways of learning about the world. However, you should make no apology for avoiding programs or other material that can disturb or upset you or harm your personality development.

You have a responsibility to protect yourself from the desensitizing effects of viewing too much violence or other unwholesome programming. Some studies indicate that young people exposed to violent television programs have a tendency to exhibit more aggressive behavior in real life. Whether or not this is true in all cases, few would argue that a steady diet of TV, computer games, or movie violence is healthy.

The more violence you see, the less sensitive you may become to your own and others' physical and emotional pain. The less sensitive you are, the less skilled you will be at forming and maintaining close personal relationships.

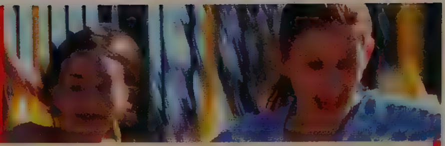
Similarly, the more antisocial behavior you see on TV or in computer games, the more you may think that such behavior is expected. You may subconsciously begin to view antisocial behavior as the norm rather than as a bad part of an otherwise good society. These are only a few of the many reasons for limiting your exposure to violence. Similar arguments could be made for content glorifying sexual violence, materialism, dishonesty, self-centeredness, and other behavior.

Try to interact with the media material you see rather than passively absorbing it. Ask yourself, What is the message I am supposed to be getting? Do I agree with this message? What kind of society would we have if everyone agreed with this message?

Finally, think about the amount of time you are giving to being entertained and influenced by the mass media. Evaluate this time commitment in light of your overall life goals. Ask yourself, Is this program worth the time it is taking me to watch it? Would I feel better about myself if I were doing something else?

Sometimes it takes will power to turn off the TV or computer or to walk out of a movie. People who do so are often pleasantly surprised at how much they can accomplish toward worthwhile life goals by putting their time to other uses.

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens



TV Violence: Its Cost to Society

By the age of 18, the average American youth has seen 200,000 acts of violence and 40,000 murders portrayed on TV, according to some estimates. Does TV violence promote violent behavior in real life? Many social scientists think so, though others disagree. A recent national survey revealed that a majority of Americans believe their TV entertainment is too violent and that TV violence is harmful to society.

Television's influence on children starts early. The average preschooler watches more than 27 hours of television per week. Most children at this age have difficulty separating fact from fiction. Therefore, TV violence may be very harmful to their sense of what is normal or acceptable behavior.

To address TV violence, some concerned individuals and officials advocate greater censorship of violent programs. Others fear that increased censorship threatens first amendment ("freedom of speech") rights. One thing is certain: Parents have the right and responsibility to limit children's television viewing to programs that are informative and wholesome.

Chapter 3 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Personality development is affected by the continuing interaction between hereditary and environmental factors.
- The family is the primary factor in the personality development of most people. A positive, nurturing family produces future parents who will form positive environments for their own children someday.
- People can enrich their lives by celebrating their cultural backgrounds. They can also benefit by learning about the cultural backgrounds of others and about what each person has in common with the larger human family.
- Your birth order in relation to your siblings and the number and ages of your siblings will continue to influence your development.
- Peers are a strong influence in your personality development.
- When families cannot provide the authority and discipline that young people need, the influence of peers can overshadow that of the family.
- A positive educational environment can help children develop a sense of themselves as learners. An appreciation for learning can benefit a person's personality development throughout life.
- Religion may be an important aspect of your environment. If religion is one of your personal priorities, it can offer meaning and purpose throughout your life.
- Technology is playing an increasing role in people's lives. Families should ensure that use of technology is balanced with one-to-one interaction.
- As the world changes, each generation faces a new set of social and economic conditions. Both affluence and scarcity will influence the development of an individual's personality.
- Teens have a responsibility to protect themselves from the negative aspects of the mass media.

Review

1. What is the most influential factor in shaping most people's personalities?
2. What is meant by the phrase "culturally diverse"?
3. List three characteristics that are typical of each of the following age positions.
    A. Oldest child
    B. Middle child
    C. Youngest child
4. How does the influence of peer groups compare with the influence of families during adolescence?
5. How can an appreciation for learning benefit an individual throughout life?
6. How can students' part-time jobs influence their later career choices?
7. Name five traits typical of persons with deep religious faith.
8. Why do businesses direct much of their advertising to the teen market?
9. What lessons can teens learn as they help their families through tough financial times?
10. Name one positive and one negative influence of mass media on personality development.

React

1. Summarize television programs or movies that depict various types of environments provided by families. Identify one situation that you believe represents positive family functioning. Identify another situation you feel represents negative family functioning. Explain the reasons for your choices.
2. Ask class members to describe traditional holiday customs reflecting their individual national ancestry or cultural background. What meaning do families find in passing these traditions down from one generation to the next? What family priorities may be reflected in the traditions?
3. Prepare skits to demonstrate various sibling relationships. Highlight traits of oldest, middle, and youngest children.
4. Research a situation in which religion played an important role in the development of our society. Report your findings to the class. Include your opinion on the strength of religion as an environmental factor in today's society.
5. Debate the positive and negative influences of the media on our society. Should there be more or less censorship?

Reflect

1. What is your favorite television program? Do you think its content reinforces constructive, positive ideas about dealing with problem situations? Why or why not? Give examples.
2. Describe a positive family rule, childrearing technique, or way of dealing with a problem situation that you have observed. If you have children someday, will you use the same technique? Why or why not?
3. Discuss the influence of peers on the personality development of teenagers. Contrast positive and negative peer pressure.
4. Think about your family and your order of birth (oldest, middle, or youngest). Would you like to change places in the birth order with one of your siblings? Would they want to change places with you? Why or why not?

Chapter 4

Your Response to Your Environment

Terms to Know

autonomy
initiative
inferiority
identity
generativity
integrity
self-actualization
morals
defense mechanisms
direct attack
compensation
rationalization
projection
scapegoat
displacement
conversion
regression
idealization
phobias
depression
attitude
prejudices
bigots
stereotypes

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- explain the theories of Erikson, Havighurst, Maslow, and Kohlberg concerning personal development.
- describe the use of defense mechanisms in responding to your environment.
- explain various types of personal response patterns.

Your personality is determined by three major factors. Two of the factors are heredity and environment. They provide you with potentials and limitations. The third factor is your response to your environment. It helps you develop the unique qualities of your personality.

How You Respond to Your Environment

Every situation in your life requires you to respond to your environment. You may laugh at a joke. You may shout during an argument. You may study late into the night to prepare for an exam. No matter what your responses, they work together to help shape your personality.

Many theories have been formed concerning the development of humans and their personalities. Each theory represents a different aspect of personality development. Some of the most famous theories have been developed by Erikson, Havighurst, Maslow, and Kohlberg. By reviewing each of these recognized theories, you will be better able to understand how your personality is shaped in response to your environment.

Erikson's Stages of Human Development

One of the most respected theories is that of Erik H. Erikson, a noted psychoanalyst and professor of developmental psychology. Erikson's theory is that personality development is affected by each of eight stages in the life cycle, 4-1. In each stage, a person confronts certain crises that must be resolved before moving to the next stage. The successes and failures met in these stages cause personalities to develop and change.

Trust Versus Mistrust

The first stage occurs during infancy and establishes our most basic sense of trust. Children who receive consistent love and attention develop confidence and trust in themselves, in other people, and in their environment. See 4-2. They become secure and optimistic. They have a good foundation for building a healthy personality.

Children who are unloved or who are abused (either physically or emotionally) tend to become insecure and mistrustful. This may affect their personalities throughout life since mistrust is a poor foundation for personality development. Such individuals are likely to mature with deep emotional scars.

Erickson's Stages of Human Development

✚ Integrity	✚ Despair
✚ Generativity	✚ Self-absorption
✚ Intimacy	✚ Isolation
✚ Identity	✚ Identity confusion
✚ Accomplishment and industry	✚ Inferiority
✚ Initiative	✚ Guilt
✚ Autonomy	✚ Shame and doubt
✚ Trust	✚ Mistrust
Stable Personality	**Weak Personality**

4-1 Erikson recognizes eight stages in human development that affect personality development.

4-2 Infants who receive consistent love and attention establish a sense of trust.

Autonomy Versus Shame and Doubt

The second stage occurs between the ages of one and four. During this time, children begin to experience **autonomy** or the freedom of self-direction. With encouragement and support, they develop the confidence to assert themselves. They move out into the world with a feeling of security, 4-3. They begin to make decisions, but they sense the need for reasonable limits. Children learn many social lessons and take pride in their accomplishments.

Children who are not allowed to explore the world around them have difficulty establishing their autonomy. If their failures are emphasized rather than their successes, they will feel ashamed and discouraged. They will develop feelings of doubt about their own self-worth.

4-3 Children who are encouraged to explore the world around them will be able to establish their autonomy more easily.

Initiative Versus Guilt

Erikson's third stage of development involves feelings of **initiative** or desires to begin action. Children reach this stage when they are four to five years old. They develop imagination and begin to do things on their own. At the same time, they learn the social skills of cooperating, leading, and following, 4-4. This helps them get along with their peers. To succeed in this stage, children need the freedom to think of new things to do. They should be encouraged to test their ideas with their peers.

Children who are not allowed to play with peers and develop their own games and activities may feel guilty and cling to adults. They do not develop good play skills, and they tend to lack imagination.

Accomplishment and Industry Versus Inferiority

From about age six to twelve, children are in the fourth stage of development. During this time, they establish a sense of

4-4 Preschoolers learn to cooperate and play with other children.

accomplishment and industry. They learn that work is worthwhile and meaningful, 4-5. They also learn self-discipline and more about getting along with peers. Both school and home environments are important. Ideally, children in this stage are allowed to plan their own projects and activities and to carry them through to completion. Praise for their efforts helps them meet success in this stage.

Children whose efforts are not reinforced by praise may develop a sense of failure. Deep feelings of **inferiority** (of feeling inadequate and unimportant) will dominate their developing personalities. Children may passively accept feelings of inferiority, or they may behave in devious and dishonest ways to compensate for their lack of achievement.

Identity Versus Identity Confusion

The fifth stage occurs during adolescence. The central need of this period is to establish a sense of identity. This sense of **identity** means knowing who you are and understanding your roles in society. For success in this stage, adolescents need to be guided by good models and inspired by high ideals.

As adolescents gain maturity, they begin to view life and the world around them differently. They experience new feelings, and they have new desires. They

4-5 A child who plans an activity and works on it until it is completed develops a good sense of industry and accomplishment.

need time to sort through these new ideas and emotions and to discover who they are. In addition, they need to develop good relationships with peers and to learn to accept other people as they are, 4-6. Adolescents who succeed in this stage find stable roles to assume in our society.

Adolescents who are not able to establish stable roles for themselves may become preoccupied with their identities in the eyes of others. Their identities become fragmented and insecure. As a result, they lack self-confidence and self-esteem. They have weak foundations for further personality development.

Intimacy Versus Isolation

Erikson's sixth stage is concerned with establishing a sense of intimacy with others. Young adults who succeed in this stage have accepted themselves as worthwhile persons. They are able to give of themselves to others. They feel a need to establish close, stable relationships, 4-7.

Persons who have difficulty establishing close personal relationships due to a feeling of insecurity feel isolated and alone. Many will continue to live within themselves and may never be able to form effective relationships with others.

Generativity Versus Self-Absorption

In the seventh stage, adults develop a sense of generativity. With **generativity**, people begin to be concerned with others beyond their immediate families and especially with future generations. Generativity is found not only in parents, but in

4-6 **Learning to accept other people as they are is part of healthy personality development.**

COURIER
Harris, Purvis square off

David Hopper

4-7 Once young adults have accepted themselves as worthwhile persons, they can form close, stable relationships more easily.

any person who is concerned with the welfare of others, 4-8.

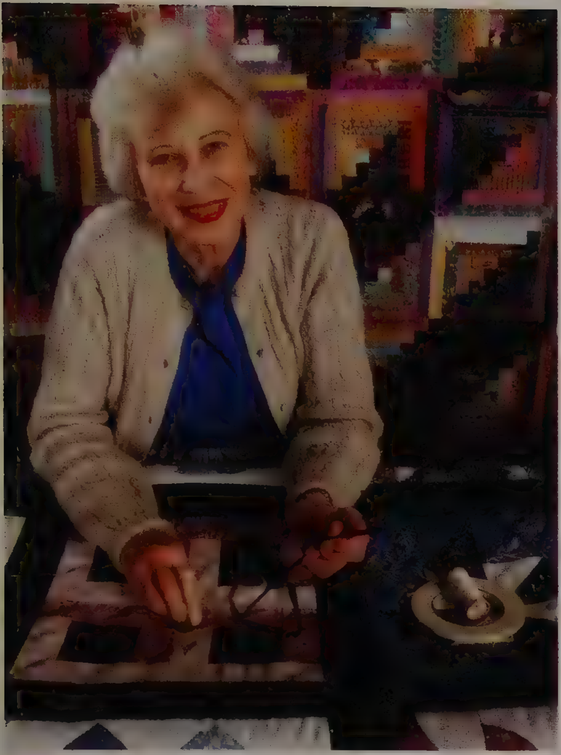
People who fail to establish a sense of generativity may fall into a state of self-absorption. Then their only concerns are for their own personal needs and comfort.

Integrity Versus Despair

A sense of integrity develops in people who succeed in the final stage of development. **Integrity** is a state of being complete; the person is satisfied with his or her life. Mature adults are able to look back on their lives with satisfaction. They can look forward to the rest of their lives with confidence. They feel satisfied and secure in themselves, 4-9. A person with a sense of integrity can say, "It's good to be me." This is the goal each of us seeks.

Those who have not achieved integrity are likely to feel despair. They may wish they could have lived totally different lives. People who look back on their lives as a series of missed opportunities and wrong decisions will feel despair. They will never be at peace with themselves.

4-8 Generativity, or concern for future generations, is a sign of healthy personality growth in an adult.



4-9 **"I made this myself." This woman has developed a sense of integrity. She can look at her past with satisfaction, and she still finds enjoyment in new activities.**

Havighurst's Developmental Tasks of Adolescence

Personality changes and develops throughout life, as Erikson explained in his stages of human development. Robert J. Havighurst, a well-known educator and behavioral scientist, identified developmental tasks that people perform as they grow and develop. People may not even be aware of their developmental tasks, but the manner in which they perform these tasks helps determine their overall personalities. Success in these tasks leads to happiness and success in other developmental tasks they will perform later in life. Failure leads to unhappiness, disapproval by society, and difficulty with later developmental tasks.

Havighurst has identified eight developmental tasks of adolescence. These are tasks that people perform as they grow and develop during their teenage years.

- ***Becoming more adult.*** The first of Havighurst's developmental tasks is to achieve new and more mature relations with peers of both sexes. See 4-10. You learn to view girls as women and boys as men. You become an adult among adults. You learn to work with others for a common purpose.
- ***Deciding on roles.*** Adopting socially approved masculine or feminine adult roles is the second task for adolescents. This may be more challenging today than in the past, for fixed, traditional gender roles are no longer preset for you. You must decide for yourself what roles you wish to adopt, 4-11. Your decisions will affect your dating patterns, your career choices, and your overall lifestyle.

4-10 **During adolescence, you form more mature relations with peers of both sexes.**

4-11 **In your teen years, you will have many opportunities to learn socially approved masculine or feminine social roles.**

- *Accepting your physical self.* This developmental task is to accept your physical self and to use your body effectively. During adolescence, your body goes through many changes. You need to accept these changes and become comfortable with your body. You need to learn to care for your body and to keep it healthy. You also need to protect it from physical harm and from abuse of tobacco and drugs, including alcohol.
- *Becoming more independent.* When you fulfill this task, you achieve greater emotional independence. You are able to think critically, review alternatives, and make your own decisions. You develop a new type of affection for your parents on a more adult level. Likewise, you develop respect for other adults while being less dependent on them.
- *Preparing for marriage and family life.* In completing this task, you develop your personal attitude toward marriage and family living. See 4-12. If you are like most people, you will want to establish a family of your own and raise children. In this case, you will need to obtain knowledge about

marriage relationships, home management, and parenthood.

- *Selecting an occupation*. Havighurst's sixth task is to select and prepare for an occupation, 4-13. After evaluating your skills, talents, and goals you choose an occupation for which you are suited. You then prepare yourself for that occupation. The first step is to finish high school. Then you may need to take additional on-the-job training or to attend a technical school, community college, or university. When you complete this task, you will feel better able to make a living.
- *Developing personal priorities*. This task is to acquire a set of standards as a guide to behavior. In this task, you need to form a set of priorities concerning what is important to you in life. See 4-14. Your personal priorities are influenced by your experience in your family and in society. This process of deciding on priorities takes place through your relations with people who are special to you: parents, teachers, other adults, and peers. The personal priorities you develop should help you guide your behavior. When you are faced with a difficult decision, you should be able to rely on your priorities. They should help you choose the alternative that will give you the most satisfaction in life. If you value honesty, for example, you should be able to resist such temptations as shoplifting or cheating.
- *Becoming more socially responsible*. Havighurst's final task for adolescents is to accept and adopt socially responsible behavior. As an adolescent, you need to learn how society expects responsible people to behave. You can incorporate this knowledge into your personal priorities. Society will then accept you, and you will be able to participate in the functions of your community, state, and country.

Cholla Runnels

4-12 **This young woman is having fun painting children's faces. Working with children will help her develop her personal attitude about parenthood.**

4-13 **Teachers and counselors can help you select a career that suits your skills and interests.**

4-14 **Family unity is important to these people. They enjoy spending time together.**

Maslow's Theory of Human Needs

Because you are a human, you have certain needs. You share these needs with all other humans, but you fulfill them in unique ways. For instance, all people need food, but the food you eat differs from the food eaten by people who lived centuries ago. It may also differ from the food eaten by people of other cultures. The ways you fulfill your needs affect your thoughts and behaviors and therefore your personality.

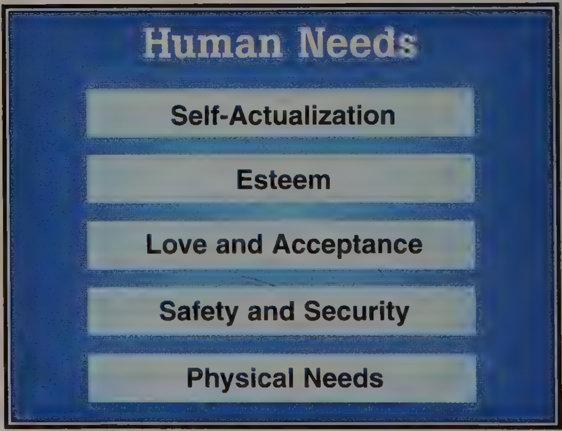
Abraham Maslow, a noted psychiatrist, devised a system for studying human needs. In his system, he arranged needs in order of their priorities, as shown in 4-15. His theory can help explain the influence of human needs on personality.

Physical Needs

According to Maslow, physical needs have first priority, 4-16. Among these needs are food, water, shelter, clothing, and sleep. Fulfillment of physical needs is necessary for good health, a state of well-being, and the continuation of life. Typically, a person whose physical needs are not met can think of little else until these needs are at least partially met. For instance, it is difficult to concentrate on studying if you are hungry because you skipped breakfast. Physical needs demand your primary consideration.

Safety and Security

Once you have satisfied your physical needs, you can address other needs, 4-17.



4-15 **According to Maslow's theory, human needs can be seen as a hierarchy. Physical needs have first priority and must be at least partially fulfilled before a person can begin to meet any other needs.**

4-16 **Shelter—whether a simple hut or an elegant house—is a physical need of humans.**

You need to feel safe from physical danger. You need to feel secure in daily routines so you know what to expect from life. In addition, you need to know you are protected against financial troubles.

When you have satisfied these needs, you have the courage to experience more of life and to expand your personality. On the other hand, if your life centers on protecting yourself (whether from wild animals, thieves, bill collectors, or aggressive classmates), your personality has little chance to develop.

Love and Acceptance

Everyone needs to be needed. This is the basis for Maslow's third level of human need. You need to feel that you are accepted by others. You need to feel secure in your relationships with family members and friends, 4-18. Praise, support, encouragement, and personal warmth will help you fulfill these needs. Then you will have the chance to develop a healthy personality. You, in turn, will be able to accept others and to give them praise, support, and affection.

Esteem

In addition to love and acceptance, you need esteem (respect and admiration). Self-esteem must be established first. You must respect yourself before you can expect others to respect you. Family members can help you establish self-esteem. Friends can help, too. They can help you feel that you are a worthy person who adds an important dimension to their lives.

When you have both self-esteem and the esteem of others, you have the potential for further personality development. You have the confidence to strive for achievement and independence. You become a vital part of your world.

4-17 **A warm family environment helps satisfy the need for safety and security.**

4-18 **Belonging to a group in which you feel comfortable helps you fulfill your need for love and acceptance.**

Self-Actualization

Self-actualization is the realization of your full potential. To reach this level, all other levels of needs must be at least partially fulfilled. At this level, you combine concern for self with concern for others and for society as a whole. You strive to become the very best you can be, 4-19. If your special talents are related to art, you become the best artist you can be. If your talents are related to auto mechanics, you become the best mechanic you can be.

When you reach self-actualization, you believe in yourself. You have the confidence to express your personal beliefs and to reach out to others and offer your support. Your personality is fully developed. However, this does not mean that you stop learning, or that your personality stops changing. On the contrary, you are even more interested in improving yourself. You can continue to strive to become a better person.

Kohlberg's Stages of Moral Development

Lawrence Kohlberg did his research on moral development. Kohlberg believed that people pass through a series of predictable stages in their moral thinking. These stages show how morals develop during childhood and on into young adulthood. **Morals** are beliefs about right and wrong behavior.

Kohlberg identified three general levels of moral development. He further divided each of these levels into two stages. Thus, he describes six stages of moral development. These are listed in 4-20 and described below.

Preconventional Level

At the preconventional level, children make moral decisions based on what the consequences will be. Consequences at this level are in the form of rewards and punishment.

In the first stage, children respond to the threat of punishment as they learn good from bad and right from wrong. If the act is bad, the child is punished. The decision making of children includes little abstract reasoning as to what is right or wrong. Behavior is "wrong" because it leads to punishment. Children learn they can avoid punishment by being good. Those in authority, usually the parents, determine the punishment.

David Hopper

4-19 **These young men are meeting their need for self-actualization. They are using their talents to become the best swimmers they can be.**

Kohlberg's Stages of Moral Development

Preconventional Level: Moral decisions are based on punishment and rewards.

- Stage One: Threat of punishment influences decisions.
- Stage Two: Desire for rewards influences decisions.

Conventional Level: Moral decisions are based on social rules and expectations.

- Stage Three: Opinions of others influence decisions.
- Stage Four: Respect for law and order guides behavior.

Postconventional Level: Moral decisions are based on personal ethics concerning what is morally right.

- Stage Five: Personal priorities concerning individual human rights influence decisions.
- Stage Six: Self-chosen ethical principals guide decisions.

4-20 **According to Kohlberg, moral development occurs in six stages, beginning in early childhood.**

In the second stage, children learn that the correct or right action brings rewards. "I will do this because it is good for me." An attempt at sharing to satisfy mutual needs also brings rewards. "If you are good to me, I will be good to you."

Conventional Level

At the conventional level, decisions are based on social rules and expectations. The child learns it is important to meet the expectations of the social order in order to gain approval from family and friends as well as society.

In stage three of the conventional level, children are concerned about the opinions of others. "Good" behavior is that which pleases or helps family members and friends and is approved by them. A friend's approval is sought by "being nice" to that friend.

In the fourth stage, law and order are valued. By obeying laws, all people benefit, not just family and friends. The rights of the individual are protected. People show respect for authority and obey laws for the sake of orderliness in the society, 4-21. People at this stage believe that as long as their behavior is lawful, it is ethically acceptable.

Postconventional Level

In the postconventional level of moral development, decisions are based more on personal ethics concerning what is morally right. People appeal to higher principles. They believe laws can be wrong and may need to be changed through the democratic process. Not all people reach this level in their moral development.

In the fifth stage, personal priorities are more a factor in decisions concerning moral behavior. The right action is that which respects individual human rights and democratic principles. There is the possibility of making changes in the law to protect the rights of individuals if current laws are wrong.

The sixth stage is the highest stage of moral development. According to Kohlberg, relatively few people ever reach this stage. Personal conscience defines self-chosen ethical principles. Decisions are based on abstract principles such as justice, freedom, and equality. At the heart of this is a feeling of respect for the dignity of human beings and their rights.

Matthew Hodges

4-21 Laws are established and enforced to protect the rights and safety of all people.

Defense Mechanisms

Each time something happens in your environment to threaten your self-esteem, you react. If you have a positive self-concept, you face the threat, analyze it, and respond in a way that promotes growth. Sometimes you may respond in a defensive manner to protect your self-esteem. When you react defensively to a problem or threat in your environment, you may use a defense mechanism.

Defense mechanisms are ways that people may react, almost automatically, to anxiety-producing events or threats. People are generally unaware that they are using these mechanisms. Their use is often a way of avoiding reality.

Some defense mechanisms are healthy ways of dealing with problems. Others are not. Sometimes the same defense mechanisms can be used in either healthy or unhealthy ways.

Everyone uses different mechanisms in different situations. The following are the most commonly used defense mechanisms.

Direct Attack

When you use **direct attack** in response to a threat to your self-esteem, you attack the source of the threat. This may take the form of "lashing out" at another person. For example, if someone in your class comments, "The outfit you are wearing is out of style," you may retort, "Who are you to judge? I've seen you wear some pretty weird outfits!" In making this response, you are not really dealing with the question of whether your clothing is out of style. You have not asked yourself honestly whether your critic may be right. Instead, you have used a defense mechanism. You have defended the threat to your self-esteem by attacking the person making the comment.

Some people are able to respond to a verbal attack with a direct attack of their own that is less critical of the other person. This is a healthy use of a defense mechanism. For instance, in the example given above, a person might respond with "I'm an individualist. I choose my clothes based on what looks best on me—not what others think is in style."

Compensation

Using a substitute method to achieve a desired goal is called **compensation**. Suppose a person wanted to succeed in sports, but was not tall enough or fast enough to succeed in basketball. Other sports, such as golf, swimming, and skiing, may provide this person with opportunities for success. Another example is shown in 4-22.

James McNeill Whistler, a famous painter, flunked out of West Point and had to give up a military career. To compensate for this, he developed his artistic talent. Compensation allows a person to make up for some real or imaginary deficiency by doing well in something else.

Compensation can be used negatively. For instance, some parents do not spend much time with their children. They may

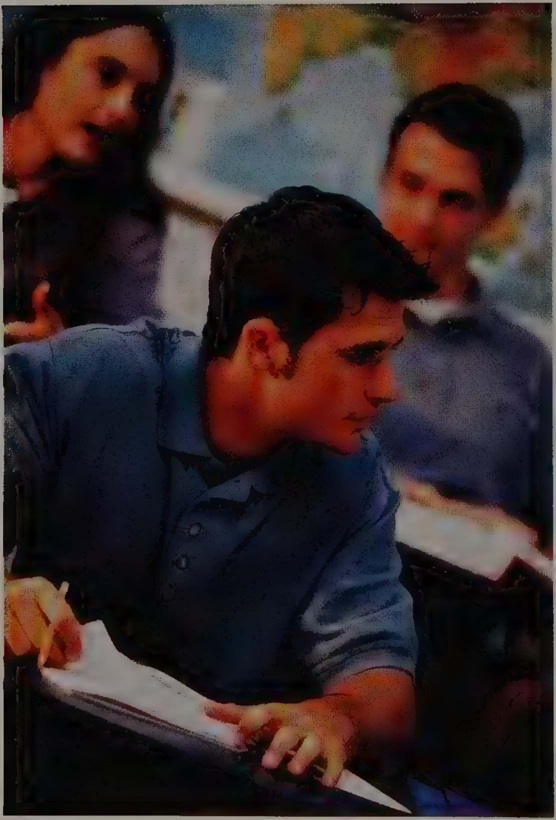
David Hopper

4-22 If you want to be involved in sports but do not qualify, you can compensate by being the team manager.

try to compensate by giving their children many material things. The "bullies" at school may be compensating for their own unhappiness by making others unhappy. Boastful people may be trying to compensate for their inferiority feelings.

Rationalization

When you explain your weaknesses or failures by giving socially acceptable excuses, you are using **rationalization**. An example of rationalization occurs when you say you failed a test because the subject is impractical and not worth knowing. See 4-23. Another rationalization is saying that the reason you received a speeding ticket is that you had other things on your mind.



4-23 **If you get a low grade on a test, you may try to rationalize it by making excuses.**

Rationalization may make you feel better temporarily, but it does not help you solve the real problem. Instead of fooling yourself, you should recognize the real problem and work to solve it. If you failed a test because you did not study well enough, you should admit it and try harder the next time. If you were speeding on a road where you always speed, you should recognize this as a problem. You should allow yourself more traveling time and slow down.

Projection

When you blame other people or things for your failures, you are using **projection**. This differs from rationalization in that you are actually projecting the blame to someone or something else. You are not just making excuses for your failures.

A small child may blame a pet or a fantasy friend for spilling some milk. Children's first "tall tales" may sound cute. However, they should be gently discouraged from projecting blame onto others.

As you are driving down a road, someone may pull out in front of you and cause a collision. If the person were to jump out of the car and yell "Why don't you look where you are going?" that person would be projecting the blame on you. A similar situation could occur in a hallway as shown in 4-24.

Scapegoating is a common form of projection. The person who bears the blame for others is called a **scapegoat**. For instance, Ann, Sue, and Inez might say "Everything is Mary's fault." In this case, the girls are projecting the blame onto Mary. Mary is the

Christi Edgar

4-24 **You may be bumped by someone while walking in the hall. The person may use the defense mechanism of projection and blame you by saying, "Why don't you look where you are going?"**

scapegoat. In another example, suppose a baseball team said, "Steve, you didn't hit a home run, and it's your fault we lost the game." Here, the team is projecting the blame for losing the game on Steve, using Steve as the scapegoat.

Displacement

When you transfer an emotion connected with one person or thing to an unrelated person or thing, you are using **displacement**. The key word here is emotion. You can displace hate, aggression, annoyance, or frustration. For instance, if your employer finds fault with you on the job, you may take out your frustration on your family or a friend.

Some people displace the emotion of love. Perhaps you have read accounts of people who show more love to their pets than to their families. People who are concerned about a certain social problem often displace their hatred and aggression. As a result, they may commit crimes against a politician or other well-known person.

Displacement is not a healthy defense mechanism. It does not help you solve the original problem. Rather, it creates more problems with the people involved in your transfer of emotion.

Conversion

With **conversion**, you transfer the energy of a desire you cannot express into a physical symptom or complaint. Children who are nervous about going to school for the first time can actually develop stomachaches. This is sometimes called school phobia. If you have ever been uneasy about getting up in front of a class to read a report, you may have lost your voice. Conversion can also cause other physical symptoms, such as headaches and clammy hands. Although such symptoms are psychosomatic (physical or mental reactions to mental conflict), they are very real. They can be just as distressing as symptoms caused by an infection, virus, or other physical problem.

Regression

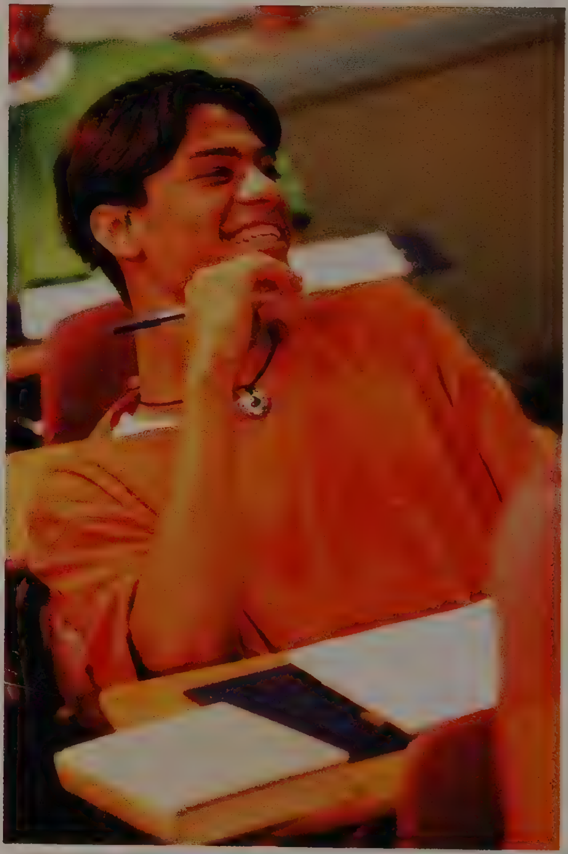
Regression is a defense mechanism in which you revert back to a less mature stage of development. The individual who "acts like a baby" to meet a problem is regressing, 4-25. Spouses who run back home to their parents when they face critical points in their marriages may not be meeting their problems in a mature manner.

Although life may have been simpler when you were younger, you cannot go back. As you grow older, you must accept more responsibilities. Your behavior should be consistent with your age and maturity. Crying, calling names, throwing and breaking things, or trying to escape problems by using drugs are all forms of regression. They are behaviors that should be avoided, since they rarely solve problems. Instead, they often create additional problems.

Idealization

When you value something far more than it is worth, you are using **idealization**. You may idealize yourself and act conceited, 4-26. Persons around you will soon recognize this defense mechanism and will probably choose to ignore you.

4-25 Regressing to childish behavior will seldom help you solve your problems.



4-26 Some people idealize themselves and act conceited.

Some people idealize another person. They will do almost anything to become that person's friend. They think that by gaining the friendship, all their problems will be solved.

Possessions are idealized by some people. To have fine clothes, a fancy car, or a huge house, they will forfeit many of life's other pleasures, such as sharing with others or helping the less fortunate.

Daydreaming

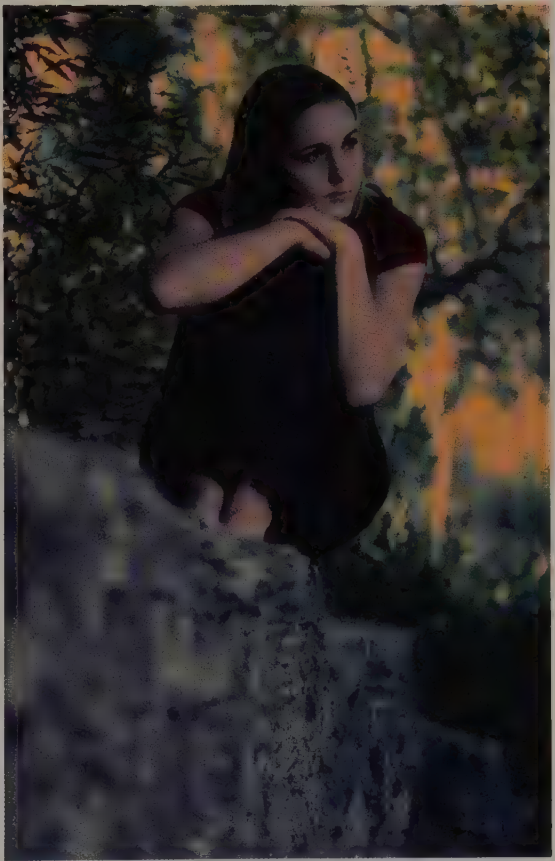
People may daydream to accomplish in their imagination what they cannot accomplish in reality. A little daydreaming is not unhealthy. Visualizing yourself as successful can even help you succeed. However, if you have frequent daydreams that seem to be real, you are living in a fantasy world. By attempting to escape reality in this manner, you are not facing life as you should. Although you may achieve great things in your fantasy world, constant daydreaming will hinder your efforts to achieve real success, 4-27.

Giving Up

You may have friends who have simply given up because they are discouraged. They feel the world is against them. They think everyone else has the talents and skills they lack. They feel all their efforts to achieve goals have been blocked. They do not want to face any more situations in which they may fail.

Persons who are giving up on the world need support and encouragement. Before family and friends can help them, however, they must want to help themselves. Then they will be able to build their self-confidence. They will be able to face difficult situations and learn from them. They will be able to develop the talents and skills they feel they lack.

As you review these defense mechanisms, try to remember the times you have used them to counterbalance some action or feeling. At times, you have undoubtedly needed to defend yourself against the world. This is only human nature and not a threat to your personality development. The danger is that some people are constantly using various defenses because they choose not to face the realities of daily life.



4-27 **Time spent alone planning your future can be time well spent.**

Personal Response Patterns

Your responses to your environment affect your personality development in many ways. Through these responses, you have formed certain behavior patterns, attitudes, and prejudices. These have all become a part of your personality.

Anger

One of the ways you respond to your environment is through anger. You probably become most angry with people you depend on or love. Family members usually love and respect each other enough to withstand occasional angry feelings. However, repeated outbursts of anger are destructive.

Anger is a normal human reaction to a stressful situation. If you repress anger, you may make your own life uncomfortable. You may start biting your nails or grinding your teeth. You may even become depressed. However, when you do express your anger, you should be careful to see that no one is harmed by it.

Anger can be used constructively when it is directed against the forces that have caused a problem. For instance, some students were angry because their friends were injured and killed in an accident caused by a drunk driver. They formed SADD (Students Against Driving Drunk), which later became Students Against Destructive Decisions.

You, too, can use anger to correct a bad situation. Be sure you know the real cause of the problem so you can attack it directly. Then try to find some people who agree with you and will work with you (like students in SADD). You can learn to express anger in a useful, constructive way. This will bring the best results.

In your relationships with family and friends, you sometimes feel anger and frustration. How do you resolve conflicts when you are angry or frustrated? Look at the chart in 4-28. On a separate sheet of

How Do You Handle Anger in Your Daily Life?

When you are frustrated, do you...

- go for a walk?
- listen to music?
- go somewhere to be alone?
- talk to a good friend?
- throw things or hit things?

When you have a disagreement with your family, do you...

- find information to back up your argument?
- ask family members to discuss the problem calmly?
- ask a third party to discuss the problem with you?
- refuse to talk to anyone?
- argue loudly with family members?
- throw things, or become abusive?

When you have a disagreement with a friend, do you...

- find information to back up your argument?
- discuss the problem calmly with the friend?
- arrange another time to discuss the problem calmly?
- bring in a third party?
- refuse to talk to anyone?
- argue loudly, shout, and insult your friend?
- throw things, or become abusive?

4-28 Your reactions to anger influence your personality development.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Rules! Rules! Rules! Why Do We Need Them?

A rule is a regulation governing conduct, actions, procedures, or arrangements. Rules serve several purposes. Some are designed to provide personal protection, enabling people to live together safely. Rules also provide predictability. If there are rules and they are followed, behavior is more predictable. Rules are often designed to protect individual rights and freedoms. Rules influence values and morals, and teach responsibility.

Rules provide structure. They often set limits on or otherwise promote management of behaviors. This structure is designed to prevent problems from occurring.

Do you remember the rules your parents set? Brush your teeth after you eat. No hitting your little brother. Look both ways before you cross the street. Those were important rules when you were little. Your parents set these rules for your health and welfare.

Childhood rules often set boundaries or "fences," which provide a sense of security. Children know what they can and cannot do—and where they can and cannot go. This gives them a feeling of security, along with the sense that someone cares about their well-being.

Now you are a teenager, and instead of fewer rules, it seems as though there are more rules! Your school has all kinds of rules. Did you ever think what would happen if there were no rules at school? You could wander up and down the halls at will, eat where you wanted and when you wanted. You could come and go as you pleased, but would any learning take place? Probably very little. Would young people learn appropriate behavior? Probably not. Would the school be a safe place to be? Maybe not. The school sets rules in order to provide a safe learning environment for every student. This enables you to learn those behaviors that will help you become a self-supporting member of the community.

As you leave school and enter the world of work, you will find there are still rules, but the rules will be different. Your employer will make some of the rules. You may be told when you are to arrive at work and when you can leave, and perhaps how much you should accomplish or how much you should sell. Each job will have different rules. The government also makes rules—traffic rules and tax regulations, to name only two. You will be expected to follow all of these rules in order to function in our society.

Rules! Why do we need them? To make our society a better place for everyone to live.

paper, answer the questions it asks. Do your responses follow a pattern? The pattern of responses you follow now may stay the same throughout your life. Are you satisfied with the ways you respond to anger? If not, you will have to make a conscious effort to change your behavior. You will have to think before you act and remind yourself to respond to anger in a better way.

Fear

Fear is a discomfort that may range from a mild feeling of being unsafe to an intense anxiety about losing your life. Fears may be the result of unpleasant experiences, especially in childhood. The subconscious mind may retain this fear trauma, and behavioral problems may result.

You may also have fears that have been communicated to you through other persons. Parents can pass on their fears to their children. For instance, if your parents were afraid of thunder and lightning, they might have drawn the shades during a storm and acted nervous. Today, you might find yourself afraid of storms as well.

A certain amount of fear can be useful. Small children are taught to be afraid of fire. As people grow older, they learn to fear other dangers that could threaten their well-being and safety.

Fear can also give us the added strength we need in dangerous situations. In sudden danger, the body produces adrenaline. This is a hormone that is released into your bloodstream. This makes the heart beat faster and causes the body to react with increased energy. In extreme cases, people have been known to do seemingly impossible tasks. For instance, one woman lifted a car so her friend who was trapped beneath it could escape.

Fear can be harmful when it prevents you from facing your problems. If allowed to persist, fear can damage mental or physical health. Persons with deep fears may be afraid to face even the simplest demands of daily living.

Overcoming Fear

The first step in overcoming fear is to discover the cause of the fear. Often it can be traced back to some traumatic childhood experience. Once you know the cause of the fear, you can deal with it directly and work to overcome it. Overcoming fears takes inner strength. President Franklin Roosevelt recognized the destructive potential of fear. At the onset of World War II, he cautioned the entire nation, "The only thing we have to fear is fear itself."

If you do not succeed in overcoming your fears, they may develop into phobias. Exaggerated fears of everyday objects or events are called **phobias.** One common phobia is the fear of being confined in a small space. This is known as *claustrophobia.* Persons with this phobia will not ride in an elevator. They may feel uncomfortable in rooms without windows or in rooms with closed doors. Claustrophobia could affect a person's choice of a job or a home.

Many other phobias also exist. People whose lives are crippled by phobias should seek professional help. Many phobias can be treated successfully with a combination of medication and counseling.

Depression

Perhaps you have heard someone say, "The teen years are the happiest years of a person's life." When everything is going along fine, you may agree. You cannot expect, however, to be happy every day of your life. Even though teenagers have many exciting and happy times, they also have some very sad moments. You will experience some low moods. When you do, you may feel that the teen years must surely be the worst years of your life.

Many teenagers have occasional feelings of inferiority. This adds to their depression. They may set high goals for themselves and become afraid of not reaching them. Some have devastating feelings of loneliness. They struggle with feelings of emptiness and unworthiness. Frustrations, disappointments, and personal losses can make anyone feel gloomy. During the teen years, these feelings may seem even more profound.

You need to distinguish between times when you feel down for the moment and times when you may have more serious problems. **Depression** is a "whole-body" illness, involving the body, mood, and thoughts. It can affect behavior, physical health and appearance, and the way people handle decisions. People who are depressed for a prolonged period of time should seek professional help. Everyone feels "down" from time to time, but when the mood lasts for more than a couple of weeks and includes other symptoms, medical help should be sought. The most common symptoms are sleeping problems, loss of appetite, decline in energy, feelings of worthlessness, and a general feeling of hopelessness. Often people do not recognize their own symptoms and may need someone else's help.

For most people, feeling depressed is simply a matter of having a bad day. Your feelings of self-worth may be shattered momentarily, but you can do something to renew your self-esteem.

It is important that you give yourself permission to have sad feelings, 4-29. Accept the fact that it is okay to feel down in the dumps, but do something about those feelings before they drag on too long. Try to understand what is causing your feelings. Then put the feelings in proper perspective. Talk to someone with whom you feel comfortable. Let off a little steam. Try to keep a sense of humor and look on the bright side of your life. To regain your self-esteem, concentrate on something you do well. Hand yourself little triumphs. Success in even a minor task will make you feel better.

Time usually heals a common case of the blues. Your emotions are remarkably resilient. Most of you will develop your own ways of handling mood swings. Recognize that depressed moods can be balanced with positive ones. Accept the fact that low feelings will be a part of your life, but they need not control your life. They will exist, but you will have positive and happy times to balance them.

4-29 Feeling down occasionally is okay, but do something about negative feelings before they drag on too long.

Attitudes

An **attitude** is a feeling or mental position about something. An attitude may cause a person to choose one type of behavior in place of another. Your attitudes are formed by your experiences or by others' attitudes that you may adopt as your own. Your attitudes also are affected by your own choices as to how you will feel about things. Your attitudes, and the manner in which you express them, tell other people a great deal about you.

Some people have a negative attitude toward life or toward themselves. They may feel life is hopeless or they themselves are powerless victims. They may say, "What's the use of trying? I'm a loser."

Other people try to take a positive attitude toward life, themselves, and others. Such people realize life may not always go smoothly. They are realistic about their strengths and weaknesses, yet they avoid whining about their difficulties. Instead, they get on with their lives as best they can, dealing with the challenges that come their way. When trouble does come, they choose to believe in themselves and others. They believe they have what it takes to get through difficult times.

The attitudes you choose to take about situations will exert a tremendous influence on yourself and others throughout your life. If you take a negative attitude toward things, others will "catch" your attitude, and a negative outcome probably will result. If you try to take a positive approach to situations, even when you are sad or hurting, a positive outcome will be much more likely. Others will respect your constructive attitude and try to follow it.

Perhaps you know a person who has developed a positive attitude despite terrible misfortune. One woman lost both her legs in a car accident as a teenager. She had to deal with the fact she would spend the rest of her life in a wheelchair. After a period of depression, she realized she had a choice to make. She could adopt an attitude of bitterness and defeat and withdraw from those around her. Her other choice was to count her blessings, look for the good in life, and try to help others. Throughout her life, she tried to be cheerful and to take a genuine interest in others' lives. After talking with her, people would feel uplifted and better able to deal with their own problems. Even in her final years in a home for the elderly, she continued to go out of her way to help others. She would wheel herself from room to room, cheering others and offering to help them write to their friends and families. This woman's choice of a positive attitude made a big difference in her life and the lives of those around her.

Changing Negative Attitudes to Positive Attitudes

If you have developed some negative attitudes, they can be changed to positive ones. The changes may be due to new experiences, increased knowledge of a subject, a change in group membership, or direct suggestion from someone. You can express your new, more positive attitudes through the enthusiasm you show, the words you speak, and the actions you take.

Developing a generally positive attitude toward yourself and those around you is important. People often base their entire opinion of you on the attitudes you express. They may use an "attitude label" to describe you to other people. Examples of attitude labels are given in 4-30.

Attitude Labels

Negative Labels:

- He always puts people down.
- She's always talking about people behind their backs.
- He's such a martyr (suffers sacrifices for the sake of someone else).
- She always finds something wrong with everything we do.
- He never stands up for what he believes is right.
- She is so conceited.

Positive Labels:

- He always finds the good in others.
- She can be trusted to be kind to people.
- He tries to remain upbeat even when things are going wrong.
- She's a tough competitor.
- He is always willing to stand up for what is right.
- She's always so cheerful.

4-30 People often use attitude labels to describe someone's personality. Both positive and negative attitude labels may be used.

Prejudices

Prejudices are attitudes based on false or insufficient information. They are usually negative in nature. Since prejudices are formed without enough accurate knowledge, they are likely to be unreliable and harmful. People who have strong prejudices are called **bigots**. Bigots staunchly support their own group, party, or belief and will not consider the right of others to have varying opinions.

Prejudices have many different causes. Fear, guilt, frustration, or feelings of inferiority are the basis for some prejudices. Others result from attitudes expressed by family, the media, and peer groups. Sometimes personal experiences can create prejudices. If you have fun the first time you try surfing, you will probably say you like to surf. If you are flipped off your board and injured, you may develop a prejudice against the sport.

By the time you reach adolescence, many of your prejudices are firmly established. In some cases, your prejudices may dictate your behavior. Since prejudices are based on false assumptions, such behavior could harm you as well as others.

Prejudices can be overcome or avoided altogether. If you realize that you have a prejudice and you want to overcome it, the following guidelines will help. These guidelines will also help prevent new prejudices from forming.

- Before you express a strong opinion, ask yourself whether or not it is based on facts.
- Increase your knowledge. The more you know about a subject, the less likely you will be to form a prejudiced opinion.
- Be aware of the prejudices of a person trying to convince you to take a certain action or position.
- Be cautious of statements regarding common areas of strong prejudices, such as religion, politics, race, culture, or ethnicity.

Stereotypes

Stereotypes are widely held beliefs that all members of a group share the same characteristics. Some members of a group may have these characteristics, but not all members do.

Some common stereotypes involve age, gender, race, and socio-economic status. For instance, some people believe the stereotype that old people are always slow. This implies that all older people are slow. You have only to view or read news stories of active senior citizens to realize that this is not the case. Similarly, teenagers may be stereotyped as irresponsible by adults when, in fact, most teenagers act responsibly.

Gender or sex-role stereotyping is frequently heard. For instance, men are often labeled as unemotional. People seem surprised when they see men cry or show similar emotions. Women are often stereotyped as indecisive (unable to make decisions). However, there are many businesswomen who have become successful because they could make decisions quickly. Both labels may describe some men and some women, but not all men nor all women.

Occupational stereotyping is very unfortunate. It causes many young people to rule out certain careers that might interest them because they think of them as women's work or men's work. Career options are open to everyone today. Females are pilots, engineers, and auto mechanics. Males today are nurses, secretaries, nursery school teachers, and hairdressers. Almost all careers are open to everyone. You should choose a career on the basis of your interests, aptitudes, and skills, not stereotypes, 4-31.

Stereotyping is an attempt to fit people into preconceived pegs. If you believe stereotypes, you are failing to realize that every person is unique. You are prejudging people before you ever get to know them.

You may be the victim of a stereotype. People may prejudge you as well. You may be afraid to be yourself for fear of what other people will think of you.

Stereotypes can be overcome by being open to other people. Get to know others and hear their ideas before you judge them. Enjoy meeting men and women with different personalities and people of different races and ages. Everyone has qualities that make them unique. Find those unique qualities. Keep stereotypes out of the picture. Respect and welcome diversity. Be sensitive to those who may be the victims of stereotypes. You can speak up when you think opinions based on stereotypes are voiced. Then remind others that opinions should be based on knowledge.

4-31 Almost any career field is open to you if you are willing to work at learning the necessary skills.

hapter 4 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- The way you respond to your environment helps you develop the distinctive qualities of your personality.
- According to Erikson, personality development is affected by each of eight stages in the life cycle.
- Havighurst has identified eight developmental tasks that influence the personality of adolescents.
- Maslow's theory shows how human needs affect personality development.
- Kohlberg believed that everyone passes through a series of predictable stages in their moral thinking from childhood through young adulthood, though not all people attain the highest stages.
- Defense mechanisms are used by people to protect their self-concepts when faced with problems or threats in their environment. Their use may be healthy or unhealthy.
- Anger may be used either constructively or destructively.
- Fear may be the result of an unpleasant experience or conditioning from another person. Some fears can be helpful, but exaggerated fears or phobias can be damaging.
- Low moods must be accepted as part of life, but they can be balanced with happy times.
- Negative attitudes can be changed to positive attitudes as the result of new experiences, increased knowledge, a change of group membership, or a direct suggestion from someone.
- Since prejudices are formed without enough accurate knowledge, they are likely to be unreliable and harmful. Prejudices can be overcome or avoided altogether.
- Some common stereotypes involve age, gender, and race. Stereotypes cause people to prejudge others and to fail to recognize that each person is unique.

Review

1. According to Erikson's stages of development, match each positive outcome with its identifying phrase.
    _____ initiative
    _____ trust
    _____ identity
    _____ autonomy
    _____ intimacy
    _____ accomplishment
    _____ generativity
    _____ integrity
    A. You develop imagination and begin to think of your own activities.
    B. You feel confident of yourself, other people, and your environment.
    C. You carry your project through to completion and learn that work is meaningful.
    D. You accept yourself and become ready to establish stable relationships.
    E. You experience the freedom of self-direction and have the confidence to assert yourself.
    F. You are satisfied with your past and look forward to your future.
    G. You sort through your thoughts and feelings to discover who you are and to find a stable role for yourself in society.
    H. You express concern for the welfare of young people and the world.
2. Why is it important that each of Havighurst's developmental tasks be performed?
3. According to Maslow, _____ needs have the first priority.
4. Which of the following is *not* included in Maslow's list of human needs?
    A. Safety and security.
    B. Financial success.
    C. Love and acceptance.
    D. Esteem.
5. According to Kohlberg, what guides a child's decision making in the first stage of moral development?

(continued)

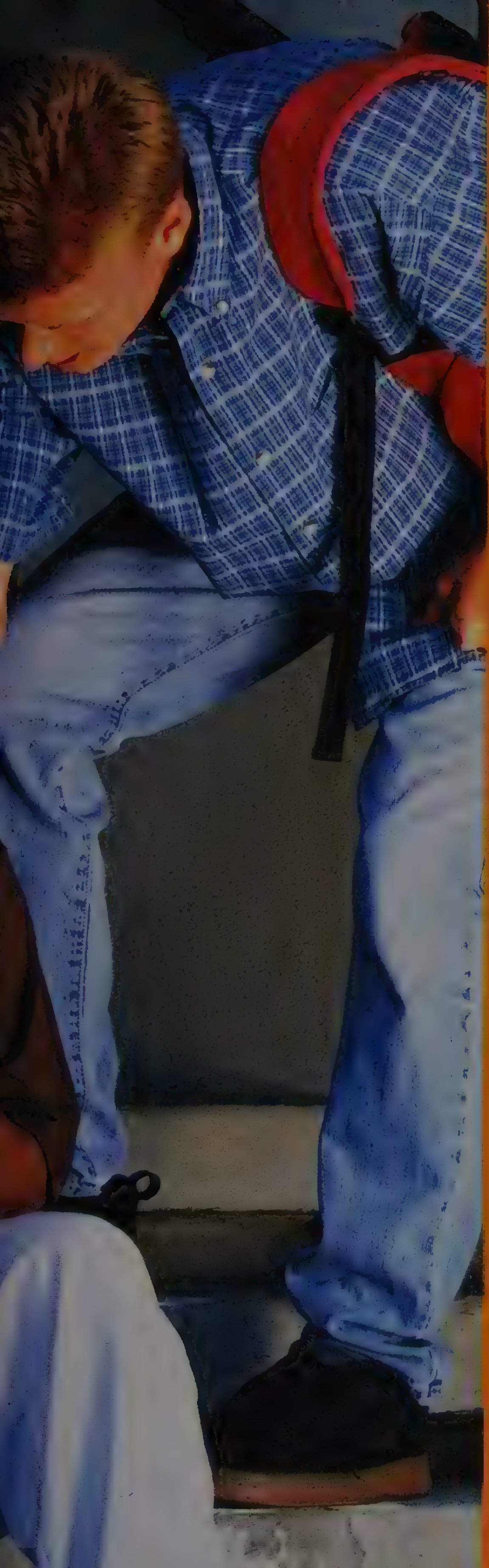
6. True or False. Kohlberg believes that everyone eventually reaches the sixth stage of moral development.
7. Identify the defense mechanism being described in each of the following phrases.
   - A. Attacking the source of a threat.
   - B. Using a substitute method to achieve the desired result.
   - C. Explaining your weaknesses and failures by using a socially acceptable excuse that does not reflect the real problem.
   - D. Transferring an emotion connected with one person or thing to an unrelated person or thing.
   - E. Reverting back to a less mature stage of development.
   - F. Using imagination to accomplish what you are not accomplishing in reality.
   - G. Valuing something far more than its real worth.
   - H. Transferring energy into a physical symptom or complaint.
   - I. Deciding not to face or resolve problems.
   - J. Blaming other people or things for your failures.
8. Give an example of how anger can be used constructively and an example of how it can be used destructively.
9. Give an example of how fear can serve a purpose.
10. A(n) _____ is a feeling or mental position about something.
11. On what are prejudices based?
12. Give an example of a stereotype. Explain how this label could affect or harm a person.

React

1. Working in small groups, look through current magazines and find pictures that illustrate each of Havighurst's developmental tasks of adolescence. Explain your selections to the rest of the class. Display the pictures on a bulletin board.
2. Read newspapers to find examples of how various defense mechanisms have been used by people in the news.
3. Keep an anecdotal record for one week of every expression of anger you hear or see. Which expressions are constructive? Destructive? Why?
4. Recall several fears you have had throughout your life. Can you trace the origin of the fears? Do the fears help or hinder you? How can you overcome the negative effects of fear?
5. Research books, stories, poems, movies, and plays to find how fears and phobias have been used in plots. Select one and prepare a report for the class.
6. Ask a psychologist to come to class and discuss depression. Find out how it is identified and when a person should seek medical help for severe depression.

Reflect

1. Examine news stories that involve a moral or "right-and-wrong" aspect in people's reactions to a challenge or problem situation. What stages of moral development are represented? How might people exhibiting lower stages of moral development behave differently as their thinking progresses to higher levels?
2. Review the defense mechanisms discussed in this chapter. List at least three instances in which you or someone you know used one of the mechanisms. Could the situation have been handled more effectively? If so, how?
3. Find examples of stereotypes in advertising or news stories. How would you change the ad or story to avoid stereotyping?



Part II

The Decisions You Face

Chapter 5
It's Your Decision

Chapter 6
Decisions Concerning Your Future Career

Chapter 7
Decisions Affecting Your Health

Chapter 8
Avoiding Harmful Substances

Chapter 9
Lifestyle Options and Consequences

Chapter 5

It's Your Decision

Terms to Know

- personal priorities
- short-term goals
- long-term goals
- resources
- human resources
- nonhuman resources
- standards
- decision-making process
- manage
- management process

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- define personal priorities and explain how they influence decisions.
- give examples of short-term and long-term goals.
- plot goals based on the stages of an individual's life cycle using a time/life line.
- identify types of human and nonhuman resources.
- establish standards for measuring goal achievement.
- explain the steps in the decision-making process.
- describe the four steps in the management process.

Do the following words sound familiar? "It's your decision. You will have to live with it."

As you mature, you gain the privilege and responsibility of making more of your own decisions. You may remember times in your childhood when your parents did not allow you to make decisions. They felt you were not old enough to make the right choices. At those times, you probably wished you could have had your own way.

Now that you are older, you have more chances to make more of your own decisions. Within the next few years, you will have to make some of the most important decisions of your life. These decisions may have a profound influence on your entire life span, 5-1. Some of these decisions will be difficult to make, but

5-1 Within the next few years, you will face many important decisions, such as what career to pursue and where to go for further education.

they are your decisions. You will have to live with the consequences of the decisions you make.

Your Personal Priorities

To make the best decisions, you need to know yourself—especially your personal priorities. Your personal priorities will influence the decisions you make. Your priorities will also influence the goals and standards you set for your life. Since personal priorities play such an important role, it is important to be aware of them.

What Are Personal Priorities?

Personal priorities are the principles, concepts (ideas), and beliefs that are most important to you. Your personal priorities may include some of the following: love, knowledge, honesty, religion, power, health, and friendship. You may feel more strongly about some personal priorities than others. Your personal priorities become a part of your personality, and they affect your behavior.

How Are Personal Priorities Formed?

As you read this book and participate in the learning experiences, you will find yourself agreeing and disagreeing. You will accept some ideas and reject others. In any course dealing with human development, you will find some concepts that will help you improve your life, some that you have already accepted, and some that do not apply to your situation.

As you evaluate the information, you will be using and perhaps forming personal priorities. Creating a priority system for concepts and beliefs that are important to you is a difficult task. Putting "first things first" is not simple, for it forces you to decide what is really most important to you. Once you have made these decisions, however, you can take the needed action.

Many of your personal priorities have been forming for years due to the influence of your family. For instance, your parents may have instilled in you and your siblings the belief that family members should care for one another. They may have made it a priority that you all try to be together for the evening meal. You could talk about what happened to each family member during the day and share your concerns. As a result, you may hope to continue this practice when you marry and have children of your own. Other personal priorities you may have acquired from your family might include compassion, loyalty, sharing, and caring. These personal priorities will help shape your future choices.

Choices of your friends also influence your personal priorities, 5-2. You may have

5-2 **Good friends often share the same personal priorities.**

a very close friend. Many of your personal priorities will be influenced by this particular friend. Other people you come in contact with may also influence your priorities. These include teachers, religious leaders, neighbors, and other adults.

You are also influenced by your culture and the traditions you see practiced daily. People who move to other countries may bring certain cultural traditions with them to their new countries. These traditions may continue to be a part of their personal priority system for many years, and even generations, to come.

The environment in which you live will also influence your personal priorities. If you live in a rural setting, for instance, you may value the sense of community you find there. If you live in an urban area, you may value the choices you have for enjoying artistic works or performances.

How Personal Priorities Influence Decisions

You have been making decisions all of your life. Some of your decisions do not require a great deal of time or planning. For example, when it is time for you to go to baseball practice, you may jump on your bike and take off. Your choice to ride your bike includes priority judgments. You may hold strongly to the belief that you should take every opportunity to exercise. You may value robust health and believe this is a way to improve it. You may also believe in the concept that the more we use bicycles the less fuel our nation will be using. Without even thinking about it, your personal priorities have influenced your decision!

The following examples will illustrate further how personal priorities influence decisions. Joe is very close to his family. He values his relationship with his parents and brothers and sisters. When he had the choice of camping with his family over the weekend or staying with a friend so he wouldn't miss a party, he chose to go with his family. At that time, being with his family meant more to him.

Your personal priorities will also influence decisions you make about doing your homework. If you are content with just doing enough to pass, you reveal how you feel about preparing for your future. You may put a greater importance on having a good time and hanging out with your friends. If this has a higher priority, it may hurt you later when your grades become a factor in getting a job or being accepted into a college.

You may sometimes question certain choices your friends make. They may place you in a situation requiring you to "test" your personal priorities. For example, a friend may ask you to skip a day of school and go to the beach. Your decision would depend on your personal priorities. How much do the respect of your teachers and the trust of your parents mean to you? How important are the classes you would miss? How important is a day of companionship with your friend?

Tyra's personal priorities were also being tested when she was asked to go along with a group of friends. She knew they were planning a prank that might get them in trouble with the police. Her personal priorities helped her to say, "No, I can't go with you." Because she respected the rights (and property) of others, it was easy for her to make this choice.

Some of the most difficult decisions during the teen years involve personal relationships. Kendra was faced with such a decision. Her social life had been limited to group activities. She and her parents had talked about different situations she might find herself in when she started to date. She was thrilled when a new guy in school asked her to the homecoming dance. After the dance, they stopped off at a friend's house where a party was going on. They danced for a while and were having a good time. Then her date led her to a quiet room where they could be alone. When she pulled back, he said, "Hey, haven't you had a good time?" Kendra replied, "Yes, I've had a great time, but I'd like to keep it that way. I'm leaving now." Kendra made a decision based on her personal priorities. She did not allow another person to make her decisions for her.

During your teen years, you may find yourself more willing to take risks. Knowing your personal priorities can help you avoid potentially dangerous situations. Your priorities will help you weigh the options you have in many areas involving behavior. You will more easily recognize an option that is not in line with your personal priorities, 5-3. Then you will find it easier to say no when you sense your priorities are being compromised.

Each of you has beliefs, principles, and concepts that are important to you. These personal priorities will help you make more satisfying decisions. Your basic priorities will be internalized, and you can apply them in many different situations in your life.

Personal Priorities Change in Importance

Some personal priorities, such as honesty, integrity, perseverance, and compassion, may always be a factor in your decisions no matter how old you are. Others, however, will change as the years go by. Your personal priorities will vary in importance at different stages of your life. During the teen years, for instance, loyalty to friends may be a top priority. At the same time, your education may be of less importance because you are focusing on your friendships. Toward the end of high school, you may start thinking more about your future. You may decide on a career field that requires further education. Suddenly, getting good grades takes on greater importance. Your priorities shift in emphasis. You begin to spend more time studying and less time partying.

There may be periods in your life when your career occupies much of your energy and time. You may focus all of your attention on moving up in your job. Family and friends may take a backseat for a while. Some people value money and the luxuries money can buy. For others, the desire to help others influences their decisions.

5-3 Knowing your own personal priorities will help you make decisions regarding your behavior.

During other stages of your life, you may feel the need to give more attention to your family. If and when you marry, you will want to spend more time with your spouse. You and your spouse will probably share similar personal priorities that will influence your joint decisions. If you have children, the members of your family unit will take center stage. Loving them and caring for their needs will become important for you.

Setting Your Goals

As you learned in Chapter 1, a goal is something you want to achieve or obtain. A goal is the direction or end toward which you strive. When you set a goal, you begin to work out a plan for reaching it.

Some of your goals are short term. **Short-term goals** are reachable in the near future—the next hour, day, or week. You may want to get your chores done early so you can go out with your friends Saturday afternoon. You may want to complete your term paper this week, so that you can visit a college campus over spring break. Your sister plans to buy her prom dress this weekend because she has finally saved enough money. These are all examples of short-term goals.

Some of your goals are long term. **Long-term goals** are goals you hope to achieve next year or several years from now. These often include saving money for major purchases, such as a car or vacation. They may include plans for further education beyond high school. Many people set goals for their careers, outlining where they hope to be in one, five, and ten years.

You will probably have multiple goals at the same time. All of your goals will fit together much like a jigsaw puzzle. For instance, right now you may be trying to study for an important test while working on a term paper that's due at the end of the week. You may have a part-time job so you can save money for your first car. You may also have plans for what you intend to do following graduation from high school. Some people have specific career goals in mind. Maybe you intend to open your own child care center some day. As you can see, it is possible to be working toward multiple goals at the same time.

Goals Are Based on Personal Priorities

You set your goals based on your personal priorities, or that which is important to you, 5-4. When you know what your priorities are, you can plan your goals with greater ease, as Jose did. Some of Jose's

5-4 **People's lives are more meaningful when they set goals for themselves that are based on their personal priorities.**

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Risk Taking vs. Goal Achievement

You are at a point in your life where many of the decisions you make today can influence your entire life path. At the same time, young people are vulnerable to many risks in our society. You can reduce these risks by setting goals and acting responsibly in order to achieve these goals.

Several goals typical of teens are listed below. Risks teens may face in reaching these goals are listed in the second column. Behaviors that can help reduce or eliminate the risks are described in the third column. Do any of these risks pose problems for you?

Goals	***Risks Teenagers May Face***	***Behaviors That Help Reduce and Eliminate the Risks***
Graduate from high school.	Poor attendance in school, poor grades, and dropping out of school.	Keep school attendance a top priority. Get plenty of rest, exercise, and eat nutritious foods to maintain good health. Complete homework and projects on time. Be attentive in class. Seek additional help when needed. Talk with teachers, parents, or a counselor if problems arise.
Develop friendships with peers whose personal priorities are similar to yours.	Friends pressure you to participate in activities you question.	Peer pressure may become a problem if friends do not share your personal priorities. Know what you consider important, and hold firmly to your beliefs. If your friends don't respect your personal priorities, are they really friends?
Be responsible and accountable for your behavior.	Your friends become involved in questionable or illegal activities.	If this happens, be assertive in distancing yourself from these people. Instead, choose activities that enable you to build relationships with caring and responsible friends.
Prepare for a future career.	Lack of motivation or optimism for the career goals you can achieve.	Looking ahead to your future can be challenging for teens. Not every teen has the same set of possibilities for his or her future, but each person can set achievable goals and build on them. There is new technology to investigate, emerging service fields that need young people, and broadening global challenges. You can have a bright and challenging future—catch onto the positive possibilities!

personal priorities include independence, hard work, a comfortable lifestyle, self-respect, and a sense of accomplishment. His long-term goal was to become a restaurant manager. Jose began working at a local restaurant while he was a senior in high school. He worked hard at his job, but didn't let his grades slip. He maintained a B average in school while working 20 hours a week. He did not miss one day of school or work all year. His boss told him if he continued to perform well on the job, he would be in line for a managerial position within two years. Jose had to turn down a lot of fun times with his friends in order to work toward his goal. Some of his friends couldn't understand why he wanted to work so hard.

After graduation, Jose worked full time at the restaurant. He made many suggestions to management for improving the business. Within two years, he was offered a junior managerial position at a new restaurant the company was opening. Jose was thrilled.

Jose's personal priorities kept him focused on achieving his goal. He worked hard to make a life for himself. He can foresee a comfortable lifestyle. His self-esteem is high due to his sense of accomplishment. His goal now is to make his restaurant one of the most successful in the area.

Jose's goals were long term, and it took him several years to achieve them. He is still plotting goals for his future, and this gives him a focus for his life.

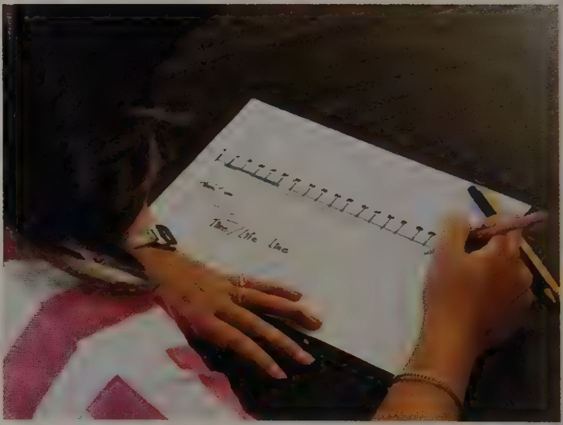
Think about your life now and what you would like to achieve. Do you see a pattern in the events in your life? What would you like to achieve in the next five years? By the time you are 30? What would you like to be doing by the time you are 55 or 60 years old?

Your Individual Life Cycle and Time/Life Line

Each person has the same basic unit of existence—one life. The number of years in each person's life will vary, but most people pass through an *individual life cycle.* You travel through stages of birth, infancy, childhood, young adulthood, adulthood, middle age, aging, and death. One exciting challenge of living this life is choosing and achieving goals as you pass through each of these stages. The decisions you make steer you through the life cycle and help you reach your goals.

Setting goals and plotting them on a *time/life line* gives you an idea of how your future goals will fit into your life, 5-5. It also lets you see how decisions you are making today will have an effect on your entire life.

Try to set your goals in a general time frame. It may be difficult for you to imagine what you might be doing when you are 60 years old. However, if you start



Cholla Runnels

5-5 Plotting your goals on a time/life line can help you relate what you are doing today with where you want to be years from now.

planning what you would like to do in your life between now and then, it may be easier for you to view a longer life span.

You have many options when deciding on long-term goals. Thus, everyone's time/life line will be different. As you plan your time/life line, keep in mind long-term goals of education, career, marriage, and family. Some goals have definite stopping points, such as graduation from high school or college. Some goals, such as being a parent, continue for a lifetime. Many goals will overlap, such as marriage, parenting, and a career. Life usually is not either work or marriage or family. These goals, if chosen, have to be combined and balanced.

Many people will have similar goals, but the sequence of achieving these goals will vary. Figure 5-6 shows several possible sequences. Some people want to marry early and have their children while they are relatively young. Later on, they may resume their education. Other people will want to complete their educational goals and become established in their careers before they marry.

In 5-7 you can see how goals can be plotted on a time/life line. The stages of the life cycle are also indicated. These graphs illustrate the blocks of time that are devoted to different life goals.

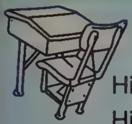
As you plan your goals and plot them on a time/life line, keep the following points in mind:

- View education, work, marriage, and family as interconnected parts of a whole. They are not separate entities.
- Evaluate various careers and try to select the one that will bring you the greatest personal satisfaction.
- Consider the best time to marry. Today, many couples are marrying later, after they have become established in their careers.
- If you would like to be a parent, consider how having children will fit into your life plans.

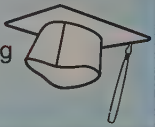
Identify Your Resources

In order to reach your goals, you will need to use various resources. **Resources**

Possible Goal Sequences

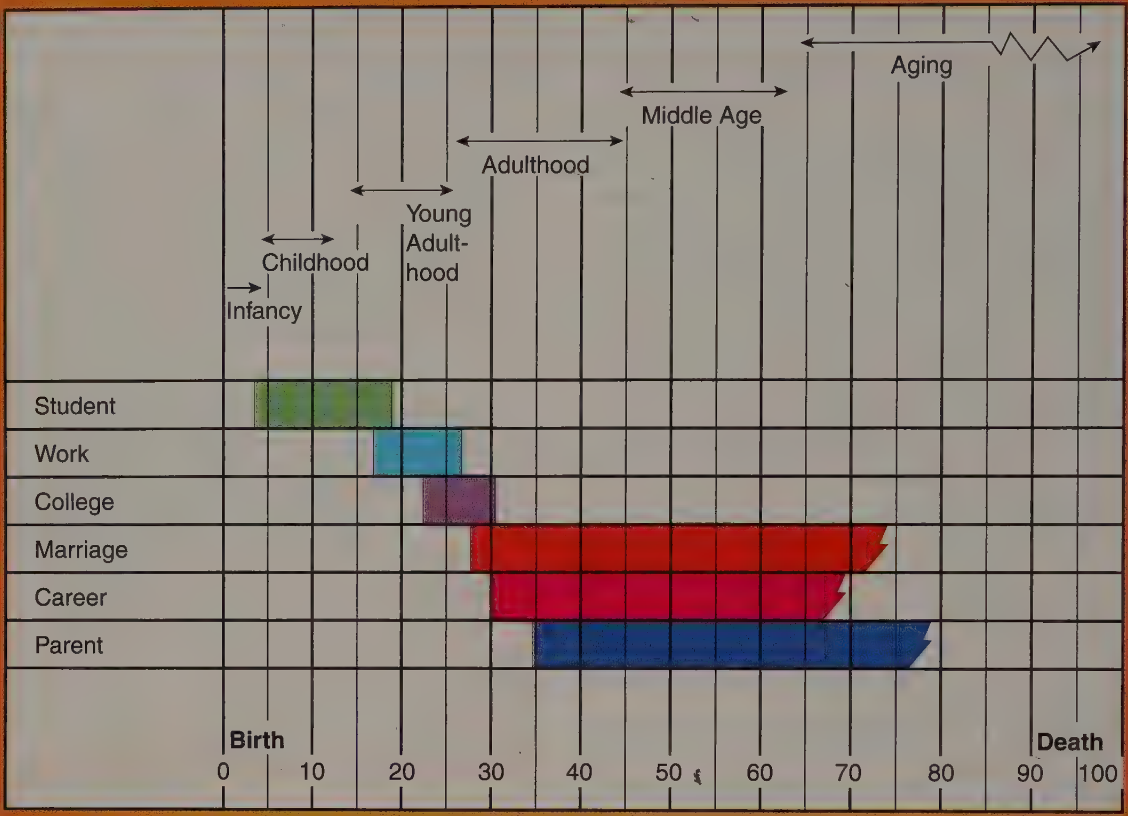


High School → College → Career → Marriage → Parenting
High School → Work → Vocational Training → Career → Marriage → Parenting
High School → Marriage → Work → Community College → Career → Parenting
High School → Work → Marriage
High School → Vocational Training/Work → Career → Marriage → Parenting



5-6 **After high school, you may choose from these or other sequences for reaching your life goals.**

Your Individual Life Cycle



Lola's goal is to own her own business someday. She plans to finish high school, but she knows her parents cannot afford to send her to college. Therefore, Lola intends to work full-time while attending community college at night. She hopes to save enough money so she can attend college full time during her senior year. Marriage will wait until she is in her late 20s. Lola has been promised a job managing a small ice cream shop when she graduates from college. The owner will be near retirement age then, and he intends to work out a plan for Lola to purchase the business within 15 years.

5-7 In plotting her time/life line, Lola was able to plan for completing her education and owning her own business.

include the various ways and means that you have for reaching your goals. The challenge to you is to recognize your resources and to choose the right ones to reach your goals. You are the manager of your resources.

You already have many resources that can help you achieve some of your goals. To reach all of your goals, you may need to seek out new resources. There are two kinds of resources—human resources and nonhuman resources.

Human Resources

Many resources come from within a person. These are known as **human resources.** They come from within yourself and from other people who support you in some way. They include your health, energy, and time. Your personality characteristics and character traits are also important human resources.

Many of your personal characteristics can serve as resources as you make choices and meet new challenges. Most teens are in excellent health and are full of energy. Many teens use these resources to fulfill school, job, and family responsibilities. Time is a resource that may be in limited supply if you are trying to reach many goals at the same time.

Certain aspects of your personality may be some of your most valuable human resources. Self-discipline will allow you to assess and fulfill your obligations. "I will take care of it" tells people you are responsible, but you must follow through. Being optimistic can help see you through difficult times. Friendliness and compassion are human resources that will help you in many ways.

Your talents and skills are human resources. You may have skills in creative writing that will be useful to you throughout your life. Some people are quite comfortable using the latest computer technology, 5-8. Others are superb athletes. Musical talent may allow you to contribute to creative productions.

Other people can serve as human resources for you when you need them. Your parents, your siblings, friends, religious leaders, and teachers are just some of the people you can call upon. They can encourage you and advise you as needed or direct you to other resources.

Nonhuman Resources

Nonhuman resources include money, material possessions, and community resources and facilities. These resources are not physically a part of any individual.

Money is a resource people use every day to satisfy certain needs or reach specific goals. Money is used to buy goods and services. You may have some money if you have a job or get an allowance. Your money is a resource if you use it to buy items you need.

You may have possessions that can be used as resources. With a computer, you

5-8 You may be very good at using a computer. If so, your skill is one of your human resources.

can research and write papers for school. You may even develop your own computer programs. You could use your family lawn mower to earn extra money mowing neighbors' lawns. Having a means of transportation, whether a bicycle, a truck, or a car, can also be a resource.

As a member of your community, you have access to many nonhuman resources. Examples may include technical schools, community colleges, and perhaps even a college or university. Colleges are a valuable resource for library research, public programs, sports, and entertainment as well as coursework.

Many facilities in your local community are supported by tax dollars. Public libraries are an important resource for information and entertainment. Parks and park district programs offer many sports, entertainment, and education opportunities. The recreational facilities in your community provide opportunities for participation in sports activities.

Other government services can be important resources. Various levels of government offer different types of assistance. A look through the community services section of your phone directory will give you an idea of the many services available. Help is available in areas such as housing and health needs, civil rights, and crisis situations, to name only a few.

You need to use resources to reach your goals. Be sure you are aware of all of your human and nonhuman resources.

Set Your Standards

As you set your goals, you will have certain measures that show how you're doing in reaching your goals. These measures are your **standards**, or levels of achievement. These help you determine whether you are achieving your goals.

Standards that you set for yourself are personal standards. What you achieve must be acceptable to you based on your personal standards. For instance, you may want to maintain a certain grade point average in school. This average may be higher or lower than the standards set by other students or your parents, but it will be the personal standard that you feel is right for you. This is the standard you will use to measure your achievement, 5-9.

You may have personal standards regarding your appearance. If you have a part-time job, you may be very particular about wearing appropriate clothing. Your work supervisor will recognize that you have accepted these standards.

People have standards concerning behavior, too. An athlete may set certain performance standards he or she would like to achieve. It might be scoring a certain number of points during a game or running a mile in so many minutes. Behavioral standards also relate to personal behavior. "I will not talk about my friends behind their backs" may reflect a behavioral standard of yours. You may also have higher or lower standards of housekeeping, neatness, courtesy, or honesty than others.

Your personal standards may or may not agree with conventional standards—the standards commonly accepted by society. For instance, you may feel no one should be allowed to smoke in restaurants. Others may feel that smokers have a right to smoke wherever they want. One conventional standard is to allow smoking in certain areas only, thus attempting to meet the needs of smokers and nonsmokers alike. These differing standards may cause conflicts in some instances.

Some people accept lower standards in some areas so they can uphold higher standards in others. For example, you may accept a lower standard of excellence in your tennis game so you can spend more time studying. You believe in higher academic standards.

Your standards are related to your personal priorities. Consider job-performance standards as an example. If you are satisfied with just putting in your time with little regard for performance, you do not have a strong work ethic. Your job-performance standards may be low. You'll do as little as is needed to keep your job. On the other hand, if your standards are high for any job you do, it reveals your priorities concerning the work ethic. It also indicates you are willing to put in the kind of effort needed to achieve certain career goals.

5-9 This student is striving to reach the academic standards set by her parents. Are they her standards as well?

Making Decisions

You have just read about goals, resources, and standards and how they relate to one another. These also play an important role in making good decisions. During your high school years, you will be looking ahead to possible options for the future. This will require making many decisions. Your decisions should reflect your personal priorities. Your decisions should also be based on your goals. Then you will look at the resources that are within you and available from other people. You will consider these resources as you make decisions. Finally, many of your decisions will be influenced by your standards. You can see how your personal priorities, goals, resources, and standards all relate to decision making.

You can learn to make good decisions in your life. You first must have a positive self-concept. You must have confidence in your ability to make responsible decisions. Then you can develop critical-thinking skills so that you can think through your decisions. You may seek the advice and opinions of other persons, but you need to learn to make your own decisions considering their suggestions. Becoming an adult means accepting the responsibility for making the decisions that will benefit you, your family and friends, and your society.

Making decisions can be fun. It is an exciting learning experience. You should not think of decision making as something to be feared or something that is overwhelming. When you learn to make your own decisions, you will be better able to make the most of your life.

Types of Decisions

When you make a decision, you make a choice or a judgment. You arrive at a solution. You make up your mind.

You make many decisions every day. Most are easy, such as deciding what to wear or what to eat. Many are more difficult, such as deciding which classes to take. Some of your decisions affect just you, but some affect other people, too. The consequences of some decisions may affect the rest of your life.

Ways to Make Decisions

Just as there are many different kinds of decisions, there are also many different ways to make decisions. Some decisions are simply habits. Perhaps when you roll out of bed in the morning, you head straight for the shower. After getting dressed, you may have a bowl of cereal and a glass of orange juice for breakfast. If you follow the same routine every day, it becomes a habit. You don't even have to think about the decisions you make each morning.

Some people depend on their common sense to make decisions, 5-10. They think of all the options they have. They consider the consequences for each option—for themselves, for other people, and for society. Then they choose the solution they think will have the best results with the fewest complications. This entire reasoning process may be done so quickly and automatically that people may not even be aware of it. They consider it to be just common sense.

Some people use intuition to solve problems. They follow their instincts or feelings. Sometimes they may just make a guess, but in most cases, their intuition is based on some knowledge of the situation.

Others base their decisions on past experiences. If a person faced a similar problem before and found a good solution, that person will probably make the same decision again. If the solution did not work before, the person will probably make a different decision next time.

Some decisions may be made by applying lessons learned as a result of parental guidance. Beliefs that a person may have gained from parental or religious training can also be a main resource for decision making.

The Decision-Making Process

Another way to make a decision is to follow the **decision-making process**. This method of making decisions and solving problems is a step-by-step process that you can learn. It is a good way to approach a decision you haven't faced before. It can help you organize your thoughts and arrive at the best solution. It is also a good way to make important decisions that will have long-term consequences.

As you begin using the decision-making process, write each step on paper. This will help you learn the process and

5-10 **Many purchasing decisions are based on experience with a product. It makes sense to buy a product you have been happy with in the past.**

develop a clear thinking pattern. The following are the six steps in the decision-making process. They are also listed in 5-11.

1. Identify the decision to be made.

This step might sound too simple to be important, but it isn't. In fact, this first step is sometimes the most difficult one. You may feel overwhelmed by a situation, but you will not make any progress until you identify the one decision that needs to be made first.

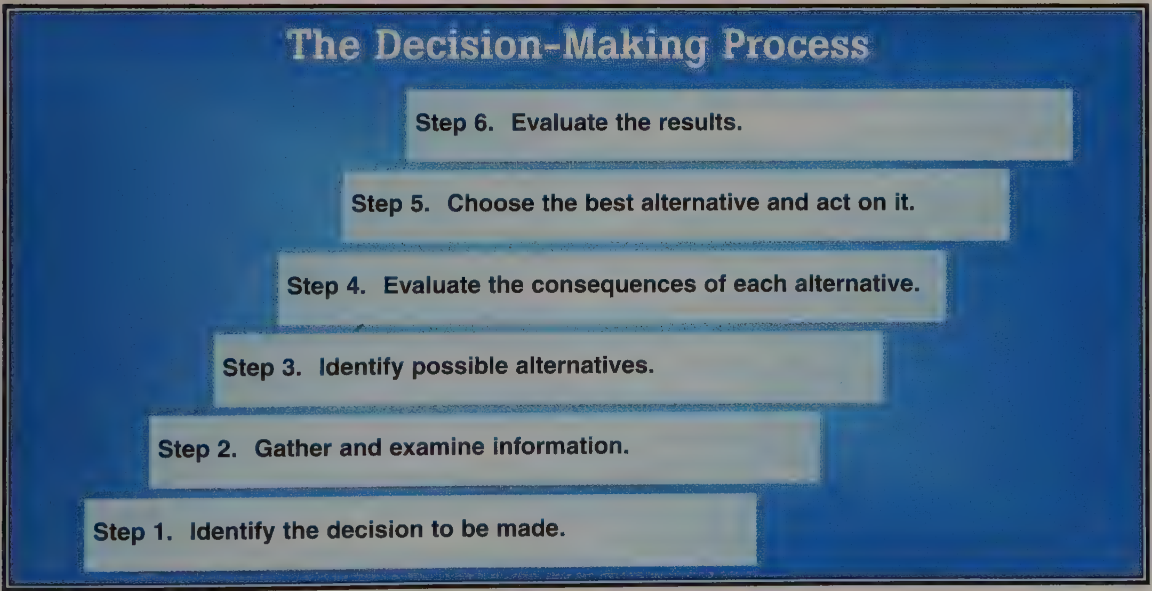
There are times when you would probably like to ignore the fact that you have a decision to make. Putting off decisions does not make them go away. Not making a decision is actually making the decision to let someone or something else take over for you.

If you have a decision to make or problem to solve, focus on the issue. Many times people are confused by the many side issues involved. In order to make a decision, you have to clear your mind of issues that are not a part of the decision. State the decision verbally, or write it down.

2. Gather and examine information.

The second step is to gather and examine information. There are many sources of information to help you. Your school counselor may be able to direct you to the most helpful resources. Your parents, religious leader, or friends may be able to provide some information also, 5-12.

There are constant changes in the information sources and many times you may be unaware that help does exist for your particular concern. Asking for this information is not a sign of a weak person. It is the sign of a knowledgeable person seeking the best possible course of action.


The Decision-Making Process
Step 6. Evaluate the results.
Step 5. Choose the best alternative and act on it.
Step 4. Evaluate the consequences of each alternative.
Step 3. Identify possible alternatives.
Step 2. Gather and examine information.
Step 1. Identify the decision to be made.

5-11 **The steps in the decision-making process can be used to make all kinds of decisions.**

5-12 Talking with a parent or teacher can provide you with needed information in making important decisions.

3. Identify possible alternatives.

After you have gathered information, you are ready to identify possible alternatives. There are often several ways to address a problem or find a solution. Use the information you have found to help you select possible alternatives. Write down the alternatives.

4. Evaluate the consequences of each alternative.

Each alternative may pose certain consequences for you or for others. In order to arrive at the best solution, you must examine the possible consequences of each of the alternatives. There will be positive and negative consequences, so write them down under the pro (positive) and con (negative) columns. Review the consequences and evaluate them carefully.

Look at each consequence and ask yourself if it would be compatible with your personal priorities and those of your family. Family members' needs must be considered. Does this decision recognize these needs? Does the decision live up to your standards? You should also examine each consequence to see if it is socially acceptable in your community.

By honestly critiquing your alternatives and their consequences, you will be able to arrive at the best possible decision. You may eliminate some of your options immediately when you consider the consequences. You may exclude those that have some positive factors, but have more negative factors.

5. Choose the best alternative and act on it.

After you have evaluated the alternatives, your next step will be to choose the best option and act on it. Put your plan into action. All the thoughtful consideration you put into the decision may be wasted if you fail to act.

6. Evaluate the results.

In this important step, you evaluate the results. You can now see the results of your decision. You see how the results have affected your life and the lives of those around you. Once you recognize the consequences of your decision, you must accept responsibility for them.

If the consequences are good, you will have the satisfaction of knowing you made a good decision. Keep this positive decision-making experience in your memory for future reference.

If the consequences are bad, think about how you can learn from your mistake. Then try to improve the results of the first decision by making another decision.

Do not feel locked into a series of bad situations because of one bad decision. If you find that you made a bad decision, you can start right away to change your direction. "Sticking with it" won't make a bad decision any better. (Even if you make a change, however, you still have responsibility for the previous decision.)

Remember, making no decision is making a decision. It is deciding not to act. It is deciding to accept whatever happens or whatever other people decide for you. It may be a sensible choice, or it may mean giving up a chance to manage your own life.

During your teens, you make many decisions that involve only one day out of your life. However, many decisions will have an impact on your entire life. This is why it is so important to adopt a workable decision-making system. Knowing the best way to make decisions will help you now and for the rest of your life.

The Management Process

Throughout life, you will have opportunities to use your decision-making skills in managing challenges both great and small. The word **manage** means to direct, control, or administer. The **management process** consists of four steps: setting a goal, making a plan that includes the use of resources, carrying out the plan, and evaluating.

Setting a Goal

As discussed earlier in this chapter, a goal is something you want to achieve or obtain. It is based on your personal priorities, or ideas about what is important. Examples of a goal include getting an "A" on a test, losing 10 pounds, and throwing a successful birthday party for a friend. A careful assessment of available resources can help you set a goal that is realistic.

In setting a goal, it's important to think through the criteria you will use to decide whether your project is successful. To use the party example, how will you know if your goal has been met (in other words, that your party has been successful)? The evaluation items or criteria for success might include the following:

- My friends had a great time.
- The food was delicious.
- The decorations looked good.
- My parents felt that the party was well chaperoned.
- We left the house in good shape by cleaning up after the party.

Making a Plan

It's important to have an effective plan for achieving your goal, 5-13. To create a plan, think through and list the steps you will need to take to make the event a success. For a party, your plan will include everything from consulting your parents and setting a date, to issuing invitations, to deciding on refreshments, to figuring out who will help clean up after the party is over.

If this is the first time you have planned such an event, it is helpful to gather additional information that will help you succeed. For example, you may wish to read magazines on food and entertaining and discuss the event with people who have hosted parties in the past. You may wish to ask someone to

5-13 **When making a management plan, it helps to list the steps that must be accomplished.**

review your plan to see if you have thought of everything and to make additional suggestions.

Carrying out the Plan

Many people find that carrying out a plan is the most exciting part of the management process. In this phase, your plan is actually tested, and your dreams may (or may not) become reality.

While the party is underway, you may see in some ways it is succeeding and in other ways there is room for improvement. Maybe your friends are having an enjoyable time, and your parents are happy with the chaperonage. However, the soda is a little warm, the ice is running low, and some of the balloons have deflated. Moreover, there weren't enough serving spoons, and the party has gotten off to a late start because several people couldn't find your house. Worse, the birthday cake is chocolate, and the birthday honoree is allergic to it!

At this point, you may need to talk to yourself to keep things in perspective. Checking reality against your criteria for success, you may see that although things are far from perfect, the party is still mostly a success. Your friends are enjoying themselves, the food is a hit (except for the allergy problem), your parents are being cool, and the honoree is saving calories by not eating the chocolate cake. A few friends have promised to help you clean up. Not the least, you are learning a lot about how to throw a party so the next one you plan will be even more successful.

If you have the resources to quietly fix some things while the party is still in progress, you can certainly do so. For example, you might want to ask a family member to go to the store and get a bag of ice and a bakery cake to use as a substitute birthday cake. Some things, such as the slightly late start, you may just have to accept.

Evaluating

In the evaluation phase of the management process, you assess your degree of success in meeting your goal. Some people think that evaluation is only done at the end of the management process. However, as you can see from this example, evaluation occurs at each step of the process. When you set your goal, you defined your evaluation criteria. When you made your plan and carried it out, you referred to them. Now, you again compare your criteria with reality, this time in a more careful, thoughtful way. How well were your evaluation criteria met? What criteria would you add (or omit) next time? What would you do differently next time?

If you could hold your party over again, you probably would chill the soda, have more ice on hand, borrow extra serving spoons, enclose a map with the invitations, and inquire in advance about any guests' allergies. Still, other aspects of the party proceeded according to plan. Now is the time to write down your "lessons learned" so you will have them to refer to the next time you plan a party.

The four steps in the management process are the same for any number of events or projects you will manage at home and at work throughout your life. Most people find that using the management process helps them manage more successfully. The result: goals are achieved.

Chapter 5 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Your personal priorities are the principles, concepts, and beliefs that are most important to you. They are influenced by family members, friends, teachers, religious leaders, and other significant adults. They are also influenced by your culture and the environment in which you live.
- Your personal priorities influence the decisions you make. They may vary in importance at different stages of your life.
- Short-term goals are those that are reachable in the very near future. Long-term goals are those you hope to achieve next year or several years from now.
- You set your goals based on your personal priorities. When you know what your priorities are, you can plan your goals with greater ease.
- The stages of the individual life cycle are the same for everyone; yet each person's life is unique.
- A time/life line gives you a glimpse of what you think your life might include. It helps you set goals and make decisions as you manage your life.
- Human and nonhuman resources are the various ways and means you have for reaching your goals.
- As you set your goals, you will have certain measures that show how you're doing in reaching your goals. These measures are your standards, or levels of achievement.
- There are many different types of decisions and many different ways to make decisions.
- The decision-making process involves a series of steps that can help you make decisions and solve problems.
- The management process consists of four steps for achieving goals.

Review

1. Explain how a person's environment might influence his or her personal priorities. Give an example.
2. Explain how personal priorities influence decisions and give an example.
3. Give three examples of short-term goals and three examples of long-term goals.
4. What are the eight stages of the individual life cycle?
5. What is the purpose of a time/life line?
6. Name three types of human resources and three types of nonhuman resources.
7. Give two examples of standards set by your school.
8. Name five ways to make decisions.
9. List and explain each of the steps in the decision-making process.
10. Explain the statement, "Making no decision is making a decision."
11. Name the four steps in the management process.

React

1. Name ten personal priorities you think the average high school student in your school would have. Take a random sampling of the personal priorities of 30 sophomores, 30 juniors, and 30 seniors. (Do not include their names.) Tally the results. Look for patterns in the responses according to age or sex of the students. Report your findings to the class.
2. List two beliefs, two principles, and two concepts you have. How can they help you describe your personal priorities?
3. Form a panel and discuss the following topic: Personal priorities of friends can influence you both positively and negatively.
4. Write down three short-term goals that you have this day. Write down three long-term goals you have. Do your short-term goals have any bearing on your long-term goals?
5. Draw the individual life cycle on a bulletin board. Find photos representing the different stages and mount them in the appropriate position on the life cycle.
6. Draw a time/life line for yourself, projecting your goals of education, work/career, marriage, and/or parenthood and any others that come to mind. Keep it and refer to it every few months, revising it when necessary. You may also wish to keep a journal of your thoughts concerning your time/life line.

Reflect

1. Describe a personal priority you have that has influenced a decision you have made.
2. Name a personal priority that used to be a high priority earlier in your life but which is now a lesser priority.
3. Think of a real or imaginary decision to be made. Use the decision-making process to make the decision, writing down the six steps as outlined in your textbook.
4. Think of a goal you wish to achieve. Show how you could use the management process to reach the goal, writing down the four steps as outlined in your textbook.

Chapter 6

Decisions Concerning Your Future Career

Terms to Know

- job
- career
- aptitude
- career plan
- entrepreneurship
- apprenticeship
- leadership
- team
- Internet
- Web site
- resume
- cover letter
- ethical standards
- networking

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- identify career decisions that need to be made.
- describe education and training options related to career preparation.
- explain the importance of developing workplace skills.
- describe the steps in a job search.
- summarize strategies for job success and advancement.
- list points to keep in mind when changing jobs.

Family, Career and Community Leaders of America

Choosing a career is one of the major decisions you will soon face. When you leave high school, you can expect to live at least 50 more years, on average. A major portion of that time will be spent working.

A **job** is defined as a group of tasks performed by a worker, usually to earn money. The average person changes jobs many times. Each job decision you make expands your horizons and contributes to your personal growth and development. Few people choose one job to last an entire lifetime.

A **career** is a series of jobs, usually in the same or related fields. It often includes a progression of jobs that may lead to advancement and personal growth. Each step in a career path may involve new and more complex job responsibilities. Additional education and training may be required to progress along a career path.

Decisions about work command a great deal of a person's attention. They also have much to do with personal happiness and satisfaction. There are decisions to make about preparing for a career, finding jobs, succeeding on jobs, and changing jobs.

The "right" job is one that meets two sets of needs. The work must satisfy your needs, and the work you do must satisfy your employer's needs.

To make wise career decisions, you need lots of information. You have to know yourself—your true motives, interests, and abilities. You have to know what you can contribute. You also need to find the answers to questions about a specific job and the organization you may be considering.

Deciding on a Career

You face a variety of choices as you investigate future careers. How can you decide which career to choose and what type of education you will need? The task is not an easy one, but it can be interesting, and it must be done.

School counselors can help you sort through the many career options and training programs available, 6-1. Employees working in your field of interest can provide you with information about careers in that field. If you choose to obtain education or training beyond high school, representatives of educational institutions can answer questions for you. Your parents, relatives, and family friends can assist you by providing information about their occupations. They can also provide information on the educational requirements of these occupations.

Cholla Runnels

6-1 School guidance counselors can give you information about various careers and the training or education needed for them.

Factors Affecting Career Choice

A number of factors enter into the choice of a career. These include your interests, personal priorities, aptitudes, and abilities as well as possible career alternatives and preparation requirements.

Interests

In choosing a career, begin by asking yourself about your likes and dislikes. Think about your *interests*—the activities, events, and ideas that you like most. How do you like to spend your spare time? What electives have you chosen to take in school? Do you have any hobbies? Which television shows do you prefer watching? Answering these questions should help you identify careers that might interest you.

Also ask the following: Do you like to work with people, or do you prefer to work with objects or information? Although any job requires dealing with people, some have more people contact than others. For instance, in sales, teaching, and social work, you would work directly with people. Working with machinery, computers, or scientific formulas might require less contact with people.

How do you react to conditions in the work environment? Do you prefer dealing with abstract concepts such as time, space, and ideas, or do you prefer working with concrete objects such as motors and power tools? The answers to these questions can provide you with important clues as to the type of job you might find satisfying.

Personal Priorities

Your personal priorities or ideas about what is important also factor into your career choice. For example, you may have strong views about clean air and water. If so, you will probably be happier working as an environmentalist than for a company that contributes to air and water pollution. If you feel strongly about helping others who are less fortunate than you, you may enjoy a career as a social worker. If you believe that alcohol consumption is wrong, you will probably be more comfortable working in an alcohol-free setting.

You may not be fully aware of your personal priorities until you gain some on-the-job experience. One employee didn't appreciate how important a law-abiding workplace was until she worked in one where people tended to "cut corners" ethically. Another worker was unaware of the importance he attached to antidiscrimination enforcement until he worked at a job where racial and gender discrimination occurred.

Aptitudes and Abilities

Everyone is born with certain **aptitudes** (potential for special talents). You probably have a friend who is great at solving math or computer problems, 6-2. Another of your friends may seem to be a natural when it comes to styling hair. Perhaps your friends compliment you on your ability to play the piano or to work on cars. Learning what your aptitudes are can help you reach your full potential. If you develop your aptitudes wisely, you may be able to put them to use in a successful career.

6-2 You may have friends who are good at dancing and ballet.

Think about the types of activities in which you have excelled. Which subjects have been easiest for you in school? These activities and subjects could be the clues to a successful career. You could also ask your school counselor for an aptitude test. Aptitude tests measure your potential abilities and skills. If you have an aptitude for a certain skill, you will be able to learn the skill more easily.

Everyone who plans a career must find an occupation that fits in with his or her aptitudes and abilities. Not everyone who enjoys gazing at stars at night will have the mathematical aptitude to become an astronomer. Not everyone who enjoys discussing legal issues will be able to survive the rigors of law school. Not everyone who is interested in health matters will be able to become a physician.

When you are young, however, you may not know yet what your aptitudes and abilities are. Many people aim too low in their job choices in this and other ways.

Knowledge of Career Alternatives

Learning about the array of possible careers open to you is important. Too many young people drift into jobs that are easy to obtain rather than jobs they will find fulfilling. Often young people may feel almost "lost" in trying to evaluate career alternatives. Learning about a range of career alternatives while you are still in school will help you avoid this situation.

Some individuals may limit their career aspirations to occupations considered traditional for their gender. Women may avoid considering jobs in auto repair or plumbing, and men may avoid secretarial work or nursing. Others may limit their educational choices to those of other family members. You may be the first person in your family to want to go to college. You can succeed if you have the ability and are willing to apply yourself to your studies.

Sometimes, well-meaning families try to dictate young people's future occupations. Just because your parent enjoys an occupation doesn't mean that you will. On the other hand, your parents, relatives, and family friends can be excellent sources of information about many aspects of their jobs. It is difficult to imagine yourself in an occupation if you do not personally know anyone engaged in it. Reading about careers and talking to as many workers in as many fields as possible will help address this dilemma.

Every adult worker you see happily engaged in fulfilling employment once faced the career fears and quandaries you may be facing now, 6-3. Most adults will be willing to help you learn about their occupations if you ask for help.

Making a Career Plan

To organize your thoughts and efforts, it is a good idea to start with a career plan. In a **career plan**, you list your short- and long-term career goals and what you need to do to achieve them. Think about where you would like to be careerwise when you are ages 20, 30, and beyond. If your long-term goal is to be a veterinarian, what short-term goals will you need to reach in order to achieve your long-term goal? What education and job experience will help you become a veterinarian? While still in high school,

6-3 **This successful veterinarian may have had uncertainties concerning her career when she was a teenager.**

for example, your goal might be to get a part-time job in an animal hospital. Another goal would be to get a bachelor's degree that will allow you to enter a veterinary college.

As the years go by, check on your progress periodically and revise your plan as needed. For example, you may start out thinking you want to be a veterinarian. Later you find your grades are not high enough to be accepted into veterinary school. You may then revise your career plan and focus on another career where you can work with animals.

Even with a sound career plan, finding a fulfilling job often involves years of tentative steps toward degrees or jobs that may or may not work out. You may move back and forth between school and work as you discover new aptitudes, take courses, and learn about school and career opportunities. At the same time, you will be trying out jobs in the areas of your choice and reevaluating your career options in light of new information.

Making the Most of Career Opportunities

When you talk to successful adults about their career paths, you often find that those paths were identified by a combination of purposeful activity and chance. For example, a person's career with Company A rather than Company B may have begun because Company A was hiring when the person happened to be looking for a job. An important opportunity for an assistant to "grow into" a job may have occurred when a more senior person happened to accept a position elsewhere.

The French scientist Louis Pasteur acknowledged the role of luck in scientific discovery when he wrote, "Chance favors the prepared mind." A popular advice columnist said, "Luck is where preparation meets opportunity." Both statements point out the importance of preparation in improving your odds of success.

You may find a job that pays the bills while you gain education and experience to advance you toward your "dream job." You may find a job that combines your interests and abilities at a different level from the one you originally considered. If you enjoy the outdoors, you may not be able to become an astronomer, but you can become a forest ranger. If you enjoy legal issues, you can enjoy an interesting career as a paralegal even if you do not want to go to law school. If you like the field of medicine, you can find fulfillment as a nurse or other health worker even if you do not become a doctor. Of course, you may indeed become an astronomer, lawyer, or physician. The important thing is to respect yourself at your own level of functioning. There is much that you can contribute to the world at any level.

As you continue along a career path, you will learn much about yourself and about how the working world functions. Most people eventually find a satisfactory job situation that reflects their personal preferences, aptitudes, and career preparation. Keep your eye fixed on your career destination, but try to learn as much as you can while getting there.

Careers in Family Studies and Human Services

A background in family and consumer sciences can prepare you for a broad range of career options. Specific training in family studies and human services would enable you to find employment in many of the career fields described in 6-4. An

Career	Job Description	Personal Characteristics	Typical Educational Requirements
Extension Specialist in Family Relations, Child Development, or Family Economics	Conduct educational programs on topics of interest to families. Act as a consultant to industry or community agencies. Provide information to the community through the media.	Able to work with people in a variety of settings; good public relations skills.	Master's or doctoral degree in an area of specialization within a family and consumer sciences program. Education coursework helpful.
Specialist, Family Life Education Programs	Plan, write, and promote family life education programs.	Concern for families; able to communicate information.	Master's or doctoral degree in family life education within a family and consumer sciences program.
Writer on Family Life Topics	Write textbooks, how-to books, newspaper and magazine articles, and TV programs.	Enjoy researching topics; able to present information clearly in writing.	Bachelor's, master's, or doctoral degree in family life education within a family and consumer sciences program. Journalism coursework helpful.
Recreation Supervisor	Plan, organize, and direct individual and group leisure events such as arts, crafts, music, drama, and sports event. (Entry-level positions available with high school diploma.)	Good at motivating people and sensitive to their needs; good health.	Bachelor's or master's degree in social work or a family and consumer sciences specialization.

(continued)

6-4 This is just a sample of available careers in family and consumer sciences.

Financial Consultant	Work with families and individuals to solve financial problems. Conduct seminars on money management.	Able to analyze detailed information; tact and good judgment in counseling clients.	Bachelor's, master's, or doctoral degree in family economics within a family and consumer sciences program.
Image Consultant and Analyst	Work with individuals and groups to promote a positive professional image. Conduct seminars, give speeches, and write articles on career strategies.	Enjoy working with people; able to keep abreast of fashions and beauty techniques.	Bachelor's degree in textiles and clothing within a family and consumer sciences program.
Family Life Educator	Teach family life and parenting. Work with junior high, high school, or college students, or adults.	Enjoy working with people and sharing knowledge with others.	Bachelor's, master's, or doctoral degree in family life education within a family and consumer sciences program.
Child Development Teacher	Teach parenthood education, early childhood training, and child development.	Good communication skills; able to motivate others.	Bachelor's or master's degree within a family and consumer sciences program.
Child Care Worker Teacher's Aide	Help care for children in a home, school, or center. Supervise and entertain children individually or in groups.	Creative, dependable, patient, and competent in handling classroom situations.	Some positions require only a high school diploma.
Nursery School Teacher Kindergarten or Primary Teacher	Introduce children to basic math, language, science, and social studies concepts. Help children learn to interact well with others.	Strong interest in educational and emotional development of children.	Bachelor's degree in early childhood education.
Homemaker's Aide	Helps homemakers manage their homes; may include convalescent care, house-cleaning, and food purchase and preparation.	Enjoys homemaking and working with people.	High school diploma with some postsecondary training.
Elder Care Aide	Helps elderly people with activities of daily living; promotes maintenance of independent living arrangements.	Enjoys working with elderly people and is sensitive to their needs.	High school diploma.

added benefit of this training would be its application to your own family roles.

People who choose careers in family studies and human services usually like people and want to help them. Individuals with potential for successful careers tend to be flexible, open to establishing close relationships with others, and comfortable with discussing thoughts and feelings. They appreciate the importance of interpersonal relationships and are motivated to help others become the best individuals and family members they are capable of becoming.

For many family-related careers, your place of employment would be a school, government agency, or private company. Some of these careers, however, could provide you with an opportunity for **entrepreneurship** (starting and owning your own business). For instance, you could provide child care in your own home or open your own nursery school. As an image consultant, you could operate your own consulting firm. If you have writing skills, you could be a freelance writer.

A job description is provided in 6-4 for each of the careers listed. Some of the personal characteristics essential for success in each career are also given. All the careers described require at least a four-year college degree except where noted.

Decisions About Your Education

One of the greatest pressures on adolescents today is the completion of their education. As our society has become more complex, the period of education in preparation for a career has lengthened. More and more students are continuing their educations beyond high school. Scholarships, loans, and grants are available to help students further their education.

Without a doubt, the completion of a high school education is helpful for any job or career you choose. Your choice of subject matter depends on the goal you hope to achieve.

Students who become discouraged and drop out of school usually encounter problems as they attempt to compete in the job market. Although you may think your schooling is confining, it is one of the necessary steps in achieving maturity, 6-5.

6-5 Completing your education is an important step toward career success.

If you are eager to enter the world of work, try taking advantage of part-time job opportunities while continuing your education.

Educational Options

Several types of training and education are available starting in high school and continuing beyond high school. If you settle on a career choice early in life, you will be able to determine the type of education you need.

Technical Training

Technical schools offer occupational training through coursework at both the secondary and postsecondary levels. Public technical schools or area career centers are administered by the Department of Education in each state. Individuals who wish to train for a specific trade while still in high school probably will find these programs helpful. Some technical preparation programs are designed to begin during the last two years of high school and continue for two years following high school graduation. These are often called Tech-Prep (Technical Preparation Education Program). They allow students to receive college credit for work done in high school. The training is completed in community colleges.

Many private technical schools provide occupational training to high school graduates. These generally cost more to attend than public schools. When choosing a school, make sure it has up-to-date equipment and facilities as well as excellent instructors. Private schools should be accredited, which means they meet certain educational standards.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Education Pays Off

Staying in school pays off in dollars and cents throughout life, according to a recent Census Bureau study. On average, a high school graduate will earn $821,000 over a lifetime. A person with a bachelor's degree can expect lifetime earnings of $1,421,000. Individuals who go on to get a medical or law degree will generate even more earnings over the same time period—an estimated $3,013,000.

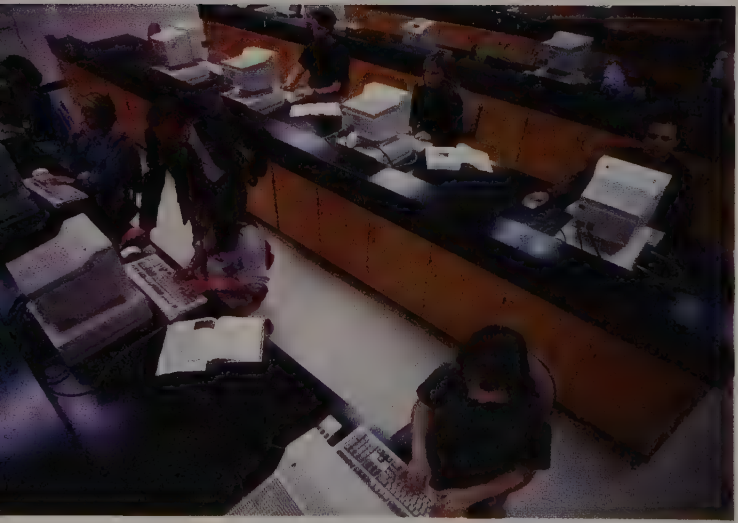
However, degrees in themselves are not enough. To survive in today's fast-changing, competitive job market, workers need skills and experience as well. Taking advantage of refresher courses, on-the-job training, and other opportunities to upgrade your skills can prove invaluable in advancing in the workplace.

Community Colleges

Community colleges can provide you with comprehensive training in career programs. You may take a combination of liberal arts courses to broaden your background and technical courses to learn a trade. Many of the classes are scheduled at night or at times convenient for people who are working, 6-6. Graduates of the two-year programs may find employment in companies that are familiar with the program and use it regularly for finding new employees. Some graduates go on to pursue a four-year degree at a college or university.

Apprenticeships

An **apprenticeship** is a formal, registered program for training an individual in a skilled craft or trade. You will have classroom instruction as well as job training under the supervision of a highly skilled tradesperson. You will learn all the skills of a certain craft, and you will have a written agreement with the employer and/or a union. At the end of your training, you will be awarded a certificate as a skilled journeyman. If you are hardworking, interested in a certain trade, and can handle responsibility, this may be a good program for you.



6-6 Community colleges offer many two-year technical programs that prepare students for jobs in their local communities.

Formal Employer Training

Training programs set up by companies to teach the skills they need are another possibility. You receive thorough training for the specific skills your employer needs. Company training may be offered through regular class instruction by company instructors. You receive pay while you are learning. If you like the particular job and are willing to learn all you can about it, this is usually an excellent opportunity.

Colleges or Universities

If you desire a college degree, you will want to enroll in a college or university that offers degrees in the field that interests you. Many of your college courses will be designed to give you a well-rounded background. The courses that apply to your major field of study provide you with comprehensive training in that area. Upon graduation, your varied background may enable you to seek a variety of jobs in your field. You may want to continue your education in graduate school. Advanced degrees open even more doors to professional careers.

Combining Work with Education

You may have already faced the decision of whether or not to combine part-time work with your education. The majority of high school students today do work, and still more say they would if they could find a job.

You may have considered this decision when you planned your four-year high school program. Many students are enrolled in special programs that combine their academic school courses with on-the-job training. For many, this is a logical choice. These programs allow students to receive their high school education while gaining work experience in related jobs. Other students carry a full schedule of classes and work in part-time jobs after school or on weekends.

Students who decide to work must judge the relative worth of their jobs in relation to their educations and their long-term goals, 6-7. Some students' earnings are needed to help meet family expenses. Other students save the money they earn to help pay for further education. However, studies show that most students who work in part-time jobs spend their money to satisfy their personal needs and wants. Many students spend their money for entertainment, gasoline, cars, and trendy clothing.

One crucial factor in determining the effects of part-time jobs is the amount of time spent working. Studies show that teenagers who spend more than 15 to 20 hours a week at work are likely to feel more of the work's negative effects.

Performance in school is a standard that can be used to measure the effects of a part-time job. If you are working so many hours that your schoolwork begins to suffer, you ought to cut back on your work hours and find a better balance between work and studying.

Some working students find themselves caught in a vicious cycle. Long hours of work keep them from taking part in extracurricular activities. As school becomes less enjoyable, they spend less time on their studies.

6-7 A part-time job while you are in school can fit in with your long-term career goals.

Activities at home are a second way to measure the effects of a job. Working students may have less time for household chores and family activities.

A third factor to consider is the value of the work experience gained in part-time jobs. Many part-time jobs can be labeled as menial. Students may become cynical about the value of the type of work they do. They may develop poor work habits and negative attitudes as a result.

Working during high school does have benefits, especially for students who will not go on to college. A job teaches something that academic high school courses cannot teach—survival in today's working world. A part-time job in school provides work experience that can mean better jobs and higher earnings once students are out of school.

Some part-time jobs are challenging. They allow students to learn new skills and practice cognitive skills (like reading, writing, and math) in practical settings. Earning money gives students a chance to learn the basics of money management. Working also offers experiences in interaction with people. This may lead to a greater understanding of the moods, needs, and preferences of others.

If you are thinking about working part-time during high school, apply the decision-making process to help you decide. See 6-8. If you decide to work, keep a proper balance between school and work. You need to develop both learning skills and workplace skills to succeed at the next stage of your career.

David Hopper

6-8 **Workers have to decide whether their work experiences are positive.**

Developing Workplace Skills

Choosing a career and making plans to obtain the necessary training for that career are important steps in preparing for your future. In addition, it is important to develop workplace skills that will help you become a valuable employee. Two important workplace skills involve leadership and teamwork.

Leadership Skills

An important skill or trait that employers look for in job applicants is leadership. Individuals who can show they have developed leadership skills in preparation for their careers will have a competitive edge in important job interviews.

Leadership is the ability to lead and influence others. Different types of leadership are needed for various roles. A government leader may possess skills that are different from those of a leader of a small social organization. There are, however, some skills that all leaders need.

Leaders are able to communicate their thoughts and those of others effectively. They are able to direct discussions. They are able to get people involved because they can motivate others. They have the ability to look at the whole of a problem and break it down into parts that are solvable. They can work with group members to identify problems, find ways to solve them, and lead the group in carrying out solutions. Successful leaders speak for members of their groups and defend them when necessary. They also act to advance the groups' interests by being representatives for their groups in various situations, 6-9.

Consideration of others' needs is one of the characteristics of good leaders. They recognize the needs of those in their groups. If they are in work-related activities, they also recognize the needs of their employers.

Leaders must provide structure (clear expectations) for their groups. They must be sure that all group members know what is expected of them and what they can expect of their leaders. In school activities, structure helps groups reach their goals. In the work environment, structure assures efficiency and production control.

You may recognize other skills of leaders whom you admire. Some of these skills are described in 6-10.

Responsible leadership is always needed. During your school years, you have many opportunities to develop your leadership skills. Class activities, sports teams, school clubs, and community organizations need students to fill leadership roles. In the working world, persons

SkillsUSA—VICA

6-9 **This young man is speaking up for the members of his organization.**

Leadership Attitudes and Skills

- Having a positive self-concept. Leaders believe in themselves.
- Putting the success of the group ahead of personal needs.
- Having the empathy to listen to others and recognize their needs and rights.
- Taking a stand and being able to resist unreasonable demands.
- Helping groups.
- Weighing alternatives before making decisions and setting goals.
- Providing the stimulation to move groups toward their goals.
- Having convictions and the courage to follow through on decisions that have been made.
- Delegating responsibility and giving credit to others for their work and efforts.

6-10 **People need to develop certain attitudes and skills to be effective leaders.**

who can exert leadership are needed in every occupation and at every level.

The world needs good leaders and good followers. The secret of success lies in the ability of the leader to balance the needs of individuals, the group, and the community. Good leaders achieve goals and understand that most of the work is done by people with needs, skills, and feelings.

Developing leadership skills allows you to take charge of your own life. It also allows you to give something back to the group, community, or workplace. Many of you have these skills, and you are needed to lead others and achieve goals.

Teamwork Skills

Teamwork skills are also very important in becoming an effective worker. A **team** is a group of people who rely on the efforts of each member to achieve success or reach a goal. In the last two decades, there has been an increased use of teams in the workplace. The use of teams of workers has been linked to higher productivity and product quality as well as improved worker morale.

As a member of a team, whether at school or at work, you need to have teamwork skills. If you are a "team player," you understand your role in helping your group achieve its goals. You also learn about others' roles so you and they can work cooperatively toward the best outcomes. In a well-functioning team, the talents and skills of each individual are recognized and used by the team to help it accomplish its tasks. Team members communicate with each other and give feedback. They use negotiation skills as they work through their differences. They motivate each other to succeed. Effective team members are good at planning, negotiating, communicating, motivating, and problem solving.

Problem-Solving Skills

Problem-solving skills are needed for good teamwork to take place. Team members who can recognize a problem, analyze its parts, develop a possible solution, and follow through on the solution tend to be highly valued in the workplace.

When solving a problem, first learn as much as possible about the situation or how the system works. Then think along the lines of "what if?" For instance, if factor A were changed, what would happen to factors B and C? If you think you have a good suggestion, offer it in a positive manner as just that—a suggestion to be considered.

When you offer a problem-solving suggestion, you might say "I'd like to identify a possible problem and suggest a solution." Then describe the problem clearly and objectively. If your solution involves ideas from others, acknowledge their contributions to your thinking.

Try to observe and learn from effective problem-solvers. Avoid people who would rather ignore or complain about a problem than try to solve it. You can learn a great deal from people who sincerely care about the goals of an organization and are interested in solving its problems.

Getting a Job

One of life's challenges is that of looking for and finding a job. As in other types of projects, you can improve your chances of success by engaging in certain behaviors and developing certain skills. You can also polish your skills through rehearsal and practice. The skills you will need include doing job research, developing contacts, learning about job vacancies, and writing a resume and cover letter. Additional skills include presenting yourself effectively in a job interview and following up on the interview.

Doing Job Research

The first step in researching job possibilities is to develop a list of potential employers. These should be organizations that have entry-level positions in the field in which you have an interest. You probably know of at least a few such organizations. By asking teachers, counselors, and people already working in the field, you can expand your list. If you ask these people for the names of other individuals to contact, you will expand your file of helpful contacts even further, 6-11.

After compiling the basic facts, you can call the companies to request any further information you might like. Start by calling the organization's personnel office or human resources department.

6-11 **Talk with people you know about your career interests. They may know people for you to contact.**

Staff members of this office can provide general information on the company, such as its size and purpose. They can also provide guidance on company hiring procedures. This might include where and how often job vacancies are advertised and any tests that may be required.

Developing Job Contacts

Job contacts are people who can help you find a job. An organization's personnel office or human resources department may be a good place to start. However, you may increase your chances of being hired if you make contact with the person who is in a direct position to hire you. A brief letter with a resume followed by a phone call can help this person become acquainted with your qualifications.

It is important this person not feel that you are pressuring him or her to find you a job immediately. Therefore, when you call, keep the conversation pleasant, brief, and courteous. Tell the person that you would be very interested in any upcoming openings. Also mention that you would equally appreciate any career advice this person may have. If the person seems friendly and helpful, you might ask him or her to evaluate your resume and make suggestions as to how it can be improved. If you listen politely and ask one or two related follow-up questions, the potential employer will be more likely to remember you favorably when a job vacancy occurs.

Finding Job Vacancies

When you are ready to find a job, there are several ways to find employers who are looking to hire. These include newspapers, school placement offices, employment agencies, job postings, and the Internet.

Many job openings are listed in the "Help Wanted" section of newspapers. These ads provide basic information about job openings, including brief job descriptions and training and education requirements. It is important to answer these ads early as some jobs are filled quickly.

Your school may have a placement office or a counselor designated to help students find jobs in your community. Employers often contact these offices if they are looking for part-time workers. Schools often have bulletin boards where these job notices are posted.

Another way to locate job vacancies is to visit an employment agency. Counselors at the agencies meet with job seekers and connect them with employers who are looking for workers. There are two types of employment agencies. *Private employment agencies* are businesses that receive fees for their placement services, either from the employers or the job applicants. *Public employment services* are government agencies that help people find jobs in government and other industries. No fees are charged.

Job postings may be located on community bulletin boards. You may have noticed these in entrances to grocery stores or drugstores. Also watch for job postings in stores and restaurants. Small businesses often post signs in their windows if they have job openings.

Using the Internet

You can also search the **Internet**, the worldwide network of computers, for information on job openings. The Internet provides information about jobs in your area as well as across the country. When online, use the search words *job opportunities* and many information sources will be listed. You may also be able to access your local newspaper's classified ads online.

In addition, you can visit company Web sites. A **Web site** is a location on the World Wide Web that provides information, services, or products. Each Web site is owned and managed by an individual, company, or organization. You can learn basic information about a company by accessing their home page. In many cases, you can find out about vacancies simply by accessing this Web site. It's helpful to check the company's Web site on a regular basis so that you can stay informed on new vacancies and other developments. Information on how to apply for positions is often available on company Web sites.

Writing a Resume and Cover Letter

A **resume** is an information sheet about a person's educational and job background. Your resume is the main instrument by which potential employers evaluate your suitability for any vacancies, 6-12. At minimum, it should contain your name, address, and telephone number; your educational background; your work experience; and any memberships in work-related associations or organizations. Some job seekers like to include additional information, such as a one-sentence statement of their career objective and a list of areas of expertise (specific skills), with an explanatory paragraph on each.

As you progress in your career, you will find that you gain experience in many different areas. In updating or rewriting your resume, you can select the areas of experience that are most appropriate for the job you are seeking. By customizing your resume to the requirements of individual jobs, you can increase your chances of consideration.

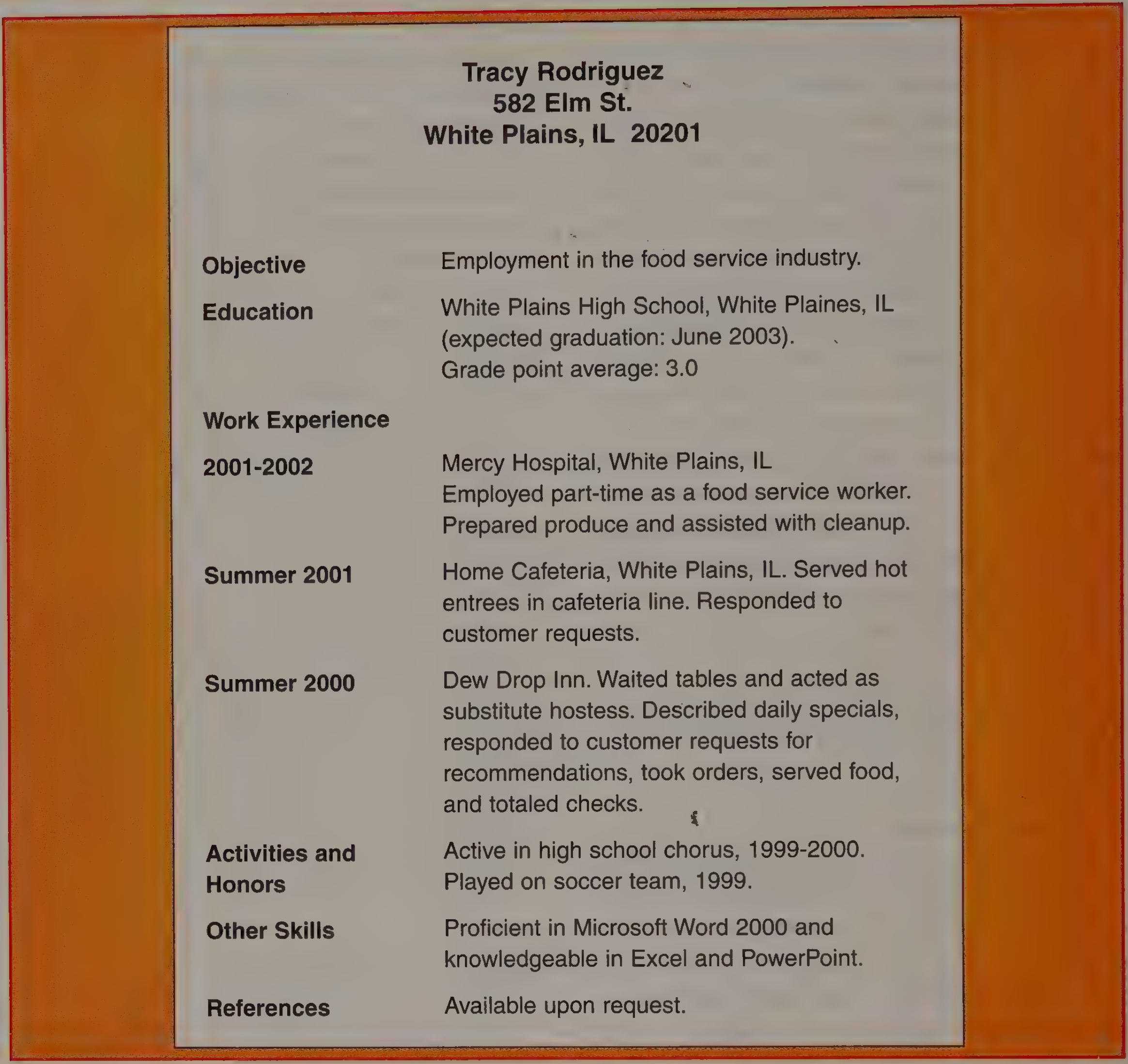
It is important, however, to be honest about the information you put on your resume. Although there is nothing wrong with "putting your best foot forward," dishonesty is never advisable. If you misrepresent the truth, you will live with the guilt of knowing you have been dishonest and the fear that your dishonesty will be discovered. At worst, your misstatements will be discovered and your reputation will be damaged. Either way, you will have gained nothing. Honesty is always the best policy.

A **cover letter** addressed to the appropriate person is sent with your resume, 6-13. The cover letter is meant to "cover" or introduce the accompanying material. Like the resume, the letter should be prepared using a computer and printed on a good grade of plain white or ivory stationery. It should be free of misspellings, grammatical errors, or other mistakes.

The Job Interview

Even experienced professionals can feel apprehensive about job interviews. The feeling that you are being judged is rarely a comfortable one. However, you can use several strategies to increase the likelihood of a job offer.

First, be certain of the time and place of the interview. Estimate the time you think you need to get ready for and travel to the interview. Then build in some "buffer" time in case you get lost, make a wrong turn, have a flat tire, or are otherwise delayed. Unless you are quite sure about how to reach the interview location,



Tracy Rodriguez
582 Elm St.
White Plains, IL 20201

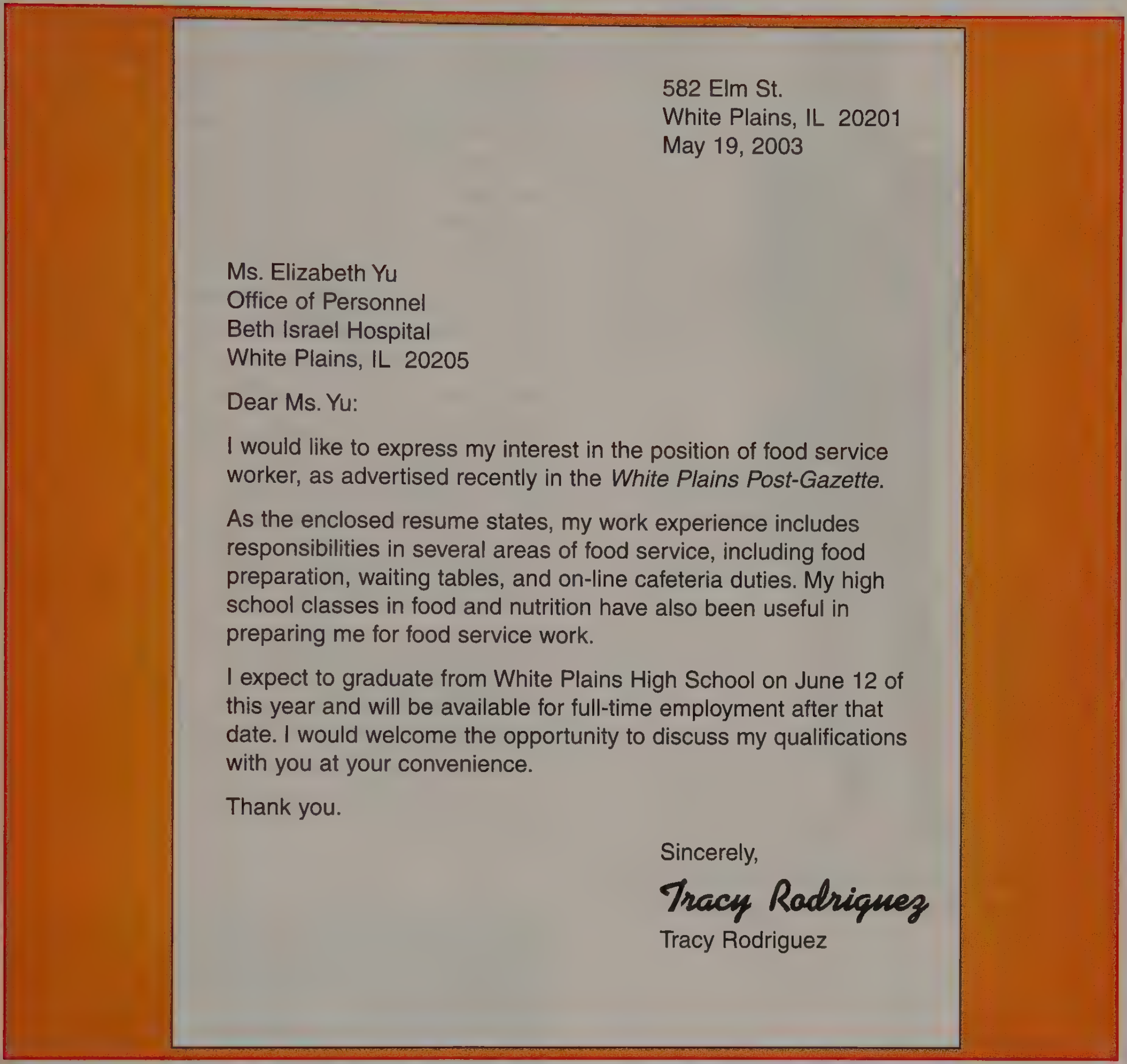
Objective	Employment in the food service industry.
Education	White Plains High School, White Plaines, IL (expected graduation: June 2003). Grade point average: 3.0
Work Experience	
2001-2002	Mercy Hospital, White Plains, IL Employed part-time as a food service worker. Prepared produce and assisted with cleanup.
Summer 2001	Home Cafeteria, White Plains, IL. Served hot entrees in cafeteria line. Responded to customer requests.
Summer 2000	Dew Drop Inn. Waited tables and acted as substitute hostess. Described daily specials, responded to customer requests for recommendations, took orders, served food, and totaled checks.
Activities and Honors	Active in high school chorus, 1999-2000. Played on soccer team, 1999.
Other Skills	Proficient in Microsoft Word 2000 and knowledgeable in Excel and PowerPoint.
References	Available upon request.

6-12 Potential employers will judge you in part by the appearance and content of your resume.

it is a good idea to find a map and rehearse your route ahead of time.

If you are delayed and know you will be late, call the interviewer immediately and offer to reschedule your appointment. The interviewer will appreciate your courtesy. Calling ahead of time is much better than keeping the interviewer waiting and then showing up late with an excuse.

Wear businesslike attire and pay attention to your grooming. Because this will probably be your first meeting, the interviewer will have to depend to some extent on external cues in evaluating your employability, 6-14. You may have a superb array of personal qualities, but most people find it difficult to overcome a poor initial impression based on careless grooming.



582 Elm St.
White Plains, IL 20201
May 19, 2003

Ms. Elizabeth Yu
Office of Personnel
Beth Israel Hospital
White Plains, IL 20205

Dear Ms. Yu:

I would like to express my interest in the position of food service worker, as advertised recently in the *White Plains Post-Gazette.*

As the enclosed resume states, my work experience includes responsibilities in several areas of food service, including food preparation, waiting tables, and on-line cafeteria duties. My high school classes in food and nutrition have also been useful in preparing me for food service work.

I expect to graduate from White Plains High School on June 12 of this year and will be available for full-time employment after that date. I would welcome the opportunity to discuss my qualifications with you at your convenience.

Thank you.

Sincerely,

Tracy Rodriguez

Tracy Rodriguez

6-13 **A cover letter introduces the material on your resume.**

It is a good idea to bring a copy of your resume to the interview, as well as any samples of your work that might be appropriate. You should also have a list of people who have agreed to serve as references, along with their addresses and phone numbers. Bring a pen and notepad with which to jot down notes. Also bring a brief list of questions to ask the interviewer.

As your experience with interviews increases, you will find a wide range of interviewer characteristics. Expert interviewers will strike a balance between sharing information about the position and asking questions that give you a chance to express yourself. Be prepared to answer standard interview questions. Examples of such questions are listed in 6-15.

6-14 **Businesslike attire is best for most job interviews. Also be sure to bring a pen and notepad.**

As a rule, it is never a good idea to admit true weaknesses in a job interview, even if you are asked about them. If you are hired, your employer will become familiar with your weaknesses soon enough. Successful answers to this type of question tend to center on "weaknesses" that the company probably views as strengths. For instance, a person might say, "I tend to get so caught up in my work that I work long hours and ignore other areas of my life, such as leisure time."

If the interviewer asks what hourly wage or salary you are seeking, it is usually best not to name a figure. If you name a figure and the interviewer thinks it is too high, it may put you out of the running. If you name a figure that is too low, you may be limiting your earnings. One good response is to ask the interviewer, "What wage (or salary) is usual for this type of position?"

Sometimes the interviewer will ask you why you are interested in leaving your present position. Be careful how you respond to this question. Discussion of dissatisfaction with your current job almost always works against you. Regardless of the validity of the employee's complaints, the management of one company usually tends to sympathize with the management of other companies. Rather than discussing past job difficulties, try to answer in positive terms. You might say, "I am seeking to grow as a person by taking on additional responsibilities" or "I am interested in contributing to this area of my chosen field."

Common Interview Questions

- Please tell me about yourself.
- What type of work are you seeking?
- Why are you interested in this type of work?
- What are your long-term career goals?
- Why do you think you are qualified for this job?
- What are your strengths? Your weaknesses?
- Why did you leave your last position?
- What salary are you looking for?
- When could you start work?

6-15 **Be ready to answer your interviewer's questions about your qualifications and career goals.**

Usually, near the close of the interview, you will be asked if you have any additional questions. This is the time to clarify any uncertainties you may have or to request any additional information. Job seekers may ask questions such as, "How soon do you expect to fill this vacancy?" "What is the salary range for this position?" or "What fringe benefits are offered with this position?" It is important, however, to emphasize what you can do for the company rather than what you expect the company to do for you. When the interview is over, thank the interviewer for taking the time to see you and leave promptly.

Following Up

Once the interview is over, it makes a good impression to send the interviewer a brief letter. It should thank him or her for the opportunity to learn more about the company and express your continued interest in the position. Even if the interviewer has concluded that your qualifications are not right for the current position, a letter such as this may position you for consideration for future vacancies.

Strategies for Job Success

Succeeding on the job and qualifying for raises and promotions calls for certain personal qualities and skills. These include

- doing the work to the best of your ability
- learning to accept advice and criticism
- maintaining high ethical standards
- being cooperative, considerate, respectful, and courteous with customers and coworkers.

Work to the Best of Your Ability

You can succeed at most jobs if you exhibit a positive attitude and try hard to do the best work you possibly can. Maintain a businesslike, task-oriented attitude. Employers hire you to do a job. They expect the people they hire to use their skills and knowledge to help the business prosper and grow. Give your employer your best effort.

Accept Advice and Learn from Your Mistakes

Each company tends to have its own set of expectations and ways of doing things. You can increase the likelihood of job success if you follow the instructions given to you by your supervisor. New employees are often better off keeping a low profile until they learn the customs of their new work situation.

Sooner or later, everyone makes a work-related mistake and must decide whether and when the supervisor should be informed. It is far better to give your supervisor advance notice of a potential problem so he or she can plan for "damage control" rather than waiting until your mistake is discovered.

New employees will make mistakes; that is to be expected. The important thing is that you learn from your mistakes. Accept criticism in a positive manner when it is given. Learn to recognize your own shortcomings and try to remedy them.

In difficult job situations, people are challenged in additional ways. Getting along with others whose personal priorities may differ from yours can be harder work than you may think. Learning to relate well to a difficult supervisor can call forth all the patience you can muster. The important thing to remember is you can learn as much from difficult situations as from good ones. By watching how supervisors and other authority figures operate, you can learn valuable lessons about what tactics are most effective, 6-16. This will be of use to you if you become a supervisor yourself someday. You can also learn a great deal about doing a job well from someone even though you may not care for all of his or her personality traits.

Maintain High Ethical Standards

Ethical standards are standards of behavior that are based on a set of moral principles or personal priorities. These principles guide the conduct of a group or society. They enable people to live and work in a harmonious manner. Employers seek workers who maintain high ethical standards in the workplace and in their personal lives.

6-16 By observing your supervisor, you may learn skills that you can use someday if you become a supervisor yourself.

Honesty

Honesty is an important ethical practice. This means you do not steal from your employer—time, money, or products. You will not be stealing time from your employer if you arrive at work on time, take only the allotted time for meals and breaks, and work a full day. You limit personal phone calls (preferably calling during breaks and lunch periods) and limit personal conversations with coworkers.

Some employees violate company policies by using the computers provided for their work for personal correspondence or entertainment. These employees may waste hours of company time each day "surfing" various sites, e-mailing friends and relatives, or exchanging opinions on chat lines. Some play games they can access on their computers.

To try to control this behavior, many companies use tracking software to monitor employees' computer use, and they are disciplining violators. Companies have the legal right to check their employees' e-mail since the computers are company property. As soon as they are hired, new employees should become familiar with company computer-use policies and follow them carefully.

Many successful employees believe it is very important to avoid causing their supervisor inconvenience, especially on short notice. This means requesting personal or medical leave well in advance so he or she can adjust work schedules accordingly. If you wake up feeling sick, it is important to inform your supervisor as early as possible. This is better than letting your supervisor wonder where you are until you get around to calling. Be sure to call in sick only when you really are ill. It does not take the average supervisor long to figure out which employees are taking advantage of the company's sick leave policies.

Always cooperate fully with financial audits and rules for use of expense accounts. Few behaviors can ruin your reputation more quickly than lying about or mishandling money on the job. If wrongdoing is proven, you may be fired or face criminal prosecution. If wrongdoing is suspected but not proven, your reputation will still suffer. Either way, you will have a difficult time regaining your good name.

Also respect company property. Don't take office supplies home or copy software programs purchased only for office use. These practices are unethical.

In general, make an effort to be loyal to the company that employs you. Do not share company information that is not meant to be shared. Keep company business confidential. Try hard to see that your behavior reflects high personal standards that reflect well on the company.

By adhering to high ethical standards, you will feel good about yourself. You will not have to worry about "getting caught" for wrongdoing. You will earn the respect of people whose opinions matter. A good reputation will stay with you throughout your career and, indeed, your life.

Interpersonal Skills

Many of the workplace skills that lead to job success are interpersonal skills. These are skills that enable you to get along with customers, clients, coworkers, and supervisors. A person with good interpersonal skills has a respectful, cooperative, helpful demeanor. He or she is considerate and courteous with customers as well as coworkers. These are traits that help you in your day-to-day living. They will also help you succeed on the job.

Strategies That Lead to Advancement on the Job

It is a basic rule of work life that promotions are earned, not demanded. You will be given additional responsibility (and higher pay) only if the quality of your work warrants it. If you lack adequate interpersonal skills, you can be passed over for a promotion even if your work is excellent.

Assuming your work is good and you are getting along well with others, what else can you do to increase the likelihood of advancement? First, you can look the part. Image consultants advise aspiring workers to dress for the job they would like to have rather than the one they have. Pay close attention to what your supervisor and his or her colleagues are wearing. Follow their example, 6-17. The way you dress will send a message to your supervisors about your personal standards and your dedication to the job.

6-17 If you want to be considered for a promotion, observe what supervisors wear at your place of work and dress accordingly.

A second way to advance on the job is to offer to take on additional responsibility—even if it means putting in extra hours. Your supervisor may then begin to view you as an assistant rather than just another worker. Whether or not you receive a promotion as a result, you will gain the satisfaction of contributing to your company. You are also likely to gain valuable experience. This experience can be outlined on your resume and will enhance your overall employability.

Third, pursue opportunities for additional education and training related to your chosen career. In a competitive job market, the person with the greater preparation usually gets the job.

Fourth, join work-related organizations and associations. These offer job-related educational activities as well as opportunities for **networking** (making professional contacts). Participation in educational activities will help you increase your expertise while learning about job opportunities with other companies. These activities allow you to get to know prospective new employers. Most employers prefer to hire people they know or people who have worked for someone they know rather than strangers.

Finally, always keep your desired next job in the back of your mind. Update your resume and keep your file of job contacts current. Although you do not want your resume to reflect a history of "job hopping," it is a good idea to stay alert to new opportunities. These may be both within and outside your present situation.

Changing Jobs

Sooner or later, it may be necessary for you and your employer to part ways. Perhaps you have found a better job, or maybe your employer feels you are just not right for the position. Whatever the reasons, it is important to leave under the best terms possible because your job history will follow you for the rest of your career. New employers will be asking you and your former employers about how well you did in your former positions and why you left. The greater the positives and the fewer the negatives, the better off you will be.

If you are moving to a new position, be sure to give your employer notice of your departure date well in advance. A minimum of two weeks is considered standard for most jobs. Do your best to finish up the work you have been given. Pass along information to the new person who will be taking on your tasks so that he or she can continue with as little disruption as possible.

Do not make petty remarks about the job you are leaving. Be careful not to put down your supervisor or other individuals with whom you may have had problems. Do not send bitter or angry e-mail messages, which reflect poorly on you and can be forwarded to others. Rather, thank everyone for all they have done to help you in your work. At this point, your focus should be on looking ahead to your new situation and saying good-bye to the people in your current one.

If you are being “let go” because of poor job performance, it is even more important to leave on the best possible terms. Just because things did not go well on this job doesn’t mean you won’t do well on another. You may feel that you have been treated unfairly. Listen carefully, however, to the reasons given for your termination and try to learn from them.

If you will not have immediate health insurance coverage in your new job, you may wish to look into continuation of coverage under your present employer. Check with the personnel office to obtain the necessary forms.

Chapter 6 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Sources of career information include your school guidance office, employees already working in your field of interest, representatives of educational institutions, and your parents, relatives, and family friends.
- Factors affecting career choice include your interests, personal priorities, aptitudes, and abilities.
- To organize your thoughts and efforts, it is a good idea to start with a career plan. In a career plan, you list your short- and long-term career goals and what you need to do to achieve them.
- Successful workers in family studies and human services careers tend to be flexible, open to others, and comfortable discussing thoughts and feelings.
- Several types of training and education are available beyond high school. The type you choose will depend on your career goals.
- Combining work with education has pros and cons. Students who decide to work must judge the relative worth of their jobs in relation to their education and their long-term goals.
- It is important to develop workplace skills that will help you become a valuable employee. Two important workplace skills involve leadership and teamwork.
- A successful job search often includes doing research on prospective employers, making contacts, writing effective resumes and cover letters, and performing well in job interviews.
- A variety of characteristics and behaviors increase the chances of job success, including doing the work to the best of your ability; learning to accept advice and criticism; maintaining ethical standards; cooperating with others; and being considerate, respectful, and courteous to customers and coworkers.
- The chances of workplace advancement can be enhanced by appropriate dress, willingness to assume additional responsibility, networking, and pursuit of additional educational qualifications.
- Whatever the reasons for changing jobs, it is important to leave under the best terms possible because your job history will follow you for the rest of your career.

Review

1. What two sets of needs are met by the "right" job?
2. Give an example of an aptitude. Then give an example of a career that might be appropriate for someone with this aptitude.
3. Give an example of a short-term career goal and a long-term career goal.
4. What is an "added benefit" of a career in family studies and human services?
5. Briefly describe an apprenticeship.
6. Name three advantages and three disadvantages of combining work with education.
7. Describe two leadership skills and two teamwork skills.
8. What is the first step in researching jobs?
9. What items should be included in a resume?
10. List three suggestions for a successful job interview.
11. Name three ethical standards employers expect their employees to maintain.
12. How much notice should you give an employer if you are leaving your job?

React

1. Study career information resources that are available to you. Choose a career you think you would enjoy. In a written report, describe the education or training you would need.
2. Hold a class debate about the pros and cons of combining work with education.
3. Make an appointment with your high school counselor to find out what information he or she has about opportunities for further education or training beyond high school.
4. Ask your school guidance counselor to visit the class to discuss various types of tests, such as tests of aptitude and vocational interest or preference, available through the guidance office.
5. Choose a leader with national prominence. (The person can be a leader in any field, not necessarily politics.) Research the person's background and his or her climb to prominence. Prepare a report on this person, focusing on his or her leadership skills. Present the report to the class.
6. Interview adults about work decisions they have made. Ask questions about how they have prepared for and found jobs. Find out whether and why they have changed jobs. What do they feel they have learned in their various job settings about their work? About how to get along with people?
7. In small groups, observe and interview several adults engaged in various occupations in their respective workplaces. Share what you have learned with the class.

Reflect

1. Name a television program in which one of the characters has a career that interests you. List three reasons why this career is appealing to you.
2. Describe the ways in which your career objectives have changed since you were a small child. How do you think your objectives might change in the future?
3. Part of making a good impression on the job is having a good vocabulary. In the newspaper, find three words you're not sure you understand and look them up in the dictionary. Then compose two sentences using each word, taking care to use the words correctly.
4. Part of making a good impression on a job interview is dressing appropriately. Describe two outfits that you believe would make a positive impression in a job interview. Describe two outfits that you feel would not make a positive impression.

Chapter 7

Decisions Affecting Your Health

Terms to Know

- wellness
- MyPyramid
- hemoglobin
- osteoporosis
- Dietary Guidelines for Americans
- cholesterol
- saturated fat
- unsaturated fat
- anorexia nervosa
- bulimia
- blood pooling
- stress
- support groups

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- choose nutritious foods that promote good health.
- describe the benefits of regular exercise.
- protect the health of your eyes, hearing, teeth, and skin.
- describe causes of stress and ways to deal effectively with stress.
- identify community and other resources that promote health and wellness.
- make informed consumer choices related to health.

Most people have the good fortune to be born healthy. Heredity causes some limitations, of course. Environmental factors, such as accidents, may also affect a person's health. Still, most people begin life with a healthy body.

Through the years, though, people often become careless with their health. They think advanced technology and new cure-alls can save them from their own disregard of basic health rules.

Slowly, however, we are waking up. We are realizing that the key to good health is prevention. Good health is not just a matter of chance. It is making smart decisions. It is taking responsibility for your own well-being. It means modifying your lifestyle—what you eat and how you exercise. It means making wise decisions concerning tobacco and drugs.

Planning for Family Wellness

In recent years, Americans have begun to recognize the importance of wellness. **Wellness** is a state of physical, mental, and emotional health. It is not merely the absence of disease, but rather robust, optimum health. Planning for family wellness emphasizes personal habits that prevent illness, as well as managing illness if it occurs.

Making a commitment to wellness may not be easy. Such a commitment requires self-discipline, planning ahead to avoid unhealthful foods or situations, making time for exercise, and getting needed sleep. It includes the ability to resist peer pressure, if necessary, to avoid unhealthy practices such as smoking.

The rewards of a commitment to wellness are considerable. A person who is healthy looks good, has ample energy, and may find more joy in life. A person who looks and feels good has a way of communicating a sense of well-being to those around him or her.

People who focus on wellness throughout life also tend to avoid illness—especially the "lifestyle diseases" caused in part by unhealthful habits such as smoking, failure to exercise, or a high-fat diet. With a commitment to wellness, fewer days are lost from career or family activities in order to struggle with painful and often life-threatening illness or health problems. Premature death is less of a threat. Healthy people are around longer to enjoy their children and grandchildren, their friends, their work and hobbies, and everything else they think of as precious in life.

Preventive Health Practices

As a teenager, you have several factors working for you. First and most obvious is the fact that your body is young. Second, a wealth of research-based knowledge concerning good health is available to you. Finally, good health is "in style." It is discussed in newspapers, in magazines, and on TV. The nation's attention is focused on ways to promote good health and prevent disease.

Your challenge is to use your teenage years as a springboard for developing a healthy life pattern. It may be hard for you to imagine that your life may someday slow down because of health problems. Your current levels of energy and endurance may seem endless. However, statistics show that many adults who seem healthy suddenly face major health problems. They often find that their health problems can be traced to poor health habits formed during their teenage years.

You cannot know what your future holds. Your smartest move is to do all you can to achieve good health now. At the same time, you need to establish a pattern of living that will help you prevent ill health in the future. Your health is one of the most important resources you have. See 7-1.

To maintain that resource, your pattern of living should include certain health practices. These include

- eating the foods that will meet your nutritional needs and maintain your ideal body weight;
- adopting an appropriate exercise program;
- getting sufficient sleep;

David Hopper

7-1 The challenge for teens is to use their high levels of energy to achieve good health and establish a healthy pattern of living.

- protecting other aspects of your health; and
- managing stress effectively.

Nutrition and Your Health

The way you look and feel has a lot to do with what you eat. Good nutrition means eating a variety of foods that will supply your body with the nutrients needed to keep you healthy. Teens need more nutrients than adults. All teens experience a period of rapid growth during which their energy needs increase. They also need to see that vitamin and mineral requirements are met during this growth spurt.

This is also a time of busy schedules, skipped meals, fast-food stops, and junk-food binges. The pace of some families is so hectic that well-planned family meals are a rarity. Many dual-career families today include teen members who may work as well. It often becomes the responsibility of each adult and teen family member to attend to his or her own nutritional needs. Teens must be aware of the foods needed in a balanced diet as they make their daily food selections. To simplify the process of choosing foods to fulfill daily nutritional needs, a basic food guide has been designed.

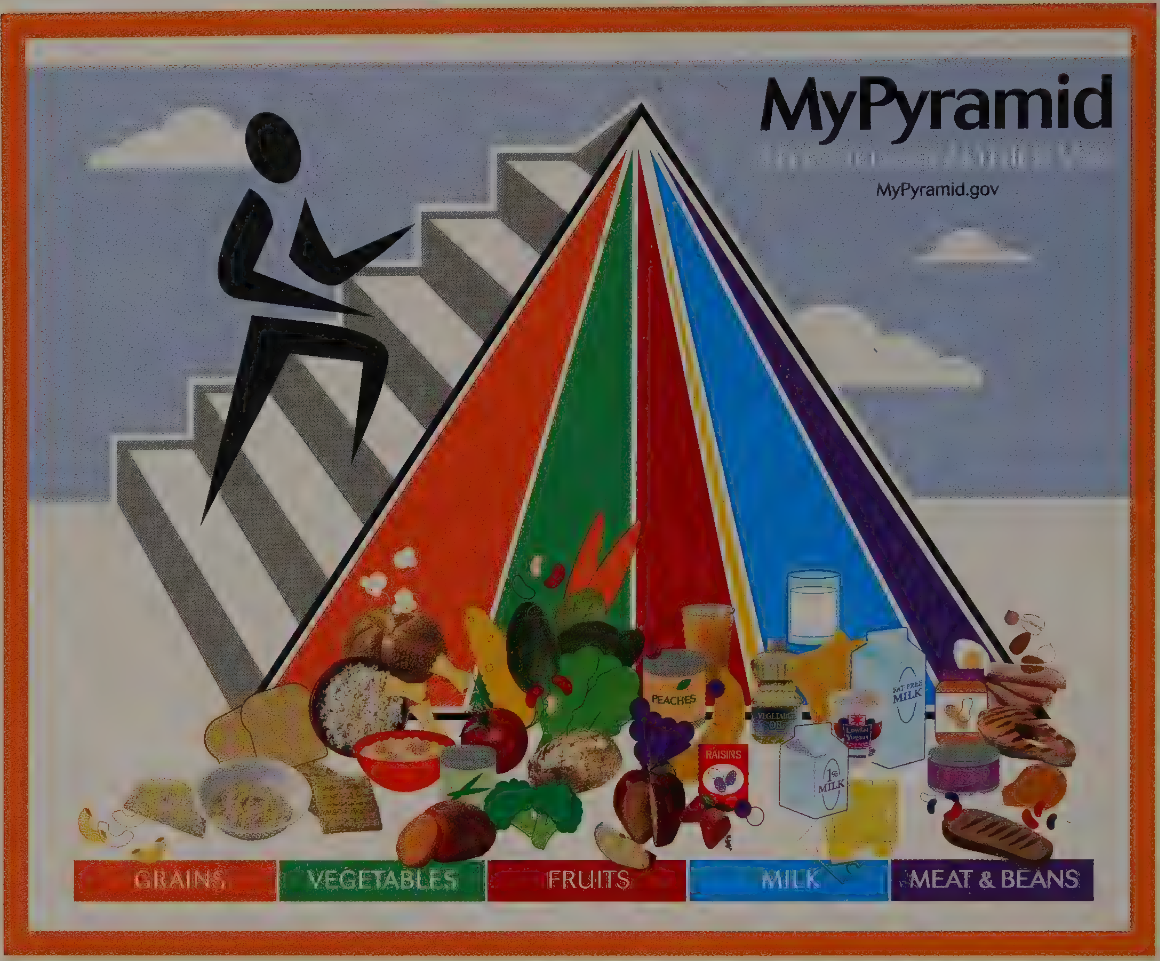
MyPyramid

MyPyramid is a tool developed by the U.S. Department of Agriculture to help people make healthier food and physical activity choices. This plan sorts foods of similar nutritive values into groups. These groups are grains, vegetables, fruits, milk, and meat and beans. Eating the suggested amounts of foods from each group daily will provide you with the nutrients you need. See 7-2.

The recommended daily intakes are determined by a person's calorie needs. By going to the MyPyramid.gov Web site and entering your age, gender, and activity level, you can learn how much food you need daily from each food group. Ranges of amounts are given in the discussion of the food groups to follow.

Grains Group

Carbohydrates, B-vitamins, iron, some incomplete protein, and fiber are provided by foods in this group. Carbohydrates are the body's chief source of energy. B-vitamins help the body digest foods efficiently. They also help keep the skin and the nervous system healthy. Iron is needed to make hemoglobin in blood. (**Hemoglobin** is a component of blood that carries oxygen to all the cells of the body.) Six to ten ounce-equivalents from the grains group are needed daily.


MyPyramid
MyPyramid.gov
PEACHES
RAISINS
FAT FREE MILK
1% MILK
GRAINS
VEGETABLES
FRUITS
MILK
MEAT & BEANS

7-2 MyPyramid divides foods into five groups plus oils. The widths suggest how much food a person should choose from each group.

Vegetable Group

Like fruits, vegetables promote normal bodily growth and maintenance. A good source of vitamin A should be included in the diet several times a week. Examples of good sources include dark green and dark yellow foods such as spinach, green leafy vegetables, carrots, sweet potatoes, and pumpkin. Two and one-half to four cups are needed daily.

Fruit Group

Fruits provide vitamins and minerals. They are needed for normal bodily growth and maintenance and for the regulation of body processes. A good source of vitamin C should be included in the diet every day. Examples of good sources include citrus fruits, such as oranges and grapefruit, as well as strawberries and cantaloupe. Two to two and one-half cups are recommended each day.

Milk Group

Calcium is the most important nutrient in milk and milk products. It is needed for healthy bones and teeth. Phosphorus, riboflavin, protein, and vitamins A and D (in whole and fortified milk) are also found in milk and milk products.

Some people think that milk is important just for children. Calcium, however, is needed daily by people of all ages.

Years of calcium deficiency may cause a condition called **osteoporosis** later in life. People who have osteoporosis lose bone mass, which causes bones to weaken. Vertebrae may collapse, causing stooped posture, and bones may break easily. This condition affects more women than men.

The recommended number of cups from the milk and milk products group is three for adults.

Meat and Beans Group

Protein is the most important nutrient in this group. It is needed for the growth and repair of body tissues. B-vitamins and iron are also provided by these foods. Five and one-half to seven ounces from this group each day are recommended.

Oils Group

An additional group consists of foods made from fats, oils, sugars, and other food substances. These foods provide energy but little nutritional value. Some of the foods in this group are candy, salad dressings, butter, margarine, jellies, syrups, and soft drinks. These foods are not needed for good health, but add flavor and variety to meals. Because they supply calories but few nutrients, foods from this group should be eaten sparingly.

Dietary Guidelines for Americans

The MyPyramid food guidance system is based on the 2005 **Dietary Guidelines for Americans.** These guidelines represent federal nutrition policy and are designed to assist consumers in making healthier food and physical activity choices. The following recommendations can help you build a healthy diet and lifestyle, 7-3.

Adequate Nutrients Within Calorie Needs

Eat a variety of nutritionally rich foods and beverages from each of the basic food groups. As you select these foods, choose foods that limit the intake of saturated and trans fats, cholesterol, added sugars, salt, and alcohol.

7-3 The Dietary Guidelines for Americans are intended for children (ages two years and older) and adults of all ages.

Weight Management

To maintain body weight in a healthy range, balance calories from foods and beverages with calories expended. There is a right number of calories for you to eat each day. This number depends on your age, activity level, and whether you are trying to gain, maintain, or lose weight.

Physical Activity

Engage in regular physical activity and reduce sedentary activities to promote health, psychological well-being, and a healthy body weight. Teenagers should be physically active for 60 minutes every day, or most every day. Also include cardiovascular conditioning, stretching exercises for flexibility, and resistance exercises for muscle strength and endurance.

Food Groups to Encourage

Consume a sufficient amount of fruits and vegetables while staying within energy needs. Two cups of fruit and two and one-half cups of vegetables per day are recommended for a reference 2,000-calorie intake, with higher or lower amounts depending on the calorie level.

Choose a variety of fruits and vegetables each day. In particular, select from all five vegetable subgroups (dark green, orange, legumes, starchy vegetables, and other vegetables) several times a week.

Eat three or more ounces of whole-grain cereals, breads, crackers, rice, or pasta every day. Another three ounces should come from enriched or whole-grain products.

Consume three cups per day of fat free or lowfat milk or equivalent milk products, such as yogurt. One and one-half ounces of cheese equals one cup of milk.

Fats

Consume less than 10 percent of calories from saturated fatty acids and less than 300 mg per day of cholesterol. **Saturated fats**, due to their chemical structure, tend to be solid at room temperature and to come from animal sources. Butter is an example. They are a factor in high blood-cholesterol levels. **Cholesterol** is a fat-like substance in your blood. High blood-cholesterol levels are strongly associated with heart disease.

Keep total fat intake between 20 to 35 percent of calories, with most fats coming from sources of polyunsaturated and monounsaturated fatty acids, such as fish, nuts, and vegetable oils. **Unsaturated fats,** such as olive and canola oil, tend to be liquid at room temperature and to come from plant sources.

Carbohydrates

Choose fiber-rich fruits, vegetables, and whole grains often. Choose and prepare foods and beverages with little added sugars or caloric sweeteners.

Reduce the incidence of dental caries by practicing good oral hygiene and consuming sugar- and starch-containing foods and beverages less frequently.

Sodium and Potassium

Consume less than 2,300 mg of sodium (approximately one teaspoon of salt) per day. Salt is present in many beverages and foods, especially processed foods, condiments, sauces, pickled foods, and salty snacks, 7-4. At the same time, consume potassium-rich foods, such as fruits and vegetables.

Alcoholic Beverages

Alcoholic beverages should not be consumed by those who cannot restrict their alcohol intake, women of childbearing age who may become pregnant, pregnant and lactating women, and children and adolescents. Alcoholic beverages should be avoided when engaging in activities that require attention, skill, or coordination, such as driving or operating machinery.

Food Safety

To avoid microbial foodborne illness:

- Clean hands, food contact surfaces, and fruits and vegetables.
- Separate raw, cooked, and ready-to-eat foods while shopping, preparing, or storing foods.
- Cook foods to a safe temperature to kill microorganisms.
- Chill (refrigerate) perishable food promptly and defrost foods properly.

7-4 **Many processed foods are high in salt.**

Other Tips for Healthful Eating

People today eat many of their meals at fast-food restaurants. These meals are quick, convenient, and inexpensive. Most fast-food items provide nutrients, but many are high in fat, sodium, and sugar, and low in vitamins. If lowfat foods are selected, however, your nutritional needs can be met. Watch the "extras" if you're counting calories. Calories in cheese, bacon, and sauces can add up quickly. Shakes and soft drinks also add extra calories. When these foods are eaten, more nutritious foods tend to be ignored.

Snacks can be nutritious and can supply many of the nutrients the body needs daily. Try to substitute lowfat, nutritious snacks for high-fat foods. Select fresh fruits and vegetables, lowfat yogurt, lowfat whole-wheat crackers, and cereal with fat free milk, 7-5. Substitute water or naturally sweetened fruit juice for carbonated beverages.

If you are an athlete in training, it is especially important to select foods from each of the food groups, but also add more calories for increased energy. Choose carbohydrates, such as breads, cereals, and pastas, which provide the best fuel for muscles. Eat three to four hours before participating in strenuous athletics. Also drink plenty of water or juices to maintain energy production and control body temperature. Avoid beverages containing caffeine, which increase urine production and deplete body fluids.

Weight Control

Obesity (overweight) is increasing steadily in the United States. More than

7-5 Fresh vegetables make nutritious snacks.

half of Americans are now considered overweight. Doctors believe that obesity accounts for much adult-onset diabetes as well as a variety of other health problems such as heart disease.

Many people want to lose weight. Others may wish to gain weight. If people are seriously underweight or overweight, or if they have other health problems, they should see a doctor.

For the average, healthy person who wants to shed a few pounds, patience and moderation are the keys. Drastic fad diets seldom work, and they may pose health risks. Many fad diets emphasize one food or food group and eliminate the others. These diets can be extremely dangerous to growing teens. Other diets result in weight loss due to the loss of body fluids. When you go off the diet, you gain back the fluid lost as well as the pounds. Popular fad diets usually aren't designed for teens. No diet of less than 1,800 calories is meant for a growing body.

The principle for weight loss is simple. Your body needs a certain amount of energy (calories) to maintain its weight. To lose weight, you have to use up more energy than you take in through food. This means eating less or exercising more, or some combination of the two. This sounds simple, and it can be. The best weight-loss plan is to use the Food Guide Pyramid and exercise regularly.

People can eat the recommended number of servings from all five groups and still lose weight. They just have to make smart food choices. They can choose skim milk and lowfat yogurt instead of whole milk and ice cream. They can have a bowl of whole-wheat cereal at breakfast instead of fried eggs, sausage, and a buttered biscuit or croissant. They can save calories by eating steamed broccoli or carrots instead of creamed corn. They can save more calories by eating a grilled, baked, or broiled chicken breast instead of a greasy hamburger. Good nutrition does not have to be high in calories.

Weight that is lost slowly and steadily is more likely to stay off. One pound of body weight is equal to 3,500 calories. Thus, a pound can be lost in seven days by cutting back 500 calories a day. A pound can also be lost by increasing activity to burn an extra 500 calories a day. For most people, a combination of decreased calorie intake and increased physical activity works best.

Eating Disorders

Some teens and adults, especially women, suffer from eating disorders. They are obsessed with being slim. Their obsessions may result in malnutrition, serious illness, or even death. Anorexia nervosa and bulimia are two common eating disorders.

People who suffer from **anorexia nervosa** have an intense fear of being obese, sometimes described as a "fat phobia." They have distorted images of their bodies. Even when they are sickly thin, they may pinch some skin and complain about how fat they are. As a result, they starve themselves. They refuse to eat and may exercise excessively to become even thinner.

People with anorexia nervosa are usually under some kind of emotional stress. Many are perfectionists or overachievers who have feelings of inadequacy and self-doubt. Food becomes one area in which they can assert themselves. They prove their self-control to themselves by refusing to eat even when they are starving.

Bulimia is often associated with anorexia nervosa. **Bulimia** is sometimes described as "desperate overeating" or the "binge-purge syndrome." People with bulimia go on food binges, eating large amounts of high-calorie foods in a short time. Then they feel guilty and purge themselves of the food by vomiting or taking laxatives. They may also go on a strict diet, exercise excessively, and abuse *diuretics* (water-loss pills) in an effort to lose weight. Then when they go on another food binge (usually in secret), they again react by purging, dieting, and exercising. The cycle may go on and on, causing weight fluctuations of 10 or more pounds.

Like anorexia nervosa, bulimia is often triggered by emotional stress. People with bulimia are often high achievers. They strive for perfection in their appearance and performance. They may have wide mood swings based on their performance. They may feel great when they do well and feel depressed when they fall short of their own expectations.

The sooner eating disorders are treated, the better the chances are of avoiding serious health problems. People with eating disorders may show the following symptoms:

- refusal to eat or binge eating
- excessive exercise
- abnormal weight loss or a cycle of weight gains and losses
- vomiting with no other signs of illness
- secretive behavior
- depression

Treatment for eating disorders should address both the physical and emotional problems. The first step is usually hospitalization to treat the effects of malnutrition. Once the body is renourished, psychological counseling can help the person understand and cope with his or her problems.

Regular Exercise

Teenagers are often pictured in scenes of constant activity such as dancing, skating, swimming, or jogging. These active scenes accurately portray the lives of many teenagers, yet many other teenagers are inactive. Some spend as much as 50 hours a week sitting in front of the TV or computer screen. See 7-6. Many people of all ages have a *sedentary* (sitting much of the time) lifestyle.

Regular exercise has a big impact on how you look and feel. Vigorous exercise increases muscle strength, stamina, and coordination. Lung capacity is increased

7-6 **Many teens are inactive. To reach their full health potential, they need to change their living patterns and exercise regularly.**

and blood circulation improves. Exercise promotes flexibility and improves posture. Weight is more easily managed, and stress, boredom, and depression are less likely to occur.

Even with all of these reasons to exercise, some people still find excuses to avoid exercise. They may not like getting hot and sweaty. They may dread the thought of counting push-ups or running around a track. Perhaps they feel they just don't have the time.

If you don't like feeling sweaty, try to arrange your schedule so you exercise just before your daily bath or shower, or try swimming. If you don't like jogging, try bicycling. If you don't like to exercise alone, go to a local YMCA, sign up for an aerobics class, or join a health club. If you decide that good health is one of your goals, you can find a way to exercise.

Adopting an Exercise Program

As high school students, many of you participate in competitive sports programs. You follow carefully designed exercise programs. You use safe equipment and follow proper procedures under the guidance of coaches, 7-7. You benefit from increased knowledge about sports medicine.

Many of you, however, are unable to participate in school sports programs. Setting up and following an exercise program becomes your own responsibility, just as it is for adults.

Before anyone starts an exercise program, it is a good idea to have a complete physical examination. The kinds of exercises to be done and how often must also be decided.

A good physical fitness program includes two kinds of exercise. It includes exercises that improve respiration and circulation. (Examples are bicycling, swimming, and running.) It also includes a variety of exercises that develop muscle strength, coordination, and flexibility. (Examples include calisthenics and gymnastics.)

To be most beneficial, exercise should be done regularly. The ideal fitness program includes exercise several times a week. Even a short exercise period has been shown to be beneficial. Most fitness experts suggest 30 minutes of exercise four days a week.

An exercise program should consist of three parts: a warm-up period, a workout period, and a cool-down period. Each of these types of exercise serves a special purpose.

Warm-up Period

Before workout exercises are attempted, the body should be warmed up. This period

7-7 **Students who participate in sports programs have the help of coaches and trainers.**

should last about 5 to 10 minutes. The warm-up should begin with a little light exercise to increase respiration, heart rate, and body temperature. Try walking normally, running in place, or bicycling slowly.

Once you have done the light exercise, your body will be ready for gentle bending and stretching exercises, 7-8. These stretch your muscles and tendons and improve your flexibility. They prepare your body for the more strenuous conditioning exercises you will do later. If done correctly, stretching exercises may help prevent lower back problems. Look through exercise manuals to find a sequence of appropriate warm-up exercises. Avoid bouncing motions.

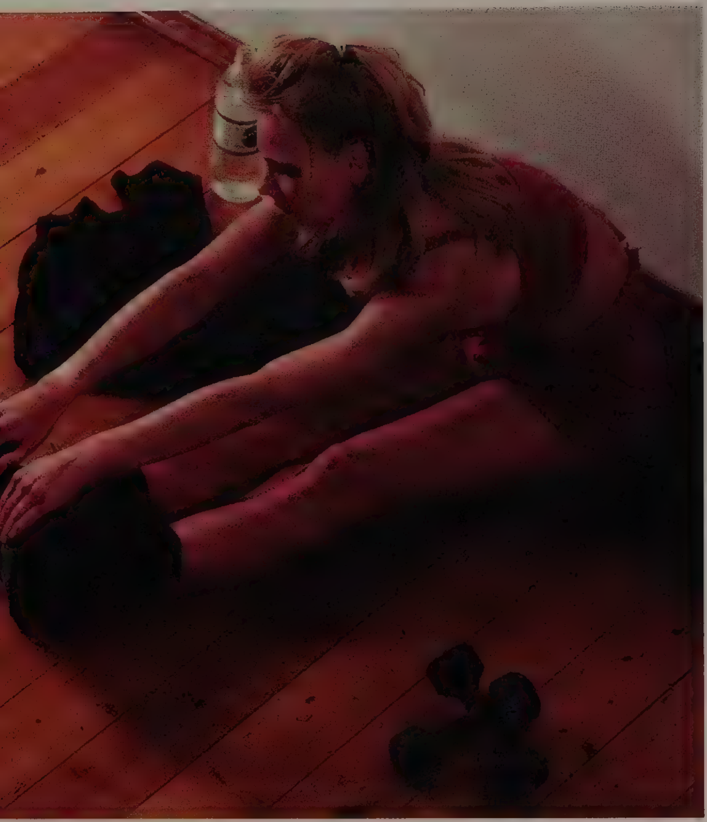
Workout Period

The main part of the exercise program should consist of vigorous activity that is sustained for at least 20 minutes. The activity should be one that you enjoy and that is convenient for you to do.

Why should conditioning exercise be vigorous, enjoyable, and convenient? It must be vigorous if it is to be of benefit to your health. Only vigorous exercise can help your lungs, heart, circulation, strength, and stamina. An exercise program helps you only as long as you work at it. If you don't enjoy it or if it is inconvenient, you are more likely to quit.

As you exercise, remember that your physical needs are unique. Your friend's endurance level may be different from your own. The guiding rule is that you should feel better, not worse, after exercising. Pain is a warning that the body has been overworked.

Pay close attention to your body for early warning signs of trouble. There are several symptoms that signal the need for



7-8 **Several bending and stretching exercises should be included in the warm-up period.**

prompt medical attention. They include unfamiliar pains in the chest, neck, jaw, arms, shoulders, or upper abdomen that occur during or right after exercise. They also include weakness, shortness of breath, tightness in the chest, or what you might believe to be indigestion.

Cool-down Period

As the warm-up is important in preparing the body for vigorous exercise, the cool-down is equally important. It provides a transition to a state of normal activity. Without a gradual decrease in activity, blood pooling can occur. **Blood pooling** is the accumulation of blood in the large muscles of the legs. It causes the heart and brain to be deprived of an adequate blood supply. This, in turn, could result in irregular heartbeat or fainting. To avoid blood pooling, do not stop vigorous exercise abruptly. Instead, slow down gradually. You may even want to repeat some of the light exercises you did in your warm-up. The cool-down period should last about 10 minutes.

Rest and Sleep

Along with exercise, the body also needs rest and sleep. Individuals vary in their sleep needs. Some people need ten hours per night; others feel rested after six hours. People who skimp on sleep night after night may build up a "sleep deficit." This can have negative effects on their health, appearance, ability to concentrate, and overall feeling of well-being.

Other Aspects of Health

Proper nutrition and exercise are essential to good health, but good health involves additional considerations, too. During your teen years, you may take good vision, good hearing, dental health, and skin health for granted. These are the years, however, that lay the foundation for good health or health problems later on.

Protecting Your Eyesight

Most people would say that their vision is extremely important to them. Yet many could do more to protect and preserve it.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

What Happens During Sleep?

The average person spends approximately one-third of his or her life sleeping. However, comparatively little is known about what actually happens during sleep. Some researchers believe that sleep allows the brain cells to restore their chemical balance each night.

A good night's rest involves several sleep stages, including rapid-eye-movement (REM) and non-rapid-eye-movement (NREM) sleep. REM sleep is characterized by rapid eye movement, faster breathing, and a higher heart rate. Most dreaming occurs during REM sleep.

In NREM sleep, an individual's eye movement, blood pressure, and breathing and heart rates decrease. NREM sleep accounts for as much as 80 percent of total sleep time.

People vary widely in their sleep needs. Some feel refreshed after six hours of sleep; others require as much as nine or ten hours. Individuals who regularly get insufficient sleep usually feel drowsy and irritable. Thus, sleep deprivation can have social as well as physical consequences.

Maintaining a healthy weight will help a person avoid diabetes and *hypertension* (high blood pressure). Both of these conditions are leading causes of vision impairment or blindness. A simple eye exam by an ophthalmologist each year is important in detecting *glaucoma* (pressure on the optic nerve that destroys vision) and other eye problems at an early stage. Although glaucoma is another leading cause of vision loss, early detection and treatment can prevent or slow the progression of the disease.

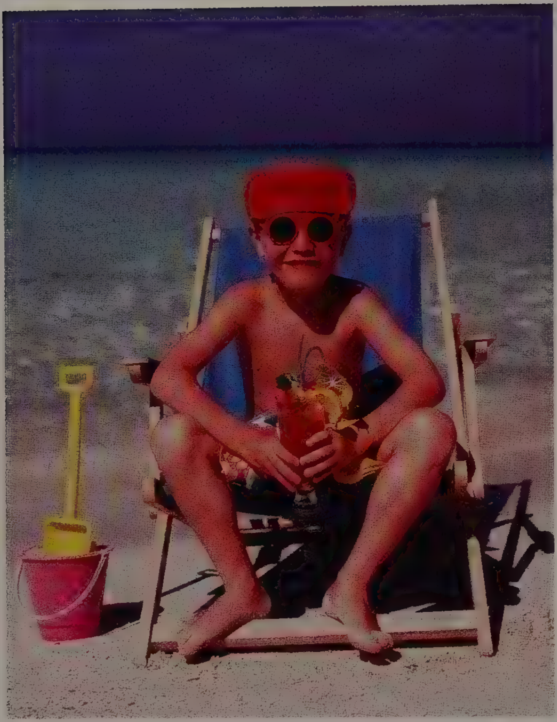
Wearing sunglasses and hats outdoors to shield the eyes from ultra-violet rays is believed to be helpful in avoiding *cataracts* (a clouding of the eye's lens) and *macular degeneration* (a loss of vision in the center of the retina), both of which cause vision impairment. These precautions are important for people of all ages, including young children, 7-9.

Protecting Your Hearing

Modern life seems full of uncomfortably loud noise, from street construction equipment to almost deafening music at rock concerts. Many teens enjoy extremely loud music. Later, they may discover that, like many rock stars, they have permanently damaged their hearing.

For a person to hear a sound, delicate hairs called cilia in the inner ear must pick up vibrations from the sound. Loud noise, especially over a period of time, can cause damage to the cilia, resulting in hearing impairment. Exposure to damaging noise levels is cumulative over time. The longer the exposure, the greater the loss.

You may feel silly if you plug your ears at a movie or concert, or to muffle street noise, such as ambulance sirens or construction noise. Doing so, however, can



7-9 **Children should be taught from an early age the importance of protecting their eyesight.**

help you protect your hearing. Later in life, you will be glad you did so.

Taking Care of Your Teeth

One of the most attractive things about people is their smile. However, too many people neglect their teeth, developing cavities, toothaches, bad breath, gum disease, dental infections, and other health problems as a result.

To take care of your teeth, brush them at least twice a day (preferably after each meal or snack). Use a soft-bristled brush and a toothpaste containing fluoride. At the same time, avoid bad breath by gently brushing your tongue and other mouth surfaces and rinsing with water.

Frequent flossing also is important. Floss your teeth at least once a day, and always before bedtime. When you can't floss, try to rinse your mouth—especially after eating sweets, which cause cavities. Do not use your teeth to crack nuts or tear open packages.

Visit your dentist every 6-12 months to have your teeth cleaned and checked. Regular visits to the dentist can help prevent serious dental problems later on.

Protecting Your Skin

Forty years ago, having a deep tan was considered glamorous by many Americans. More recently, however, people have begun to recognize that having a deep tan actually means the skin has been injured.

Overexposure to sunlight is the leading cause of several types of skin cancer, including the most dangerous form, *melanoma*. It is also the leading cause of premature skin wrinkling.

If you care about protecting your skin, you will avoid sun exposure. You will apply sunscreen when you go outdoors. You will choose clothing that provides maximum protection from sun exposure.

Many people are especially careful about protecting themselves from sunlight exposure at midday, when the sun's rays are the most direct. They also try to protect themselves when they are around sand or water, which reflect the sun's rays onto the skin.

Making Time for Health

Wellness, like many other things in life, is a matter of priorities. In the short term, it may seem easier to snack on a candy bar from a vending machine than to bring a piece of fruit with you in the morning. It may seem like too much effort to floss and brush your teeth regularly. It may, for a time, seem easier to put off studying for a test and then stay up late to study—at the expense of needed sleep. Adults may even temporarily fool themselves into believing that if they are to succeed in their careers, they can't take time for good health practices.

Sooner or later, this line of reasoning may be seen as self-destructive as people start having health problems. One doctor said, "Taking time for good health habits is like the fable about the tortoise (turtle) and the hare (rabbit). Like the hare in the fable, the person who ignores his or her health to get ahead in school or at work may seem to get off to a fast start. However, if this person's self-neglect leads to serious health problems or even early death, the turtle, who took time for health, may end up achieving far more over a lifetime than does the hare."

Sometimes illness strikes despite people's best efforts to stay healthy, 7-10. When this happens, the afflicted person and other family members must learn to manage the illness, adjusting their lives as needed. Regular doctor visits, careful following of medical advice, and reading related medical information are only a few of the things involved in coping with a health condition.

Following a regular program of proper diet, exercise, and rest can help you feel good—physically and mentally. Even more important, it will help you maintain good health throughout your lifetime. Your emotional state, however, can also influence your health. Studies suggest that stress can affect the body's immune system, making the body more susceptible to illness. That is one reason why it is important to find ways to manage stress effectively.

Coping with Stress

Stress is a state of bodily or mental tension resulting from change. Stress is not always bad. In fact, you need some stress in your life. Without it, life would be dull and unexciting. Challenges and changes add spice to your life. Stress can even improve your performance by causing physical changes that lift your body into a higher state of alertness.

On the other hand, too much stress leads to irritability, frustration, and lessened motivation. Unchecked stress can be a major factor in the development of many serious diseases, including heart trouble, high blood pressure, and strokes.

Change Causes Stress

Changes such as a death in the family, a serious injury, or being fired from a job are sure to cause stress. However, changes

7-10 Illness can strike anyone at any time even if a healthy lifestyle is followed.

don't have to be that dramatic to be stressful. Moving to a different home, failing an exam, or arguing with a friend can cause stress, 7-11. In fact, even positive changes cause stress. Getting a promotion, starting college, or winning a contest can be stressful events.

Certain changes create more stress than others. Chart 7-12 rates the stress level of various events in life. If several stressful events are occurring in your life, you need to be aware of how they are affecting you. Pay attention to warning signals such as increased fatigue, irritability, or illness.

Learning to Manage Stress

The key to good mental and physical health is learning to manage stress. A healthy lifestyle brings with it a certain amount of stress that adds interest and excitement. However, people must learn to keep negative stress under control. They need to relieve excess stress that could damage their health. Knowing how to manage stress will help you maintain a healthy lifestyle.

David Hopper

7-11 **Stress can occur when you have a disagreement with your boyfriend or girlfriend.**

Stress-resilient people are open to change. In other words, when changes occur, they accept them instead of fighting them. They take advantage of whatever opportunities the changes may bring. They feel they have control of their lives. They say, "I choose to do this," much more often than, "I have to do this." They have the confidence to manage their stress. They don't allow stress to ruin their health and their lives.

To deal effectively with stress, you must become aware of your reactions to stressful events. You must also learn to recognize early signs of negative stress. Then you will be able to take positive action to overcome stress. The following suggestions may help you handle negative stress or stress overload. Additional guidelines for a low-stress lifestyle are presented in 7-13.

- Exercise regularly. Your mind and body work together, so physical exercise can help you to relax and cope with problems.
- Talk to someone. It's important to talk out your problems with a friend, a coworker, or a counselor.
- Know your limits. Set realistic priorities and practical goals for yourself. One thing that contributes to stress is the feeling that you have to do everything perfectly. This may make you nervous and anxious. Learn to recognize your own limitations. Take on only what you know you can accomplish. Also recognize there are some things over which

Stress Rating Scale

Note each of the life events listed below that have affected you within the last 24 months. Add up the total points. (Count multiple occurrences of the same life event.)

Life Event	Point Value
Death of spouse	100
Divorce	.73
Marital separation	.65
Jail term	.63
Death of close family member	.63
Personal injury or illness	.53
Marriage	.50
Fired from job	.47
Marital reconciliation	.45
Retirement	.45
Change in health of family member	.44
Pregnancy	.40
Gain of new family member (birth, adoption, grandparent moving in, etc.)	.39
Change in financial state (better or worse off than usual)	.38
Death of a close friend	.37
Change to a different line of work	.36
Change in number of arguments with spouse	.35
Foreclosure of mortgage or loan	.30
Change in responsibilities at work (promotion or demotion)	.29
Son or daughter leaving home	.29
Trouble with in-laws	.29
Outstanding personal achievement	.28
Begin or end school	.26
Change in living conditions (new house, remodeling, deterioration of home or neighborhood)	.25
Revision of personal habits (dress, manners, associations)	.24
Trouble with boss	.23
Change in work hours or conditions	.20
Change in residence	.20
Change in schools	.20
Change in recreation	.19
Change in church activities	.19
Change in social activities (clubs, dancing, movies)	.18
Change in sleeping habits	.16
Change in number of family get-togethers	.15
Change in eating habits (more or less food, different hours or surroundings)	.15
Vacation	.13
Christmas	.12
Minor violations of the law (traffic ticket, disturbing the peace)	.11

Research has shown that among people with more than 450 stress points within the past two years, about 90 percent will become ill in the near future. With 300 points, the illness rate is 60 percent, and with 150 points, only 33 percent.

Reprinted with permission from Journal of Psychosomatic Research, Vol. II, Holmes, T.H., and Rahe, R.H., The Social Readjustment Rating Scale, Elsevier Science Ltd., Pergamon Imprints, Oxford, England.

7-12 Events in life create varying amounts of stress. Stress can accumulate and set the stage for illness.

you have no control. Worrying about them will not help. Instead, concentrate on what you can do.

- If you are already under a lot of pressure, try to avoid additional stressful situations. For instance, a time when you are having problems in school might not be a good time to start a new job. You can't avoid stress, but you can learn to manage it.
- Take care of yourself. If you are trying to do too much, slow down. If your stress is the result of boredom, increase your activities. A change of pace can do wonders for your stress level.

Guidelines for a Low-Stress Lifestyle

1. Develop a positive attitude about life. It is not so much what happens to you, but your perceptions of what happens to you that produce stressful emotions. Thus, a positive attitude helps to prevent stress.
2. Maintain good physical and mental health. Good health protects against the harmful effects of stress.
3. Participate in activities that you enjoy. Concentrate on enjoying the activities themselves rather than on how well you are performing.
4. Turn your attention outward. Care about someone other than yourself. Appreciate the efforts and achievements of others.
5. Learn to recognize your personal limits. Accept your lack of control over some situations and make the best of them.
6. Develop a kind, benevolent sense of humor. Most people believe they already possess a good sense of humor. Few really do.
7. Learn to tolerate and forgive both yourself and others. Intolerance of our own frailties leads to stress, tension, and low self-esteem. Intolerance of others leads to blame and anger.
8. Develop friendships. A good talk with a close friend can relieve stress.
9. Strive for a reasonably efficient and well-managed lifestyle. Laziness, self-indulgence, and sloppiness usually create more stress than they relieve.
10. Stop waiting for the day when "you can relax" or when "your problems will be over." That day will never come. The struggles of life change, but they never end.

7-13 A low-stress lifestyle promotes good mental and physical health.

- If you feel like crying, go ahead. It's okay to cry. In fact, crying can be a good, healthy way to relieve anxiety or tension.
- Avoid self-medication. Although you may think that alcohol, tobacco, or illegal drugs relieve stress, they do not remove the condition that caused the stress in the first place. In fact, these substances tend to be habit-forming and thus can create far more stress than they take away.
- Learn to relax. Take time out every day for some quiet time for yourself.

Stress Reduction Techniques

Have you ever been told to relax just before an important event? Perhaps you were going to take an exam or try out for the school play. You may have wanted to relax. You may have even told yourself to relax, using the logic that to do your best, you would have to relax. However, relaxation-on-command is easier said than done. Under tension or stress, your body reacts with a "flight or fight" response. Your pulse quickens, your blood pressure rises, and your muscles tense as you prepare to deal with the situation. Even if it's only a test or a tryout, your body reacts to your feelings of apprehension.

Stress is inevitable, so learning stress-reducing techniques makes sense. Authorities who study stress recommend the following techniques to reduce the effects of stress.

Try taking some deep breaths. This can interrupt tension and create a relaxing feeling throughout your body. First, make yourself comfortable and close your eyes. Then take a deep, slow breath and inhale all the way. Then slowly exhale all the way. Continue to take quiet, slow breaths.

Taking slow, natural breaths is a simple exercise you can do anywhere.

Some people use the technique of *progressive muscle relaxation*. To locate centers of tension, slowly tense and release muscles in different parts of your body. Clear your mind and focus on your muscle groups. Begin with your feet and work up to your neck and face. Tense each muscle group, hold for five seconds, then release. This helps you pinpoint certain areas of the body—neck muscles, for instance—where tension exists. As you release the tension, you will also be releasing stress.

Stretching exercises promote relaxation. The focus of attention is on stretching muscles, holding them in a certain position, and then relaxing them. This produces a sense of deep relaxation.

Finally, one of the best ways to reduce stress is to exercise. Engaging in some kind of physical activity, such as walking, running, playing basketball, or participating in any sport, can help you relax. You'll feel much better, both mentally and physically, when you get up and start moving.

Health and Wellness Resources

Motivation and self-discipline are very important in forming and practicing good health habits. However, persons striving for optimal wellness need not go it alone. Support for maintaining health and wellness is often available through a variety of community health organizations. In some cases, such support may be only a phone call away. Many health resources are available to people who have access to computers that are connected to the Internet.

Community Facilities

Many communities have parks and recreation centers that offer sports and exercise facilities. Typical facilities include swimming pools, baseball diamonds, and volleyball or tennis courts. These publicly supported resources usually are available free or at low cost.

The public library in your area provides sources of information on health and health care topics. If you don't have a computer at home, libraries often have computers that anyone can use to access health information online.

Most communities have hospitals with highly trained doctors, nurses, and other staff who can help you if you have a physical or emotional illness or symptom, 7-14. Some "store-front" clinics provide services at low or no cost.

Health Education

Many hospitals conduct education programs, not only for patients and their families but for the larger community as well. Examples include seminars to help people quit smoking, deal with an eating disorder, cope with stress, or lower their blood cholesterol levels.

Nutrition programs are also available through several sources. Most county Extension offices conduct nutrition education programs. The Women, Infants, and Children (WIC) program helps low-income mothers learn to plan nutritious meals for their families.

The public health departments of most counties offer a variety of educational programs. Topics may include prenatal care and preventing the spread of sexually transmitted diseases.

7-14 **Most communities have health facilities to meet the various needs of their citizens.**

Health Screening

Hospitals, public health departments, and other community groups may offer a variety of health screening services. Health screening may be available for such conditions as AIDS/HIV, tuberculosis, glaucoma, high blood cholesterol, high blood pressure, and sickle-cell anemia.

Community health fairs acquaint people with available sources of medical assistance. Some health fairs provide free or low-cost screening services.

Support Groups, Hotlines, and Helplines

Sometimes an illness or other crisis makes special help necessary. **Support groups**, usually made up of people with a common concern, offer emotional help, information, and the benefits of shared experience. Support groups are often sponsored by medical or other community groups and are led by knowledgeable professionals. They are formed to help individuals and their families deal with such conditions as AIDS/HIV, Alzheimer's disease, cancer, and alcoholism. Mental health services are also available to help people cope with emotional and family problems, such as the death of a loved one. See 7-15 for a list of support groups available in most communities.

Phone hotlines and helplines may assist people in getting through a crisis. Examples of a crisis include an accidental poisoning, a snake bite, a potential suicide, a child abuse incident, or a rape. Check your telephone directory for the correct telephone number.

Computer-Related Resources

Many families now have computers in their homes. Computers can provide access to two sources of information that can help family members with health-related issues. First, computer software programs can be purchased on many health, nutrition, and fitness topics. For instance, you can find software programs on any of these topics:

- recipes and menu planning
- nutritional analysis of your diet
- exercise and fitness programs
- weight management plans

Some Support Groups for Families

Adult Grief Support Group: for bereaved adults.

AIDS Support Group: for people who have tested positive for HIV.

Al-Anon: for family members and friends of alcoholics.

Alateen: for teens (ages 11-18) affected by another person's alcoholism.

Alcoholics Anonymous: for people who want to stop drinking.

Alliance for the Mentally Ill: for families and friends of persons with severe mental illness.

Alzheimer's Disease Support Group: for family members of people with Alzheimer's disease.

Battered Women's Support Group: for abused women who are victims of domestic violence.

Cancer Support Group: for cancer patients and their families.

Child Find: for parents trying to find missing children and teens.

Cocaine Anonymous: for cocaine addicts who still suffer, but are trying to recover.

Diabetes Support Group: for diabetics and their families.

Down's Syndrome Parent Support Group: for parents of children who have Down's syndrome.

Families Anonymous: for those concerned about drug abuse and behavioral problems of a relative or friend.

Gamblers Anonymous: for people who gamble compulsively.

Make Today Count: for people who face life-threatening illnesses, their families, and friends.

Mended Hearts: for those who have had heart surgery.

Nar-Anon: for family members and friends of drug addicts.

Narcotics Anonymous: for drug addicts who seek to recover from this affliction.

National Center for Missing and Exploited Children: for parents trying to locate missing children or teens.

Parents Anonymous: for the treatment and prevention of child abuse.

Parents Helping Parents: for families who have children with special needs (covers all handicapping conditions).

Parents United: for individuals and families who have experienced child sexual abuse.

Parents Without Partners: for single parents and their children.

Phoenix: for people going through divorce, widowhood, or separation.

Resolve: for infertile couples who are trying to become parents.

Runaway Hotline: for children or teens who have run away.

Share: for parents who have experienced the death of a newborn through miscarriage, stillbirth, or infant death.

Tough Love: for parents whose teenage children are experiencing adjustment/addiction problems.

Visually Impaired Support Group: for the newly blind and those facing blindness.

7-15 **Support groups offer help to persons dealing with a serious physical or emotional problem.**

A second way to find health-related information via the computer is to access the Internet. This enables the user to obtain information found in libraries and educational institutions, as well as consumer information provided by the federal government.

A variety of Web sites can be found on the topics of health, nutrition, and fitness. Many Web sites are sponsored by professional, government, or nonprofit organizations, which offer research-based information. They also update their sites frequently.

Not all Web sites, however, provide accurate, unbiased information. Users need to be careful to get their health information from reliable sources. See 7-16 for examples of authoritative sources of health information.

Some sites feature moderated chat rooms and support groups as well as medical experts to answer users' questions. In chat rooms, participants share a common screen at the same time. They can "talk" back and forth by scrolling text written by participants or "observe" others' conversations. Chat rooms are generally entered through a Web site.

Government Programs

Government resources support a wide range of programs and services to promote health. Government-supported medical care is available for low-income individuals (through the Medicaid program) and elderly persons (through the Medicare program). Public health departments inspect restaurants and other private establishments to ensure that sanitary procedures are being followed. For example, they will check for proper food preparation and storage.

People with physical or mental disabilities should check with their local government and school system to see what services may be available for them. Some aid may be mandated by law (for example, special school programs for people who are hearing impaired or mentally retarded).

Several sources of help are available to individuals and families who find themselves in trouble. Battered spouses and abused children can often find refuge in community shelters. Persons with very low incomes can apply for welfare benefits and food vouchers. Individuals who become homeless may seek lodging in publicly supported shelters for the homeless. Although budgetary constraints and bureaucratic red tape may pose problems, people in serious need of such help should persist in seeking it.

Health on the Web

Examples of Web sites featuring authoritative health information include:

- American Academy of Family Physicians
  familydoctor.org
- American Cancer Society
  cancer.org
- Mayo Clinic Health Oasis
  mayohealth.org
- National Institutes of Health
  nih.gov
- The Harvard School of Medicine
  intelihealth.com
- U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
  cdc.gov
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
  healthfinder.gov

7-16 Information on a wide variety of health-related topics is accessible using the Internet.

Nonprofit Organizations

Nonprofit organizations, such as the American Cancer Society and the American Heart Association, offer an array of resources to patients and their families. Examples of such resources include informational brochures, support groups, annual meetings with educational sessions, and individual visits by volunteers to patients and their families. Such organizations may also sponsor medical research targeted at specific diseases.

Consumer Choices Related to Health

As discussed in this chapter, your daily choices related to food, exercise, rest, and stress management can have a profound influence on your health. As a health-conscious consumer, you can help shape a society that promotes optimal health for its members.

By demanding and purchasing more healthful foods, consumers have made it cost-effective for the food industry to offer a variety of more healthful items. Examples are seen in the many lowfat, low-sodium, low-cholesterol, reduced-sugar foods now found on grocery shelves. Although these "lite" items are subject to government monitoring regarding their health claims, most of them did not even exist 15 years ago. Consumers are making a difference.

Concerned consumers have also made their voices heard in relation to the negative health effects of cigarette smoking. (This subject is discussed in detail in the next chapter.) A few years ago, offices and public spaces that were free of "second-hand" cigarette smoke were rare. Today, however, smoke-free spaces are increasingly common. These advances occurred only because consumers asserted their rights to smoke-free space.

An individual's desire to achieve optimal health is essential to maintaining health and wellness. Healthful foods are available, but you must choose them over less healthful alternatives, 7-17. Exercise opportunities are available, but you must take advantage of them in order to gain the health benefits of physical activity. If you believe your community's exercise facilities should be improved, it is up to you and citizens like you to work to achieve this goal.

Responsibility for maintaining a healthy environment is everyone's business. With enhanced awareness of health and wellness issues, consumers can continue to improve society through the choices they make and the policies they support.

7-17 Informed consumer choices can promote health.

Chapter 7 Check Your Knowledge

✚ Summary

- Many adults' health problems can be traced to poor health habits formed during the teenage years.
- Positive health practices include eating a variety of nutritious foods, exercising regularly, getting sufficient sleep, and managing stress effectively.
- MyPyramid and the Dietary Guidelines for Americans provide information on choosing a healthful lifestyle and nutritious diet.
- To lose weight, you have to use up more energy than you take in through food. This means either eating less or exercising more. For most people, a combination of decreased calorie intake and increased physical activity works best.
- Anorexia nervosa and bulimia are eating disorders that may result in malnutrition, serious illness, or even death.
- You must exercise regularly to reach your full health potential. An exercise program should consist of three parts: warm-up, workout period, and cool-down.
- Good vision, good hearing, dental health, and skin health should not be taken for granted. Practicing certain health habits today will lay the foundation for fewer health problems later on.
- Stress is a state of bodily or mental tension resulting from change. A healthy lifestyle includes a certain amount of stress to maintain interest and excitement. People must learn to keep negative stress under control. Relaxation techniques can help reduce the effects of stress.
- Most communities offer a variety of free or low-cost health-maintenance resources and health care services.
- Consumers can exert an influence in the marketplace by making choices that promote health.

Review

1. Name the five main food groups in MyPyramid. What three factors determine how much you should eat daily from each group?
2. According to the recommendations from the Dietary Guidelines for Americans, teenagers should be physically active for how many minutes each day?
3. Describe two ways in which saturated and unsaturated fats differ.
4. True or False. Anorexia nervosa occurs with equal frequency in males and females.
5. List five benefits of regular, vigorous exercise.
6. Which statement is true?
   A. Most fitness experts suggest at least 60 minutes of vigorous exercise six days a week.
   B. The warm-up period should begin with aerobic exercises.
   C. The main part of an exercise program should consist of vigorous activity.
   D. Pain, during and after exercise, is a good sign because it shows that the exercise is effective.
7. True or False. Healthy people are those who are able to eliminate all sources of stress from their lives.
8. Describe three positive ways to reduce stress.
9. List three examples of community health resources along with an example of a service offered by each.
10. Give two examples of ways that informed consumer choices can promote health.

React

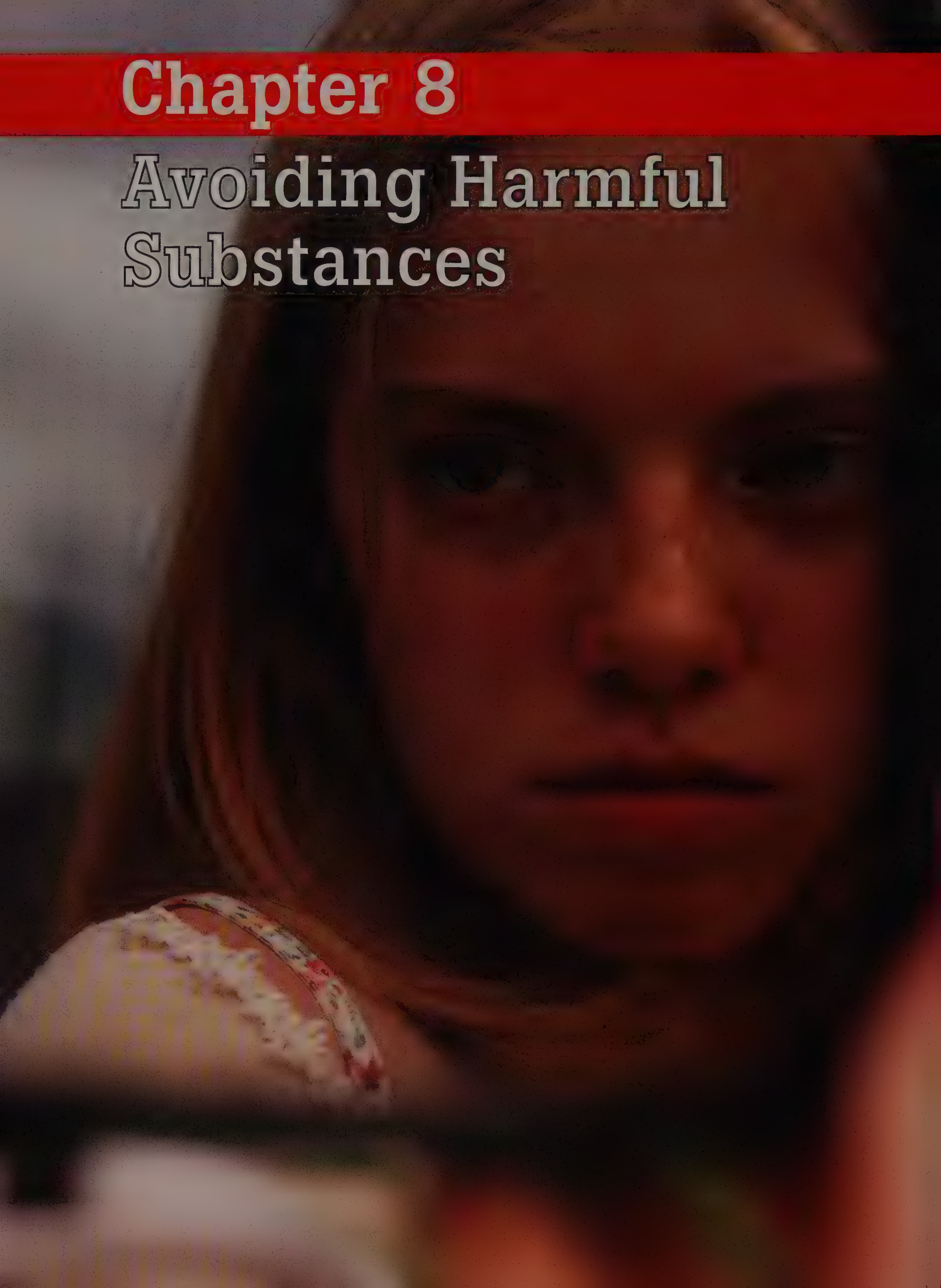
1. Visit the MyPyramid.gov Web site to print out a personalized plan of how much food you need from each food group daily. Prepare daily eating plans for yourself for five consecutive days. Be sure to include the recommended number of daily amounts from your personalized plan.
2. Use a calorie chart to add up the number of calories consumed each day according to the eating plans prepared in Activity 1. Alter the eating plans if you were on a weight-loss diet. Subtract 500 calories a day without sacrificing any of the recommended numbers of servings.
3. In small groups, discuss the symptoms of eating disorders. Discuss the actions you might take if someone you knew had several of the symptoms.
4. As a class, make a list of sources of stress for students in your school. Make another list of ways to cope with stress. Then design posters about coping with stress and display them in the hallways of your school.
5. When you feel tense and under stress, try various techniques described in this chapter for reducing stress.
6. Keep a record of your sleep over a week's time. How many hours did you get each night of the week? How many hours did you need in order to feel rested and refreshed the next morning?
7. As a class project, put together a file of health resources in your community. Note the type of help, telephone number, and cost of services for each resource.
8. As a group project, assemble a list of Web sites that provide information related to health and wellness. Develop a rating scale to evaluate the Web sites. Visit these sites and rate the sites. Prepare a report summarizing your findings.

Reflect

1. Name a health habit you practice occasionally that you need to practice more frequently. What would it take to get you to practice the health habit more consistently?
2. Add up the number of calories you consume in an average day, including snacks. If you are consuming too many calories, identify areas in which you could cut back.
3. Design an exercise program that would work for you.
4. Which is more enjoyable—spending long hours watching professionals play a sport on television or playing the sport yourself? Which is better for your health?

Chapter 8

Avoiding Harmful Substances



Terms to Know

- nicotine
- passive smoking
- smokeless tobacco
- alcoholic
- drug
- drug use
- drug misuse
- drug abuse
- physical dependence
- addiction
- psychological dependence
- habituation
- designer drugs
- narcotics
- depressants
- stimulants
- hallucinogens
- marijuana
- amotivational syndrome
- inhalants
- anabolic steroids
- over-the-counter drugs
- prescription drugs

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- explain the health hazards of smoking.
- describe the consequences of drinking alcohol.
- define various terms related to drug use and abuse.
- describe various kinds of drugs and how they affect the body.
- explain how peer pressure influences behavior.

The discussions in the previous chapter emphasized positive health habits. You learned how to select the foods that will help keep you healthy and well. You learned the importance of exercise in maintaining a healthy body. You also learned ways to protect other aspects of your health. Preventive health practices will help you now and on into your adult years. These practices should become a part of your lifestyle.

Many decisions involving your health, however, are based on whether to use tobacco, alcohol, and other drugs. If any or all of these substances are used heavily and repeatedly, they pose a significant risk to your health. It is important for you as a young adult to be aware of the effects of substance abuse. You need to know the facts about tobacco, alcohol, misused or abused prescription and over-the-counter drugs, illegal drugs, and inhalants. You may be faced with some very important decisions concerning their use and your health.

Tobacco

Many young people are confronted with a decision about the use of tobacco sometime during their teen years. Their decision can affect them for the rest of their lives. It can also affect other people in their lives.

When high school students who smoke are asked why they started, over 70 percent say they started smoking because their friends smoke. Research also shows that the decision to smoke is made more readily if the person has parents, brothers, or sisters who smoke.

When people of your parents' generation were teens, they began smoking cigarettes for several reasons. It looked grown-up; it seemed glamorous; it helped them feel sophisticated. Today, however, it is clear that the smart thing to do is to avoid tobacco, 8-1. Now that research has provided conclusive evidence as to the dangers of tobacco, its continued use is an unnecessary and avoidable health risk.

The cigarette industry promotes a glorified image of people who smoke. However, the government has put some limitations on the industry. Television advertising is not allowed. Printed ads and packages of cigarettes must include warnings, as shown in 8-2. Many state and local governments have passed strict antismoking laws. In addition, nonsmoking areas have been set aside in restaurants and other public places. Smoking is banned on buses by many bus companies and on the domestic flights of U.S. airlines. Many businesses also restrict smoking in the workplace in an effort to provide workers with a smoke-free environment.

How Smoking Affects Health

Smoking and inhaling "second-hand" smoke can cause several health problems. The chart in 8-3 shows how smoking can affect the health of your body. Cancer,

David Hopper

8-1 Teens who want to stay healthy choose not to smoke.

Surgeon General's Warning: Cigarette Smoke Contains Carbon Monoxide.

Surgeon General's Warning: Quitting Smoking Now Greatly Reduces Serious Risks to Your Health.

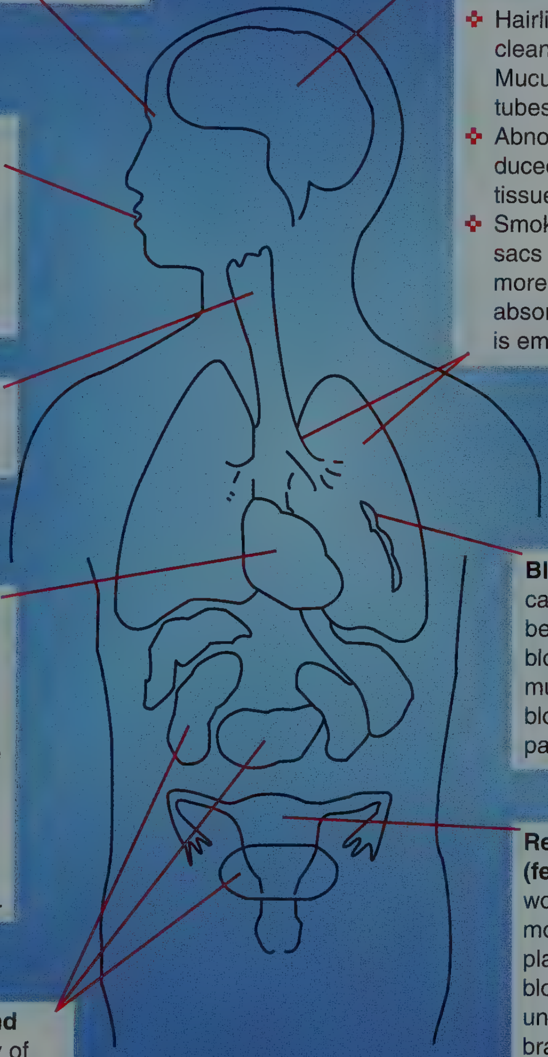
Surgeon General's Warning: Smoking Causes Lung Cancer, Heart Disease, Emphysema, and May Complicate Pregnancy.

Surgeon General's Warning: Smoking by Pregnant Women May Result in Fetal Injury, Premature Birth, and Low Birthweight.

Warning: The Surgeon General Has Determined That Cigarette Smoking is Dangerous to Your Health.

8-2 Warnings must appear in printed cigarette ads and on all packages of cigarettes.

How Smoking Affects Your Health



Brain: The nicotine in tobacco is a mood-altering substance that affects brain chemicals. It is extremely addictive.

Eyes: Can contribute to development of macular degeneration and cataracts.

Bronchi and Lungs:

- Hairlike cilia which normally clean the lungs are damaged. Mucus builds up in the bronchial tubes, causing a chronic cough.
- Abnormal cells may be produced to repair damaged lung tissue, resulting in lung cancer.
- Smoking also damages the air sacs of the lungs, making it more difficult for oxygen to be absorbed by the body. The result is emphysema.

Mouth: The immediate effect is bad breath. Continued use affects the sense of taste and causes teeth to yellow. Cancer of the lip and mouth may occur.

Larynx: Cancer of the larynx or throat can occur.

Blood Vessels: Nicotine causes blood vessels to become smaller, thus raising blood pressure. The heart must work harder to push blood through the narrowed passages.

Heart: Nicotine increases blood pressure and causes the heart to beat faster. Carbon monoxide produced by the smoke reduces the supply of oxygen. This combination increases a person's risk of coronary heart disease.

Reproductive Organs (female): In pregnant women, nicotine and carbon monoxide can reach the placenta, reducing the flow of blood and oxygen to the unborn baby, thus causing brain damage. Smoking contributes to low-birthweight babies, crib deaths, premature deliveries, stillbirths, and miscarriages.

Pancreas, Kidneys, and Bladder: Cancer in any of these organs is more likely to occur if a person smokes tobacco.

8-3 Tobacco affects the health of the body in many ways.

heart disease, emphysema, and other diseases have all been related to smoking. Smoking is a hazard for pregnant women, and it can shorten a person's life span.

The Toxic Effect of Smoke

Smoke itself is harmful. It is a mixture of gases, vaporized chemicals, and tiny particles of ash and solids. These are drawn through the nose and throat and into the lungs when smoke is inhaled. Smoke irritates the bronchial tubes leading from the windpipe to the lungs. The result is a chronic cough and spitting up of heavy phlegm.

One of the vaporized chemicals in smoke is **nicotine**, a toxic substance found in tobacco. Nicotine is as lethal as cyanide. A smoker gets more nicotine from cigarettes than from pipes or cigars. If smoke is inhaled, 50 percent of the nicotine is absorbed. Even if the smoker does not inhale the smoke, 25 percent of the nicotine is absorbed.

The fact that nicotine is addictive has been confirmed by research. Most smokers find it difficult to stop smoking once they have become addicted to nicotine.

Cancer

Smoking is directly related to lung cancer. The more you smoke, the greater are your chances of developing this disease. The death rate from lung cancer is 10 times greater among smokers than among nonsmokers.

Smokers also have a greater chance of developing other forms of cancer. A Surgeon General's report states that cigarette smoking is a major cause of cancers of the lung, larynx, oral cavity, and esophagus. It is also a contributory factor for the development of cancers of the bladder, pancreas, and kidney.

Emphysema

Emphysema is a disease that affects the air sacs of the lungs. Smoking thickens the membranes that line the air passages and blocks them with secretions. In addition, smoking causes the muscles along the air passage walls to contract. This makes them narrower and further reduces airflow. Potentially harmful particles are deposited into the air sacs. When the lung tissue is so badly damaged that it cannot absorb oxygen, emphysema has developed.

Heart Disease

Heart disease is also directly related to smoking. Nicotine stimulates the part of the nervous system that controls the heart and blood vessels and other internal organs that function automatically. As a result, blood vessels constrict, and less blood is carried to the heart, thus causing damage. Smokers die more often from heart disease than do nonsmokers.

Dangers During Pregnancy

Smoking is a hazard for pregnant women and the fetuses they carry. Studies show that smokers have a greater chance of having premature deliveries and smaller, less healthy babies who are at greater risk of developing illnesses. The babies of chain smokers sometimes must undergo withdrawal from nicotine.

Anticipated Life Span

On average, a 25-year-old person who smokes two packs of cigarettes a day will lose roughly eight years of anticipated life span. A cigarette lasts only about six minutes—but enough cigarettes can cut eight years off your life!

The longer a person smokes, the more difficult the habit is to break. People who start smoking early in life tend to smoke more and inhale more. They run a far greater risk of illness, disability, and loss of life than those who start later or never start at all.

If you have developed a smoking habit, you may find it hard to break. Remember that quitting smoking is always beneficial—and the sooner the better.

Passive Smoking

Even if you are a nonsmoker, your health may be at risk. If you spend time in smoke-filled places, you may be seriously affected by **passive smoking** (inhaling second-hand smoke). Recent studies reveal that children reared in homes in which one or both parents smoke can suffer many of the ill effects of smoking. There can be health problems associated with a smoke-filled workplace. Also, pregnant women need to be particularly careful. Exposure to cigarette smoke for about two hours a day in pregnancy can double a nonsmoker's risk of having an undersize infant.

Smokeless Tobacco

Smokeless tobacco refers to snuff and chewing tobacco. Like tobacco in cigarettes, smokeless tobacco contains nicotine and is habit-forming. Laws have been passed requiring health warning labels on packages of snuff and chewing tobacco. Advertisements of the products are banned on radio and television.

Using smokeless tobacco can lead to a number of health problems. Tobacco juice irritates the inside of the mouth. Eventually, oral cancer may develop. Smokeless tobacco can cause dental problems such as receding gums, increased wear and tear on tooth enamel, and tooth decay. It causes bad breath and discolored teeth. It also dulls the senses of taste and smell.

Ways to Break the Tobacco Habit

There are many reasons for not using tobacco. Many of these are listed in 8-4.

If you do use tobacco and want to quit, you can break the tobacco habit. No one can make you stop smoking, but you have the ability to stop if you really want to stop. How can you accomplish this?

Many individuals who have successfully stopped smoking have done so simply by saying, "This is it. I'm not going to smoke anymore." They eliminate the use of tobacco in one step. They will have some tempting moments when they consider breaking their promise to themselves, but as long as they really want to quit, they can.

For many people, the biggest obstacle is their emotional dependence on tobacco. To overcome it, they try to find substitute activities such as chewing gum. At the times of day they used to enjoy smoking, they make a conscious effort to engage in this substitute activity.

Some people gradually decrease their use of tobacco until they can finally eliminate it. This can be done by smoking fewer cigarettes and by smoking less of each one. It can also be done by following programs that use special commercial products, such as nicotine chewing gum and skin patches. Most of these programs are based on the slow reduction of nicotine in the body.

Other people seek counseling and self-help programs that use individual and group therapy sessions. These are designed to alter smokers' emotional dependence on tobacco and thus change their habit of smoking. Some smokers even use hypnosis to break their habit. Still others heed the advice of their physicians and follow the methods they prescribe. The strategies for quitting listed in 8-5 may be useful.

Reasons for NOT Using Tobacco

I want to do what is considered the "in" thing to do. The "in" thing now is NOT to use tobacco.

I want to be in control of my life. I do NOT want tobacco to control me. I do not want an addiction to nicotine to interfere with the way I manage my time. I don't want to have to take time to "have a cigarette."

I want to do all I can to promote my health and wellness. I want to be able to exercise and not feel winded. I want to have a complete sense of taste and smell.

I want to live a long, healthy, and productive life. People who continue to smoke can develop serious health problems that can shorten their lives by as much as 8 years.

I want to be well-groomed and pleasant to be around. Smoking causes bad breath, stained teeth and fingers, and red eyes. In addition, a smoker's hair and clothing smell of smoke.

I want to use my money to achieve creative, productive, and recreational goals. A person who smokes a pack of cigarettes a day might spend as much as $1000 per year. This money could be used to purchase needed items or reach financial goals.

I want to live my life within the limits of the law. In most states, young people under the age of 16 cannot purchase cigarettes. In some states, it is illegal for people under the age of 18 to buy cigarettes.

I want to be able to move about freely when I am away from home or at my place of work. Smokers may be restricted to certain areas set aside for smoking or may not be allowed to smoke at all in certain places.

I want to set a good example for my future children and do what I can to protect their health. Studies show that children are more likely to begin smoking if their parents smoke. Children also suffer from passive smoke created by parents who smoke.

8-4 Many teens cite these reasons for not using tobacco.

Tactics for Quitting

Make a list of reasons to quit smoking. Review the list when the need for a cigarette is greatest.

Keep a record of each cigarette smoked. Identify why there was a need to smoke each time. Habits and routines can then be changed to counter the need for a cigarette.

Find a distraction when the urge for a cigarette is greatest. Call someone, go for a walk, run an errand, or do something to keep hands busy.

Participation in a support group or teaming up with a friend can be helpful. Counseling on how to cope with the loss of cigarettes is beneficial.

For severe dependence on nicotine, a temporary replacement, such as a chewing gum containing nicotine to relieve withdrawal symptoms, can be helpful.

Decide on a reward when the goal is reached. The money that would be used to buy cigarettes can be used for a special treat. Also, small rewards can be planned for each day a person goes without smoking.

Be persistent in any attempts to quit. If a person doesn't succeed on the first attempt, try again and again.

8-5 These strategies might help a person who wants to stop using tobacco.

Alcohol

Like every other question that involves human behavior, the question of drinking must be resolved at a personal level. The legal drinking age in all states is 21. Most teens do not drink for this reason. Even after the age of 21, however, many people choose not to drink for personal reasons, including their health.

As a young adult, you already may have had to make a choice concerning the use of alcohol. If you have not faced that decision yet, you will likely face it in the future. You need to form your own attitudes about the use of alcohol. Your attitudes may differ from those of your friends, or they may be similar. However, it is important that you be prepared to make your own decision about alcohol in your life.

About one in eight American adult drinkers is an alcoholic or has problems related to alcohol use. If you decide not to drink, you will not have to make any other decisions about alcohol. You will not risk becoming an alcoholic. Your friends will respect your decision about alcohol, and you may, in turn, help them to reevaluate their own decisions about alcohol, 8-6.

David Hopper

8-6 **Friends may be influenced by the decisions you make.**

Health Consequences of Drinking Alcohol

A person who does decide to drink should be aware of the many consequences of such a decision. Alcohol is a depressant drug. It is absorbed into your bloodstream within two to ten minutes. The rate is determined in part by the amount of food in the stomach. Alcohol taken without food is absorbed more quickly. The effects of alcohol also vary according to body size. Smaller persons and females tend to feel the effects of alcohol more quickly and more strongly.

Since alcohol is a depressant drug, it acts on the brain as an anesthetic, putting it "to sleep." It also reduces inhibitions, self-control, and judgment.

Some people think that alcohol acts more like a stimulant than a depressant. This is because alcohol can reduce their inhibitions, and they are less likely to hold back their feelings and actions. However, they often feel depressed later.

As more alcohol enters the body, it begins to affect muscle coordination, including speech, balance, and breathing. The speed and the degree of the effect will depend on how much is consumed, how fast it is consumed, the amount of food in the stomach, total body mass, and gender. People have died from alcohol poisoning after drinking one pint of liquor all at once. Their breathing apparatus stopped working because their system was so depressed. Combining alcohol with other depressant drugs such as tranquilizers can have the same result. The bodily processes may slow down to the point that the person is not able to breathe.

Once alcohol is in the bloodstream, its effects cannot be stopped until the body has burned it up. This happens at a steady rate—about one ounce every two hours. A person cannot speed up the process. The idea that coffee and cold showers can help a person become sober again is a myth.

Frequent consumption of large amounts of alcohol can cause many problems. People who drink in excess may use alcohol as their main food source. Alcohol does not fill their nutritional needs, so they become malnourished. Other health problems that may appear include blackouts, delirium tremens, neuritis, brain damage, cirrhosis of the liver, pancreatitis, and heart difficulties. The effects of alcohol on the body are summarized in 8-7.

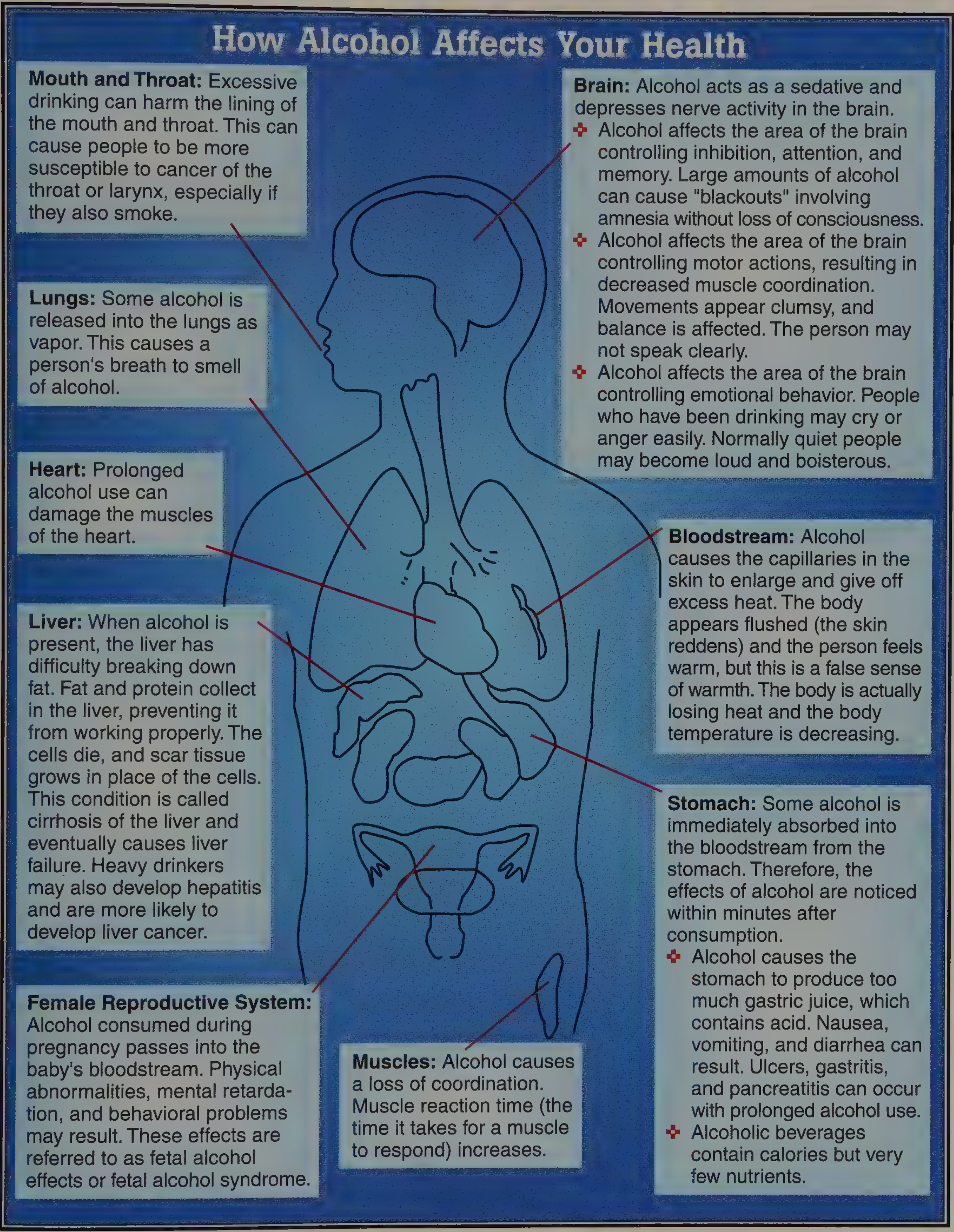
Why Pregnant Women Should Not Drink Alcohol

Consumption of alcohol poses a special danger to pregnant women. A woman who is pregnant needs to be aware that the alcohol she drinks passes from her bloodstream into her unborn baby's bloodstream. Alcohol is present in the fetus for several hours after the mother's blood alcohol level has diminished.

Alcoholic mothers or mothers who drink heavily during pregnancy may give birth to babies with *fetal alcohol syndrome*. Such babies experience mental handicaps as well as heart and joint abnormalities and slower physical growth. Because no level of blood alcohol has been established as safe, most physicians believe it is best for pregnant women not to drink at all.

Social Consequences of Alcohol Abuse

Alcohol abuse is associated with a number of serious societal ills. These include automobile accidents, on-the-job accidents, spousal and child abuse, date rape, assault, divorce, and many other



How Alcohol Affects Your Health

Mouth and Throat: Excessive drinking can harm the lining of the mouth and throat. This can cause people to be more susceptible to cancer of the throat or larynx, especially if they also smoke.

Lungs: Some alcohol is released into the lungs as vapor. This causes a person's breath to smell of alcohol.

Heart: Prolonged alcohol use can damage the muscles of the heart.

Liver: When alcohol is present, the liver has difficulty breaking down fat. Fat and protein collect in the liver, preventing it from working properly. The cells die, and scar tissue grows in place of the cells. This condition is called cirrhosis of the liver and eventually causes liver failure. Heavy drinkers may also develop hepatitis and are more likely to develop liver cancer.

Female Reproductive System: Alcohol consumed during pregnancy passes into the baby's bloodstream. Physical abnormalities, mental retardation, and behavioral problems may result. These effects are referred to as fetal alcohol effects or fetal alcohol syndrome.

Muscles: Alcohol causes a loss of coordination. Muscle reaction time (the time it takes for a muscle to respond) increases.

Brain: Alcohol acts as a sedative and depresses nerve activity in the brain.

- Alcohol affects the area of the brain controlling inhibition, attention, and memory. Large amounts of alcohol can cause "blackouts" involving amnesia without loss of consciousness.
- Alcohol affects the area of the brain controlling motor actions, resulting in decreased muscle coordination. Movements appear clumsy, and balance is affected. The person may not speak clearly.
- Alcohol affects the area of the brain controlling emotional behavior. People who have been drinking may cry or anger easily. Normally quiet people may become loud and boisterous.

Bloodstream: Alcohol causes the capillaries in the skin to enlarge and give off excess heat. The body appears flushed (the skin reddens) and the person feels warm, but this is a false sense of warmth. The body is actually losing heat and the body temperature is decreasing.

Stomach: Some alcohol is immediately absorbed into the bloodstream from the stomach. Therefore, the effects of alcohol are noticed within minutes after consumption.

- Alcohol causes the stomach to produce too much gastric juice, which contains acid. Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea can result. Ulcers, gastritis, and pancreatitis can occur with prolonged alcohol use.
- Alcoholic beverages contain calories but very few nutrients.

8-7 **When alcohol is consumed, the body is affected in many ways.**

social problems. Hundreds of millions of dollars are spent each year addressing the social consequences of alcohol abuse. The costs in terms of human suffering are incalculable.

Alcoholism

The term **alcoholic** refers to a person who suffers from a condition manifested by compulsive, obsessive drinking that is beyond the person's control. An alcoholic has an addictive disease and needs medical attention.

A person does not become a problem drinker with the first decision to drink. However, a person can lose control of his or her use of alcohol after making many decisions to drink a lot and to drink often. Alcohol causes alcoholism. If a person does not drink alcohol, he or she will not become an alcoholic. It is as simple as that.

If a person drinks alcohol instead of coping with problems, if a person needs a drink to relax, or if alcohol is craved for no particular reason—beware. The person may be headed toward dependence on alcohol.

A number of questions about alcohol use are listed in 8-8. If a person answers yes to any of them, he or she should review decisions about drinking. There is a fine line between social drinking and dependence on alcohol.

If alcoholics stop drinking, they can recover to some extent. The damage done to their bodies cannot be repaired completely, but they can stop the deteriorating effects of alcohol. Treated alcoholics must realize they can never drink again, for they can never completely overcome alcoholism. Alcoholics must learn to solve their problems without using alcohol. They must learn to trust themselves and other people. They need to know there is a life without alcohol and that many people are willing to help them find that life.

Quick Tests to Unmask Alcoholism

- When troubled or under pressure, does the person always drink more heavily than usual?
- Is the person able to handle more liquor than when her or she first began drinking?
- Does the person sometimes feel guilty about drinking?
- Does the person get irritated when family or friends discuss his or her drinking?
- Are memory blackouts increasing in frequency?
- Does the person often wish to continue drinking after friends say they've had enough?
- When sober, does the person often regret things done or said while drinking?
- Does the person usually have a "reason" for the occasions when he or she drinks heavily?
- Does the person try to avoid family or close friends while drinking?
- Are school or work problems increasing in number?
- Does the person eat very little or irregularly when drinking?
- Has the person recently noticed that he or she cannot drink as much as before?
- Does the person sometimes stay drunk for several days?
- Does the person sometimes feel very depressed and wonder if life is worth living?
- Does the person get terribly frightened after he or she has been drinking heavily?

If the answer to any of the above questions is yes, the person may be a candidate for alcohol abuse problems.

8-8 These questions from the National Council on Alcoholism may help people determine if they or others they know have symptoms of alcoholism.

Help for the Alcoholic

If a person realizes that a drinking problem has developed and sincerely wants to do something about it, he or she has taken the first step. Only a very few people can overcome a drinking problem completely by themselves. They may recognize the problem and resolve to eliminate it. Sometimes a crisis makes a person realize a serious problem exists.

Many alcoholics are helped by friends or family members. Their loved ones help them recognize the problem through sincere expressions of concern, understanding, and love. Nagging and accusations will not help, nor will pity or overprotectiveness. The best approach is to accept the fact that the person is an alcoholic and then seek sources of help.

An increasingly popular technique for helping loved ones is known as *intervention*. This is a technique that forces alcoholics into treatment. A "mini-crisis" is created to persuade them that they need help before their lives are ruined. Celebrity figures such as Betty Ford have publicized the technique, but it must be done with professionally trained counselors.

Every state and many cities have agencies devoted to preventing and treating alcoholism. One well-known group is Alcoholics Anonymous (AA). It is designed to help alcoholics of all ages. About 20 percent of AA members are under the age of 31. An important aspect of the AA program is mutual support. Members can confide in their sponsors and call them whenever they need help.

Alcoholics damage not only their own lives, but also the lives of other people. Family members, friends, and coworkers are all affected. Organizations like Al-Anon (for family members and friends of alcoholics) and Alateen (for teens affected by another person's alcoholism) can help these people.

Alcohol treatment centers are available in most areas, and many have special programs for various ages. They often provide counseling as well as treatment. Social services may provide residential care for short periods of time for people who have lost contact with their families. Career counseling services provide counseling concerning education and work opportunities. Some people whose drinking has involved them with the law have need for legal counseling services.

To find sources of help in your area, look in the yellow pages under "Alcoholism Information and Treatment Centers."

Why Do People Drink?

Most people begin drinking because of social pressure. A friend or someone at a party offers them a drink, so they take it. They feel that drinking will help them "fit in" with the rest of the group.

Some people begin drinking for other reasons. They may use alcohol to help them escape from problems. They may use it to help them relax. Others drink just because they are bored.

Research has shown that there may be other reasons why teens drink. When compared to teenage nondrinkers, teenage alcohol abusers often value independence more than academic achievement. They are often more influenced by peers than by parents. They are usually more aggressive and impulsive. Lower self-esteem and higher anxiety levels are common. Teen alcohol abusers generally lack a desire to succeed in attaining life goals.

Saying No to Alcohol

Many people choose not to drink. Some of the reasons they give for not drinking are listed in 8-9. Many of these people turn down drinks even in social situations. Refusing alcohol has not hurt their friendships. They have made a decision, and their friends respect them for that decision.

You can say no to alcohol in many different ways. Some of these ways are listed in 8-10. Read through the list and see if any of the phrases will work for you. Perhaps one of them will help you say no the next time you are offered a drink.

Reasons for Not Drinking

- I want to do what is considered the "in" thing to do. More and more young people are choosing NOT to use alcohol.
- I want to be in control of my life. I do NOT want alcohol to control me. A person who becomes addicted to alcohol has a physical and psychological need for alcohol, and these needs take over the person's life.
- I want to live my life within the limits of the law. Drinking is illegal for a person under 21.
- I want to live a long and healthy life. A person who drinks excessively can shorten his or her life by 10 to 12 years, on average.
- I want to feel good and be ready to meet daily challenges. I want to be able to achieve my full potential in life.
- I want to maintain healthy and strong relationships with my family, my friends, and my coworkers. I know I do not need to drink to be popular and well-liked.
- I want to make a positive impression on other people. I want to be in control of my behavior and able to communicate effectively at all times.
- I want to use my money to achieve creative, recreational, and productive goals. Money spent for alcohol could be used to purchase needed items or saved for future goals. Also, an alcoholic risks being laid off or fired from his or her job.
- I want to set a good example for my future children. If I don't drink, my children will not be influenced by the presence of alcohol in my home.

8-9 **Young people are choosing not to use alcohol for reasons such as these.**

Ways to Say No

What I would really like is...
a Coke or Sprite, straight.
just a glass of water.

No, thank you...
I don't really care for any.
I feel great now, and I don't want to spoil this feeling!
my date couldn't stand me if I acted any sillier!

I'd love one, but...
I'm counting calories.
it gives me a headache.
I really don't like the taste.

Not now...
I'm in training!
I'm the driver!
I'm the backseat driver!
I'm testing my willpower!

Sorry, but...
I never drink on Fridays (Saturdays, etc.).
it makes me sleepy.
I promised myself I wouldn't.
I just don't want to drink!

8-10 **One of these phrases may help you say no the next time someone offers you alcohol.**

Drugs

The teen years can be difficult ones at best. You are faced with new feelings and relationships. You sometimes find it hard to talk to your parents. There are increased demands on you at school and where you work. Everything can get terribly confusing and difficult. What would you do if someone offered you a drug to "help" you cope? This is a possibility you should consider, so you will be prepared if it happens. You would not want to have to make this kind of decision under pressure. You need to know the facts about all drugs and the consequences of misuse or abuse of prescription and over-the-counter drugs and illegal drugs.

Drug Terminology

You need to know some drug terminology before you can make informed decisions concerning drug use. The following definitions are from the Food and Drug Administration.

A **drug** is a substance, other than food, that has an effect on one or more systems of the body, especially the central nervous system. Drugs change body chemistry, and different people react differently to the same drugs. **Drug use** is the taking of a drug for its intended purposes, in the appropriate amount, frequency, strength, and manner. **Drug misuse** is taking a substance for its intended purpose but not in the appropriate amount, frequency, strength, or manner. **Drug abuse** is deliberately taking a substance for other than its intended purpose, and in a manner that can result in damage to the person's health or his or her ability to function.

Drug dependence is of two types: physical and psychological. **Physical dependence** occurs when the body chemistry of a user is altered by repeated use of the drug. The user's body develops an actual physical need for the drug. **Addiction** is physical dependence on a drug. An addicted person usually builds up a tolerance to a drug. He or she must have increasing amounts in order to get the same effects.

Psychological dependence on a drug occurs when the user has learned to use the drug as a mental and emotional crutch. The user's need is real, but it is psychological rather than physical. **Habituation** is a term used to describe psychological dependence.

Drugs Have a Wide Variety of Effects

The effects of a drug vary depending on the user's personality, emotional state, expectations, and previous experience with this and other drugs. Because each person is unique, it is not always easy to predict the effects a drug will have on a person. One person may seem only somewhat affected by a drug, while another may become seriously ill.

Combining drugs adds a new dimension to the problem. People may think they can handle one drug, such as alcohol, but when they combine their drinking with smoking marijuana, or using another drug, the effects may be deadly. Trying to predict how a drug will affect you is like playing Russian roulette. You may not win.

Using Illegal Drugs Means Dealing with the Unknown

Much is still unknown about the psychological and physical effects of drug use. To add to the problem, drugs secured illegally are inconsistent in quality and potency. Diluting or cutting these drugs with less expensive substitutes is a common practice. These substitutes may be damaging, and drug users may have to use more and more to get the desired effect. In some cases, the substitute can be deadly.

Today, new illegal drugs called **designer drugs** are being manufactured. They have slightly altered formulas, but they closely resemble other illegal drugs such as cocaine. Federal laws identify most illegal drugs by their chemical structures. Since the designer drugs are structurally different, they have eluded the laws to control them. People using them are dealing with unknown types of drugs. When they use these drugs, they are guessing what will happen. They are taking a big gamble. If they lose, death may occur.

Types of Drugs

Most drugs fall into four general categories: narcotics, depressants, stimulants, and hallucinogens. Marijuana and inhalants are also frequently abused drugs, as are steroids. Another category of drugs that are sometimes misused or abused is prescription and over-the-counter drugs.

Narcotics

Narcotics are drugs that induce sleep or stupor and relieve pain. They are addicting. Opium, heroin, morphine, codeine, and synthetics such as methadone and Demerol are narcotics.

Heroin, also called scag, smack, junk, or H, is a very powerful narcotic. It belongs to the pain-killer family of opium. It is very addictive. Many people start by sniffing heroin. The body eventually builds up a tolerance, and the user usually progresses to mainlining (injecting into a vein). When heroin is injected, it gives instantaneous, pleasurable feelings. These are quickly followed by a period of drowsiness.

Heroin users can contract HIV/AIDS, hepatitis (a serious, often fatal liver ailment), and other diseases if they share needles with infected individuals. People who "shoot up" (inject themselves) may also experience skin abscesses, collapsed veins, strokes, and heart problems.

For an addict, getting heroin becomes a very costly and time-consuming activity. Criminal behavior becomes a way to meet the high costs of the habit. Treatment consists of total withdrawal or use of a manageable, legal substitute drug, such as methadone.

Depressants

Depressants, also called sedatives, slow down the central nervous system. They can cause addiction. Alcohol, barbiturates (in certain sleeping pills), and some tranquilizers such as Valium and Librium are depressants. Two illegal, increasingly common, and very dangerous depressants are *gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB)* and *Rohypnol* (also known as roofies, roaches, rib, or rope).

GHB is often carried into parties in bottles and may be mistaken for water. It can also be found as tablets, capsules, or powders. Taken for its "intoxicating" effects, GHB and similar drugs can cause a range of problems, from nausea, vomiting, hallucinations, loss of muscle control, seizures, and breathing difficulties to coma and death.

Rohypnol is a tranquilizer tablet similar to Valium. However, it is much more powerful. Often used in combination with alcohol and other drugs, it produces sedative effects, including slurred speech, poor muscle coordination, and amnesia (memory loss). Rohypnol is addictive and may be deadly, especially if mixed with alcohol. Withdrawal symptoms include headache, muscle pain, confusion, hallucinations, and convulsions.

Both GHB and Rohypnol are known as "date-rape" drugs because they can be slipped into a person's drink at a party, rendering the person unconscious and vulnerable to rape. GHB leaves the body in about 12 hours, making conviction of a rapist more difficult unless the rape is reported immediately. Rohypnol users may not even remember being given the drug, thereby making rape investigation more difficult.

Stimulants

Stimulants are drugs that speed up the central nervous system. They accelerate body processes, often to a dangerous degree. They produce a false sense of well-being that may be followed by severe depression. Amphetamines, pep pills, some weight-reduction pills, methamphetamine (speed), and cocaine are stimulants.

Amphetamines are synthetic drugs that act as stimulants. They are similar to cocaine, but are slower acting and have longer effects. These drugs are also known as uppers, ups, and pep pills. *Methamphetamine* is the most potent amphetamine. The powdered form of this drug is called speed, crystal, or crank and a smokable form is called ice.

The "high" from these drugs may last as long as 24 hours, but the psychological "crash" is worse. Severe depression and disturbing psychological reactions may last up to 48 hours. A person with a habit will go through cycles of binge and withdrawal, staying awake for days, then crashing (coming off the drug and sleeping) for several days. Speed is highly addictive.

Cocaine was once known as the drug of the rich, but now it is used by people from all income levels. Cocaine is typically snorted through the nose. A relatively new smokable form is called crack, rock, or bait. The effects of crack are far quicker and more intense. It is intensely addictive and greatly multiplies the danger of cocaine use.

Because it is cheaper and easily available on the street and in "crack houses," crack tends to be used by younger people. Young people who are addicted to crack have to develop methods to afford their addiction. They may turn to theft, prostitution, or dealing drugs.

Hallucinogens

Hallucinogens are mind-altering drugs. They cause often-frightening hallucinations in which users behave as though they are "out of their minds." Examples include *Ecstasy, lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), peyote, STP*, and *phencyclidine hydrochloride (PCP).*

A "club drug" increasingly available to young people is Ecstasy (also called "X" or "E"). Ecstasy tablets, manufactured in illegal labs, may be taken in hopes of increasing mellowness and happiness. However, use of the drug may cause heart, liver, and brain damage and has resulted in deaths. The drug can also cause excessive talkativeness, bodily overheating, extreme thirst, psychosis, memory loss, and impairment of the ability to think.

LSD is also known as acid, sunshine, or white lightning. A very potent hallucinogen, LSD acts on the nervous system and can cause terrifying experiences. Some individuals on LSD have died after trying to "fly" by jumping out of windows. LSD trips may recur in "flashbacks."

PCP is also a deadly drug. Street names include rocket fuel or super joint. Because it is most commonly used in powdered form, it is also called angel dust. The effects of the drug are unpredictable. At its worst, PCP can cause wild hallucinations, physical violence, coma, and death.

Marijuana

Marijuana, also known as pot, grass, mary jane, tea, or weed, is a product of the hemp plant, cannabis sativa. It is usually smoked as a cigarette. Hashish, or hash, comes from the same plant. It is more advanced and potent. Marijuana acts as a stimulant, depressant, or hallucinogen, depending on the amount used and the stability of the user.

Short-term panic reactions are sometimes experienced by young pot smokers. Time and space distortion, impairment of judgment, and loss of motor skills may occur during a marijuana "high." Many long-term pot smokers neglect work and adopt a "drop-out" personality. This behavior has been labeled **amotivational syndrome** by researchers. Heavy use of marijuana can also cause physical problems. The throat and lungs can be damaged, and the user may be more prone to sore throats and bronchial infections.

Inhalants

Some young people have become involved in sniffing inhalants. **Inhalants** are substances that give off fumes that are sniffed for a quick high. Many inhalants are household products such as glue, paint thinner, spray paint, aerosol products, and gasoline. The sniffs of glue or gasoline may produce a sensation comparable to alcohol intoxication.

Inhaling chemicals can be deadly. Inhalants can cause death due to suffocation as the oxygen in the body is replaced with the chemicals. Sniffing inhalants can also cause brain damage, as well as serious damage to the liver or kidneys. Inhaling certain aerosol spray products can kill in seconds by freezing the larynx and respiratory system.

Steroids

Many teens who participate in high school sports have an intense desire to win. This desire has led some athletes to use so-called bodybuilding drugs they believe will build their muscles. **Anabolic steroids** are synthetic testosterone-like drugs that have tissue-building properties. Doctors prescribe steroids to aid in the treatment of anemia, leukemia, and other conditions.

Though steroids may well build muscle, their use in the large doses that athletes take can lead to damaging side effects. These long-term side effects may include stunted growth, early heart disease, and liver tumors. There also are many possible immediate consequences. These include severe acne, jaundice, sexual function problems, and enlarged breasts and premature balding in males. Irreversible masculine traits and fewer menstrual cycles occur in females. Because of such side effects, national sports organizations have taken a strong stand against the use of steroids. Athletes are tested for steroids, and those who test positive are suspended (and sometimes banned) from participation in their sports.

Prescription and Over-the-Counter Drugs

The average American home has a well-stocked medicine cabinet that contains

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Legal Consequences of Marijuana and Alcohol Use

You should consider the legal consequences of using marijuana and alcohol before making decisions about using them. A police record may affect your ability to find a job, to obtain a driver's license, to seek military service, and to take advantage of other opportunities.

Legal penalties for the possession of marijuana vary according to three major factors:

1. The amount possessed.
2. The number of prior convictions for possession.
3. The purpose of possession.

This means that a first offender who has a small amount of marijuana for personal use is likely to receive a comparatively light penalty. A repeat offender who has a large amount of marijuana and is trying to sell it is likely to receive a harsh penalty.

Generally, the possession of marijuana for personal use is a misdemeanor, and the distribution of marijuana is a felony. Each state differs in the exact penalties. They can range from probation to fines, rehabilitation programs, and jail terms. You should know the consequences of the decision to use marijuana.

It is illegal in all states for people under the age of 21 to buy or consume alcohol in public places. Some states, counties, and communities also prohibit the serving of alcohol in homes and other nonpublic places to people under 21. Other regulations concerning the use of alcohol may exist in your community. For instance, people who serve alcohol in their homes may be responsible for their guests. Know the laws that apply to your community and abide by the laws. These laws are for your protection.

Laws against driving while intoxicated (DWI) exist in every state, and the penalties are getting tougher. The concentration of alcohol in the bloodstream can be measured by either a breath test or a blood analysis. In most states, a blood alcohol concentration of 0.10 percent or higher indicates that the driver is incapable of operating a vehicle safely.

DWI laws are for your protection and for the protection of all other people who travel in vehicles. Alcohol is involved in half of all fatal traffic accidents, and traffic accidents are the number one cause of death among teenagers. Most of these accidents involve a driver who has been drinking. Teens are inexperienced drivers. Even small amounts of alcohol can impair their ability to operate vehicles safely. Though the legal consequences of DWI are significant, the lifelong personal anguish a drunk driver will feel if an injury or death occurs will be even more profound.

drugs that are used to treat or prevent illness. Many of these drugs, called **over-the-counter (OTC) drugs**, are available without a doctor's prescription. Over-the-counter drugs are considered safe for use if the required label directions and warnings are followed. Studies show that six out of every ten of the medicines in the home are OTC drugs.

Other drugs in the home are **prescription drugs**, which are available only with a doctor's recommendation. According to the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, prescription drugs are those that are habit-forming or unsafe for use except under a doctor's supervision, 8-11.

Though people are careful to follow the directions given by a doctor for prescribed drugs, they are dangerously careless about the use of OTC drugs. Used properly, OTC drugs are generally safe and effective. Many, however, have a potential for harm if used over an extended period of time or in combination with other drugs. Some OTC drugs can be very addictive. If people experience any physical or psychological withdrawal symptoms after they stop using OTC drugs, then they are addicted. Some of the OTC drugs that may become habit-forming are sleeping pills, diet pills, stimulants, laxatives, eyedrops, and nasal sprays.

Why Do People Abuse Drugs or Use Illegal Drugs?

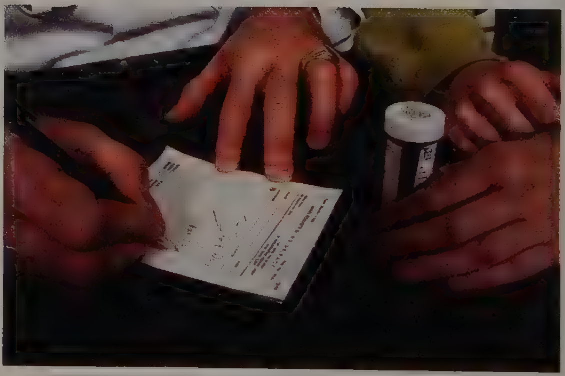
The people who abuse prescription and OTC drugs and those who use illegal drugs come from all age groups, social classes, and races. For some, drug use seems an easy way to escape from problems. Others think it is a way to win friends and prestige in group settings. In many cases, people use drugs to express their need for something to give their lives meaning.

Drug abuse and illegal drug use are often the result of a whole chain of events. Many young people get caught up in a series of decisions that lead them to drugs. They begin by letting their "friends" talk them into smoking cigarettes and having a few drinks. Then these same people may introduce marijuana and other drugs. Before they understand what is happening, the young people may be caught up in a culture of drug use. Other drug experiences may be a constant temptation to them.

Drugs Prevent Young People from Learning How to Solve Problems

Everyone has problems, and everyone has to learn how to deal with them. People cannot escape their problems by misusing drugs or using illegal drugs. In fact, using such drugs usually makes problems worse.

Coping with problems is a process individuals learn as they mature. If you can learn to solve each problem as it



8-11 Prescription drugs can be abused if they are not used according to the doctor's instructions.

occurs, you will have more success in life. You will prevent your small problems from becoming big ones.

If you try to escape problems by using drugs, you are not being fair to yourself. If your mind is clouded by drugs, you will not be able to make good decisions.

Drug abuse and illegal drugs can negatively affect your ability to reach maturity. Instead of being more independent, drugs may force you to remain dependent on others to make decisions for you. If you develop a dependence on drugs, you will not be able to make decisions for yourself.

Saying No to Drugs

Why can some people meet the challenges of social pressure and other stresses in life without turning to drugs? These people have the same opportunities for social involvement. They have the same frustrations. They have the same wide range of feelings, from anger to love and from sadness to happiness. As they have matured, they have learned to deal with people, to cope with stress, and to handle their emotions. They don't allow themselves to hide behind the effects of drugs, 8-12.

More and more young people are saying no to drugs. Many of their reasons are listed in 8-13. Make the decision to be free of drugs, not addicted to their use. Allow yourself to be who you are, not someone created by the influence of drugs.

Sources of Help

If you use drugs and want to stop, the first place to look for help is within

David Hopper

8-12 **Teens can have good times without using drugs.**

yourself. You were the one who chose to use drugs, and you must make the decision to stop. Once you have taken this step, you may want to seek the help of your family, a friend, or a professional person such as a physician.

Most communities have many resources to help those who ask for help. Look in the yellow pages under "Drug Abuse and Addiction Information and Treatment." In some areas, you can call a hotline for immediate help. The person who answers your call will help you talk it out or give you information about other resources. School nurses, counselors, or teachers may be able to refer you to professional help. Many churches, community agencies, and hospitals offer programs that can help.

Why Say NO to Drugs

- I want to do what is considered the smart thing to do. That means not abusing drugs or using illegal ones.
- I want to be in control of my life. I do NOT want to become addicted to any drugs. A person can become physically and psychologically dependent on a drug. The compulsive need for the drug takes over and the person is no longer able to function without the drug.
- I want to live my life within the limits of the law and avoid involvement with illegal drugs.
- I want to do all I can to protect my health and life. I want to avoid unnecessary physical and psychological damage to my well-being. If I give birth, I want my baby to be healthy and free of drug dependency.
- I want to make a positive impression on other people. I want to be able to communicate effectively in my personal and work life. A drug abuser often becomes disinterested in keeping up his or her personal appearance. The ability to communicate is hampered as well.
- I want to be able to perform effectively at school and/or at work. A person using drugs may develop memory loss and lack motivation. Performance suffers due to increased inconsistency in task completion.
- I want to maintain healthy and strong relationships with my family, my friends, and my coworkers. A person who abuses drugs may begin to place more value on the drug dependence than on maintaining meaningful relationships with others.
- I want to use my money to achieve creative, productive, and recreational goals. A drug abuser spends money on drugs that could and should be used for more essential or life-enhancing items. A drug abuser may have to steal in order to support his or her drug dependence.
- I want to set a good example for my future children by using OTC and prescription drugs wisely.

8-13 Young people have given these reasons for saying no to drugs.

Dealing with Peer Pressure

During the school years, most teenagers have an intense desire to "fit in." While they are striving for more independence from their parents, they can become more dependent on their peers. They may want to look the same and act the same as their age mates. Teens may be particularly swayed to conform to the group if they tend to be shy or if they fear group disapproval, embarrassment, or intimidation, 8-14.

Peer pressure, defined earlier, refers to the efforts of one or more members of your age group to influence you. Although peer pressure can be positive, often it is negative.

Negative peer pressure may result from teenagers' curiosity and desire to appear grown-up. They may wish to

8-14 **Teens may feel pressured to change their behavior because of their strong desire to conform to the group.**

experiment with tobacco, alcohol, and other drugs. Once peer pressure is brought to bear, teens tend to go too far because they are afraid to say no.

When teens approach a potentially troublesome situation, they should weigh the pros and cons. They should ask themselves whether the surroundings tempt trouble, and if so, they should leave. It is better to be overcautious than to risk one's health, reputation, and future.

Perhaps the hardest step in dealing with peer pressure is learning how to say no. Many suggestions for saying no to tobacco, alcohol, and other drugs have been presented in this chapter. If teens find it difficult to say no directly, perhaps another technique might work. Some young people can joke their way out of trouble. Others can make an excuse or change the subject to avoid problems. However, if illegal activity is going on, it is best to leave the situation immediately.

Teenagers want to learn about life through first-hand experiences. Parents want to protect their children from group pressures and physical dangers. These opposing desires can create friction within the family. Parents need to understand their teenagers' desire for greater independence. They also need to retain the strength and understanding of loving and caring parents. If teenagers feel secure in their relationships with their parents—even when there is conflict—they are more likely to make wise decisions. If, however, teenagers have serious problems with their family relationships, they are more likely to reject family priorities in favor of those of the peer group.

As teenagers mature, their respect for their parents can grow. Teens can resist negative peer pressures and the possible consequences of conforming. They can make their own decisions and move closer toward responsible adulthood.

Chapter 8 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Smoking causes lung cancer, heart disease, emphysema, and other diseases. Exposure to smoke during pregnancy can result in premature babies and smaller infants who are at greater risk of developing illness.
- Smokeless tobacco, like tobacco in cigarettes, contains nicotine, is habit-forming, and can lead to a number of health problems.
- Most people begin drinking because of social pressure. However, many people choose not to drink.
- Frequent consumption of large amounts of alcohol can cause many health problems. It can lead to malnourishment, blackouts, delirium tremens, neuritis, brain damage, cirrhosis of the liver, pancreatitis, and heart problems.
- Consumption of alcohol during pregnancy can result in birth defects. If a pregnant woman consumes large amounts of alcohol, her baby may be born with a pattern of defects known as fetal alcohol syndrome.
- Alcoholism involves damage to the alcoholic, the alcoholic's family, and society. Treatment and counseling are available for alcoholics and their families.
- Drug abuse is often the result of a chain of events. It usually begins with smoking cigarettes and having a few drinks. It often continues with the smoking of marijuana and then leads to the use of other drugs.
- Drugs cause a wide variety of negative effects and may lead to serious illness or even death.
- Steroid use results in unpleasant and often dangerous side effects.
- Used properly, over-the-counter drugs are generally safe and usually very effective. Many, however, have a potential for harm if used over an extended period of time or in combination with other drugs. Some OTC drugs can be addictive.
- Peer pressure can be positive, but often it is negative and needs to be resisted.

Review

1. True or False. Research studies have provided conclusive evidence that tobacco is dangerous to your health.
2. Describe five health hazards of smoking.
3. True or False. Smokeless tobacco is a safe alternative to smoking.
4. Describe three methods people use to quit smoking.
5. Which of the following statements is (are) true?
   - A. The legal drinking age in all states is 21.
   - B. Alcohol is a stimulant drug.
   - C. The effects of alcohol may vary according to body size.
   - D. Alcohol reduces inhibitions and self-control.
   - E. When alcohol is combined with a tranquilizer, the effect of the alcohol on bodily systems is lessened.
   - F. Coffee and cold showers help people sober up faster.
   - G. Alcoholism is an addictive disease.
6. Explain the differences between drug use, drug misuse, and drug abuse.
7. How do the effects of crack compare to the effects of cocaine?
8. Describe the behavior of long-term marijuana smokers who have amotivational syndrome.
9. Describe the physical problems that are associated with the use of inhalants.
10. True or False. Athletes who use steroids to enhance their performance may develop heart disease, liver tumors, jaundice, and other problems.
11. Explain how peer pressure can influence a person's behavior.

React

1. Poll students about their smoking habits. Ask if they smoke, why they smoke, when they started smoking, and if they have tried to quit smoking. Ask for opinions on school rules concerning smoking and rules about nonsmoking areas in public places.
2. Use role-playing to practice ways of saying no to tobacco, alcohol, and other drugs.
3. Investigate the possibility of starting a SADD (Students Against Destructive Decisions) group or other anti-drinking group in your school or community.
4. Hold a class debate on this statement: Cigarette smoking should be banned in all public places.
5. Choose one of the drugs mentioned in this chapter and do further research on it. Present an oral report to the class about the drug's effects and health hazards.
6. Ask a physician to speak to your class about health problems related to drug misuse and abuse.
7. Ask a law official to speak to your class about legal problems related to drug abuse. Ask about local, state, and federal laws. Compare them with drug laws in foreign countries.
8. Make a file of community resources in your area for people with drug and alcohol problems. Note the type of help, telephone number, address, and cost of each type of assistance.

✣ Reflect

1. Why do you think some teenagers believe smoking is "cool"? What could change their minds?
2. Why do people tend to feel respect for someone who says no to alcohol or drugs at a social event?
3. If you could foresee the future and knew you had a strong likelihood of becoming an alcoholic, would you take that first drink?
4. Describe a situation in which you have felt pressure from your peers to do something you believed was not right for you. Do you feel you handled the situation well? How might you change your behavior next time?

Chapter 9

Lifestyle Options and Consequences

Terms to Know

- lifestyle
- toxemia
- anemia
- agency adoption
- independent adoption
- open adoption
- closed adoption
- sexually transmitted disease (STD)
- AIDS
- HIV
- abstinence

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- define lifestyle and identify some contemporary adult lifestyle options.
- describe adjustments and responsibilities of living as an independent adult.
- describe reasons and circumstances people cite for choosing a single lifestyle, marriage, or living together.
- evaluate alternatives available when an unplanned pregnancy occurs.
- identify sexually transmitted diseases and explain the health crises they pose.
- assess the role of responsible behavior concerning lifestyle options and consequences.

In previous chapters, you have learned of decisions that will affect your health—either positively or negatively. You have also learned about decisions related to your education and career. In this chapter, you will learn about achieving independence and living as a responsible, independent adult. You will also learn of the lifestyle options available to you.

The decisions you make as you achieve independence and choose a lifestyle can have both positive and negative consequences. To make the best decisions, you need to learn as much as you can about living independently. Many of the chapters in this book will help prepare you to live on your own. You also need to learn as much as you can about lifestyle options and their consequences.

Once again, irresponsible decisions concerning lifestyle choice can affect many aspects of your life. These include your health, your sense of self-esteem, your relationships, and your ability to achieve long-term life goals.

Adult Lifestyle Options

Lifestyle can be defined as a set of behaviors adopted by personal choice. The two key words are *behaviors* and *choice.* Responsible choices concerning behaviors can give you a sense of promise for your future. Irresponsible choices may disrupt your hopes for achieving your long-term goals.

You have choices as you decide how you want to live. Your choices will be influenced by your family, your friends, and your career goals. Even more important, your lifestyle will depend on what you want to do with your life. Your personal priorities and goals will help you choose the best lifestyle for you.

The Single Life—Living Independently

Most people will experience living as a single person at some time in their lives. Some single living is temporary. For instance, you may live alone after you leave your parents' home to work full-time or to attend college before marriage. Many other people are single for longer periods due to divorce or the deaths of their spouses.

The number of people living alone is increasing in our country. Currently, about 25 percent of American households consist of just one person. One of the main reasons for the increased number of single adults is that young people are delaying marriage. Heightened educational requirements for some jobs may cause many to delay marriage to complete their educations. Many will choose to marry later, after they become established in their careers. This also means they will be more financially stable when they do marry.

Social pressure to marry early has lessened. Both men and women are finding they are quite capable of living on their own. The more educated women are, the more likely they are to delay marriage. Women and men both may enjoy their financial and social independence and be reluctant to give it up. They may become involved in their careers and find it difficult to commit to a serious relationship. They may wish to be very sure of themselves before making a lifelong commitment to someone.

Sometimes unexpected events bring about a single lifestyle. The death of a spouse leaves a person alone. Separation and divorce mean the spouses will live separately. These changes require an emotional adjustment as well as a change in living styles, 9-1.

The choice to remain single permanently is made by those who enjoy the freedoms and challenges of single life. These singles feel they are able to achieve an enjoyable life without having to rely on a spouse. Their self-esteem is dependent on who they are and not on their marriage partner. Some do not want the responsibilities of marriage and parenting. They may decide that living alone is better than being a part of a bad marriage. A few may be responsible for the care of a parent and find that single life for them is the most convenient way to meet those responsibilities.

9-1 **Previously married single people have many adjustments to make as they learn to live on their own again.**

Single living, however, also involves some challenges. If single people become unemployed, ill, or disabled, they will not have a spouse to help them. If single people have not chosen the single life voluntarily, they may feel they are missing out on a full life. They may desire to marry and have children, but they may not have met the right person to marry. Their dating experience may be limited because of few eligible partners.

Are You Ready to Live Independently?

Even if you marry later on, you may first live on your own. Living on your own as an independent adult will teach you important lessons about relationships, work, and daily life. You will learn, for example, about your personal likes and dislikes. You will have more freedom of choice in areas such as friends, job, food, finances, and leisure activities. If you want to go off to the beach with a friend, you will be able to do so without checking with a parent or spouse first. If you want to accept a job offer, you will be free to accept it without having to worry if your spouse can find a job nearby. If you feel like having the same dinner for three consecutive nights, you will be able to have it without anyone's objection. If you want to buy something expensive and can afford it, you will be able to get it without having to discuss it with a parent or spouse. If you feel like doing things on the spur of the moment, you will be able to do so. You will not constantly have to mesh your daily choices with those of another person.

With these adult freedoms, however, come responsibilities as well. You will need to do many things you may not have done before—perhaps because someone else did them for you. You will need, for example, to take care of your car, pay your bills on time, do your own laundry, handle small household fix-it jobs, and plan healthful meals.

You will find that society has accommodated the increasing number of singles with a variety of changes. New regulations provide for more equality for women. Credit is more readily available for single people. Many buy their own homes. Housing developers are building smaller houses and town homes to appeal to the single buyer. Appliance manufacturers market a variety of scaled-down appliances. Food companies package many foods in single serving portions.

You will learn to take responsibility for your own happiness as you become independent, 9-2. If you are bored, you will develop ways to keep yourself amused. If you are lonely, you will arrange to see friends. You will be able to go out when you choose. Many singles try to meet many people and form a network of family and friends. If they choose to be socially active, they can be. If they wish a more quiet life, they are able to choose this, too.

If you marry later on, your marriage will be stronger if you go into it with a healthy level of independence and self-sufficiency. You will be more likely to take responsibility for your own lifelong happiness rather than expecting your spouse to provide it. You will be more likely to live your own life rather than living life through your spouse or children. You will not have to put up with an abusive spouse out of fear of living alone or supporting yourself financially. You will be strong enough to stand up to your spouse when necessary. You will be less likely to become "a doormat." You will be able to say, "I need you because I love you" rather than "I love you because I need you."

9-2 Single people have more freedom to spend their time as they wish.

How are independence and responsible adulthood achieved? Most adults would reply, "Gradually, and not without a few missteps." Many young adults are faced with inexperience on almost every front, from renting an apartment to dealing with coworkers in a new job. It is only by trying and making a few mistakes, however, that you learn and gain the judgment that comes from experience. Many resources are available to help you learn to live independently and responsibly. Perhaps the most important of these resources is the advice and counsel offered by trusted adults.

Marriage

Marriage is a basic lifestyle in our society. Marriage relationships have changed over the years, but marriage is still the choice of most Americans, 9-3. The percentage of married-couple households in the U.S. is decreasing, however.

This lifestyle fulfills the basic need for establishing a bonding relationship between a man and a woman. Ideally, two persons joined in marriage share a total commitment. This commitment provides a stable foundation for intimacy and inner security. Marriage partners can communicate their deepest feelings. They can share their thoughts, hopes, and dreams. They can work together to reach their common goals.

The commitment of marriage does not mean entrapment or stagnation. Rather, it can give committed individuals the confidence and freedom they need to grow. Today, more young people are seeking a

JUST
MARRIED
HISTORICAL
OHIO
5298H
VEHICLE
OHIO 1928

Jeff Johnston

9-3 **Marriage continues to be the most popular lifestyle in our society.**

marriage relationship in which they can grow as individuals and as a couple. Recognizing the need for both individual and mutual growth helps a marriage to be vital and successful.

In many marriages, both husbands and wives have careers outside the home. In these *dual-career marriages*, both spouses grow individually, and they accept the pressures this busy lifestyle dictates. If the commitment to the marriage relationship remains the primary goal, these marriages can be healthy and expanding. If either spouse places more importance on individual goals than on the couple's mutual relationship or family goals, the marriage may deteriorate.

Couples in a one-career marriage face a somewhat different set of challenges. One spouse may feel envious of the other. The full-time homemaker may wish he or she were out in the world earning an income, advancing in a career, and associating with interesting colleagues. The wage-earner may wish he or she were home, with a more flexible daily schedule and more time for personal interests or family.

One of the basic strengths of marriage is the setting it provides for raising children. More couples, however, are now waiting to have children until they are older. They are sharing more of the decisions. Together, the husband and wife decide whether and when they want to have children, how many children they want, and what spacing they want between children. Once the children are born, the couple shares the responsibilities of parenthood as well. See 9-4.

In a dual-career marriage, both spouses often choose to continue their careers after children are born. This means even greater sharing of child care roles by both father and mother.

If parents view the addition of children as a source of enrichment in their lives, their relationship will remain strong. They will look forward to the changes children will bring in their lives.

Childless Marriage

Most couples regard having children as an important part of marriage. However, many couples prefer not to have children.

9-4 Marriage provides a good setting for raising children.

In the past, couples who chose to remain childless were often viewed as selfish or as ignoring the "natural" purpose of marriage. They received social pressure from parents and peers to reproduce. Parents expected the married couple to provide them with grandchildren. Some peers thought children were necessary in a marriage, and that without children, the couple would be lonely in their old age. These arguments sometimes are still used. However, couples today generally are freer to make their own decisions and to have their decisions accepted by others.

Most couples who choose to have a childless marriage view parenthood as a difficult and demanding task. Many recognize they are not adequately trained for parenthood. Some feel they have not handled their own lives well and do not want to be responsible for others' lives. Some couples are disturbed about the rising number of child abuse and child neglect cases. Still others recognize the relationship between overpopulation and environmental deterioration. Financial factors are a concern for some couples. They feel they could not afford to give children all they would want them to have.

Some couples feel their commitment to their careers or to other pursuits, such as travel, outweighs their desire to have children. Some admit they prefer to invest all their resources in the husband-wife relationship. They do not want to add the dimension of parenthood. See 9-5.

Today, parenthood is considered by most people to be a privilege, not a duty. This attitude gives couples the chance to decide for themselves whether or not to have children.

The question of having or not having children is a key issue in a marriage. Thus, partners should discuss their feelings and

9-5 **Some couples remain childless because this lifestyle gives them more time to spend with each other.**

come to an agreement before they get married. They should maintain a certain degree of flexibility, however. Sometimes decisions are changed after marriage. A couple who planned to have children might find that they cannot have children of their own. Another couple may decide they enjoy their husband-wife relationship so much they don't want to change their lifestyle. Another couple who had planned to have a childless marriage may feel their relationship is missing something. They may reverse their decision and have one or more children.

Throughout a marriage relationship, partners should feel free to express their thoughts and feelings. If their ideas about having children change after marriage, they should be able to discuss the issue honestly. Together, they should reach a decision that is right for them and their marriage.

Living Together

Living together is a lifestyle that combines aspects of single living and marriage. A person who chooses this lifestyle is legally single, but emotionally committed to a partner.

Surveys indicate that there are three main reasons for living together. They are reducing living expenses; getting to know the person better before marriage; and abandoning traditional male/female roles. However, studies have not shown that people who live together are happier than those who choose the more traditional lifestyles of single life or marriage.

Many couples say they live together for financial reasons. However, few of these couples discuss financial arrangements in detail before moving in together. They see the short-term advantage of making just one rent payment instead of two, but they fail to consider long-range financial security, 9-6.

Couples often decide to live together with a "let's see" attitude. If the relationship works, they may get married later. The fact that there is no commitment is cited as both a strength and a weakness. Many feel this allows the couple freedom to establish a good relationship. They feel that living together allows them to learn about each other completely, without any restrictions. If the couple find they do not get along, they can simply separate.

On the other hand, the lack of commitment can cause feelings of insecurity. Keeping the possibility of a breakup in mind may actually help to cause the breakup. Many authorities feel that more "living together" relationships could be permanent if the partners would enter them with a real determination to succeed. Instead, living together is often a method young people use to avoid responsibility.

9-6 **In a lifestyle of living together, unmarried partners typically share living expenses without making any long-term commitment.**

They find it easier to "play" at marriage than to commit themselves to a marriage.

Counselors have another concern about young people living together. They believe that when young people avoid making deep personal commitments, they may be setting themselves up for mediocre relationships. The goal for living together is often expressed as, "Can we avoid splitting up?" They do not ask, "How good can we make this relationship?" Counselors sense that a couple who live together may be settling for too little. They possibly could have a richer, more meaningful relationship if they would accept the lifelong commitment of marriage.

Couples who live together may want to abandon traditional male/female roles. However, the division of labor within these households tends to follow traditional patterns, just as it does among married couples. Many women feel they are being "used" financially. They share costs equally, but continue to perform most of the household duties.

A person may be at another disadvantage as the years go by. One partner may live with the other in hopes of obtaining a commitment to marriage. If marriage does not occur, the person has lost precious years during which a marital partner may have been sought and found.

Couples who live together usually don't realize the powerful influence of their parents. A man and woman may enter the relationship knowing their parents disapprove, but failing to realize the powerful effect of that disapproval. Visits become awkward, and family relationships are strained. This conflict reduces the couple's chances for a happy and lasting relationship.

Other problems to consider are the legal ones. What constitutes a family? Legally, a family must be bonded by either a common ancestor or a marriage contract. The legal family serves four functions:

- A protective environment for raising and educating children.
- An economic support system.
- A legal outlet for sexual expression.
- Psychological satisfaction through a structure of social relationships.

Any other form of living together is penalized by our existing laws. Some of the problems the couples face are as follows:

- Social Security survivor benefits are denied.
- The right of interspousal protection (not having to testify against a spouse), important in criminal cases, is denied.
- Joint income tax returns cannot be filed.
- When one partner of an unmarried couple leaves or dies, the question of ownership of property arises. Laws related to this question vary. In most cases, the remaining partner has no legal claim to the property. If one partner chooses to walk away from the relationship, he or she may take property. The other partner has little, if any, legal chance of claiming it.
- If an unmarried couple have a child, custody problems arise when and if the partners separate or when one dies. In some states, the children of unwed fathers become wards of the state upon the mother's death. The father has to go to court to seek custody. If the father leaves or dies, custody is often awarded to the mother. Children have no inheritance rights.

Lifestyle Consequences

Responsible behavior concerning lifestyle options can lead to positive consequences. Irresponsible behavior concerning your lifestyle can lead to unplanned consequences, some of which may be negative. Some of these negative consequences may affect your health, your self-esteem, your personal relationships, and your long-term goals.

Deciding on your lifestyle means you have a choice. You make choices regarding your behavior in many areas of your life. If you make irresponsible choices in one area, there is a higher probability you may make poor choices in other areas. Your sexual behavior, for instance, is closely related to your ability to make responsible decisions. Poor choices in the area of drinking or drug use may impair your ability to make wise sexual decisions. You can see how problems can cluster together, magnifying the consequences that impact your life. You may make some poor choices occasionally. However, you don't want these poor choices to form a pattern.

An Unplanned Pregnancy

One lifestyle consequence that may have a major impact on the lives of the people involved is an unplanned pregnancy. The impact is even greater if the couple are very young and unwed.

Every year in the United States nearly one million teenage girls become pregnant. This event can spell tragedy for mother, father, and child. In addition, it costs our communities in both human and economic terms.

Most teens make responsible decisions concerning their sexuality. They have a set of personal priorities and standards that guides their behavior. They have goals for their lives that would be difficult to achieve if an unplanned pregnancy should occur. They are able to make responsible decisions in the area of sexuality.

Reasons Unplanned Pregnancies Occur

Why, then, do some teens risk getting pregnant? Most pregnant teens did not plan to get pregnant. They say, "It just happened." Teens are prone to risk-taking. They think, "It will never happen to me." They believe in many of the myths surrounding pregnancy as explained in 9-7.

Myths About Pregnancy

Myth	Fact
"It couldn't happen to me; I'm too young to have a baby."	There is no way of knowing how young is too young. A girl can become pregnant the first time she has sexual intercourse, even if she has never had a menstrual period.
"It's not that time of the month."	It is very difficult for a young girl to know just when she is most likely to get pregnant or most likely to be "safe." Stress, emotional ups and downs, or illness can alter the menstrual cycle. There is a possibility of becoming pregnant at any time of the month, for anyone who is sexually active.
"I haven't thought about birth control because that would mean that I was planning to have sexual relations. If I do have sex, it will be spontaneous and beautiful. Planning it makes it seem bad."	Many young people do not know enough about their reproductive abilities and do not want to discuss sex and birth control. However, those who find themselves in relationships that are becoming deeply emotional should stop and think. Discussing what to do about contraception is better than discussing what to do about an unwanted pregnancy.
"If I get pregnant, he'll love me, and he'll marry me."	If pregnancy occurs, a young man may well walk out. He may even ask, "How do I know I'm the father?" Studies show the young woman is most often left to face the unplanned pregnancy alone. If the young people do marry, they are three times more likely to get separated or divorced than couples who have children after age 20. Very few teenage fathers pay child support or help with the financial support of the mother or the baby.
"If I have a baby, at least I will have someone to love and someone who will love me."	This is one of the most unfortunate myths concerning teenage pregnancy. A young woman who uses pregnancy to find someone to love her will instead find herself trapped by motherhood. The cuddly baby suddenly becomes a 24-hour responsibility, which she may not be mature enough to handle. She will find that her whole life is full of responsibilities that are difficult to handle.

9-7 **Myths regarding pregnancy can hide the true risks of premarital sexual experiences.**

Some teens lack complete information about the human reproductive system. They may believe that pregnancy cannot occur the first time sexual intercourse takes place. Pregnancy can occur with the first sexual encounter. If a pattern of sexual activity develops, the possibility of pregnancy increases.

Teens are getting mixed messages from the media. They see recording and screen stars having babies without being married. They are led to believe that such pregnancies are acceptable.

Some young women mistakenly think that becoming pregnant will help their self-esteem. One young girl reported, "Before I was pregnant, I was nothing. Now I am somebody—I am a mother."

Other teens honestly think they are in a committed relationship with someone who loves them. They think this person will always be there for them, but this is not very often the case.

Risks Involved with Teen Pregnancies

The pregnant teen and her offspring are at risk physically, educationally, financially, and socially. The young fathers also face certain risks. Often the teen parents have already had difficulty taking care of their own lives. The added pressures of having a baby compound the problems.

Physically, a young teenage girl's body may not be fully developed. The added strain of pregnancy places more stress on her young body. If pregnancy occurs before gynecological maturity is achieved, maturation of the skeletal bones may be affected. The added nutrient demands of pregnancy may jeopardize the teenager's growth potential and increase her health risk in pregnancy.

Adolescents who are malnourished prior to pregnancy or are overly concerned about weight gain have an increased incidence of low-birthweight infants or premature babies. Complications such as anemia and toxemia are higher in poorly nourished pregnant teens. **Toxemia** results in fluid retention, causing swelling of fingers and feet, and a sudden rise in blood pressure. **Anemia** is a condition caused by lack of iron in the diet resulting in a low level of hemoglobin in the blood. Hemoglobin is needed to help red blood cells carry oxygen throughout the body.

Compared to older mothers, teenagers are twice as likely to have low-birthweight babies or premature babies. Either of these consequences may pose serious health risks for the babies and for their continuing health through childhood.

The risk of infant death is twice as high for teenage mothers as it is for older mothers. The risk of the mother's death is 60 percent higher for teens under 15 years of age compared to women in their 20s.

Many teenage girls deny or ignore the fact that they are pregnant for as long as possible. They often do not get adequate *prenatal care* (medical care given in pregnancy). In some cases, they give birth without medical care, putting themselves and their babies in real danger, 9-8.

9-8 **Babies born to very young mothers or to mothers who did not receive adequate prenatal care may have serious health problems at birth.**

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Fatherhood Involves Responsibilities

Paternity (fatherhood) brings with it many responsibilities, whether the father marries the mother or not. Many of these are based on laws regarding child support. Do you know the answers to the following questions about paternity issues?

Q: If the mother is not married to the child's father at the time of birth, is he the legal father?

A: No. He is the biological father. Unless certain legal steps are taken after the baby is born, he will not be the child's legal father.

Q: What are these legal steps?

A: The child's father can voluntarily admit paternity and have an attorney file legal papers. Acknowledgment of paternity entitles the child to medical, veteran's, and Social Security benefits. It enables the child to inherit from the father's estate. Knowing who the father is also gives the child access to a complete medical history.

Q: What can the mother do if the father refuses to admit that he is the father?

A: The mother can see an attorney about filing a paternity suit with the court.

Q: What will happen then?

A: The court may order him to give a blood sample that will be used to determine paternity.

Q: If the court decides he is the father, can the baby have his name?

A: Yes.

Q: Can the mother collect support from the legal father?

A: If the court rules that he is the legal father, the court can order him to pay child support.

Q: If the baby and the mother are living with the mother's parents, will the baby's father have to pay child support?

A: Where the mother lives usually makes no difference to the court in determining whether the father should pay child support.

Q: Can the baby's father be made to pay child support if he is only sixteen years old?

A: Yes. If he has an income, he can be ordered to pay support no matter what his age.

Q: If the baby's father is living with his parents and not working, can he still be ordered to pay child support?

A: Yes. Whether he pays support and how much he pays depends on his resources, including his ability to work and his personal property. The court makes the final decision about how much he can afford to pay.

Q: If the baby is raised by the father, will the mother have to pay child support?

A: Both parents are legally obligated to contribute support even if the child lives with someone other than one of the parents, such as a grandparent or foster parent.

Educationally, the teen mother is at risk. Of pregnant teens, almost 70 percent never finish high school. The responsibility for caring for a baby while trying to study and attend classes becomes more than most teen mothers can handle. Pregnancy is the number one cause of female students' dropping out of high school. Without a high school diploma, career options are limited.

Socially, teen mothers often feel isolated from their peers. When friends are going out, the young mother is staying home to care for her baby. Getting a babysitter is often too expensive, or there is no one available. Being able to experience the social life of a teenager is difficult because there is a child to care for 24 hours a day.

Many teenage mothers seek government welfare to meet their financial needs. Many will continue to rely on welfare, reducing chances to upgrade their lifestyle. Their lives revolve around caring for their babies and making ends meet. They may be unable to get jobs because they must take care of their children.

The effect on the young father may also be detrimental to fulfillment of future goals. If he maintains an active role in the life of the child, he may have to drop out of school and find full-time employment. This will lessen his chances for completing an education. With little education, his career options will be limited.

Most teen males do not associate the sex act with pregnancy. They view it as a purely physical experience. They may not even have any emotional commitment to the girl. By the time the pregnancy is confirmed, the boy may no longer be with the girl. He may be totally out of the picture by the time the birth takes place.

Alternatives for the Pregnant Teen

When a teenager discovers she is pregnant, she will no doubt wonder, "What shall I do?" She is probably living in her parents' home when she discovers she is pregnant. Sharing this news with parents can be one of the hardest steps to take.

The decision to have sexual relations is mostly a private one. The need to reveal and deal with a pregnancy, however, involves many people. The male partner, parents, friends, school officials, and medical personnel will ultimately have to be notified or consulted.

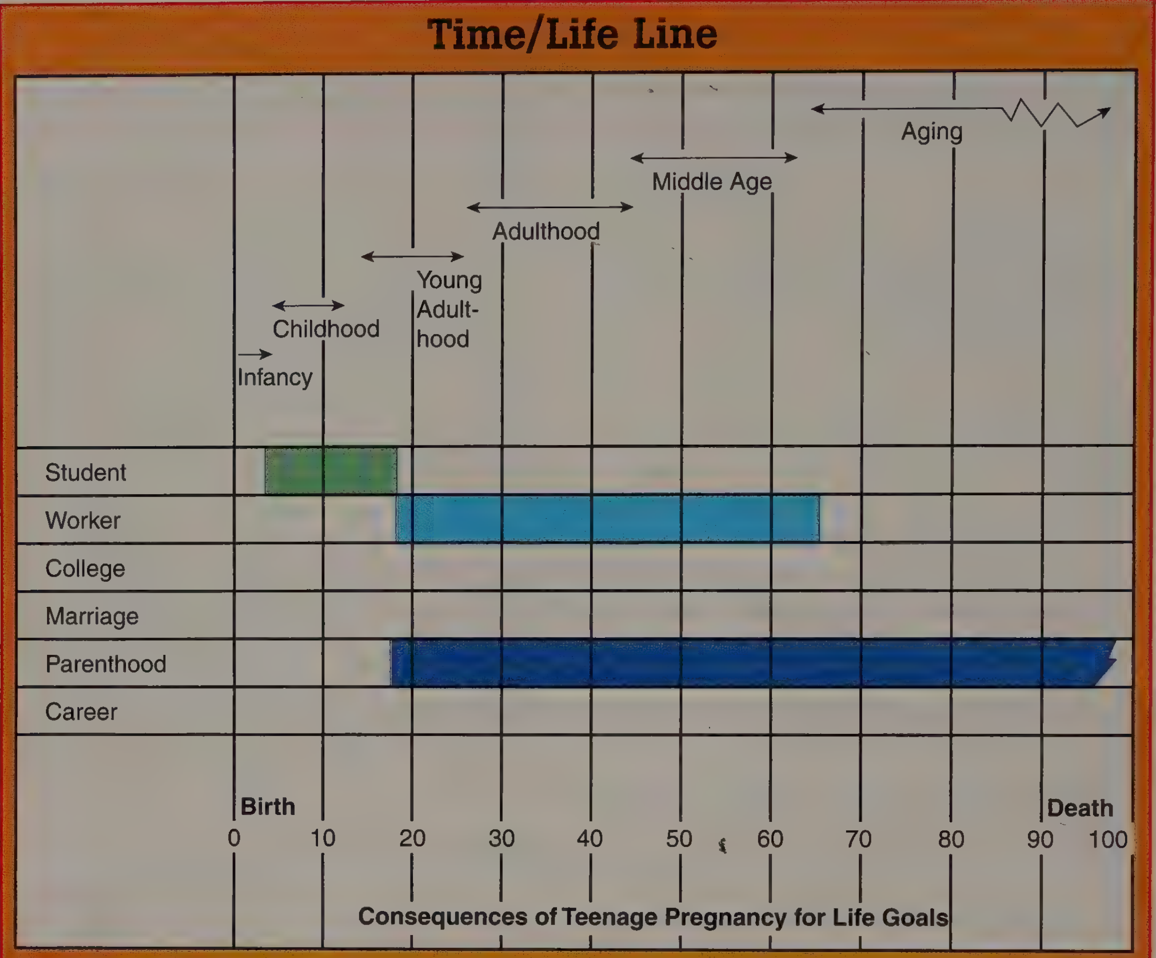
Because teens are very "present oriented," the long-term reality of a pregnancy will be hard to comprehend. When an unwed teen becomes pregnant, many lives will be affected for years to come. The teen girl and her partner have a very difficult decision to make. What are the alternatives they may consider?

Single Parenting

About half of all pregnant teens give birth. Of these, only about 20 percent are married. The majority of these mothers choose to keep and rear their babies alone. In a few instances, the father raises the child alone.

A person who chooses this alternative must be willing to assume great responsibilities. Parenting is never an easy task, and being a single parent requires even more time and effort. The consequences of this choice will affect the entire lifetime of both the parent and the child. See 9-9.

Single parents have many decisions to make. They must first decide where they will live. Single teen mothers are most likely to live with their parents. If the parents are supportive and caring, this arrangement will meet the teen's needs.



Celeste was one of the most popular girls in her junior class. She planned to go to college and study medicine, so she worked hard to get good grades. She had dated Dan since her freshman year. Dan suddenly stopped seeing her, and Celeste was very hurt. Her grades began to drop. She started dating Mike, who had dated almost every other girl in the junior class. After three months, Celeste found she was pregnant. Marriage to Mike was out of the question. Instead, Celeste decided to have her baby and try to make it on her own. Her time/life line is depicted above. How does her time/life line compare with others shown in previous chapters?

9-9 An unplanned pregnancy will have an impact on lifetime goals, as illustrated in this time/life line.

In many instances, however, the teen mother and her parents find it hard to cope with her role as a mother while she is still thought of as their daughter. In some homes, the baby will be raised by the grandparents and will be more like a younger brother or sister to the teenager. If the grandparent is a single parent, the added burden may create relationship and financial problems.

Teen mothers may want to continue their education, but they will have to find child care for their infants. Some schools offer child care during the school day for young mothers. The babies are cared for in a child care center while the mothers attend classes.

Money is a big problem for single parents. If the young mother lives with her parents, they may be willing to continue to pay her expenses. However, some families may expect the young mother to pay them something to defray the added costs of an additional family member.

Very few young parents can live alone without financial assistance. The government offers some financial help through a program called Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF). Medicaid also pays health care costs for needy individuals and families. However, this makes the teen dependent on welfare assistance and creates a dependent lifestyle for her. She may then find it hard to become independently responsible for herself and her child.

Marriage

Marriage was often the path selected in past years. This became the obvious next step when a teen became pregnant. Parents of teens often forced this decision upon the young people. A forced marriage is seldom recommended. The couple will always ask the question, "Did my spouse marry me only for the sake of the baby?" Today, marriage is chosen by only a small number of pregnant teens.

Marriage itself requires many adjustments. Learning to live with another person takes patience, understanding, and true love, 9-10. Premarital pregnancies are often the result of immaturity. Marriage will not encourage maturity, nor will marriage encourage the development of true love if it was not present earlier. Instead, a forced marriage places additional burdens on a relationship. The emotional and financial strains on the couple may compound any difficulties they have adjusting to marriage. If the couple faces too many problems, they may decide to end the marriage. The rate of divorce among young teen couples who are parents is very high.

Teen parents who decide to marry face many of the same problems as the single teen parent. Handling the living and financial arrangements may force the father to drop out of school to get a job. This cuts off his hope for further education and locks him into lower-paying jobs. If the teen mother decides to work, she will have to find child care. This can be expensive.

The couple's relationship is often strained because of the added responsibilities of parenting. The couple see their peers having fun. They are suddenly not able to be that carefree. Free time is very rare for young parents.

José Nieto

9-10 Marriage requires many adjustments when a baby is a part of the picture, but many couples make it work.

The couple may be forced to live with either set of parents. A place to live is supplied, but blending these two families may create problems. Parents who supply support may feel they have a right to dictate how the couple spends time and money. Lack of privacy, sharing housework, and caring for the baby may create clashes between the two families. The couple may feel they are still being treated like children themselves.

Adoption

A single woman who is pregnant may wish to have her baby adopted by a couple who are unable to have children of their own. A pregnant woman can work with an adoption agency or arrange for an independent adoption (legal in most states).

In an **agency adoption**, the birthparents (biological mother and father) release their child to the adoption agency rather than directly to adoptive parents. The agency then places the child with a carefully selected adoptive family. A counselor is available to help the mother look at her options and think through her concerns. A counselor will listen and answer questions. The woman will not be forced into any decision that she does not feel is right for her, 9-11. The counselor can assist the woman in finding a place to live if she does not wish to remain in her family home. She might want to live in a home with other pregnant women. She may wish to stay in a private home and do housework or provide child care in exchange for her housing and meals. The counselor can also advise her on medical care and financial support.

After the baby is born, the birthparents sign a release form. This paper releases the baby to the adoption agency. The baby may stay briefly in a foster home until the final papers are signed by both the mother and father, if the father is identified.

Christi Edgar

9-11 Adoption agencies often provide group counseling sessions to help pregnant women weigh their options.

In an **independent adoption**, the birthparents go through the legal process of placing their baby directly with adoptive parents. They may actually select the adoptive family. Sometimes the baby is placed with relatives or friends, or a family doctor or lawyer may know a couple wishing to adopt. In this type of adoption, it is important to have a lawyer assist with the legal matters.

Agency and independent adoptions may be either open or closed. In an **open adoption**, the birthparents and adoptive parents meet or know each other. In some cases, arrangements are made for continued contact with the child by the birthparents. In a **closed adoption**, the birthparents do not meet or know the adoptive parents. Laws concerning these types of adoptions vary from state to state.

In most adoption cases, the baby is placed with the adoptive parents soon after birth. The child's original birth certificate is placed under court seal. A new certificate is issued which names the adoptive parents as the child's parents. The birthparents have to sign the consent to legalize the adoption. Once the papers are signed, the birthparents cannot ask to have their child returned to them.

Adoption is not an option chosen by many pregnant teens. This may be due to insufficient information concerning the adoption process. Some teens criticize their peers as being selfish and uncaring if they consider adoption as an option. They might say, "How could she give her baby away?" However, placing a baby in an adoptive home is putting the welfare of the baby first. Sometimes young teens cannot provide the best home for a child at this time in their lives. Choosing a family to parent a child is *not* being selfish and uncaring. It is putting the welfare of the baby above oneself.

The need to find the best alternative for loving and caring support of the baby may lead an increasing number of pregnant women to consider adoption. Today less than five percent of pregnant women arrange for an adoption for their babies.

Ending a Pregnancy

Voluntarily ending a pregnancy is an emotional issue for most people. As a teen, you should be aware of the ethical and legal issues involved as the debate on abortion continues. The following outlines the history of abortion in our country.

A 1973 decision by the U.S. Supreme Court established a woman's legal right to an abortion. An abortion is the removal of an undeveloped embryo or fetus from a woman's uterus. Abortions are generally performed to end a pregnancy that would harm a woman or a pregnancy in which the embryo is severely damaged.

In 1989, the Supreme Court gave the individual states the right to set their own regulations. These include parental consent or notification, waiting periods, and certain required medical backup procedures. The ruling opened the way for state legislatures to pass laws that could limit access to abortion in their states. Thus, laws concerning abortion vary from state to state.

Abortion is a choice that should be made by the individual only after seeking the best counsel available from religious leaders, parents, doctors, and counselors. Abortion is considered in cases of rape or incest or when the physical or mental health of the woman is in jeopardy.

Despite its legalization, the topic of abortion is still debated. Those against abortion say that a human life is present from conception and that it should be protected. Those in favor of the right to choose abortion say that an embryo is not yet a human life. They say that a woman has the right to decide what she will do with her body. They also point out that every child born should have the right to be wanted by loving parents.

Before 1973, abortions were illegal, but as many as one million women had abortions each year anyway. Such illegal abortions were often performed under nonsterile conditions and by unskilled persons. As a result, the operations were dangerous. When abortions are legal, they are performed under sterile conditions by skilled physicians.

When an abortion is performed during the first 12 weeks of pregnancy, the operation is usually safe. However, some complications do occur such as infection, hemorrhage, perforation of the uterus, and laceration of the cervix. These complications occur more frequently in young women pregnant for the first time. Serious complications can result in sterility (the inability to reproduce).

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

One of the most serious consequences of certain lifestyle decisions can affect not only a person's health, but life itself. For women, the life and well-being of any unborn children may also be affected. This very serious consequence is that of contracting a sexually transmitted disease (STD).

Sexually transmitted diseases are illnesses spread by sexual contact. There are no effective vaccines for immunization against STDs, nor is it true that once a person has been cured of an STD he or she cannot get it again. Some potential sexual partners may not know they have an STD. Others will be reluctant to reveal it. Every time a person has sexual contact without knowing the health of the other person, he or she is running the risk of getting an STD.

Many people believe that movies, magazines, television programs, and other mass media promote the spread of STDs by encouraging casual sex. Sex is used as a way to sell products and is often portrayed as free of negative consequences. The media are not always honest about the risks of casual sex. They do not portray the personal heartbreak and lifelong sadness that may result from contracting an incurable STD.

Most people who contract STDs are between the ages of 15 and 25, 9-12. Unfortunately, young women, in addition to bearing the major part of the burden associ-

9-12 Young people need to be aware of the risks of STDs.

ated with an unplanned pregnancy, are also at a biologically greater risk for STDs.

Anyone, at any age, can have one or more STDs. Although there are many kinds of sexually transmitted diseases, AIDS, gonorrhea, syphilis, herpes, genital warts, and chlamydia are the most common.

AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome)

AIDS stands for Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome. This condition is caused by a virus called **HIV** (human immunodeficiency virus). AIDS develops when this virus attacks the immune system of the body, creating a weakness to infections. Many of the diseases that destroy the health of people with AIDS are called *opportunistic infections.* These are infections that would not harm a body with a healthy immune system. The resulting disease takes advantage of the weakness in the body caused by the virus. Even a simple cold could lead to a life-threatening illness.

AIDS is primarily a sexually transmitted disease, but it can be spread in other ways. Many cases can be traced to intravenous drug use. Some babies contract the disease while in the mother's womb or through breastfeeding by infected mothers. Some early cases of AIDS in the United States resulted from transfusions of contaminated blood. The risk of receiving contaminated blood has been reduced sharply by routine screening procedures for blood and blood donors. However, contaminated blood is still a problem in many less developed countries.

HIV is spread through contact with certain body fluids—primarily semen, blood, and vaginal secretions. The virus has also been detected in saliva and tears. Among intravenous drug users, the virus spreads by the sharing of contaminated equipment.

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, there is no evidence that AIDS is spread through the air, by insects, or through casual contact such as hugging or a handshake. A person cannot contract HIV by donating blood.

HIV is contracted by people because of their behaviors. Intravenous drug users are at high risk. Homosexual or bisexual males have a high risk factor. Heterosexuals who have sex with people who have HIV are also at risk.

HIV is spreading among teenagers. Of the approximately 40,000 new HIV infections occurring each year in this country, half occur in people who are less than 25 years old. The average period of time from HIV infection to the development of AIDS is 10 years. This means that most young adults with AIDS were infected during their teen years. It also may explain why teens may mistakenly believe they are not vulnerable.

Blood tests have been developed to detect antibodies to the HIV virus. The immune system creates antibodies to fight viruses such as HIV. These antibodies may not be detected for several months after HIV infection. Researchers believe that all or almost all people who test positive for HIV will actually develop AIDS. AIDS is diagnosed only after a person's immune system has been overwhelmed by another disease. As the disease progresses, the inability of the body to fight the infection, such as tuberculosis or pneumonia, becomes life threatening.

The risk of contracting AIDS is one of the biggest health concerns of our time. The risk is greatest for those who have multiple sexual partners, although one sexual encounter can pass the disease. The more partners a person has and the less he or she knows about their sexual history, the greater the chance of coming into contact with HIV.

There is currently no effective vaccine to prevent AIDS, nor is there a cure for AIDS. The careful use of latex condoms will reduce the possibility of spreading the virus, but condoms are not 100 percent effective. Relying on a condom for protection against a disease that is fatal is making a poor choice. No other methods of birth control provide any protection from HIV. The most effective way to avoid contracting AIDS through sexual contact is abstinence from sexual activity outside of marriage.

Gonorrhea

Gonorrhea is an STD caused by bacteria that are spread through sexual contact. The first symptoms usually occur in the lining of the genital and urinary tracts. Two to eight days after exposure, the infected person may notice a yellowish discharge or dripping from the sexual organ and may experience pain during urination. However, many women and some men have no noticeable symptoms of early infection.

If a man receives no treatment or insufficient treatment, the urethra (the canal carrying urine outside the body from the bladder) may become blocked. When this happens, the urethra has to be mechanically stretched to permit urination. Gonorrhea may also cause sterility as the infection spreads to the tubes that carry sperm from the testes.

If a woman receives no treatment or insufficient treatment, the bacteria may spread up the reproductive tract and cause a painful infection. Sterility may occur if the infection advances and causes scar tissue to block the tubes that carry eggs from the ovaries to the uterus. Pregnant women with gonorrhea are likely to have spontaneous abortions or babies who are premature or stillborn. If a baby is carried to full term, it may acquire a potentially blinding eye infection as it passes through the infected birth canal of the mother. To prevent this and other eye infections, all babies born in hospitals are treated promptly with medicated eyedrops.

In addition to the symptoms mentioned above, gonorrhea can cause heart disease, crippling arthritis, and blindness in both men and women.

Treatment for gonorrhea consists of injections of specific dosages of penicillin or similar antibiotics. Treatments vary for different forms and stages of the infection. Although gonorrhea can be cured at any stage, the damage that the disease has already done cannot be undone.

Syphilis

Syphilis is an STD that is caused by bacteria and goes through several stages. The first symptom of syphilis appears 10 to 90 days after exposure. A small, firm sore or *chancre* (pronounced SHANG-ker) develops at the site of infection. The chancre may resemble a bad pimple or cold sore and thus be ignored. In a female, the sore may be inside the body on the cervix or in the vagina, and thus go undetected. The chancre disappears within three to five weeks even without treatment. This leads many to believe the disease is cured, but it is not.

The second stage of syphilis begins 2 to 12 weeks after the chancre disappears. A rash develops that may cover the entire body or only the hands or feet. The infected person may feel tired, lose some hair, and have a fever, headaches, and mouth sores. These symptoms also may be overlooked or diagnosed as something else, but the person is highly contagious during this stage.

After the second stage of syphilis, some untreated people are spontaneously cured. Some others, although not cured, never have further evidence of disease. The majority of untreated people go through two more stages—latent syphilis and late syphilis.

Latent syphilis begins when all the symptoms of the second stage have disappeared. It continues for an indefinite length of time, sometimes as long as 25 years. During this time, the person with syphilis is no longer infectious to others. (An exception is a pregnant woman who may transmit her disease to her unborn child.)

Unfortunately, a sure diagnosis of latent syphilis cannot be made. Eventually, the infected person enters the final stage, or late syphilis. The bacteria begin to damage the heart, brain, or spinal cord. Mental illness, blindness, paralysis, heart disease, and eventually death may result.

Syphilis can be detected and diagnosed by a blood test during most stages. Injections of antibiotics are used to treat the disease in any of the stages.

Herpes

Herpes occurs in many forms, including chicken pox and the common cold sore or fever blister. The form that is considered an STD is genital herpes and is caused by a virus.

Symptoms of genital herpes usually show up 2 to 20 days after contact. Blisters appear on a man's penis or in and around a woman's vagina. They disappear in a week or two, but they may reappear later. There is no cure for the herpes virus. It stays in the body and typically flares up at irregular intervals. Although there is no cure, people with genital herpes should seek medical attention. Medication can lessen the severity of the first attack and may be helpful for people with frequent outbreaks.

A woman with an active case of genital herpes may infect her baby during delivery. If the infection is severe, the baby may not survive. If the baby does survive, the infection usually causes physical and/or mental damage. The doctor of a woman with genital herpes may recommend a cesarean delivery so the baby does not have to pass through the infected birth canal.

Genital Warts

The human papillomavirus (HPV) causes *genital warts*, a common sexually transmitted disease. The warts are contagious and are spread by sexual contact. Genital warts can occur in both men and women.

HPV has a long incubation period. Symptoms may appear as late as three to eight months after exposure—long after a sexually active person may have ended one relationship and begun another.

The warts are found in the genital area and can be small, large, flat, or raised. Sometimes the virus is present in normal-looking skin. Genital warts may be hidden from view on a woman's cervix or in her vagina, but they can cause great discomfort. They may enlarge and spread and may be transmitted to a baby during childbirth. The warts can be treated and removed, but they may recur.

Research has demonstrated that HPV can lead to cervical cancer in women. The first warning that the virus is present may appear in the results of a Pap smear test. In this test, the doctor takes cells from the cervix and has them checked for abnormalities that could indicate cancer.

Chlamydia

One of the most widespread STDs is *chlamydia* (pronounced cla-MID-ee-a). Because it is caused by a bacteria, it can be cured with antibiotics when detected, but detection may be difficult. Most of the men and women who are infected do not have any symptoms. They can carry the infection for years without knowing it.

If symptoms appear, they do so from one to five weeks after contact. Men may notice a watery or milky discharge from the penis and painful urination. Women may notice abnormal discharge or bleeding from the vagina, pelvic pain, and fever. Women may also have painful urination, blood in the urine, and a frequent urge to urinate.

Chlamydia is a major cause of urinary tract infections in both men and women. It also infects the male and female reproductive tracts. Women may develop *pelvic inflammatory disease*, which can lead to infertility. Infants born to mothers with chlamydia may develop serious eye infections and pneumonia. Women who are sexually active should be tested for chlamydia annually.

Sexually transmitted diseases should not be taken lightly. If a person suspects the possibility of having such a disease, he or she should seek help immediately. See a family physician or go to a community health clinic where the treatment is usually free. Under no circumstances should a person try self-diagnosis or self-treatment. If a person is found to be infected, he or she should contact anyone with whom sexual intimacy has occurred so these people can get medical help.

Responsible Behavior

You learned earlier in this chapter that your lifestyle is the set of behaviors you choose to make your own. Your behavior, as you live your life, identifies your lifestyle. For the most part, you are free to choose your behavior in every aspect of your life. You have not always had a choice concerning the circumstances surrounding your life. However, you do have choices in what you do with your life in the future. You have choices when deciding how responsible you will be for your actions, 9-13.

You owe it to yourself to avoid contracting an STD. The best way to accomplish this is through **abstinence**—not having sexual intercourse. If you do contract an STD, you have a responsibility to notify your partner and to seek medical help. If you contract a chronic STD, such as genital herpes or genital warts, you are also obligated to warn any future partners before exposing them to your condition. This is never easy, but it is your responsibility.

Abstinence is the most effective means of avoiding STDs. Teens are given "safe sex" messages promoting the use of condoms. However, using condoms does not guarantee that sex will be safe. A latex condom, used properly, can provide a degree of protection from STDs and is preferable to no protection at all. AIDS is ultimately fatal, often following a period of debilitating illness. You can see the risks of promoting the use of condoms to prevent a disease that kills.

Abstinence is the only guaranteed effective means of preventing an unplanned pregnancy. Other birth control methods are not 100 percent effective. Any woman who is sexually active runs the risk of becoming pregnant.

9-13 **The majority of teenagers behave responsibly in their relationships, controlling their emotions and safeguarding their health.**

In this chapter, you have read about various lifestyle options. You have also learned of some lifestyle consequences that you need to be aware of as you make decisions about your life. Responsible behavior in protecting yourself from an unplanned pregnancy and STDs can make a big difference in your health and happiness for the rest of your life.

Teens must realize the consequences of sexual activity. By learning to show affection in nonsexual ways, couples can enjoy being together without feeling anxious about their health and life. Young people who are willing to safeguard their physical and emotional well-being can look forward to a healthier and happier future.

Chapter 9 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Learning to be independent and to live responsibly as an adult is a gradual process. People who achieve healthy levels of independence and self-sufficiency are more likely to take responsibility for their own happiness rather than expecting others to provide happiness for them.
- Decisions you make about your lifestyle can have both positive and negative consequences for your health, your self-esteem, your relationships, and your long-range goals.
- Most people will experience living as a single person at some time in their lives, either by choice or by circumstance.
- Marriage can offer two people a rewarding relationship, fulfilling their needs for love, affection, respect, recognition, and intimacy. One of the basic strengths of marriage is the setting it provides for raising children. However, many couples prefer not to have children.
- Couples who choose the lifestyle of living together are penalized in several ways by existing laws. People choosing this lifestyle should be aware of these problems.
- Irresponsible lifestyle choices may result in an unplanned pregnancy. Pregnant teens and their offspring are at risk physically, educationally, financially, and socially. Young fathers are at risk educationally, financially, and socially.
- Teenagers faced with a premarital pregnancy have several alternatives from which to choose. These alternatives must be considered carefully in making this very difficult decision.
- Sexually transmitted diseases are a serious consequence of sexual activity. A person's health and even his or her life may be at risk, as well as the health and life of a woman's offspring.
- The most common STDs are AIDS, gonorrhea, syphilis, herpes, genital warts, and chlamydia. HIV breaks down the immune system, leaving the body vulnerable to AIDS. The weakened body easily succumbs to opportunistic infections.
- Abstinence is the only guaranteed effective means of preventing an unplanned pregnancy. It is also the most effective means of avoiding STDs.

Review

1. Lifestyle is defined as a set of _____ adopted by personal _____.
2. Describe three reasons or circumstances why some people live a single lifestyle.
3. True or False. The percentage of married-couple households in the United States is increasing.
4. Cite three reasons why a couple may choose not to have children.
5. Name five ways our existing laws penalize a couple who decide to live together without being married.
6. Describe two physical problems that can occur when teenage girls become pregnant.
7. Describe three decisions a single parent must make.
8. True or False. Today, more pregnant teens choose to marry the father than in past years.
9. Explain the difference between an open and a closed adoption.
10. Why is arranging for an adoption *not* a selfish act for a pregnant teen?
11. True or False. If people use condoms, they will *not* get AIDS.
12. Why are cesarean deliveries sometimes performed on mothers with genital herpes?
13. What can happen in late syphilis if the disease was not treated earlier?

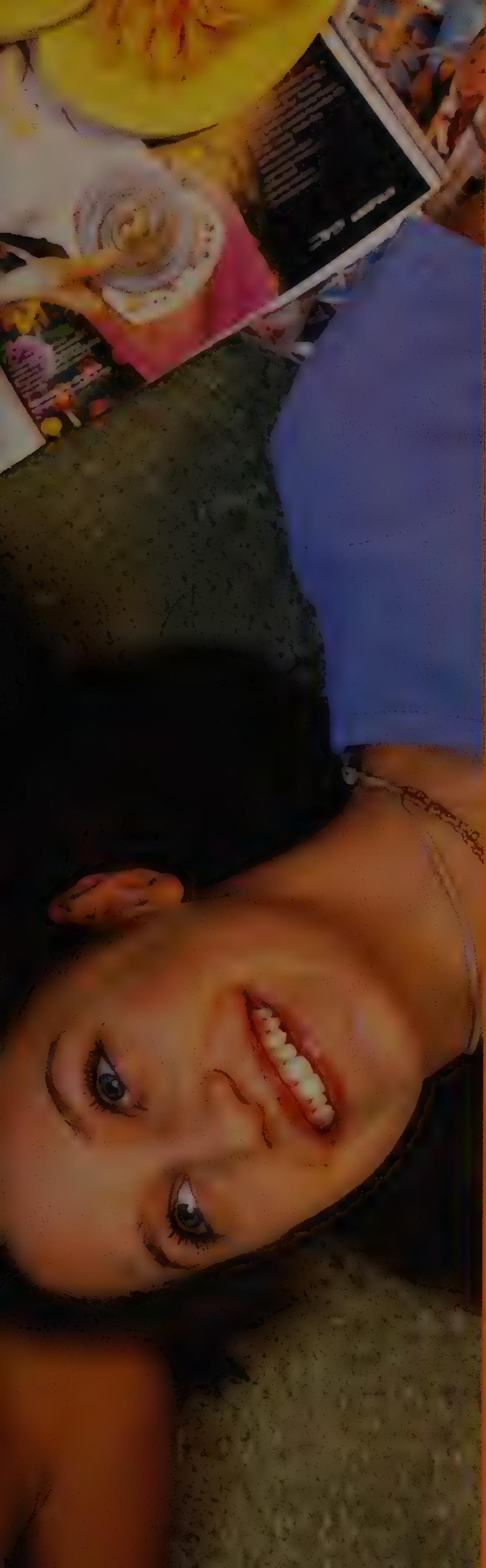
React

1. Ask a mental health professional or marriage counselor to address the class on the topic, "How Healthy Levels of Independence Can Contribute to a Happy Marriage."
2. Ask three persons representing the single lifestyle to speak to your class about the pros and cons of this lifestyle. Try to select a man in his late 20s, a career woman in her early 30s, a divorced person, and a widow or widower.
3. Ask a family law attorney to come to class and discuss the legal aspects of living together. Prepare questions in advance concerning financial responsibilities, inheritance rights, property rights, and other legal issues.
4. Ask a social worker to speak to your class about the problem of teenage pregnancy in your area. Have the speaker describe the resources available in your community to assist teen mothers.
5. Have a panel of male students from the class discuss child care and support from a young father's point of view. Ask how they would feel if, as fathers, they were not allowed to be involved in parenting or providing for their children.
6. Invite an obstetrician to class to discuss the risks of teenage pregnancy.
7. Ask an adoption agency representative to speak on the topic of adoption as an option for pregnant teens. Ask the speaker to describe a typical adoption plan.
8. Assign students to research the availability of adoption in your community. Cite different resources, types available, and costs.
9. Role-play a situation in which a teenage girl announces that she is pregnant. Consider the emotions of the girl, mother, father, boyfriend, boyfriend's mother, and boyfriend's father.
10. Ask a physician to speak to the class about sexually transmitted diseases.
11. Research the resources available to help people who think they may have a sexually transmitted disease.
12. Set up a student panel discussion on the topic, "Responsible Choices Concerning Lifestyle Options."

Reflect

1. Accept or reject the following statement: A lifestyle of marriage provides the most fulfilling relationship between a man and woman. Support your answer.
2. Who suffers most from an out-of-wedlock pregnancy—the girl, the boy, their families, or society? How might the baby's life be affected? Make a list of the financial and emotional costs to each person or group.
3. How can AIDS impact the life of a young person? How would you feel if you had exposed yourself to AIDS? How would you feel if you had AIDS?
4. If you knew a prospective date had a sexually transmitted disease, would you go out with that person? Why or why not?

star wear



Part III

Getting Along with Others

Chapter 10
Communicating with Others

Chapter 11
Developing Close Relationships

Chapter 10

Communicating with Others

Terms to Know

- communication
- verbal communication
- nonverbal communication
- active listening
- feedback
- passive listening
- empathy
- body language
- assertive
- clique
- hazing
- bullying
- conflict resolution
- mediator
- sexual harassment

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- recognize the many ways you communicate with others.
- evaluate the importance of good listening skills.
- judge the importance of communicating a positive image of yourself to others.
- identify five levels of communication.
- describe assertive behavior and its effect on communication.
- analyze communication skills that work well with parents.
- describe group behaviors that involve violence.
- recognize sexual harassment if it occurs.

Communication is very important in getting along with others. You need to be aware of all forms and levels of communication and how best to use them. We all think we know how to communicate, but there are obviously problems. Poor communication accounts for many misunderstandings among friends, family members, and even among nations.

What Is Communication?

Communication is any means by which you share a message with another person. You may use either words or gestures, or combine them, 10-1. You may choose to write your message.

Cholla Runnels

10-1 **A father and son communicate in many ways. A simple gesture can communicate love and affection.**

You are a part of the "communications generation" with access to many new forms of communication technology. For instance, by going online you can send and receive information through computers. Fax machines can transmit and receive pictures as well as words. Cellular telephones are completely mobile so you can communicate from virtually any location. Even full-color videophones are available. Small new portable devices called personal communicators allow people to make calls, send faxes, take notes, and send handwritten messages using a special pen instead of a keyboard. New technology is changing our means of communicating every day. However, even with all the technology, you have to be able to communicate your message in a clear, concise manner that is easily understood.

Communication involves a sender and a receiver. The *sender* transmits the message in a variety of ways. The *receiver* hears and interprets the message. A message may be hard to understand if the sender does not send clear, accurate, and complete messages. The receiver needs skills in listening and interpreting the message, 10-2.

Forms of Communication

People communicate using both verbal and nonverbal communication. **Verbal communication** uses words to send and receive messages. Anytime you use words to communicate, you are using a form of verbal communication. When you write an e-mail message or a term paper, you are using verbal communication. When you speak in front of your class, you are using verbal communication.

Nonverbal communication uses factors other than words, such as gestures, facial expressions, eye contact, and body movements. Nonverbal communication can be effective in sending messages even though you do not use words. You may not always be aware of the nonverbal messages you are sending, but those around you may still receive nonverbal messages from you.

Listening

Your skill in listening is as important as your skill in sending messages. Both are equally important.

The way you listen affects the quality of conversation. Listeners can lead others

10-2 **For good communication, people must be willing to both send and receive messages.**

into deeper communication. As a good listener, you can indicate to the sender that you heard the message and you understand. You may nod, smile, or make eye contact that indicates you have received the message. You may even say, "I see." This is **active listening**. It encourages further communication.

Feedback is communicating to the other person how you feel about what was said. The sender knows you listened because you are responding. People feel good when they know you really listened to what they said, even if you don't always agree with them.

The opposite of active listening is **passive listening**. A passive listener simply takes in the words and offers no sign of hearing or understanding the message, 10-3. The sender gets the message that it isn't worth trying to continue the conversation. Further communication is likely to be cut off.

Careless listeners pick out bits and pieces of conversation and don't listen to the rest. This selective listening often causes them to take words out of context. *Narrow listeners* hear only what they want to hear. They tune out anything that does not fit in with their preconceived notions. *Defensive listeners* read hostile meanings

10-3 **Does it appear that there are some passive listeners in this classroom?**

into what is being said. They have negative feelings about conversations because they feel they are being attacked.

Listening is a skill that you can develop. If there seems to be a misunderstanding, it is helpful to repeat what you heard. This allows the sender to clarify the message. It is also important to listen to the entire message and to keep your mind open to all ideas.

Empathy

A key word in good communication skills is empathy. **Empathy** is the process of seeing things from another person's view. When you empathize with someone, you understand how that person feels and why, without necessarily sharing those feelings at the same time.

Empathy differs from sympathy, but both have Greek origins. Em (Greek for in) and pathos (Greek for feeling) combine to form the word empathy. This means, "I know how you feel. I have been sad or angry in the past and know what you are going through." Sym (Greek for with) and pathos are the roots for the word sympathy. This means, "I feel as you do. You are sad and I am sad, too. You are angry, and I share your feeling of anger."

Sympathy is sometimes resented: "How can you be sad? I am the one who has lost a brother!" Empathy is more likely to be appreciated and helpful. This assures more open communication and a better understanding of other people.

Nonverbal Communication

Each of you sends messages through your facial expressions, body motions, and the use of the space around you. This is nonverbal communication—sending messages without using words. Pantomimes are fun to watch. Even without spoken words, the messages are very clear.

Body Language Communicates

Body language is a form of nonverbal communication. You reveal some of your inner feelings through your use of body language. For instance, drumming your fingers and swinging your leg may be signs of tension. Smiling and nodding your head may indicate enthusiasm, 10-4. Steepling your fingers may suggest that you feel you have authority and are in control of a situation.

You can express either positive or negative emotions through body movements. If you remain in face-to-face contact with someone, you indicate your desire to communicate. If you turn your body, move farther away, or fold your arms across your chest, you may be setting up barriers to communication. See 10-5.

10-4 **Smiling, leaning forward, and eye contact are powerful forms of body language that reveal much about how you feel.**

10-5 **Does this man's body language reveal how this business meeting might be going?**

In a group meeting, people often imitate each other so the entire group sits in the same way. A person who wants to assume a higher status may shift to a different position.

The use of hands and arms to emphasize speech allows people to "read" each other more clearly. An example of this is shown in 10-6. Another form of body language is the use of facial expressions. The business persons in 10-7 are communicating their interest and enthusiasm for their proposal.

Eye contact is yet another way of expressing yourself. Many people claim they can "read" others by eye contact alone. In peak communication, eye contact is maintained continually. Sometimes your eyes expose your true feelings, even when you are saying something else. When you break eye contact, you may be indicating that you want to stop verbal contact as well.

Cultural Influences on Communication

People from various cultures have characteristic patterns of nonverbal communication. For example, in some parts of the world, people stand closer to each other during conversations than they do in other countries. People from some cultures may use their hands more while conversing. Another cultural characteristic

10-6 **Gestures may help people communicate their messages more clearly.**

10-7 **Facial expressions can be very important when conducting business.**

is the open demonstration of affection in the form of hugs and kisses. In contrast, other cultures are more reserved.

Even families who have lived in this country for generations continue to be influenced by their cultural heritages. It is important to try to recognize, understand, and accept differences in cultural background among people. You can build bridges across cultures by learning to be comfortable with such differences. If a person's ways of communicating seem strange to you, remember that if you had been raised in the other person's environment, you would no doubt behave similarly.

Your Appearance Communicates

People form both first impressions and lasting images of you according to the way you look. This, too, is a form of nonverbal communication. If you want to create a good impression, you should project a positive image, 10-8. This is especially important in job interviews. Not everyone is beautiful or handsome, but everyone can be well-groomed.

Good grooming habits show you care about yourself and about other people's opinions of you. Clean hair that is carefully

10-8 Looking clean, neat, and attractive helps you communicate a positive image of yourself to other people.

cut and shaped will enhance your overall appearance. Hands that are clean and fingernails that are neatly trimmed will also help you create a good impression.

Both men and women should choose clothes that are appropriate for the occasion. They should wear clothes that help them look attractive, make them feel comfortable, and help them express the image they want to portray.

Proper care of clothing is equally important. Even good-quality clothes will create a poor impression if they are soiled or wrinkled. Hang or fold garments so they will retain their shape. Use proper laundry and cleaning methods. Press garments well.

Your posture is a clue to your personality. If you slump your shoulders, bow your head, and keep your eyes on the floor, you give the impression of wanting to go unnoticed. If you lift your chin, square your shoulders, and walk with pride, others will see that you are full of vitality. If you appear self-confident, you will feel more self-confident, and you will communicate that feeling to others.

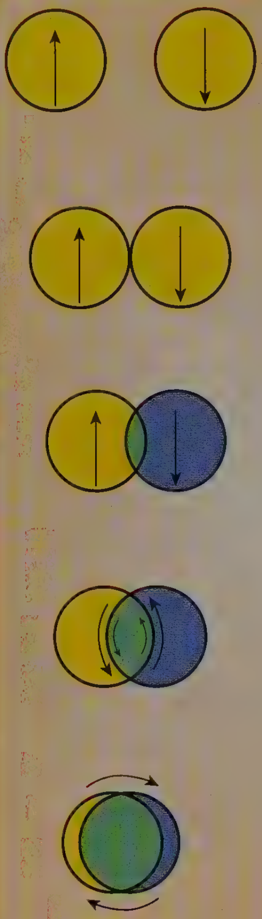
Taking care of your appearance will be essential throughout your life, helping you to achieve success both personally and professionally. Your family and friends judge your appearance now. In the future, your appearance will be judged by your employers, coworkers, and customers. Employers have the right to demand certain standards of grooming as they evaluate job applicants. They are selling a product or a service, and the people they hire must reflect a positive image.

Levels of Communication

Communication can be achieved on five different levels, as shown in 10-9. Each level varies with your desire to reveal your thoughts or feelings to another person. Few people reach peak communication with many different people.

Level Five

The weakest level of communication is level five. It is often called the cliché level. You often communicate words with little meaning behind them. You do not allow yourself to become very involved. A common exchange at this level is, "How are you?" "I am fine."



Level five
In this cliché level there is little involvement.
"How are you?"
"I am fine."

Level four
You do not commit yourself, but you question the other person.
"I heard you were not feeling well."

Level three
You indicate some willingness to share ideas.
"I felt like that last week and found all I needed was rest."

Level two
You become vulnerable to another person as you expose your emotions.
"I'm concerned about you not feeling well."

Level one
You express complete openness and honesty; you want to share and understand.
"Is there anything I can do to help you feel better?"

10-9 **Levels of communication vary according to how openly you reveal your inner self.**

Level Four

In level four, you draw out very little from others or from yourself. You may be willing to tell what others have said or done, but you will not invest any of yourself in the conversation. You may say, "I heard you were not feeling well," but you add nothing about your concern for the person.

Level Three

You show some willingness in level three to share your ideas or judgments with another person. Usually you reveal some of your ideas, but you carefully restrict them until you test the reactions of the listener. If you sense any doubt, you refuse to expose yourself further. You may say, "I felt like that last week, and I found that all I needed was rest." If the other person says, "That's all right for some, but I can't rest," you will probably not involve yourself any further. However, the person may respond by asking, "Did the rest really help you?" In that case, you might be willing to go into more depth.

Level Two

In level two, you are becoming increasingly open to another person as you expose more of your feelings and emotions. You have a strong desire to let someone else know how you think and feel. You are completely honest; you do not judge the other person. The statements, "I think physical fitness is important for everyone. I'd like to start an exercise club in my neighborhood," may reveal a great deal about you. Such statements may also open the door to further and deeper communication.

Level One

On level one, complete openness and honesty exist between two people, 10-10.

They accept each other for what they really are. They have the courage to reveal their deepest thoughts and feelings to each other. Each wants to understand how the other person feels and why. This is the real sharing that is needed for total communication.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Communicating Socially

Have you ever felt uneasy when you were eating dinner in a restaurant or when a friend wanted you to meet his or her parents? Knowing what to do in social situations will help you enjoy them more and can improve your feeling of self-esteem. Feeling comfortable when you are in a new situation, such as a job interview, also helps you communicate more effectively. Rules of etiquette are meant to make situations pleasant for others and for yourself. Using proper etiquette shows you care enough about others to behave in a thoughtful and courteous manner. Using the following rules of etiquette will help you feel comfortable in most social situations.

Introductions

When making introductions, always mention the name of the key person first. Key people, or those whom you want to honor, include: women over men, older over younger, host over guest, and senior-level job title over junior-level title. For instance, if you were introducing your parents to your teacher at school, the teacher would be the key person. You would say, "Mrs. Ortez, I would like you to meet my parents, Mr. and Mrs. Jackson." If Mrs. Ortez were visiting your home, your parents would be the key people. You would say, "Mother and Dad, I would like you to meet my teacher, Mrs. Ortez." This simple rule—key person first—will help you make your introductions with ease.

Shaking Hands

Shaking hands is a symbol of friendship today. In years past, it was done to show the person you were greeting that you had no concealed weapon in your hand. A woman usually extends her hand first if she is being introduced. In job interviews, it is a nice gesture to extend your hand and thank the employer for taking the time to interview you. A good, firm (but not crushing) handshake can be a positive gesture that may help you get the job.

(continued)

Phone Calls

You should limit the length of your calls, especially if you know that other people have to use the phone. If you are calling to ask for a date, make your purpose clear. Don't just ask, "What are you doing Saturday night?" Instead, state the occasion and the time. For instance, you might say, "There is a football game Friday night, and a dance afterward. Would you like to go with me?" This clear communication gives the other person the information needed to respond. It also prevents the guessing game that makes people feel uncomfortable.

At the Table

The placement of flatware (knives, forks, and spoons) confuses some people, but the rules are quite simple. Knives and spoons are to the right of the plate, forks on the left. When you begin eating, use the outside pieces of flatware first. For example, suppose a meal began with soup. You would find the soup spoon at the extreme right. Suppose salad was served next. The salad fork would be at the extreme left. Flatware for the main course would be toward the middle, closer to the plate. Occasionally, dessert silver is placed crosswise at the top of the plate.

Once you have used a piece of flatware, do not place it back on the tablecloth. Place it on the plate instead. Napkins are usually placed to the left of the forks, unless they have been folded and placed in a special manner. Napkins should not be tucked into your collar unless a special type of food is being served, such as lobster or barbecued foods. When you are finished, fold the napkin loosely and place it on the table to the left of the plate.

10-10 Level one is peak communication, in which both communicators desire complete sharing and understanding of feelings and emotions.

Assertiveness in Communication

To be **assertive** means to express your feelings directly, to ask for what you want, and to refuse what you don't want. When you are assertive, you are sure and confident. You respect yourself and others. You treat the people around you fairly and honestly.

Assertiveness is not the same as aggressiveness. Aggressive behavior is forceful, hostile, or destructive. It involves putting another person down. Assertiveness is positive. Aggression is negative.

Passive behavior is simply observing and not becoming emotionally involved. It is literally doing nothing. Thus, passive behavior can be negative as well.

Learning to be assertive helps people communicate effectively. It helps them relate to other people in positive ways. It helps them reach their goals and thus to feel good about themselves.

When you are assertive, you are able to

- express your feelings honestly.
- say no without feeling guilty or apologetic.
- stand up for your own beliefs without attacking the beliefs of others.
- express yourself without trying to put others down.
- admit your anger and express it directly to the appropriate person—without physical or verbal abuse.

If you are assertive, you will be able to work actively and openly to get what you want, 10-11. You will be straightforward and yet show respect to others. Your peers, your family, and those with whom you work will feel they have been treated fairly and honestly.

Using I-messages, You-messages, and We-messages

When you communicate with others it is important to send clear messages. I-messages help. *I-messages* are not accusing or belittling. By using an I-message, you take responsibility for how you feel. Such messages may be less threatening than other messages and may help keep the lines of communication open between people. You will discover your communication with others will improve when you start your message with "I." You are stating how you feel, and not blaming someone else for how you feel.

You-messages are often used, but they tend to be more negative than I-messages. You-messages may actually create a confrontation when you didn't mean to do so at all. You-messages may be accusing and belittling. They may criticize the other person and place blame on others for how you feel. For instance, suppose you are sharing a room with a brother or sister who refuses to help keep it clean. Using a you-message, you might say, "You are so messy. You never pick anything up!" With an I-message, you might say instead, "I'm upset because you have not picked up your things like you agreed to do." Using I-messages allows you to state your feelings and the reasons for your feelings. You are likely to get more cooperation using this approach. I-messages and you-messages are compared in 10-12.

10-11 **If you are assertive, you make your wishes known to the group in a respectful manner.**

You-messages	I-messages
Ordering, commanding "You have to help me."	**Seeking cooperation** "I would appreciate your help."
Warning, threatening "You had better do it this way or else."	**Suggesting** "I would suggest that you do it this way."
Judging "You are always late."	**Praising** "I know you will be on time because it is important to you."
Accusing "You lied to me!"	**Advising** "I feel there is a misunderstanding."
Demanding "You have to be there on time."	**Persuading** "I would like you to be there on time."
Blaming "You didn't get up in time—that is why you were late."	**Reassuring** "I realize it will be difficult, but I know you will try to be there on time."

10-12 You can see from this comparison how I-messages are more likely to bring about positive feelings and actions than you-messages.

As a teen you may promote good communication in your family if you use I-statements. For instance, you may wish your parents would trust you by extending more privileges to you. Your parents may feel the rules they have set should stay in place. If you use a you-statement, you might be blaming your parents for being too rigid. "You are too rigid. You have a rule for everything!" If you use an I-statement, you are stating how you feel and why. "I feel as though you don't trust me because there are so many rules. I am not given a chance to show that I can act responsibly." Using this approach, your parents are more likely to listen to your concerns.

We-statements offer a further step in improving communication, particularly in families. We-statements define the problem as one that is of mutual concern to several people. An I-statement indicates that an individual has a problem. We-statements indicate the problem exists in a group or a relationship, such as the family. Two or more people are jointly involved in the situation.

We-statements minimize the individualistic aspects of the problem and emphasize the togetherness aspects. These statements give everyone in the group equal responsibility for solving the problem. One person does not have more responsibility than another. They communicate, "We're in this together." For instance, a family might use the following we-statement: "We need to decide what we are going to do over the holidays." Each family member may have different ideas as to how the problem should be solved, but all members' wishes should be considered in the final decision.

I- and we-messages can help people improve their communication patterns with their friends, family members, or dating partners. Most people are not very cooperative when they feel they are being criticized or accused. Since I- and we-messages are less threatening than you-messages, they help keep communication lines open for further discussion.

Communicating with Parents

Communication problems between teens and their parents are widely publicized. Some families have more problems than others. When conflicts do occur, they are often the result of teens trying to establish independence and parents expressing concern for their children's welfare.

Some parents say, "I'll never understand young people today!" Their children reply, "My parents don't understand the problems I face!" Parents often enter parenthood with very little understanding of what is required to develop and maintain good relationships with their children. To make the problem worse, attitudes are changing quickly in today's fast-paced world. There may be large differences between the attitudes of parents and their children. Some parents even notice differences between the attitudes of their older and younger children who may be separated by only a few years. As culture and attitudes change, the need for good communication between parents and teens grows even greater.

Solving Family Communication Problems

Good communication is important for families. It can help prevent barriers from getting in the way of family and individual goals. The following suggestions may help you solve communication problems with your parents.

Problem: You can't find a good time to talk with your parents. In many families, discussions started in the hour before dinner are more likely to flare up into problems. At this time of day, roles are shifting, and family members are tired and hungry. The psychological strain creates a poor atmosphere for thoughtful discussions.

Try to approach your parents at a time when they seem to be the most relaxed and free from pressure. Get up 15 minutes early and talk with your parents before breakfast, or bring up the subject after dinner, 10-13. If they cannot talk then, tell them you need to talk with them, and ask them to schedule a time.

Each family handles discussions in its own way. Some families have brief, casual discussions while sharing family chores. Other families prefer the structured atmosphere of a family council. If a heated discussion is apparent, some families stop whatever they are doing to talk it over. Others settle problems by scheduling a discussion at a later time, when they can give their full attention to the issue.

Problem: Your parents don't trust you. Many young people complain, "My

Christi Edgar

10-13 **In many families, the best time to discuss important issues is in the kitchen after dinner.**

parents don't trust me. They won't let me do anything." This lack of trust may have resulted from their failure to fulfill small responsibilities. If teens have demonstrated they cannot be trusted to fulfill minor tasks, parents will doubt their ability to handle larger responsibilities.

Trust is a privilege that must be earned. When you show your parents, through your actions, that you can be trusted, you will win your parents' encouragement and support, 10-14.

Problem: Your parents ask too many questions. If you resent their probing at certain times, try to understand why they need to ask questions. Have you effectively communicated your needs to your parents? Have you reassured them by telling them what you want to do and why? If you remember they are deeply concerned about your welfare, you will understand that they want to know how you feel, what you need, and what you are doing. Perhaps then you will understand

Christi Edgar

10-14 **Young people earn the trust of family members by showing that they can be responsible.**

how they feel and the reasons for their questions.

Problem: You are not sure how to approach your parents about a problem you have. You may want to talk first to a third party. This should be a person whom you respect and with whom you can talk freely. Sometimes a family friend, relative, school counselor, or teacher can help you sort out your thoughts. Then when you are ready to talk to your parents, this person may help you open the doors.

You should not feel embarrassed to ask a person you respect for help in reaching a parent. Likewise, parents should not be upset when their child seeks help from a respected third party. If this three-way process can reestablish communication, it will be worth the effort. It will also indicate maturity on your part in working out a method for establishing communication.

A mended line of communication is better than a broken one. You may discover that your parents felt that you were wrestling with some problems, but they were waiting for you to take the first step in seeking their help. Every family can experience gaps in communication. A stable family can recover from these gaps and reopen the lines of communication.

Problem: You want more privacy. Privacy is a basic need for teenagers, but sometimes the way they communicate this need creates problems in families. If you want more privacy, show your family that you deserve it. One way to do this is to stay out of trouble and to be as up front with your parents as you can be. Another way is to accept the responsibilities that come with the privilege of privacy. This means you don't have the right to set your own lifestyle and schedule, independent of everyone else. Each family member shares parts of his or her life with others in the family. You may like to sit in your room by yourself, with music playing and the door shut. That's fine, if you aren't disturbing others.

Sometimes you have to find your own privacy. If you share a room with a sibling, you may have to find another place where your privacy will be honored. See 10-15. Remember that your parents and siblings need some privacy, too.

Problem: Your parents are upset about your choice of friends. Perhaps your parents have not had a chance to get to know your friends, 10-16. Have you provided your parents with as much information as you can about them? Have you asked if you could bring your friends to your home or tried to arrange a meeting somewhere else? When they have been in your home, have they respected the wishes of your parents? If you are sincere in your

10-15 Everyone needs some privacy to relax, read, listen to music, or just think.

10-16 **If your parents are unhappy with your choice of friends, maybe they just need a chance to get to know them better.**

efforts to establish an understanding between your friends and your parents, your parents will probably act favorably.

Most parents realize that it is beneficial for you to evaluate your friends in familiar surroundings. They know that forcing you to make these judgments in secrecy or under strained conditions would be unwise. In your home, or in the company of your parents, you will be able to determine if the friendships really mean a lot to you.

If your parents continue to be negative about a friendship, you should ask yourself if they are right. With their added experience, they may be better judges of character than you are. It is true that the best way to learn is often by experience. However, if there is a good chance that you are moving toward a disastrous situation, your parents would be helping by warning you.

Time helps to settle many conflicts about friends. Given time, either your parents or you may have a change of attitude. If neither side gives in, time will prove who was right, and both sides will learn from the experience.

Problem: You want to be given more control over your life. During the teen years, control is gradually shifting from almost complete control by parents to increasing control by the young adult. During this shift in control, negotiation can be an effective tool. For instance, you may want permission to go somewhere, and your parents are reluctant to grant permission. Negotiation can often resolve the matter. The following steps can be used:

1. Ask for permission.
2. If your parents deny you permission, find out their objections.
3. Propose a compromise that might overcome their objections.

Sheena used this approach with her parents. She wanted permission to attend a party a classmate was having. Sheena's parents said she could not go, so she asked why. Her parents were afraid the party would not be chaperoned. Sheena decided to propose a compromise. She called the friend who was giving the party to make sure it would be chaperoned. Sheena further told her parents that if the party began to get out of hand, she would leave immediately. With this information, Sheena's parents decided to let her attend the party. Sheena was given some control, as well as the chance to prove that she can be responsible for making good decisions.

Further tips for improving family communication are suggested in 10-17.

Group Communication Patterns

Most teens enjoy being a part of a group. In fact, some of your fondest memories of your friendships thus far are likely to be connected with group activities. Communicating in a group gives you opportunities for individual expression and group sharing. These experiences provide for individual growth, and they also give you chances to communicate with a variety of people.

In the teen years, many group activities are centered around social activities. In every school, students sometimes form loosely organized groups just to enjoy being together. Good communication enhances the social interactions within any group.

Cliques

Group interaction can be fun when you are in the group. If you are on the outside, wanting to be "in," you may have some sad experiences concerning groups. A **clique** is

How to Improve Family Communication

- Build a "trust fund." Earn your parents' trust by keeping promises, honoring commitments, and fulfilling responsibilities.
- Pick a good time to begin a discussion. Parents and teenagers alike have busy schedules, but if you all try, you can find time for a good talk.
- Indicate your honest wish to talk. Parents may not be aware that you want to talk until you tell them so.
- Retain a pleasant tone of voice, and avoid critical or sarcastic remarks. Nothing is gained by raising your voice or speaking harshly.
- Use I-messages rather than you-messages.
- Know when and how to "throw in the towel." It's important to know when to give up a lost cause and put an end to an argument.
- Sometimes it's best to suggest dropping the issue for the time being.

10-17 If your family has good communication patterns, do all you can to maintain them. If they need to be improved, take the initiative to do so.

10-18 **Sensing that you are being excluded from a group can cause hurt feelings.**

a narrow, exclusive group of people held together by common interests, views, and purposes. Being excluded from a clique can be a very painful experience, 10-18.

Wanting to be in a group is a natural part of growing up. Groups can be helpful because they provide support and security, and they give teens a sense of identity. Cliques, however, can often cause hurt feelings. Unfortunately, clique members have a hard time accepting differences among people, and they sometimes go too far in expressing their dislikes. Some snub and criticize anyone who fails to meet all of their predetermined qualifications. Cliques often put pressure on teens to pretend they are something they're not. Often teens think they have to belong to one particular group or their whole life will be worthless.

Wanting to interact with others is normal. However, before joining a group, young people should be sure of what the group has to offer and what it will demand. Young people should concentrate on their own interests and strengths, such as music, art, or sports. By doing so, they will naturally fall into groups that share those interests.

Joining a group or a clique may not be the answer for you. For some teens, having one or two close friends is more rewarding. Other teens like to belong to several groups, developing friendships with all types of people. Still other teens are naturally loners who do not enjoy group interaction.

What is important is to retain your own identity—whether you are in a group or not. You can do this by pursuing your interests and following your instincts about how to behave. If you are true to yourself, you will like yourself. When you like yourself, others will like you, too.

Group Behaviors Involving Violence

One of the most important needs of teenagers is that of belonging. Friendships are important, but belonging to a group may give a teen a sense of even greater acceptance. Socially oriented groups help teens develop qualities that they can carry through to adulthood.

Banding together may also produce other, less healthy results. Some groups condone violence. Violent hazing is used in some schools as the price of acceptance by a social group. In some neighborhoods, violent behavior by some group members has created an atmosphere of fear. This behavior often begins with bullying and becomes progressively worse. Gangs may use violence as their primary form of communication.

Hazing

In recent years, the practice of hazing has become more violent and dangerous. **Hazing** is a social group's intentional infliction of physical or emotional abuse on prospective group members as the "price" for acceptance by the group. Even some school athletic teams and organizations have practiced hazing. The practice of hazing may take the form of paddling, verbal abuse, alcohol abuse, sexually suggestive acts, or other activities involving humiliation or physical distress. Some students have experienced significant emotional damage after hazing. Others have been seriously injured or have even died.

Teens with high self-esteem see the practice of hazing for what it is: a way for hostile people to feel powerful by abusing others. Such teens refuse to "pay any price" for group acceptance. They refuse to jeopardize their personal well-being to gain the approval of cruel, thoughtless people. They have enough confidence and independence to walk away from such a group.

How can you avoid being subjected to hazing? Before you join a group, find out whether hazing has been a problem for this group in the past. If you decide to join or participate in the organization, make sure that any initiation activities are well supervised by responsible adults. If you feel at all uncomfortable during initiation, leave the scene immediately. It is better to be thought "uncool" than to live with the results of emotional or physical injury.

Bullying

Bullying refers to the infliction of physical, verbal, or emotional abuse on another person. Bullying is a form of violence. It comes in many intimidating and hurtful forms, including name-calling, theft, extortion of money, physical intimidation, harsh pranks, and imposed territorial bases.

Bullying can happen to anyone in any place and at any time. In school, bullies may "tax" students so they can pass through a hall or sit in a special place at school events. Bullies may demand lunch money or clothing. They may threaten the student with physical harm if he or she objects. Students walking home from school may be assaulted.

Bullies may target people who seem weaker or smaller than the bullies themselves. People who are bullied may not always report the bullying to the authorities. They may feel that if they report the bullying, they will be even more of a target.

Gangs

Gang problems are increasing across America. A *gang* is a network of people, with an established hierarchy, that may be involved in criminal activity. Much of the crime is gang motivated in an attempt to further the status of a particular gang. Gangs range in size from a few members to thousands. Some gangs extend throughout the country. Gangs try to recruit as many members as possible. The larger the gang, the more influence and status it has.

Gang members are not always just guys. An increasing number of girls join male gangs, or form gangs of their own. National statistics indicate that 10-15 percent of gang members are female.

Gangs are sometimes referred to as "hoods," "posses," "sets," or "crews." Female gang members may be called "queens."

Gang initiation has changed. Traditionally, potential members were "jumped in" by taking a beating from older gang members. Today, some gangs, especially suburban gangs, have less severe initiation rites. They may simply have to learn secret codes and by-laws. Gang members can often be identified by the way they dress. A gang may use certain modes of dress, signs, jewelry, colors, or tattoos to designate membership.

Young people join gangs for various reasons. They may think that being in a gang will bring them status, protection, and a connection with fellow gang members. Some people look toward gangs for a sense of belonging—a new family. Others may seek structure and discipline, which they interpret as a sign of power. Still others are attracted by the criminal activity committed by gangs.

Much of this criminal activity is motivated by a gang's attempt to gain status over other gangs. Gangs commonly are involved in selling illegal drugs to make money. The money can encourage people to join gangs, and to continue to participate in gang activities.

A gang may spend much of its time confronting rival gangs and protecting its "turf." These confrontations may lead to violence and criminal behavior. For instance, gangs may use drive-by shootings to attack rival gang members. The rival gang may retaliate with its own drive-by shooting. Innocent bystanders are often killed as a result of these senseless shootings.

Once a young person becomes involved in a gang, it is difficult to get out. The rigid structure and discipline of a gang make it hard to get out. Lifelong loyalty to the gang is demanded. For this reason, some gang members remain in gangs, living in fear even though they want to leave the gang.

Joining a gang has severe negative consequences. These consequences include violent conflict with other gangs, drug abuse and addiction, criminal activity, and threats and intimidation against family members. Being involved in a gang can lead to serious injury or death. It can also lead to arrest and imprisonment.

What Can Teens and Adults Do to Stop the Violence?

Across the country, teens and parents are seeking answers to the problem of violence. Solving the problem of violence in your school and community will take everyone's cooperation.

First, teens need to be informed about what they can do to avoid being targets of bullying and gang violence. The suggestions given in 10-19 can help.

Avoid Being a Victim

- Try to stay away from areas frequented by gangs.
- Don't wear clothing that resembles gang symbols. You will be giving the gang an excuse to harass you.
- Try not to let bullies or gang members scare you. This is what they want. If possible, ignore them and walk away.
- Don't get into a fight. Stand up for yourself without being hostile. Getting into a fight is acting like the bully or gang member.
- Get help from your friends. Ask your friends to stay around you and to be there to support you.
- Keep a written record. If you are confronted by a bully or gang, write down the date, time, and everything that happened, as well as the names of any witnesses, so you will have specific information to take to the school authorities.
- If you feel threatened or an incident occurs, tell your parents and school authorities immediately. Don't wait to be attacked again. This is not "ratting" or "tattling." It's helping yourself and other teens, too.

10-19 These suggestions will help prevent teens from being victims of bullies and gangs.

Further, positive steps can be taken to stop the pattern of violent behavior. Violence is negative communication and a learned behavior. Bullies and gang members have learned that anger, aggression, and intimidation are tools for solving problems. They communicate their feelings through anger and violent action. Action can be taken to turn this negative form of communication into positive communication.

Using Conflict Resolution or Mediation

Teens involved with violence need to learn new skills for handling conflict in their lives. **Conflict resolution**, or mediation, is a skill that is being used in schools and communities across the country as a means of resolving conflict in a positive way.

What are the steps in conflict resolution? The aggressors, as well as the people dealing with the aggressive behavior, have to be a part of the process. Both have to feel they have a fair chance to reach an acceptable conclusion. Sometimes it is necessary to have a third party help in resolving the conflict. The person who has this role is called a **mediator**. The mediator may be a peer. The mediator does not take sides, but can help with the following steps:

Step 1. Gather information. Each party is allowed to tell the story of what is causing the conflict. Ground rules of active listening and risk-free communication are understood. Only the mediator and the people involved in the conflict should be present.

Step 2. Define the problem(s). The mediator restates the facts and issues that were presented by each party. After summarizing these facts and issues, the mediator asks each party if they understand them.

Step 3. Identify alternative solutions. Both parties can propose solutions.

Step 4. Identify a possible solution. The mediator revises possible solutions, based on the feelings of both parties. Negotiation is used to provide both parties with some of what they want.

Step 5. Reach an agreement. The mediator helps each party accept an agreement that would work for both parties. The agreement should then be written down, and both parties should sign it. The parties should also discuss what will happen if either of them breaks the agreement. Finally, the participants are asked to tell their friends that the conflict has been resolved to prevent inaccurate rumors from spreading.

Schools and communities that have used conflict resolution techniques have found them to be successful in many cases. If the conflict is not resolved, legal steps may have to be taken to achieve peaceful coexistence.

Sexual Harassment

Another form of negative communication that happens all too often is sexual harassment. It happens not only in the workplace, but also in our schools. A lot of students, both boys and girls, have suffered as victims of sexual harassment. In one recent study, four out of five students reported experiencing some form of sexual harassment in school. In most cases, it is one student being harassed by another student.

Many young people are not sure what sexual harassment includes. **Sexual harassment** is defined as unwelcome sexual advances, requests for sexual favors, or other verbal or physical conduct of a sexual nature. Sexual harassment includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- comments about a person's body, clothing, looks, or sexual activity
- obscene jokes, pictures, or stories
- sexual remarks, suggestions, or name-calling
- pressures for sexual intimacy
- suggestive sounds or obscene gestures
- leering or staring at someone's body
- touching, grabbing, massaging, pinching, or brushing up against someone's body in a sexually offensive manner

When sexual harassment occurs, the victims often feel completely helpless, 10-20. They feel powerless to stop the behavior, and they often don't know who to turn to for help. They don't want to cause problems, and they fear others will think they are making a big deal out of nothing. Therefore, they often say and do nothing while continuing to suffer. The victims feel anger, fear, shame, guilt, confusion, embarrassment, and depression. It can all be very frightening to a teenager, especially if the person doing the harassing is an adult.

Sometimes it is hard to tell when someone is just flirting with you or teasing you and when the behavior is really sexual harassment. The key point is how it makes you feel. If you welcome the comment or action, it is okay. If you are hurt, insulted, or want it to stop, then you are probably being sexually harassed.

People sometimes misinterpret each other's behavior as sexually suggestive even though this is not intended. Both boys and girls have to be aware they may send strong nonverbal messages about their sexuality with their posture, tone of voice, clothing, gestures, or eye contact.

10-20 **Victims of sexual harassment often do not know where to turn for help.**

What can you do if you are experiencing sexual harassment at school or work? The following suggestions may help:

- Trust your instincts. If you are made to feel uncomfortable in any way, do not doubt yourself.
- Talk to someone, such as a friend, parent, or trusted adult. It is important to confide in someone.
- Avoid being alone with the harasser.
- Speak up. Don't ignore the situation. Say no so that others around you know what is happening. Tell the harasser that you resent the behavior and will take action if it continues. If you don't speak up, the harasser may continue the behavior, unaware that you are disturbed by it.
- Know your rights. Sexual harassment is against the law.
- Keep a dated, written record of all incidents. This information will be necessary if further action is needed.
- If the harassment continues, report it to the person designated to handle such complaints at your school or workplace. Sexual harassment policies exist in schools and businesses. Know and follow the guidelines they provide.

Chapter 10 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Communication takes place whenever someone shares a message with another person, either verbally or nonverbally.
- Listening skills can promote or detract from the communication process.
- You transmit many messages through your use of body language. A person's cultural background often influences modes of nonverbal communication.
- Your appearance, including your grooming, your clothing, and your posture, may communicate aspects of your self-image to others.
- People relate to one another on five levels. Level one represents peak communication, in which there is complete openness and honesty.
- Assertive people express their feelings directly in a nonaggressive manner.
- I-messages and we-messages state how you feel and why. They tend to be less threatening than you-messages and are more likely to bring about cooperation.
- Communication problems between teens and their parents often result from teens trying to establish independence and parents expressing concern for their children's welfare. Negotiation can often resolve conflicts.
- Communicating in a group gives you opportunities for individual expression and group sharing. However, some groups restrict membership, which can cause hard feelings.
- Violence as exhibited by certain group members is a negative communication tool. Hazing is the infliction of abuse as an initiation into a social group. Bullies inflict physical, verbal, or emotional abuse on others. Gangs are groups of people, with an established hierarchy, that may be involved in criminal activity.
- Teens involved with violence need help in learning conflict resolution skills.
- Victims of sexual harassment at school or work need to know how to bring an end to the harassing behavior.

Review

1. Give three examples of ways people communicate.
2. Match the following terms with their definitions.
   _____ Passive listeners
   _____ Feedback
   _____ Active listening
   _____ Careless listeners
   _____ Defensive listeners
   _____ Narrow listeners
   A. Read meanings into what is being said because they feel they are being attacked.
   B. Pick out bits and pieces of conversation and don't listen to the rest.
   C. Hear only what they want to hear and tune out other information.
   D. Tells the other person how the listener feels about what is being said.
   E. Take in words but offer no indication they hear or understand.
   F. Smiling, nodding, or making eye contact.
3. Differentiate between empathy and sympathy.
4. Describe three ways to communicate using body language.
5. Explain how posture, grooming, and clothing help you communicate.
6. Briefly describe the five levels of communication.
7. True or False. When you are assertive, you build your self-esteem by putting other people down.
8. Give an example of an I-message and then reword it as a you-message. Which is more likely to improve communication?
9. List three steps you can use in negotiating with your parents.
10. State two things you can do to protect yourself from hazing.
11. List the types of behaviors commonly used by bullies.
12. Briefly describe the steps used in conflict resolution.
13. What is sexual harassment?

React

1. Make a list of every method of communication you have used since you awoke this morning. Compare your list with those of your classmates.
2. Complete each of the following statements:
   - A. The best way to make a favorable impression on others is...
   - B. My biggest complaint about the way people communicate is...
   - C. The personal traits I think are most important for good communication are...
   - D. The most important rule of etiquette is...
   - E. An assertive person is…
3. Divide into groups. Identify communication problems that could arise in each of the following situations and list possible solutions. Share with the class.
   - A. In club or activity meetings
   - B. When dating
   - C. In classrooms
   - D. At home
4. Form groups and role-play the following interaction situations. Afterward, discuss the use of verbal and nonverbal communication and the problems that can arise when messages are misinterpreted.
   - A. A boy and girl who have gone together for over a year are having problems in their relationship. They wonder if they should break up now, one week before senior prom, which they had planned to attend together.
   - B. A couple plans to go to dinner and a show. The boy wants to make this a special evening and has saved money for several weeks. The girl seems completely indifferent to the plans.
   - C. A teenager wants permission from his or her parents to use the family car to go to a rock concert with a friend.
5. Ask a police officer to speak to your class about gang activity. Ask what students can do to help solve the problem of increasing violence.
6. Role-play a situation in which conflict resolution is used to end a conflict between two groups. One person should act as the mediator.

(continued)

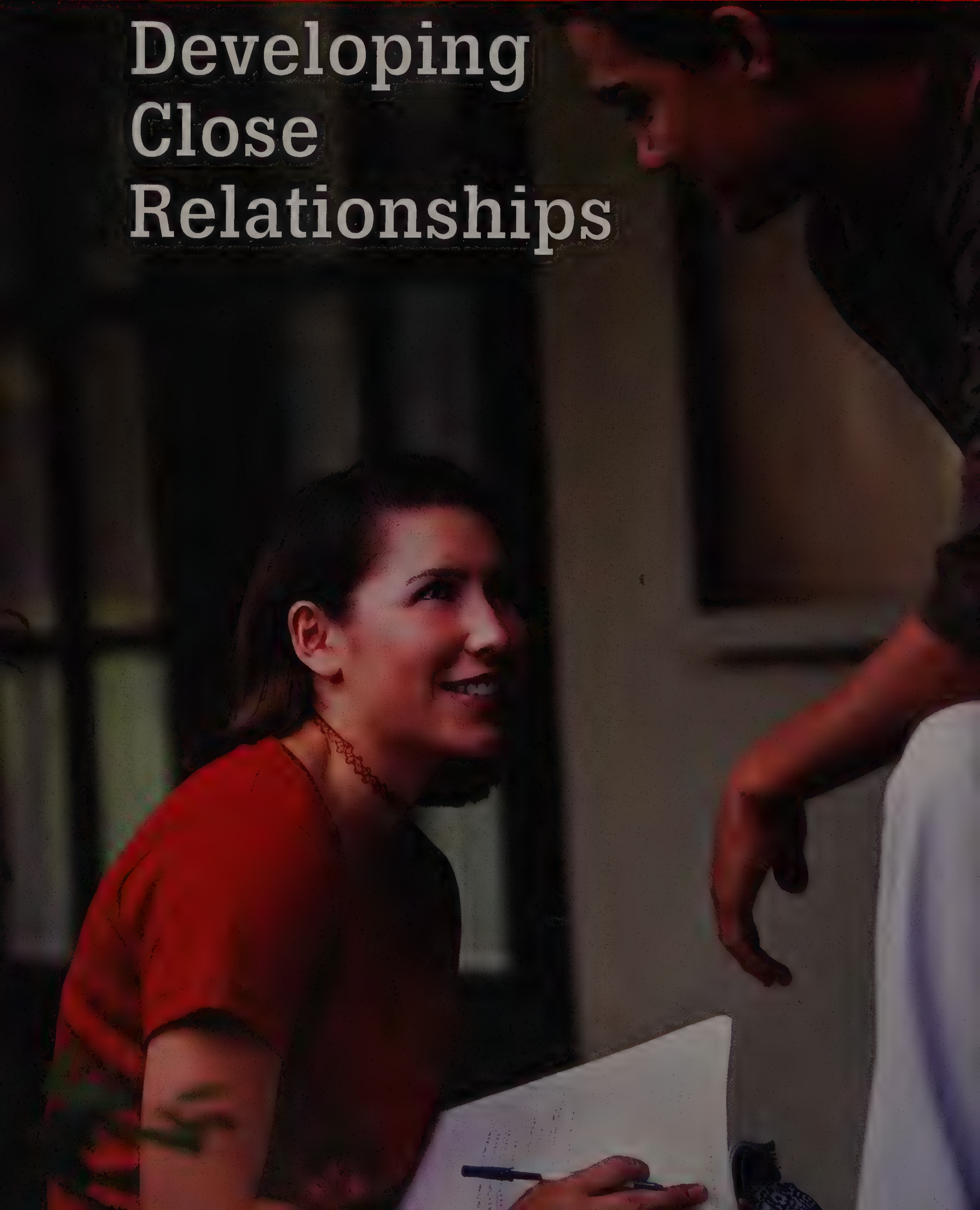
7. Write an essay describing constructive things social groups can do—as an alternative to hazing—to mark the acceptance or initiation of new group members.
8. If appropriate, write up a proposal for a student forum to address the problem of violence in your school. Write this with the assistance of your teacher and present it to the school administration for consideration.

Reflect

1. Many businesses have changed their employee dress standards. Where suits were previously required, "workplace casual" is now the mode of dress. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of more casual attire in the office environment. Research studies showing the effects of casual dress on job performance. Choose a position regarding casual dress in the workplace and write a paper supporting your position.
2. Analyze the importance of knowing proper etiquette when introducing people and when eating in formal restaurants. Do you think these are important skills to know and practice today?
3. Identify a topic teens find difficult to discuss with their parents. Put together a list of guidelines that might help teens and parents discuss this topic.
4. Research anti-hazing statutes in your state and throughout the nation. Note the kinds of activities that are prohibited. Are there good reasons for this? What penalties are involved for infractions? Check on whether your school has an anti-hazing policy. If such a policy exists, how well is it enforced? If no policy exists, research other schools' policies and draft one for consideration by your school's officials or parent-teacher association.
5. What can parents and community leaders do to prevent or combat the problem of gangs in your community? What can teens do to help each other resist any attempts at being recruited by a gang?

Chapter 11

Developing Close Relationships



Terms to Know

- group dating
- casual dating
- steady dating
- intimacy
- love
- infatuation
- rape
- acquaintance rape

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- describe ways to promote friendships.
- describe the functions and roles of dating.
- summarize the qualities that characterize a serious relationship with a member of the opposite sex.
- explain when and how to end a relationship.
- recognize the many different types of love and differentiate between love, infatuation, and sexual gratification.
- analyze the issues involved in sexual decision making.
- practice techniques for saying no to sexual relations.
- define acquaintance rape and state ways to prevent it.

During your teen years, you will form many new relationships. These friendships can be valuable learning experiences for you. Being able to establish meaningful relationships with others is an important skill for teens to develop. Friends can help you learn more about yourself and more about other people. The knowledge you gain will help you determine what you want in a serious relationship that may lead to marriage.

Friendship

What is friendship? Would you agree with the following descriptions of a friend?

- A friend often knows how you feel about certain things without being told.
- A friend is someone who shares many of your viewpoints, especially on subjects you consider important.
- A friend is someone who never talks about you behind your back.
- A friend is someone you can share your most important secrets with and not worry that anyone else will be told.

Friendships provide you with a network that connects you to what is happening around you. With a friend, you have someone to share your thoughts, your hopes, and your dreams, 11-1. Some of the most important qualities in a friend are loyalty, trust, affection, and supportiveness.

11-1 **Friendships formed during the teen years will help you learn more about yourself.**

Friends can be important for several reasons, including the following:

- Friends provide emotional support. They help you believe that you are a worthwhile person.
- Friends help you to expand your knowledge, ideas, and perspectives.
- Friends are willing to help you meet your needs and reach your personal goals.

During your teen years, you will form many new friendships. You will probably keep in touch with a few of your high school friends during most of your life. You may later have college friends, friends where you work, neighborhood friends, and friends you meet as you participate in sports or community activities.

You will have different types of friends. There may be some friends you call when you want to do something. You probably have certain friends who enjoy skating and others you might call when you want to go to the mall. You may have a special friend with whom you share your hopes, concerns, and ambitions.

Friendships are based on people talking to each other and sharing thoughts, feelings, and ideas. Friendship requires communication, and this is the channel that connects you to others. Ways to promote friendship through better communication are listed in 11-2.

Your friendships will vary through the years. As you change, your friendships will change. During your teen years, you may feel possessive of your friends. You may regard a friendship as an exclusive relationship. You may say, "She can't be your best friend. She's my best friend."

As you mature, you will understand the need for each of you to develop additional friendships and interests. You can grow in this way without fearing the friend will no longer be your friend. You will be able to trust each other's independence. It is a sign of true friendship to allow someone to grow.

Ways to Promote Friendship Through Communication

- If you are interested in someone, find out what his or her interests are. Promote communication by asking questions the other person likes to answer. Then be an attentive listener. This is one of the best ways to build a friendship.
- A good way to open communication is to say something nice. Begin by letting the other person know how important the friendship is to you.
- Rehearse what you want to say. Acting out an anxiety-provoking situation is a good way to build your self-confidence while practicing your communication skills. You will have a better chance of pinpointing conversation weaknesses and improving them.
- Tune out any self-defeating messages and replace them with positive thoughts. If you think the other person will not want to listen to you, try to think more positively. Tell yourself, "He probably feels just as confused as I do." Then you both can learn something by talking.
- Remember that your thoughts, feelings, and opinions are just as valid as anyone else's. You don't have to hide them, or change them. On the other hand, try not to get upset just because someone disagrees with something you've said. Don't take it as a personal rejection. No two people can ever think exactly alike.
- Remember that the thoughts, feelings, and opinions of others are just as valid as yours.
- Listening is just as important in building a friendship as talking. Concentrate on what the other person is saying before you answer.

11-2 Good friendships depend on good communication.

A close friendship with a person of the opposite sex is not uncommon during the teen years. Sharing a "just friends" relationship can be a positive experience. These opposite-sex friendships can be a testing ground for the honesty, truth, respect, and communication that is critical to any lasting male-female relationship. This type of friendship may remain as a very special relationship for your entire life. The friendship may also grow into a more serious emotional relationship later on because the basis for mutual understanding has been established.

Dating Patterns

Dating is a part of our culture. Dating relationships vary among generations, among regions of the country, and among individuals. However, many relationships follow a pattern that starts with informal group dating and ends with engagement.

Functions of Dating

As people date, they not only have fun, they learn more about themselves. Through the give-and-take of dating relationships, they also learn how to get along with others. Interpersonal skills are improved as communication skills develop.

Dating encourages good peer relationships and helps you learn to evaluate personalities. You become better able to discover those personality traits that appeal to you and those that do not. Dating experiences make you aware of the demands and restrictions involved in getting along with members of the opposite sex. People who have these experiences are likely to be more successful marriage partners.

Informal Group Dating

Most young people begin dating in informal group settings. Many prefer "just being with people" rather than having structured dates. There is more emphasis on groups of people than on couples. This is called **group dating**. Today's teens may refer to this form of group dating as "hanging out."

Group activities are often planned jointly by males and females, although girls are more likely to initiate plans. Many times everyone just meets at some popular spot with no actual planning. A group of teens can get together on the spur of the moment to enjoy many activities. This may be a game of softball or a trip to the beach, 11-3. Teens enjoy doing things in groups that they might not do alone. The activities may involve any number of people, from just a few to a group of ten or more. Everyone can socialize and enjoy the company of others. This gives teens an opportunity to learn about a lot of different personalities.

11-3 Informal group activities allow young people to get to know each other and have fun at the same time.

Being part of a mixed group of males and females prepares teens for one-to-one relationships with the opposite sex. Friendships with the opposite sex are often an important part of group activities. As teens participate in different activities in the group, some members may start to pair off for certain activities. A person may pair off with different people for different events. Young people can enjoy being with members of the opposite sex without the pressures of dating.

These informal group experiences allow you to form your own ideas about people and about life. You can share thoughts and feelings while relating to a person as a friend rather than as a prospective mate. Meeting many different people and having a variety of experiences will prepare you for making decisions later in life.

Formal Pair Dating

As you spend time with friends in group settings, you will probably discover one person you especially like. You may begin to "see each other" outside of the group. Either the guy or the girl may call up and make plans to go out. No long-term commitment is involved. It begins with one date and may end with just one date. This is called **casual dating**.

As you begin dating this one person, you may decide not to date anyone else. If you continue to date this same person and only this person for a period of time, friends will say that you are "going out." This is also called **steady dating**. At some point during your dating years, you will probably form this type of special relationship with one person.

Dating helps you discover yourself and to learn about other people in a variety of settings. Some people prefer dates where they watch others perform, as in a play or an athletic event. Others prefer dates in which the couple is involved in the activity. Many times, however, couples will simply strike out for a day or evening of fun with little detailed planning. Your dating activities will revolve around the interests you and your date share.

As you date one person more and more, you will feel that this person really understands you and cares about you. You enjoy being special to someone. You find that you can have a great time just being together. It is a nice feeling being on comfortable terms with one person, 11-4.

11-4 As you date one person more and more, you feel comfortable just being together.

An important change in recent years may involve young people's increased respect for one another as individuals. Dating is a meeting of equals. Couples can share decision making, express feelings honestly, and develop good communication patterns.

Young people today are marrying at a later age. This gives them time to develop more friendships. Then when they are ready, they can move from friendship to a caring and committed relationship. They will be ready to offer closeness, loyalty, understanding, open communication, and a special sense of intimacy.

Developing Relationships

Boy meets girl. They are attracted to each other. They share many interests. Their personal priorities and goals seem to be very similar. Their relationship deepens. This appears to be a magic formula, but developing a lasting relationship between two people is not that easy. There is a great deal that takes place between the first meeting and the final relationship that develops.

Relationships develop step by step, 11-5. As you communicate over time, you learn more and more about each other. You also realize you are learning more about yourself and your reactions to the other person. You will have pleasant times, and you will have times when one or both of you are sad. You are moving toward a more serious relationship. The poet, Carl Sandburg, was describing this process when he said, "People are like onions. You uncover them a layer at a time, and sometimes you cry."

11-5 **A relationship develops gradually, one step at a time.**

What Qualities Characterize a Serious Relationship?

Several characteristics are often found in relationships that become "serious." Trust is very important when two people are building a relationship. Trust is needed between friends. It is even more important between two people who hope to build a committed relationship. Being able to trust a person means you feel that person would not betray you or cause you any harm. A relationship built on trust is caring and responsible.

Self-disclosure means sharing significant information about yourself with the other person. In a serious relationship, partners feel free to talk about their deepest concerns and feelings. They also are not afraid to reveal their *idiosyncrasies* (tendencies, characteristics, or modes of expression peculiar to an individual). Your ability to disclose information to a person you trust and care for is healthy. Self-disclosure is a sign of trust. However, there is a certain amount of *vulnerability* (openness to pain or loss) when you become this close. When you open yourself to another person, you take some risk that he or she might ridicule you, reject you, or betray your confidences.

A relationship must have communication to grow. The couple need to express their beliefs, personal priorities, goals, and concerns. They need to recognize the differences they have and share what they have in common. With good communication, couples can learn to give and take. Sometimes one person may have to give a little more than the other, but the next time it will be the other way around. If good communication does not exist, the relationship cannot grow.

One of the important aspects of a developing relationship is the feeling of intimacy. **Intimacy** is a sense of familiarity that develops over a long and close association, 11-6. It is a feeling of warm friendship. Intimacy means you accept another human being as he or she is. You feel free to communicate your thoughts and feelings honestly and openly. You are able to share your life while still retaining your own individuality. "I feel good when I am with you" is a common expression.

Intimacy does not necessarily mean sexual intimacy. Intimacy can develop between two people with no sexual expression involved. In your teen years, it is important that you realize the real meaning and significance of personal intimacy. A feeling of intimacy should be the foundation for any expression of love.

Ending a Relationship

Dating forms a cycle: informal dating—dating a special person—breaking up.

This cycle may be repeated many times, but with each cycle a relationship ends.

Ending a relationship is hard to do. It usually causes pain for both people. When you are a teen, you may think it is the worst thing that can happen to you. It may seem strange when someone tells you breaking up is normal because at the time you may not feel very normal.

Signs That a Relationship Should End

There are times when it is better to break off a relationship than to keep it going. How can you tell when a relationship is going wrong and needs to end? Watch for the following signs:

11-6 **Emotional intimacy can develop between two people over a period of time.**

Conflicting personal priorities. When a couple differs on personal priorities, it can lead to many conflicts. Your personal priorities reflect what you consider important in life. If your dating partner does not have similar priorities, you are bound to have repeated disagreements.

Withdrawal from other friendships. When couples withdraw from their other friendships to spend time only with each other, personal growth is limited. A healthy relationship should make both of you more secure, understanding people—when you are with each other and when you are with others.

Overemphasis on physical involvement. With some couples, the total relationship revolves around sexual gratification. Sexual involvement sometimes masks problems in the relationship. If this is the total focus of the relationship, the couple may not share other interests. These relationships are more likely to eventually end.

Frequent arguments. Every couple will have misunderstandings, but long, angry arguments should rarely occur. If angry arguments are frequent and seem to outnumber the peaceful times, it is probably time to "call it quits."

How Not to Break Up

When you want to end a relationship, you want to stop seeing someone. Your intent should not be to cause pain or embarrassment for the other person. Therefore, when breaking up try to avoid the following:

- Do not "tell the other person off." This serves no purpose. It only makes the other person feel unworthy and unlikable.

- Do not begin dating someone else right away. Appearing immediately with a new person at your side may be an attempt at revenge, but again it serves no purpose. It is not a good idea to seek another serious relationship immediately.
- Do not break off a relationship without an explanation. The relationship meant something to both of you at one time. You began as friends. Friends talk to each other. Leave the lines of communication open between you so you can continue to be friends.
- Do not lead the other person on. Being nice one minute and nasty the next is not fair. This hot and cold treatment will only leave bad feelings.
- If the other person breaks up with you, do not take revenge by "trashing" the other person to mutual friends. Do not, for example, send angry or hurtful e-mail messages that will reflect poorly on you and that you will later regret. Wish the other person well, and get on with your life.

Breaking up with Less Pain

Even though a breakup is likely to hurt one person more than the other, it can be done gently. Breaking up usually hurts because one person feels rejected, 11-7. There are ways to break up that can ease the hurt and sense of rejection. Then you both can move on to new relationships.

- Choose an appropriate time and place to break up. Breakups are a private matter and should not be done in front of others or in a public place. Respect the feelings of the other person.
- Try to remember the good times you spent together. There must have been some for you both to have become emotionally involved. Compliment each other on some good qualities.
- Share the responsibility for the difficulties of the relationship. Don't put all the blame on the other person. There obviously is blame on both sides. If things went wrong, sort them out and learn from your mistakes.
- Recognize that just because two personalities don't mesh perfectly doesn't mean that either person is inadequate. Lasting relationships are rather like a lock and a key. Just because a key does not fit a particular lock doesn't mean there is anything "wrong" with either one. The same is true of dating partners.

11-7 Breaking up is painful for the one that has been rejected and replaced.

- Be honest about the reason for the breakup. Most people would rather know the reason even though it might hurt to find out. You may not fully realize how each of you feel about the reasons.

Believe it or not, there is life after a breakup. You may not feel ready for another relationship right away, but you will have opportunities again. The breakup of one relationship will not ruin your chances for establishing others. What you have learned in one relationship can be applied to enhance the next relationship. You will probably look back on this experience as one of the best things to happen to you at the time. You will survive. The suggestions in 11-8 will help.

How to Survive a Breakup

- Don't be ashamed to feel sad. A breakup is the end of a relationship that meant a great deal to you. You will feel unhappy for a while.
- Talk with a good friend or relative. Sharing your feelings with someone close to you can help you through this difficult time.
- Give yourself time to heal before entering a new relationship. Then date several people rather than just one.
- Learn from the experience. Take a look at yourself and the strengths you do have. Then look at the mistakes you might have made and learn from them.
- Keep busy. Get involved in new activities that interest you.
- Put reminders of the relationship, such as pictures and mementos, out of sight until you have had time to heal.

11-8 These suggestions will help you recover from a breakup.

Communication of Love

Love has many forms, and each is expressed differently. The love between parents and children is different from the love between brother and sister. The love between family members is different from the love between friends. The love between friends is different from the love between dating partners. The love between dating partners is different from the love between husbands and wives.

Sometimes feelings of love can be confusing. By gaining insight into yourself and your emotions, you can learn to judge the depth of a relationship. Then you can know what the love means to you and how to deal with your feelings.

What Does Love Mean?

Love can be defined as a strong feeling of personal attachment between friends or family members. It can also be defined as tender and compassionate affection shared between two people.

When you love someone, you respond emotionally to that person's needs. You help each other so your lives are better when you are together than when you are apart. Love in this sense grows as your personality develops. It is capable of continually becoming deeper, richer, and stronger throughout your life.

Some people say that to know love, you must experience it. You have experienced some forms of love already in your life, 11-9. You will experience more as you grow emotionally and socially. The more relationships you have with people, the more meanings the word love will have for you.

11-9 **Parents and children share a special form of love.**

Types of Love

Both positive and negative feelings are closely related to the emotion of love. Songs, poems, and books have been written about the good and bad effects of love. They show the power that love can have to either improve or harm a person's life.

Positive Types of Love

Positive types of love add richness and fullness to life. They help people feel good about themselves, about others, and about life in general.

True love involves total communication and commitment between two people. It means sharing what one has and what one is when with another person. With true love, people strive toward shared thoughts, feelings, attitudes, ambitions, hopes, and interests. While maintaining their individuality, partners tend to think and plan in terms of "we"—what "we" want, how "we" feel, what "we" will do. See 11-10.

True love motivates two people to help each other grow and improve. They want each other to have the best life possible. Their love gives them energy to work together to reach their goals.

True love is realistic; it does not expect perfection. With true love, a person accepts the faults and weaknesses of the loved one. The two people are willing to work together to overcome any obstacles and to make the relationship as good as it can be. The realism of true love also allows people to express their true feelings. They can show their joy, anger, or sorrow without fear of losing the love and respect of the other person.

11-10 True love involves total communication and commitment between two people.

Time is a good test of true love. If a relationship endures varying emotional climates, developing interests, and deepening feelings, it will probably continue to grow as long as the people do.

True love includes both tender love and friendly love. *Tender love* is happy and satisfying, 11-11. It is not only beautiful in itself, but it increases the loveliness of the people involved. Tender love makes people feel warm, secure, and cheerful. As people mature, tender love becomes an increasingly familiar and satisfying part of relationships.

Friendly love also grows through the years. It is neither passionate and consuming nor hostile and hurting. Friends have feelings of mutual respect and understanding. They are rarely shocked by the actions of one another. Friendly love is usually the basis for friendships, 11-12. Sometimes a true love relationship begins as friendly love.

Negative Types of Love

Just as positive love can strengthen and deepen relationships, negative love can damage them. Love is usually considered "good," but you should be familiar with the "bad" effects love can have on relationships.

Jealous love is a possessive love. The jealous lover holds the other person so tightly that the person is cut off from other

David Hopper

11-11 Tender love makes people feel warm and happy.

11-12 Friendly love is sturdy and faithful. Partners express feelings of mutual respect and understanding.

people. Jealousy is almost always a mark of immaturity and insecurity. As lovers grow confident of their love and of their loved ones, feelings of jealousy fade. They have faith that their love will last. They realize they do not have to cling desperately to it.

Passionate love is vigorous, insistent, and urgent. It centers on the sexual relationships of men and women. It is driven by nature's desire for biological fulfillment, and it often operates without reason.

Passion alone can be painful. It can also be selfish, with little concern for the other. By itself, this kind of love is tempestuous and exhausting. Blended with other love forms, it can be exhilarating and fulfilling.

Hostile love frequently raises its voice in anger against the loved one. The emotions of love and hate are closely related. When you love someone, you may occasionally have real feelings of hostility toward them. This tendency to be irritated occasionally by those you love involves a feeling of *ambivalence*—being attracted to and repelled by someone at the same time. It can be explained by recognizing that although some characteristics of a person are appealing, others may seem less attractive. If you love someone too narrowly to accept the person's limitations, you become annoyed when that person does anything that displeases you. Then your love may take on a hostile quality as you become critical of the other's behavior.

Unreturned love is frustrating because it is unfulfilled love. When you realize your love is not being returned, you may react with feelings of pain, sorrow, and hopelessness. Unreturned love can go on indefinitely. The saying, "He still carries a torch for her," describes a man experiencing unrequited love. In its worst form, unreturned love can become a form of harassment, as the person persists in forcing unwanted expressions of love on another. More often, however, this type of love is forgotten as the person focuses energy on attaining happiness in a more rewarding way.

Love Versus Infatuation

Infatuation is often mistaken for love. A young person who has not experienced either feeling may have difficulty distinguishing between the two.

Definitions of love mention strength and lasting qualities. Definitions of infatuation mention foolish, extreme attractions that do not last. Love takes time to grow and develop. Infatuation begins quickly, and may end as quickly as it began. Love is relatively steady and secure. Infatuation is hasty and changeable. It gives thrills, but they are accompanied by doubts and jealousy.

Love inspires ambition and cooperation in working to achieve goals. Infatuation inspires only selfish thoughts and actions. Physical attraction may be a part of love, but it often is the only basis for infatuation.

You need to understand the emotions related to love and infatuation so you know how to handle relationships. Emotions and expressions related to seeking physical satisfaction may appear along with either love or infatuation. You also need to know how to deal with these feelings. Chart 11-13 can help you learn to distinguish between love, infatuation, and the desire for sexual gratification.

Comparison of Love, Infatuation, and Sexual Gratification

Love	*Infatuation*	*Sexual Gratification*
Feeling of strong personal attachment.	Engulfing, selfish feelings.	Sensuous feelings.
Concerned for the welfare of other person.	Concern for your own welfare.	Concern for own sexual gratification.
Grows slowly and steadily.	Emotions flow at a fast, accelerating pace.	Immediate physical urgency is felt and quickly spent.
Continues to grow and encompasses more of personality.	Initial attraction is quickly consumed and grows no further.	Ends abruptly with little feeling of responsibility.
Makes one feel proud, confident, and ambitious.	Tends to destroy purpose and ambition.	Promotes feelings of guilt.
Physical attraction is only one part of the relationship.	Physical attraction often is the major factor in the relationship.	Physical desires are the only basis for the relationship.
Aware of other person's faults, but accepts them as part of total personality.	Overlooks undesirable traits and pretends they do not exist.	Unconcerned with personality traits.
Both partners give of themselves generously.	Each partner seeks rewards but gives little in return.	Each partner demands fulfillment with little thought of the effect on other person.
Exhibits a "we" feeling and indicates that "I care about how you feel."	Exhibits an "I" feeling and indicates concern only for "How do I feel?"	Exhibits a possessive feeling and indicates "You are mine!"
Increases ability to relate to many friends.	Has only a few friends, and tends to be moody and indifferent.	Prefers isolation.
Unselfish in actions.	Very selfish in actions.	Possessive and demanding in actions.
Trust, openness, and acceptance of others.	Distrustful and slow to accept others.	Frequently jealous when ego needs are not met.

11-13 Relationships based on love, infatuation, or sexual gratification differ in many ways.

Physical Expressions of Affection

Physical attraction is one part of love, and physical expressions can help people communicate deep feelings. However, physical expressions are just one method of communicating affection, and they should be combined with other methods. By themselves, physical expressions cannot communicate all the ideas and feelings couples need to share.

Too much dependence on physical expressions of affection can cause problems in a relationship. Some people seek physical expressions from another person just to prove their femininity or masculinity. In such relationships, one or both people may be using the other. These relationships are full of problems and rarely last.

Physical expressions of affection are a healthy part of a love relationship. A kiss and an embrace are part of a normal relationship, but with continued repetition or prolonged embraces one partner may interpret the sensual feelings of the other as sexual urgency. Unless the couple have firm beliefs about sexual relations, they may let their emotions take over. They may become more involved than they had planned. Once a couple become sexually involved, they are forced to assume responsibility for making decisions involving themselves and others. These decisions will affect the couple's future goals and views of marriage.

A couple who are truly committed to each other and to what they hope to have in the future should think ahead. The two people can talk about how they feel and set limits with which they are mutually comfortable.

Before entering into a sexual relationship, you need to understand your developing sexuality. You also should carefully consider the risks associated with your behavior. Some of these risks include damaging your reputation, a possible pregnancy, and exposing yourself to an STD. Many people, especially teens, find they are not yet ready to face these risks, 11-14.

Understanding Your Developing Sexuality

New feelings concerning sexuality may occur during adolescence because of significant hormonal and body changes. These feelings can cause confusion when you are experiencing new social relationships. However, these feelings are a normal part of maturation.

11-14 Many teens feel they are not yet ready to assume the risks and responsibilities of a sexual relationship.

Differences Between the Sexes

When you have been dating someone for a while, it is natural for the two of you to wish to express your affection for one another. It is also true that these expressions and feelings of affection may differ between the sexes. The following statements may be true of young people in their early relationships. Girls play at sex, for which they are not ready, because they want love. Boys play at love, for which they are not ready, because they want sex.

Many people feel there is still a "double standard" in our society. This is the belief that boys will always behave differently from girls in sexual matters. Boys may feel it is up to them to make the first move and to pressure their partners for more. Girls may feel they are the ones to set limits and to say no. This attitude may be changing as girls are taking more initiative and boys are realizing their responsibilities.

Some girls like to tease and flirt with their dates. They think boys will magically know when to stop. A girl may be surprised when her playfulness leads a boy to pressure her for more physical expression. A boy may interpret any initiative the girl takes as a sign that she wants to go farther.

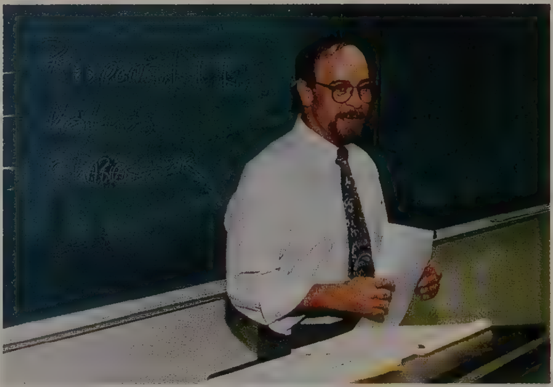
Sexual Decision Making

Many teens are not prepared to handle their new feelings. They are confused about what to do in situations involving emotional expression. They may not know the facts about sexual behavior. They may not have correct information concerning their own sexual development. They may be confused by what they hear and see. The media tell them that sex is romantic and exciting. At the same time, the message they receive from parents and authorities is to say no to these feelings.

The responsibility for making decisions concerning your own sexuality is yours. Sexual decisions involve making judgments about how you feel you should behave. Your personal priorities are based on parental guidance, your religious beliefs, and your own developing morality. Your parents may advise you, but you will be on your own when you are actually faced with a decision. You are responsible for your decisions about your life. If you make careless choices or give in to pressures, you are likely to be hurt. Your life goals will be shortchanged, and your health may be damaged. These are high prices to pay.

To make wise decisions and manage your life responsibly, you need to be informed, 11-15. Your life is too precious to leave to chance. Your health is too important to risk because of lack of knowledge.

Teenagers obtain most of their information about their sexuality from their peers and mass communications media.



David Hopper

11-15 **Factual information about sexuality from class lectures, textbooks, and other reliable sources can help you learn to manage your life responsibly.**

This information usually is not factual, and much of it is misleading. Many teenagers are seriously misinformed about the risks of pregnancy and disease and about ways to prevent them.

Teenagers are also influenced by friends. You know how demanding pressure from peers can be. You have probably felt uncomfortable when people your own age have told you to do things you really didn't think were right. Teenagers don't want to feel different, and they don't want to be left out. Teenagers who wish to resist sexual involvement often do not know what to say or do when confronted with peer pressure.

Sexual decision making requires maturity and knowledge. Your sexuality is a part of your total personality. Any sexual experience you have becomes a part of you. You have to accept the physical and emotional responsibilities that go with this experience. Any decision you make has consequences—good and bad—for you and your partner. Both of you will be influenced by your decision for the rest of your lives. Saying no to sexual expressions during your teens is delaying this important part of your life until you are better able to make a responsible decision.

Young people who say "I'll just wait until I have to make a choice" often find themselves making that choice under great emotional pressure. Because of this pressure, they may make decisions they will regret later.

Because sexual experiences affect your self-concept and personality, they should not be taken lightly. Sex should not be used as an attempt to enhance your popularity or to keep a boyfriend or girlfriend interested. It should not be used to defy your parents, to counter loneliness, or to prove your maturity. Sex should not be used in order to be one of the crowd or to avoid hurting someone's feelings.

Some people feel that contraception allows anyone to have sexual intercourse freely because pregnancy can be prevented. Young people, however, have the right and responsibility to express their own wishes concerning intercourse. They know they have the right to choose. Many say, "I choose not to have sex before I am married." Their choice reflects the way they assess their worth as individuals. It also indicates their feelings of responsibility toward themselves, their possible sexual partners, and their future marriage partners.

Some people argue that having sex helps a person choose a future husband or wife. However, it more often confuses the relationship. After having sex, many people feel obligated to continue the relationship. They may marry the partner even if true love is not present in the relationship. Such marriages usually end in divorce.

The argument that having sex helps people to improve techniques is unfounded. Most experiences in premarital sex take place in less than ideal settings. The possible guilt, the danger of being discovered, and the fear of rejection by one's partner inhibit feelings of relaxation and enjoyment. The security of marriage allows freer expression of love. Sexual experiences between spouses are usually more satisfying.

"If you love me, you will prove it." This line has been used often, but it is a poor reason for having premarital sex. "Making love" and "being in love" are two different things. True love does not have to be proven. Partners in true love respect each other and do not put one another under pressure. Sexual decisions should not be forced, 11-16.

11-16 **Sexual decisions should not be forced. True love does not have to be proven.**

Some people use sex as a bartering position. "I gave you a nice time, now what are you going to give me?" Sex is not an item to trade off or to use as payment.

The most common reason people give for having had premarital sex is, "We thought we were in love and that we were meant for each other." At the time, and under the circumstances, both people may have thought they had found true love. They may have fought against going all the way, but finally gave in to their impulses or to pressure from each other. Later, many couples discover that instead of strengthening their relationship, the experience caused them to doubt themselves, their relationship, and their love.

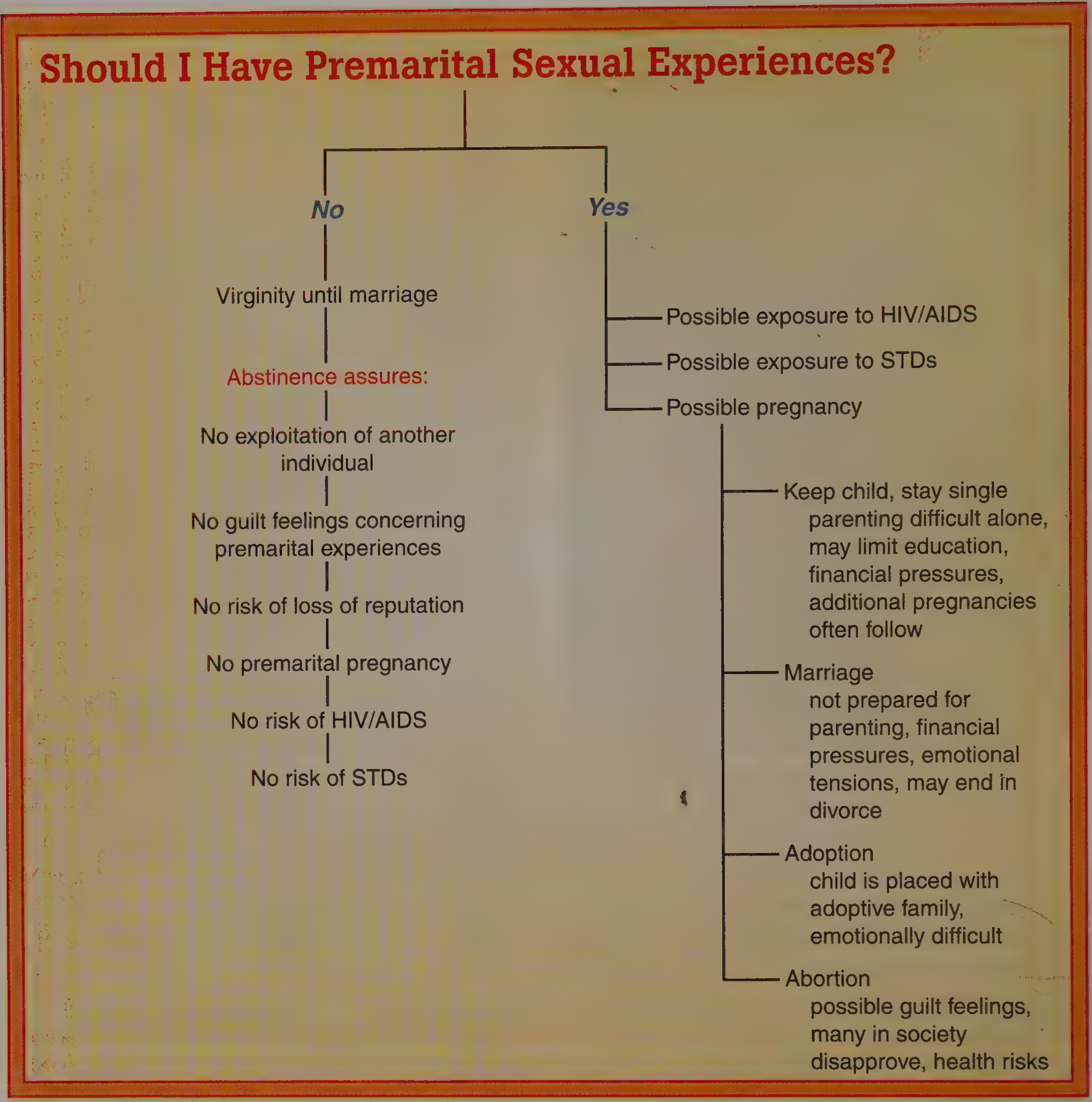
How to Prepare Yourself for Sexual Decision Making

How can you prepare yourself to make the right decision? Know yourself, accept yourself, and believe in yourself. Develop a healthy self-concept and learn to deal with your strengths and weaknesses. Refine your decision-making skills. Recognize your personal priorities, and set goals for your future. Learn to communicate honestly with others. Think ahead about what you will do if you are with someone who is pressuring you. Think also about how you can communicate your feelings for someone without getting involved sexually. Then you will be able to develop sound relationships with the people around you and possibly with a special friend.

Consequences of Your Decisions

Why do decisions concerning your sexuality have such an impact on your life and the life of others? A decision-making model is shown in 11-17. It shows the possible consequences of decisions concerning sexual relations. Two of the obvious consequences were discussed in Chapter 9. Unplanned pregnancies and sexually transmitted diseases can impact a person's entire lifetime. They also affect the lives of both families and the possible life of a child. Other, less obvious consequences may result as well. For instance, a person may develop a callous attitude toward sex if experiences as a teen are less than satisfying.

During the teen years, you may choose to take many risks. Performing on a balance beam is taking a risk. Asking a popular person to be your date for the homecoming dance may be a risk. Getting your driver's license involves some risk. You face risks


Should I Have Premarital Sexual Experiences?
No
Yes
Virginity until marriage
Abstinence assures:
No exploitation of another individual
No guilt feelings concerning premarital experiences
No risk of loss of reputation
No premarital pregnancy
No risk of HIV/AIDS
No risk of STDs
Possible exposure to HIV/AIDS
Possible exposure to STDs
Possible pregnancy
Keep child, stay single
parenting difficult alone, may limit education, financial pressures, additional pregnancies often follow
Marriage
not prepared for parenting, financial pressures, emotional tensions, may end in divorce
Adoption
child is placed with adoptive family, emotionally difficult
Abortion
possible guilt feelings, many in society disapprove, health risks

11-17 **This chart illustrates the possible consequences of decisions involving premarital sexual experiences.**

each and every day of your life. Healthy risk taking that helps you grow and learn is necessary. It is critical, however, that you see the difference between risk taking that helps you grow and risk taking that may harm you or someone else.

The sexual part of your life can be wonderful when experienced in a committed relationship like marriage. If experienced prematurely, it may involve consequences that can affect your entire life.

Saying No to Sexual Relations

Abstinence from sexual intercourse means saying no. It is not always easy to say no, especially when you are being pressured by someone else to go farther. It also may not be easy to control your own emotions. Sexual urgency can interfere with your ability to think rationally about how you will feel the next day and the risks you might be taking. However, there are ways to make it easier for both of you to practice abstinence.

First, prepare for those times when you might go too far. If you have thought about how you will handle a situation, it will be easier to put on the brakes before you go too far.

Second, know what your limits are. Discuss these limits with your date. Talk about how you both feel. Knowing your limits can help you both stop before things get out of hand, 11-18.

Third, avoid situations that may be difficult for you to handle. Don't spend time alone together in either of your homes when parents or siblings are not present. Avoid being alone in a parked car for any length of time. Some places and some situations are more likely to lead to a loss of control.

Limit the amount of time you spend alone together. Perhaps several shorter dates are better than all-day dates in which you spend long periods of time together.

Avoid the use of drugs that would impair your ability to make good decisions. People who drink alcohol or abuse drugs are not always able to think clearly. They are less likely to be able to control their emotions and their actions.

Finally, let your partner know that you value yourself and that you care about your life. If you let your date know this and that you value him or her too, you are

11-18 Talk to each other about your limits before you go too far.

less likely to do anything that would damage your sense of self-esteem.

How to Say No

When you must say no to sexual pressures, do so firmly, but with respect. Keep the other person's self-esteem in mind. Saying no doesn't have to be done in an angry voice.

There is no need to offer excuses, and you don't have to give reasons. You do not have to try to convince your partner—you only have to say what you will and will not do. Refuse to argue. State your position and stand firm.

Finally, get away from the situation as soon as you can. This is the best way to avoid any further pressure. Ask to be driven home, or go home on your own. If necessary, you may need to ask someone else to drive you home, or you can call your parents or a friend. See 11-19 for additional ways to help you say no.

Date or Acquaintance Rape

Rape is any sexual intimacy forced on one person by another. Though rape is usually thought to be committed by strangers, it is often committed by someone the victim knows. **Acquaintance rape** or "date rape" is committed by a dating partner, friend, someone the person just met, or someone known at school or work. In other words, the rapist is an acquaintance who forces or pressures the victim into nonconsenting intercourse. Statistics reveal that over half of all reported sexual assaults and rapes of teens are committed by people they know. In these instances, teens feel they can trust their assailants because they know them. The rapists are not the strangers about whom the teens have been warned. A rape can occur even if the rapist is known to the victim.

Rape is forcing someone to have sexual intercourse without his or her consent. Consent is based on choice. Being deceived or drugged with a "date-rape" drug is not giving consent. Some males wrongly think that young women just need to be persuaded—that their no doesn't always mean no. This callous attitude on the part of males has led some to be prosecuted for rape.

Many people are reluctant to report a rape by someone they know. Many teens don't even tell their parents about sexual assaults. They are afraid of upsetting their parents. They may have been breaking a rule when the act occurred, so they think they will be in even greater trouble if they tell their parents. Some victims feel they may have been partly to blame for what

Ways to Say No

- Give your partner a compliment—and mean it. "I appreciate your wanting me, but I'm not ready for that kind of relationship."
- Say in a light-hearted manner, "Hey, not so fast."
- Change the setting by saying, "I'm starved. Let's go get something to eat."
- Tell your date, "You really are special to me. I like you, and I want to keep it that way."
- Use I-statements, such as "I feel really uncomfortable right now. I'm not ready for this. I'm afraid it might damage our relationship and I might lose respect for you and for me."
- Tell a joke. Sometimes humor can get you out of a difficult situation.

11-19 It's not always easy to say no to sexual pressures. These ideas may help you.

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Myths Vs. Realities of Rape

Many young people are confused about rape—what it is and is not. The following statements are commonly held myths about rape. The responses to these myths will help you become more knowledgeable about rape.

Myth: The primary motive for rape is sexual.

Reality: The primary motive for rape is power—to overpower, control, humiliate, or dominate another person.

Myth: Rape occurs between strangers.

Reality: The majority of rapes involve persons who move in the same social circle. Acquaintance rape occurs when the victim and the perpetrator are acquainted (friends, dormmates, classmates). Date rape occurs when the two are seeing one another in a dating relationship.

Myth: Giving in to the rapist is the same as consenting to sexual relations.

Reality: Consent is based on choice. Consent is active, not passive. Giving in out of fear is not giving consent. Being deceived or drugged with a "date-rape" drug is not giving consent.

Myth: A sexual attack is provoked by the victim.

Reality: This mistaken belief holds that women "ask to be raped" through their actions or dress. This takes the criminal action away from the rapist and shifts the blame to the victim.

Myth: If the male is "led on" by the female, he cannot be charged with rape.

Reality: A male may be charged with rape even if he thought he was doing what the girl wanted.

Myth: Women often lie about being raped.

Reality: People often think there is a great deal of false reporting. In fact, only about two percent of rape calls turn out to be false reports, which is the same false-report rate as for other felonies.

happened. Perhaps they feel they could have prevented the incident.

Parents often feel teens are less likely to be victimized if they go to parties or on group dates instead of single dates. Parties and groups have their own dangers. Both male and female teens need to be aware of these dangers. If there is drinking or drug use, the ability to make good decisions is jeopardized. The people involved may not realize what is happening to them.

Some people may be more likely to victimize others when they are in a crowd. This may be because they think they can blame someone else. These people may later feel ashamed of their actions although they did not think about the consequences at the time. Peer pressure can make going against the crowd difficult, even when teens know what they are doing is wrong.

How to Avoid Date Rape

How can you, as a young person, protect yourself from date or acquaintance rape? First of all, respect the limits set by your parents or those in authority. Family ground rules are one of the best ways parents have to protect their children. When invited to a party, know where it is and who will be there. Make sure that parents will be present.

Before you get involved in a difficult situation, you need to set your own personal limits. You need to decide how you feel about particular issues. Then you can decide how you will handle these problems should they arise.

Learn how to say no and mean it. You don't need to come up with apologies, excuses, or reasons. You do need to let the other person or persons know through your facial expressions and body language that you mean what you say. Be assertive in expressing what you think is right for you. If someone makes you feel uncomfortable, you should know it is all right to decide you don't like that person.

Practice responses to use when you feel someone is taking advantage of you. Your date may say, "If you love me, show me." Your reply might be, "If you really loved me, then we can wait for our relationship to grow even more." Someone who won't take no for an answer might say, "You can't say 'no.' I just spent lots of money on you." You could reply by saying, "I've done a lot of things for you, too, but I've never asked for repayment."

Learn how to recognize trouble situations and be alert to circumstances that might get out of control. Maintain your options for leaving a situation if this should happen. At a party, stay out of bedrooms and other isolated areas. If drinking or drug use is going on, the best thing to do is to leave. When you feel uncomfortable, it is time to leave regardless of what others do. If your date will not leave with you, get a friend to take you home. If that is not possible, call your parents. Cellular phones are good to have for such emergencies.

What to Do If a Rape Occurs

If rape occurs, teens need to realize they should report the incident. Reporting will help them get needed medical care and counseling. Counseling following the incident speeds up the recovery process. Without such counseling, damage to one's self-esteem can have long-term repercussions. Victims may fear any close personal ties to others for they feel their trust has been violated. Counseling can help victims work through the emotional trauma and learn once again to develop a sense of closeness and trust. Victims also need to know they are still loved and valued.

apter 11 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Teens will have many new and different types of friends. Friendships will vary through the years.
- Dating helps young people learn about interpersonal relationships. This helps them prepare for adulthood and marriage. Today's teen dating patterns are less structured and more informal. There is more emphasis on groups of people than on couples.
- Qualities of trust, self-disclosure, comfort, communication, and intimacy are important in building a serious relationship.
- Ending a relationship may be hard to do for a teen. Care should be taken to avoid causing the other person undue pain or embarrassment.
- True love, tender love, and friendly love are positive types of love. Jealous love, passionate love, hostile love, and unreturned love are negative types of love.
- Love is stronger and more secure than infatuation. Love is less selfish and more patient than the desire for sexual gratification.
- Physical expressions are one method of communicating affection. In a good relationship, they should be combined with other methods.
- Sexual decision making requires maturity and knowledge. Any sexual experience you have becomes a part of you. You must accept the physical and emotional responsibilities and consequences that go with this experience.
- Sexual abstinence is saying no to sexual intercourse and its possible consequences. There are techniques teens can use to help resist sexual pressure.
- Teens can easily become victims of acquaintance rape because they tend to trust the people they know.

Review

1. State three reasons why friends can be important.
2. Describe how teens can benefit from informal group dating.
3. Dating only one person for a long period of time is called "going _____" or _____ dating.
4. List and briefly describe four qualities that characterize a serious relationship.
5. List four signs that indicate a relationship is having problems and should end.
6. List four ways to break up that can ease hurt and a sense of rejection.
7. Match the following terms with their descriptions.

   _____ Passionate love
   _____ Infatuation
   _____ Hostile love
   _____ Unreturned love
   _____ Friendly love
   _____ Jealous love
   _____ True love

   A. Involves total communication and commitment between two people.
   B. May form the foundation for true love to build on.
   C. Possessive love.
   D. Is vigorous, insistent, and urgent.
   E. Raises its voice in anger against the loved one.
   F. Is frustrating because it is unfulfilled love.
   G. Foolish, extreme attractions that do not last.
8. Name five ways to prepare yourself to make the right decisions concerning sexual relationships.
9. Explain how to say no to sexual pressure effectively.
10. Compare the terms rape and acquaintance rape.
11. Describe four things you can do to protect yourself from acquaintance rape.

React

1. Interview adults about their friendships. Ask each person to describe a friendship that is (or was) important to him or her. Find out how and when the friendship began, how long it lasted, and what the person gained from it.
2. Form a panel of guys and girls from the class to discuss current dating patterns in your community. Have them cite the most popular dating activities.
3. Prepare a list of characteristics of dating partners such as "gossips about friends" or "always on time." List these under two columns: Negative Traits and Positive Traits. Then place a check mark in front of the characteristics you think describe yourself. Review your list and make an effort to improve your behavior.
4. Role-play a situation in which a couple is breaking up and each is very hurt in the process. Then role-play the same situation using methods that will keep hurt and rejection to a minimum. Compare and discuss the two situations.
5. Make a collage of magazine pictures, words, or cartoons that depict the different types of love. Explain your selections to the class.
6. In small groups, discuss the best ways to say no to sexual pressure.
7. Discuss the problem of acquaintance rape in your community. Ask two college students to join the discussion and give their views of the problem on college campuses.

Reflect

1. Accept or reject this statement: All serious romantic relationships begin as friendships. Discuss the reasons for your opinion.
2. What traits do you value in a close friend of either gender? How important are these traits compared to physical attraction in a close dating or marital relationship? Would you feel that something was missing if you became involved with someone who lacked these traits?
3. Make a list of constructive and destructive ways in which people tend to break off relationships. What advice would you give to a person who has been "jilted"?
4. Write a paper discussing the main reasons why sexual abstinence is the best choice for teens.
5. Discuss the following statement: A boy who pressures a girl for sexual involvement to "prove her love" is actually showing that he doesn't love her.

Friendships can develop into close relationships over time.

Part IV

The Marriage Relationship

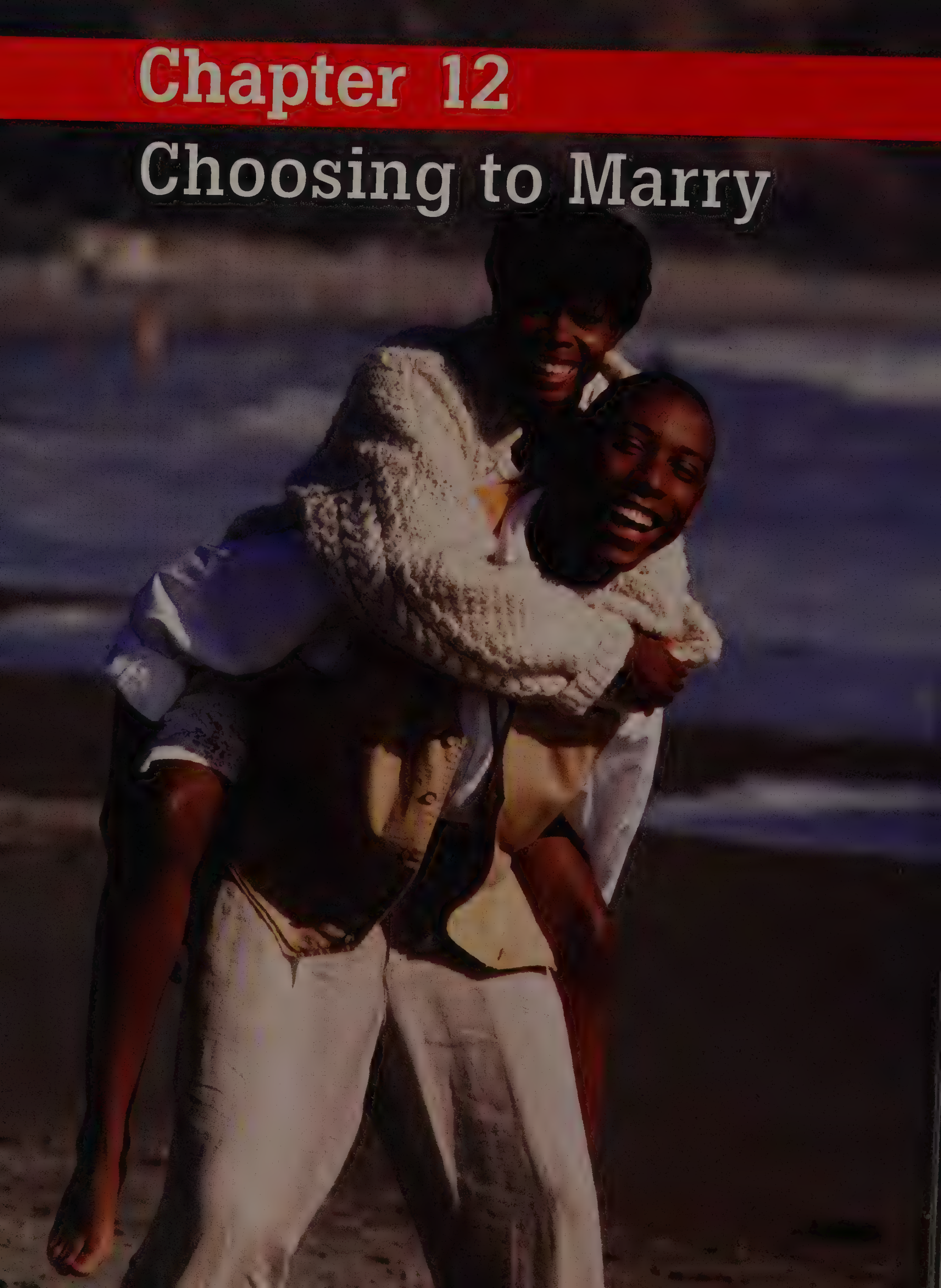
Chapter 12
Choosing to Marry

Chapter 13
Engagement and Marriage

Chapter 14
Building a Marriage

Chapter 12

Choosing to Marry



Terms to Know

- parent image
- proximity
- complementary needs
- mixed marriage
- theist
- atheist

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- list social and psychological forces involved in choosing a spouse.
- describe other personal factors people use to evaluate possible spouses.
- identify issues related to mixed marriages.

How do people go about choosing a spouse? Is it true that opposites attract, or do people tend to marry people like themselves? What factors may increase or decrease a person's chances of marital happiness? This chapter explores some forces that influence people's marital choices. It also examines the implications of these choices for marital happiness.

Forces Affecting Mate Selection

The process of choosing a husband or wife in our culture may seem haphazard, especially as it compares to that of other cultures. However, the mate selection process is guided by certain forces. These forces are social and psychological, and partners may or may not be aware of them.

Similarity

The first guiding force in choosing a spouse is the tendency to marry someone much like yourself. People tend to choose spouses from their own race, religion, ethnic background, and social class. Men and women who have never married tend to marry other never-married people.

People from similar groups usually have similar attitudes about many aspects of their lives. They can share their ideas and feelings easily with each other. Thus they are more likely to form lasting relationships.

Parent Image

Spouse selection based on the **parent image** theory holds that a man looks for a wife similar to his mother. Likewise, a woman looks for a husband similar to her father.

You may be influenced more than you realize by the images you have of your parents. If you have been raised to value high ethical standards, you will probably look for a spouse who shares these standards. If your parents are warm and understanding, you will probably look for these qualities in the person you choose to marry.

Proximity

Another force at work in choosing a spouse is physical **proximity**, or nearness. A person is more likely to form a meaningful relationship with someone who lives or works nearby, 12-1. Our mobile society has broadened our personal contacts, but you are still likely to marry someone you meet near your home.

Complementary Needs

The force of **complementary needs** leads you to seek a partner who is strong in areas in which you are weak. For instance, suppose you are a dominant person and a leader. You may be attracted to someone who is easygoing and a follower. Likewise, one partner who likes to help and care for people may be attracted to someone who needs care and attention. Couples may or may not be aware of the complementary needs they share. As partners mature, they may gain skills and confidence in areas in which they previously depended on their spouse.

Role Expectations

Every person expects a spouse to perform certain roles in marriage. Wage

12-1 Many relationships begin with friendships you form at school during your teen years.

earning and taking care of the children are examples of such roles.

In today's society, roles are becoming more varied than they tended to be in the past. In many families with children, both the husband and wife work outside the home. In these families, spouses may expect to share many roles—for example, wage earner, cook, housekeeper, and gardener, 12-2. Both may be involved with caring for the children. In other families, spouses may decide to split the roles of wage earner and homemaker. Dating partners should discuss their future roles before they get engaged. If major problems seem likely, it is better to know before committing to marriage.

Choosing a Partner: Other Factors

The forces just discussed are social and psychological in nature. They may subconsciously guide the choice of a spouse. Other factors in choosing a partner, which will be discussed now, are more easily recognized and consciously judged.

The factors that a group of students said they would want in a mate are listed in 12-3. How does this list compare with your ideas?

Personal Priorities

The factor involving personal priorities simply means that you will tend to marry someone whose personal priorities are similar to yours. This is logical since you tend to choose people with similar priorities for friends, and you will probably choose your spouse from your circle of friends.

Having similar personal priorities is very important in marriage. It gives the partners a common ground for the sharing of ideas, feelings, and goals. Because of this common ground, the partners are likely to communicate with greater understanding.

Personality Traits

Every person is unique and has a set of traits that work together to form a personality. That set of traits may impress some people favorably, yet "turn off" others.

12-2 Some couples share roles. The husband may be responsible for grocery shopping.

Factors Desirable in a Mate

- Ability to show affection
- Understanding
- Trustworthiness
- Honesty
- Concern for others
- Good physical appearance
- Pleasing personality
- Sense of humor
- Faithfulness
- Good educational background
- Positive self-image
- Emotional maturity
- Desire to have children
- Desire *not* to have children
- Self-confidence
- Ability to communicate well
- Acceptance of constructive criticism
- Empathy
- Ability to handle money

12-3 High school students developed this list. Which would you want a spouse to have?

Thinking about the traits that are important to you will help you evaluate people throughout your life. You may even wish to list all the personality traits that you consider important and then try to find a spouse who has all of them! Such a strategy is unlikely to work. If this were possible, we could use computers to match people for successful marriages. Computer dating has been tried, but no machine can match whole personalities.

Family Background

The statement, "Happiness runs in families," is often true. If your parents have a happy marriage, you will have a greater chance of having a happy marriage. This is because you are learning how spouses who love and respect one another behave in a marriage relationship. Also, a child raised in a happy home is more likely to be emotionally secure and able to build fulfilling relationships. See 12-4.

On the other hand, children brought up in a home full of hostility tend to feel less secure in their relationships. This does not mean that if your home is unhappy you are doomed to marital failure, however. People raised to expect constant happiness or to believe that life is always easy may not be willing to work at a marriage. This may be why some marriages fail even when the couple seem to have everything going for them.

Also, if the partners have experienced the instability of an unhappy home, they may have more motivation to make their marriage work. They may be more willing to do everything possible to establish a happy home. This means learning healthy ways of relating to one another based on mutual love and respect. It may also mean unlearning patterns of interaction that are destructive to close, loving relationships.

Parental Approval

Another factor related to family background is parental approval of the partner. If parents approve of the partner and the marriage, the new couple will have a greater chance for marital success.

If parental approval is lacking, the couple would be wise to proceed slowly. A marriage that takes place without parental approval may face the following potential problem situations:

- In most cases, parents have good reasons for opposing the marriage.

12-4 **Children raised in a happy home tend to be emotionally secure. They have a good chance for marital happiness.**

These reasons may become apparent to the couple as they try to adjust to married life. If the couple refuse to listen to the parents' reasoning and to take advantage of the parents' experience, the couple may not realize their mistake until it is too late.

- When parental disapproval exists, justified or not, the young couple are likely to feel tense whenever they are with the parents. As a result, they may try to ignore the parents, saying they married each other, not each other's family. The truth is they have married into two families. The families' approval or disapproval will be a constant factor in the happiness of the marriage.
- If disapproval is a factor, the new husband or wife may be quick to say, "My parents were right," when the first conflicts arise. The partners may give up easily instead of working to improve the relationship. In some cases, they may even subconsciously use this as an excuse to get out of the marriage.

Health Factors

Poor health may not destroy a marriage, but good health can help it, 12-5. All marriages meet occasional stresses, and people who are healthy can resolve them more easily.

Mental and emotional health are just as important as physical health—maybe even more so. If a partner is emotionally stable, he or she will be better able to meet the demanding responsibilities of marriage.

12-5 Good health—both physical and mental—makes marriage easier and more enjoyable.

Leisure-Time Activities

Today's world offers more leisure-time options than in the past. A couple can use their leisure time to improve their relationship. Leisure time can add a dimension of sharing and appreciation to a relationship. Generally, spouses who share similar interests have a good chance for happiness in marriage, 12-6.

Leisure-time activities vary widely. They may occur inside or outside the home. They may be couple-oriented or shared with other people. Some provide an escape from the demanding world of work. Some allow people to grow and improve themselves. Others simply provide companionship among friends and family members.

By sharing leisure time, partners can release tensions and discuss frustrations and accomplishments. When they become parents, their children will be able to share their companionship. When they retire, they will continue to find life meaningful and satisfying.

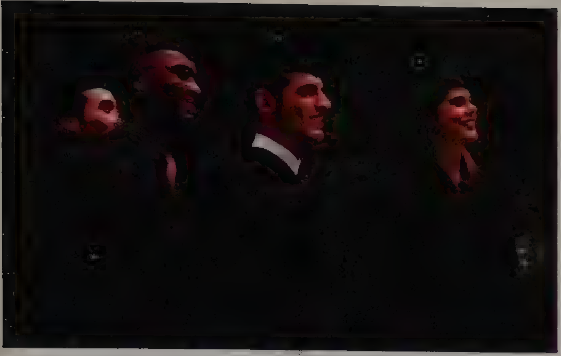
Partners should discuss their social and recreational interests before marriage. They need to know each other's expectations. Then they will be better able to balance their work roles, free time, and financial resources.

Education

Differences in the educational levels of two people are sometimes a factor in their relationship. Generally, a couple who have had about the same amount of education can share and communicate more easily than those who have not, 12-7. If their educational levels vary widely, they are more likely to have problems.

Wide differences in educational levels occur less often today than in the past. This is because men and women have become more similar in their educational and career goals and opportunities.

12-6 A shared interest in camping brings this couple closer together.



12-7 People with similar levels of education can usually communicate more easily with each other.

Age

The younger you are when you marry, the more likely you are to divorce. This is because marriage requires maturity, and maturity usually increases with age.

Although some people are ready for marriage before others, studies show that many teenage marriages fail. Teens may not have the emotional maturity needed to handle all the responsibilities of marriage. Another problem of most teenage marriages is money, 12-8. Money may remain a problem for a couple, especially if they quit school in order to marry. Couples who do this usually limit their earning potential for the rest of their lives.

The number of high school marriages is decreasing. Few boys marry while still in high school. Most of the girls who marry at that time have husbands who are older or who have dropped out of school. Sometimes the marriage is a way to escape from an unpleasant home environment. Some marriages take place because the woman is pregnant and the couple wishes to avoid an out-of-wedlock birth.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

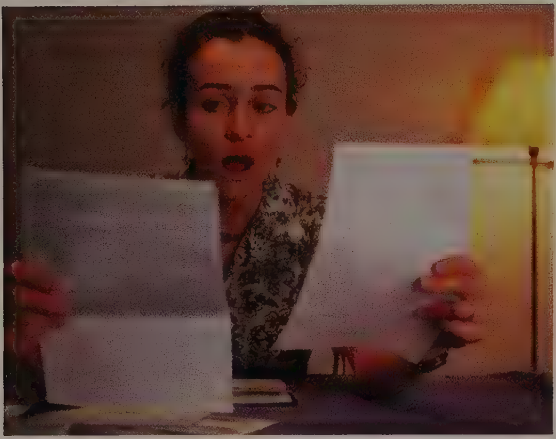
Age at Marriage: How Much Does It Matter?

Research suggests that a couple's age at marriage is one of the most important factors in marital success. The older the couple is, the less is the likelihood that they will divorce.

According to the National Center for Health Statistics, the chances that a couple will divorce are

- **about 40 percent for couples under age 20.**
- **26-30 percent for couples age 20-24.**
- **25 percent for couples age 25-44.**
- **less than 14 percent for couples who do not marry until age 45.**

People who wait until they are older to marry are more likely to have the emotional, social, and financial stability that often comes with age. These qualities can contribute significantly to marital success.



12-8 Financial problems may occur in teenage marriages.

Though teenage marriages still take place, more and more young people are choosing to delay marriage. Most express the desire to be sure of themselves and their goals before they marry. Many want to complete their education and begin a career before committing themselves to another person, 12-9.

12-9 Some young people wish to travel widely before they commit to marriage and children.

Fewer college students are marrying today than in the past couple of decades. Those who do marry while in college face several challenges. Two major challenges relate to money and social life.

Most couples have to work to support themselves. Long work hours, combined with long study hours, leave little time for social activities. To improve their financial position, one of the spouses may decide to quit college and work full-time. Authorities discourage this decision. They feel that both spouses should continue their college educations, even if they have to borrow money, reduce their course loads, or take an extra year or more to graduate. A marriage is usually healthier if the educational levels of the spouses are as equal as possible. This tends to promote greater similarities in other areas of the marriage (such as career goals) as well.

Mixed Marriages

A **mixed marriage** is one involving persons of different countries, races, or religious faiths. These marriages have greater potential for problems because of significant differences, but most succeed. Partners considering a mixed marriage should be aware of the adjustments they may have to face. Some couples delay talking about their differences for fear of destroying the feelings they share. However, if the relationship is strong, honest talk will add to its strength. If the couple have differences that cannot be settled, they would be wise to realize this before the relationship grows too serious.

International Marriages

International marriages involve people from different countries. These marriages are occurring more often as more people travel, attend college, and conduct business in foreign countries. Most of these marriages work, but couples should realize the challenges involved. The partners will have to blend different cultural backgrounds and traditions. They also may have to reconcile different beliefs—for example, beliefs about the role of women in society.

Interracial Marriages

As America becomes more racially diverse, interracial marriages are increasing. Since 1960, the United States has experienced a more than tenfold increase in interracial marriages. Currently, about four percent of U.S. marriages are interracial.

Of all the types of mixed marriage, interracial marriages may be one of the most challenging. Couples may encounter cultural prejudice against their marriage. They may or may not feel accepted by each other's families.

Love, patience, and understanding can overcome many obstacles. An interracial couple may wish to make a special effort to learn about and appreciate each other's ethnic backgrounds and traditions. They may decide to focus on building strong relationships with each other's families. As couples learn more about each other's ethnic backgrounds, they may choose specific aspects of each to enhance their marriage and family life.

Interfaith Marriages

A person's religion is an important factor to consider before marriage. Sometimes young people underrate the importance of religion in their lives. In such cases, they may not realize the potential problems of marrying someone of a different faith. People who are raised in a religious home are constantly influenced by the beliefs and practices of their religion. Such influences cannot be ignored. They affect people's thoughts, feelings, and actions in everyday life. If either partner is religiously oriented, each should be aware of the other's feelings and respect them.

An important issue in most interfaith marriages involves choosing the faith in which the children will be raised. See 12-10. Some parents deny their children religious instruction in either faith in the hope that

12-10 **Often, one of the problems of an interfaith marriage is deciding on the religious training of the children.**

the children will choose their own faith later, as adults. However, many spiritual leaders believe that raising children in one faith or the other is preferable to this alternative. Children raised without religious instruction may end up choosing no faith at all.

Other potential issues include the acceptance of holiday and festive customs and views on birth control, abortion, and divorce. All of these issues should be discussed before the marriage.

Catholic-Protestant Marriages

Attempts have been made in recent years to point out that Catholics and Protestants have much in common. However, they also have some differences.

The Catholic faith holds that marriage is indissoluble. Remarriage after divorce is permissible only if the church grants an annulment of the first marriage. Neither abortion nor "artificial" means of birth control (contraception) is acceptable.

These teachings should be considered carefully by a non-Catholic contemplating marriage to a Catholic. Both partners would be wise to meet with one or more local spiritual leaders before making any binding commitment. Many Catholic churches offer instructional classes to help non-Catholics become familiar with the faith.

Jewish-Gentile Marriages

Marriages between Jews and Gentiles (non-Jews) are increasing in number. Recent research suggests that as many as one-half of all Jews who marry are now choosing non-Jewish spouses.

Judaism represents a culture as well as a religion. The non-Jewish person can help make the relationship work by learning about both the culture and the faith.

Customs followed during holidays and other days of special religious observance can complicate or enrich the lives of Jewish-Gentile families, depending on their attitudes. The parents of each partner may expect their child to uphold the parents' beliefs and customs in the new home. If the young couple do not, parents with rigid attitudes may reject their child's spouse and their own child as well.

Perhaps the most painful conflicts arise when the couple has its first child. In which faith should the child be raised? Potential conflicts should be explored and resolved well before the wedding ceremony.

Although both families in an interfaith marriage experience many challenges, people who maintain open minds can find much to appreciate in each other's religious traditions. Many couples express this appreciation by observing the holidays of both faiths. With kindness and tolerance, many potential conflicts in such marriages can be resolved.

Theist-Atheist Marriages

Religion plays an important role in the lives of many people. If a **theist** (one who believes a god exists) marries an **atheist** (one who denies the existence of a god), they may have problems. They may disagree about the time, money, and effort the religious spouse devotes to religious concerns. They may react differently to conflicts and stress in their lives. They may confuse their children by teaching them different beliefs and values.

A couple should discuss the importance of religion in their lives before they marry. Then they can make decisions that will prevent future problems.

Alternatives for Church or Synagogue Attendance

Church or synagogue attendance may be a problem for people in an interfaith marriage. This issue should be discussed, and a decision made, so it will not cause an argument each week. The following are four possible alternatives:

- Each may attend his or her own church or synagogue and retain membership in his or her own congregation. This calls for accommodation on the part of each spouse. As long as the two of them are in accord, a stable relationship can be maintained. Some spouses enjoy accompanying one another to religious services for reasons of companionship and personal enrichment.
- One may adopt the religion of the other. This alternative has the advantage of allowing the couple to share their religious experiences. However, neither partner should have to give up a religion unwillingly.
- Both may drop their religions, or one may drop it while the other continues to practice it. Sometimes this happens gradually. If problems persist, one or both partners may feel it is not worth the trouble to continually raise the issue.
- Both may drop their religions and accept a new religion. This very rare compromise may be made by couples who feel that neither partner should be asked to do more than the other. An intense study of the new religion occasionally lays the foundation for a stronger faith than either partner previously had. Each spouse's parents and family, however, may have difficulty accepting this decision.

Chapter 12 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Several social and psychological forces affect spouse selection. They include similarity, parent image, proximity, complementary needs, and role expectations.
- Several additional factors in spouse selection are more obvious. They include personal priorities, personality traits, family background, parental approval, health factors, leisure-time activities, education, and age.
- Reasons for the failure of many teenage marriages include financial problems and lack of emotional maturity.
- A mixed marriage is one involving partners of different cultures, races, or religious faiths.
- Partners who choose an international, interracial, or interfaith marriage should take a realistic look at the adjustments they will have to make.

Review

1. Match each of the following factors affecting spouse selection with its description.

   _____ Proximity
   _____ Complementary needs
   _____ Parent image
   _____ Similarity
   _____ Role expectations

   A. A man will tend to marry someone who is much like his mother.
   B. You will tend to marry someone who lives fairly close to you.
   C. You will tend to marry someone who will behave the way you expect a spouse to behave.
   D. You will tend to marry someone who is strong in areas where you are weak.
   E. You will tend to marry someone who is much like yourself.
2. Explain why people raised in happy homes tend to have an easier time establishing happy marriages.
3. Which of the following statements are true?
   A. More and more people are choosing to delay marriage.
   B. A couple who have had about the same amount of education are likely to communicate more easily than a couple with very different levels of education.
   C. The younger you marry, the more likely you are to divorce.
   D. Mixed marriages never work.
4. Explain how shared leisure-time activities can benefit a marriage.
5. List two things a couple can do to prepare for a Catholic-Protestant marriage.
6. Describe two challenges faced by Jewish-Gentile couples.
7. Name two problems that may arise in a theist-atheist marriage.

React

1. Write a paper entitled "The Ideal Spouse."
2. Working in small groups, research the leisure-time activities that are available in your area for couples and families. Report your group's findings to the class.
3. Research one type of mixed marriage. Prepare a written report explaining its strengths and potential problems.

Reflect

1. Accept or reject the following statement: Teenage marriage is a poor idea. Provide reasons for your answer.
2. Identify the type of mixed marriage that you feel would involve the greatest challenge or personal adjustment for you and list the reasons why. In what ways would you need to adapt or grow to make the marriage a success? Would you be willing to make this commitment?
3. Think of a happy couple you know. List several specific ways in which they seem to be happy (for example, mutual understanding, empathy, or shared sense of humor). Then think of a couple who are unhappy. List the things that seem to be missing in their relationship. What advice would you have for the unhappy couple?
4. What do you think is meant by the following statement: There are no such things as "successful marriages"—only "succeeding marriages." What kinds of things can make a seemingly successful relationship fail later on? What factors can make a failing relationship more successful over time?

Couples with similar interests are more likely to be compatible in marriage.

Chapter 13

Engagement and Marriage

Terms to Know

- monogamous
- polygamous marriage
- bigamy
- consanguineous marriage
- marriages of affinity
- common-law marriage
- officiate
- civil weddings
- ceremonial wedding

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- explain the purpose of the engagement period.
- identify issues an engaged couple should discuss prior to marriage.
- recognize when and how an engagement should be broken.
- describe the legal and moral commitments in a marriage relationship.
- explain the functions and planning of various types of wedding ceremonies.

For most couples, becoming engaged is a fulfilling and often exciting experience. There is the thrill of announcing your love to the outside world and showing off an engagement ring. Planning a wedding and thinking about your first apartment is exciting. However, there is a serious side to engagement, too. It is the prelude to one of the most important steps of your life—marriage.

A loving marriage can bring some of the deepest happiness and fulfillment that two human beings can experience. There is the joy of loving and being loved, and the satisfaction of building a life and often a family together. There is also the security of knowing that you are part of a mutual support system—emotionally, financially, and in many other ways. Ideally, this support system will last throughout your life.

The happiness brought by a good marriage does not just happen. It is the result of hard work, patience, communication, and understanding. It also benefits from the maturity and perspective that only the passing years can bring. Hard work and maturity, however, are no guarantee of marital happiness if you have made a poor marital choice in the first place. That is why it is so important to think carefully about whether your relationship is likely to be a successful one.

Engagement

The engagement period represents both an end to courtship and a start of plans for married life, 13-1. In the past, engagement was considered to be a legally binding contract. Today, engagement is usually viewed as a sign of a couple's intentions to marry—not as a legal contract. The purpose of the engagement period is three-fold:

- It serves as an announcement to family and friends of a couple's intentions to marry.
- It is a testing period during which the couple can evaluate their relationship and make plans for their future.
- It gives the couple time to plan the wedding ceremony.

David Hopper

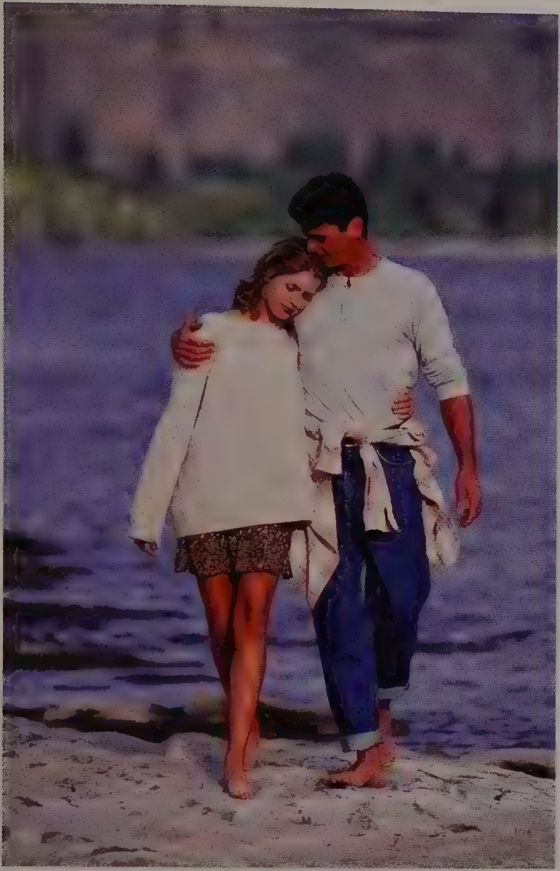
13-1 Engagement represents an end to courtship and a beginning of plans for the future as husband and wife.

Customs concerning engagement vary among families, communities, and regions of the country. Activities that take place during engagement should reflect the wishes of the couple as they look ahead to their marriage. Too often, the wedding becomes simply a way of repaying social obligations. It becomes a spectacle, competing with similar events organized by other families. Although wedding plans are important, the couple should keep the deeper meaning of the engagement in mind.

Testing Process of the Engagement Period

The testing and planning process is the most important function of the engagement. As you look ahead to your future life together, you will want to talk about your personal priorities and goals, 13-2. You may find that you do not agree on everyday matters. You may take a more critical look at each other in areas such as grooming, irritating habits, inconsistent money management, or casual concern for family courtesies. Although engagement is not the same as marriage, it is a testing period that should be viewed as realistically as possible.

Many counselors feel that engagement offers a chance to improve a future marriage, or to expose differences that would make marriage unwise. This, then, is a crucial period for you. If you look honestly at your relationship at this time,



13-2 **Engagement is a testing period during which a couple should discuss important issues and take a critical look at their relationship.**

you may be reassured that your future together will be a happy one. On the other hand, taking an honest look at your relationship during engagement may help you prevent future problems. If you see patterns of serious conflict, if you feel less committed to the relationship, and if you can openly admit those feelings to yourself, you may be able to prevent a bad marriage. At that point, you would be wise to break the engagement. A broken engagement is better than a broken marriage.

Communication During Engagement

What can you do to make the most of the engagement period? How can you use it as a foundation for building an even deeper relationship? How can you be honest with yourself, and with each other, if you feel conflict or doubts about your relationship? Perhaps one of the best starting points is to review what most authorities believe should be discussed during engagement.

Personality Traits

The dating relationship before an engagement is somewhat unrealistic. It rarely prepares you to accept your mate as a "whole" person. You have undoubtedly become aware of the personality traits that you like, but have you accepted or learned to tolerate the traits that you do not like? When you plan to marry someone, you must be prepared to accept the person as he or she is. A wedding ceremony does not change a person's character, personality, or habits.

To evaluate your relationship, each of you might ask yourself the questions listed in 13-3. Setting up a "formula" for a successful marriage is impossible. However, if you can answer most of these questions positively, your future relationship probably has much positive potential. If you find that many of your responses are negative, you should take a closer look at your total relationship. Marriage does not mean that you have to agree on everything. It does mean that you need to share the space between your two viewpoints and work together to achieve happiness.

A Self-Quiz for Engaged Couples

To evaluate your relationship, each of you should ask yourself the following questions:

- Do I like and respect myself? Do I have pride in my fiancé, and do I respect him or her? Can we feel confident in accepting our future together?
- Do I value my individuality? Can my fiancé and I allow our individual personalities to grow and yet accept the ties of married life?
- Can we empathize with each other's feelings? Can we recognize and understand each other's needs and emotions while still maintaining our own personalities?
- Do I have any "leftover" negative feelings from childhood? Can we absorb or "work through" any such negative feelings and make our future life together a positive one?
- Am I trustworthy? Can we feel completely secure in the trust we have for each other and use this trust as a foundation for our marriage?
- Am I moody and indifferent at times? Can we accept each other's right to privacy, and yet share moments of sorrow, anger, joy, and contentment?
- Am I able to communicate verbally and nonverbally? Can we share our affection through words, looks, and touch?
- Can I accept constructive criticism? Will we both feel secure in our love when negative, as well as positive, statements are made?
- Do I have a sense of humor? Will we be able to laugh with each other and not at each other?
- Am I able to communicate my expectations to my fiancé? Can we accept each other's expectations, knowing we may or may not be able to live up to all of these expectations?

13-3 Ask yourself these questions to evaluate your relationship prior to marriage.

Career Goals and Marriage

You should ask yourselves how you plan to balance your career and family goals. Some jobs are more demanding than others. People who want to succeed in certain careers must accept the demands the careers impose. Their spouses also have to accept the demands and must be ready to lend support during times of pressure.

People who choose careers in social services must recognize the demands of emotional involvement with others. Religious leaders, as well as their families, have to be ready to share their lives with entire congregations. Skilled laborers are under pressure to maintain their skills and to update their technological knowledge. Business executives have to learn to balance their ups and downs in financial matters as well as other emotional stresses. Whatever type of career you choose, it will affect your marriage and family life.

If you, your future spouse, or both of you choose careers that involve unusual demands, you should discuss this before marriage. A career is more than a means of financial support for your family. Your career identity affects your whole life and thus the lives of all your family members. Combining the career role with those of spouse and parent can be difficult. You will need each other's help and support. You might want to ask yourselves the questions listed in 13-4.

Discussing Sexual and Reproductive Expectations

During engagement, the two of you will need to discuss many aspects of your future life together, including sexual and reproductive matters. Discussion of feelings about having children—how many and when—is very important, 13-5. If one person does not want to have children, the other partner must be aware of this.

Career-Related Questions for Engaged Couples

To evaluate your career goals and how they might affect your marriage, each of you should ask yourself the following questions:

- Do I want a career that requires a college degree? Will we be willing to work to achieve this goal?
- Do I want to choose a training program for a skilled craft? Will we be able to adapt to irregular schedules, overtime hours, or weekend work, if necessary?
- Do I want a career that will require involvement with other people, such as medicine, social work, or theology? Will I be able to maintain my commitment to my spouse as I meet the demands resulting from this choice?
- Will I feel satisfied in my career? Will we be able to accept our career identities as a positive factor in our personal and family lives?
- Will I accept a dual-career marriage? Will we recognize the advantages and disadvantages of a dual-career marriage? Will we be able to balance our lives to reach our goals?
- Do I want a career that will combine well with the role of parenting? Will we be able to spend quality time with our children?

13-4 Couples should answer these questions concerning their career goals and marriage.

Engaged couples should also discuss their sexual expectations for marriage. They should be aware of one another's expectations regarding sexual relations. Attitudes toward various types of birth control should also be shared. If partners do not discuss these matters, they may experience disappointment and conflict after marriage.

Sexual adjustment in marriage is interrelated with all other areas of adjustment. Like your love, a mutually satisfying sexual relationship can grow and develop with time if you have realistic expectations.

If discussing sexual relations is difficult for a couple, they may want to start by reading factual books about sex together. They may want to ask for help from a professional such as a doctor, counselor, or religious leader.

Medical Counseling

Premarital medical counseling should be done early in the engagement period, rather than right before the wedding.

13-5 Does your future mate like children? Would you like to have children? These are good questions to answer during engagement.

There are several reasons for medical counseling and a physical examination. These include the following:

- Based on the results of your physical examination, the doctor will be able to determine your general state of health.
- The doctor will discuss your partner's and your medical histories, including previous illnesses. The doctor will also review your family backgrounds and warn you of any hereditary conditions that may cause problems if you decide to have children.
- You and your partner will have the chance to ask questions concerning your sexual roles in your future marriage.
- If you desire, you will have the chance to ask about family planning.
- Premarital counseling and a physical examination establish a doctor-patient relationship, which might be helpful later. If the couple develops any problems in the future, the doctor will be better able to counsel them.

Future In-laws

By the time the engagement takes place, many couples are on good terms with their future in-laws. If the engagement has the approval of both sets of parents, the couple may not have any in-law problems. In fact, the parents may give them support and encouragement. A couple and their in-laws often become good friends.

Other couples are not as fortunate. A discussion of wedding plans may reveal how much the two families differ. One family may want to handle all the plans for a large, formal wedding. The other family may resent all the plans and expense and prefer a simple ceremony. Family traditions that seem important to one may seem irrelevant to the other. The main concern should be the wishes of the bride and groom. If they find themselves divided at this time because of family pressures, it may be a sign of their lack of experience in making their own decisions as a couple.

As you look ahead to your marriage, you should try to keep a positive attitude toward your in-laws, 13-6. "Giving up" their son or daughter may be difficult for them. Patience and tact, as well as a good sense of humor, are needed in handling in-law situations. Some suggestions are given in 13-7.

The most common complaint about in-laws is that they are meddling or interfering. It may be hard for parents to stand by and see their married sons and daughters struggle with some of life's problems. Thus, their first reaction may be to give assistance immediately. In most cases, they would be wiser to wait until their help is actually sought. When in-laws do offer help, whether it was sought or not, the young couple should thank them for

13-6 **Try to keep a positive attitude toward your in-laws and to appreciate their interests and hobbies.**

Suggestions for Good In-law Relationships

- Your first loyalty is to your mate.
- Live apart from your in-laws. This will allow you to establish your own marital system.
- Authorities find that "Mother" and "Dad" are the labels preferred by most parents. This denotes equality and shows respect. Some parents will offer their own suggestions instead, such as, "Just call me Frank."
- Treat in-laws with the same respect you show to your friends.
- Do not use a parent as a model for your spouse to follow.
- When visiting in-laws, be thoughtful and courteous. Do not expect to be treated as a guest; offer to assist with household chores. Try to keep your visits fairly short.
- Give advice to in-laws only when they ask for it.
- If your in-laws give advice, accept it graciously. If the advice is not good for your marriage, do not follow it.
- Discuss the faults of your spouse only with your spouse—not with your family. They may bring up traits they dislike and make the problem worse.
- Do not try to change your in-laws; accept them as they are. You love their child, so you should try to appreciate them.

13-7 Patience, tact, and a good sense of humor will help settle most in-law difficulties.

the offer. However, they should accept it only if they think it is good for their marriage.

Studies show that the second most common problem with in-laws (after meddling) is indifference, thoughtlessness, or lack of appreciation. The ideal relationship would seem to be one in which the in-laws show affection and concern, but provide help only when asked.

Money Management

Another important area to be discussed is money management. Money will be a major factor in your relationship, both before and after marriage. Spending habits developed prior to marriage will carry over into your marriage. Financial decisions will influence your wedding plans and will affect your married lifestyle.

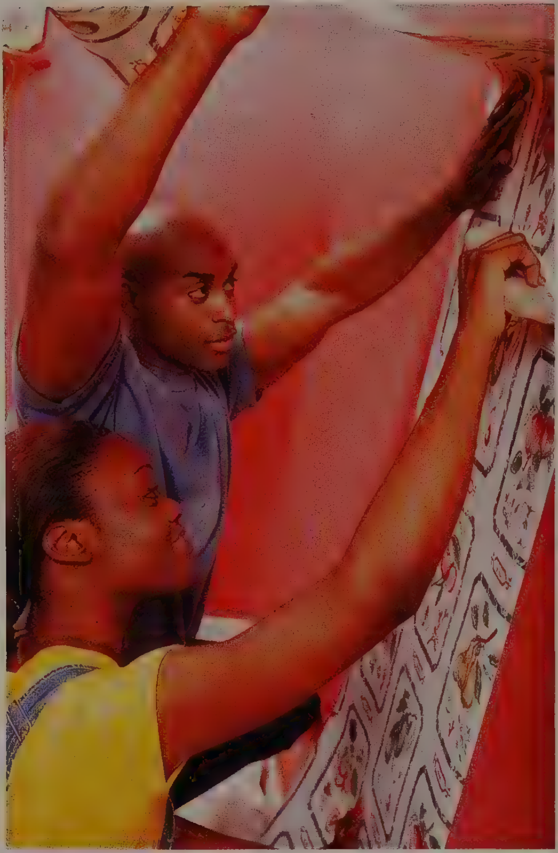
During the engagement period, you and your future spouse need to talk candidly about money management. If income sources and amounts are known, you would be wise to plan a tentative budget for the first months of your marriage. This will allow you to learn about each other's financial priorities. If you find your priorities differ widely, it is best to know this before marriage.

A spouse who looks forward to home ownership may be willing to forgo certain luxuries to save for this goal. If the other person places a higher priority on new clothing, entertainment, and recreation, this difference should be understood. The couple should work to reach a compromise before the wedding. Studies show that couples who have similar financial priorities have greater chances for happiness in marriage.

Future Living Arrangements

The engagement period gives you time to plan your future living arrangements. Your choice of a home will depend primarily on your job location and financial situation.

Your home should be a place where you both find comfort and contentment. This is why the furnishings should reflect the tastes of both husband and wife. See 13-8.



13-8 **Newlyweds should make decorating decisions together, so they can both feel comfortable in their home.**

You probably will not be able to afford a fully furnished apartment or house when you are first married. Therefore, it is usually best to add pieces of furniture as you can afford them. In this way, you do not have to go into debt.

Begin with a few basic pieces. You may be able to get some from friends and relatives. Secondhand stores and neighborhood garage sales are also good places to look.

Once you are in your new home, you will have a better idea of what pieces of furniture you need. You and your mate may enjoy planning each purchase as you can afford it. You can shop together and make joint decisions. Later, you may find that each piece of furniture in your home has a happy memory behind it.

Religious Commitments

Planning a wedding often involves religious decisions. Where the wedding will be held and who will perform the ceremony, for instance, are decisions that need to be made. You may wish to talk about your future religious commitments as well. If you do not discuss the matter of religion at this time, an adjustment may be more difficult later in your marriage. This issue will become especially important if you have children and face decisions about their religious training.

Counselors report that couples may experience adjustment problems if one partner wants to establish a religious commitment, but the other partner is totally against such involvement. The important thing is that a couple address any conflicts involving religious commitments before they marry.

Assessing Friendships

The engagement period is a good time to assess friendships more closely, 13-9. The friends of your future spouse may soon become your friends, too. Likewise, your friends may become your spouse's friends. These friendships can have a significant impact on your future marriage. If the relationships are positive, they can add variety to your lives and broaden your range of experience. They can also provide you with sources of support in times of need.

On the other hand, friends may cause conflicts if they expect you to continue to be their friend without considering that you are now part of a couple. Marriage will change your availability and responsibilities. Your friends should be able to accept this.

If you find that a particular friend of your future spouse disturbs you, you should mention this before marriage. You are expecting a lot if you demand that your future mate end a long-term friendship. However, your first step in reaching a solution is to admit that the friendship upsets you. If you do not care for the values on which the friendship is based, this could be a warning sign for future marital conflict.

Revealing the Past

What information about your past should be revealed during the engagement period? The answer to this question varies with each couple. However, some items should definitely be revealed. These are

- a previous marriage and any obligations it entails.
- hereditary problems or other defects that would prevent the couple from having children or indicate that children might be born with abnormalities.
- a history of heart disease, sexually transmitted disease, or other health problems.
- a criminal or prison record.
- debts or similar obligations that might handicap the marriage.

Engagement offers the unique opportunity to work out problems together in the context of "us." Each couple must find the level of openness that suits them best. The two of you can ask, "What will be best for us and our future marriage?" Certainly, direct questions deserve an honest response.

13-9 **The engagement period gives you time to get to know each other's friends well.**

Attitudes Toward Marriage Counseling

Most engaged couples do not anticipate serious problems in their marriage. However, these expectations are not borne out by current divorce statistics. During the engagement period, partners may wish to become aware of each other's attitudes toward marriage counseling. Although these attitudes can change, it may be of interest to know whether your partner is willing to go with you to a marriage counselor if your relationship develops significant problems.

Breaking Engagements

For most people, engagement is a happy time. They are looking forward to a new life they believe will be happy and satisfying. For others, the testing period of engagement causes many doubts to emerge. If either partner decides that the marriage would probably not work, the couple would be wiser to break the engagement than to go ahead with the wedding. See 13-10. Divorced couples often admit that patterns of conflict or poor communication appeared during their engagement. If they had heeded the warning signs then, they might have been able to avoid the trauma of divorce.

The process of planning a future life together may reveal differences that cannot be resolved. If a partner feels that a true "we" quality is not a part of this planning and that either partner is still more interested in "I," any further planning should be questioned. A person who feels exploited or ignored should realize that a future marriage would probably not succeed.

Although planning a wedding can become a time-consuming activity, the major goal of the engagement should be to prepare the couple for marriage. Disagreements will exist between engaged people just as they do between married people. Such disagreements provide the couple with opportunities for problem solving. A couple will never agree on every issue, but if a pattern develops showing irreversible problems in a certain area, they may want to seek premarital counseling. Any and all possible problems are best settled before marriage.

If both partners find they are really not suited for each other, they should make a mutual decision to break their engagement. There are several reasons for breaking an engagement as shown in 13-11. When this must be done, it is better if both accept it rather than creating problems for one another. Acting immaturely—with careless disregard for the feelings of the partner, or even with a deliberate attempt to hurt the partner—makes the situation even worse. It is difficult enough to have to face friends and family with the announcement the engagement has been broken.

David Hopper

13-10 If you decide your future marriage would probably fail, you would be wise to call off the wedding. A broken engagement is better than a broken marriage.

Reasons for Breaking an Engagement

- Acknowledgement of strong feelings of incompatibility—not just doubts.
- Realization that the engagement was made originally under pressure from relatives or circumstances.
- Recognition that either of the pair is emotionally dependent on parents or friends and too immature to withstand the demands of marriage.
- Changes in the planned future of the couple due to a serious accident, health problem, or similar disaster affecting the ability to earn a living and raise children.

13-11 There are several valid reasons for breaking an engagement.

Sometimes the one most hurt may regress to an immature level of behavior to try to hold the unwilling partner. Threats of violence or suicide may be made in an attempt to regain attention. Such actions may only confirm the wisdom of the decision to break the engagement.

A form of revenge that some disappointed persons use is a quick marriage to someone else. This is called "marrying on the rebound." Marriage for spite has little chance for success, and the innocent spouse in the rebound marriage deserves better.

13-12 **Marriage is one of the most long-lasting and successful legal arrangements in our country.**

Marriage Laws

Marriage is one of the most successful legal arrangements in our country, 13-12. Even with the high divorce rate, more business contracts are broken than marriage contracts.

The state views itself as the third party in any marriage. The family that is established at marriage must accept the responsibilities dictated by state laws. Marriage laws vary among states, so people planning to marry should check the laws of their particular state.

Monogamy

The laws concerning marriage recognize only a **monogamous** (one wife, one husband) relationship. Any person who is already married cannot legally remarry. Remarriage is possible only if the first spouse has died or the marriage has been dissolved by annulment or divorce.

Some people with certain religious views have allowed **polygamous marriages** (those with more than two spouses). For instance, when the Mormons settled in Utah, they declared polygamy to be legal. This was mainly an attempt to populate their sparse communities. Polygamy is no longer legal anywhere in the United States. A person who enters a second marriage before the first one is dissolved can be charged with **bigamy**. The crime of bigamy is classified as a felony.

Physical and Mental Qualifications

Each state has its own laws concerning physical and mental qualifications for marriage. Some of the laws, such as the age requirement, are affected by broader federal laws.

Age

As a result of federal action, all states allow persons 18 years of age or older to marry without parental consent. Most states will allow younger people (as young as age 13) to marry if they have parental consent. In some cases, persons under age 18 need both a court order and parental consent to obtain a marriage license.

Blood Test

Most states require people wanting a marriage license to present a physician's statement. This statement must declare that both the man and woman are free of certain communicable diseases, particularly some sexually transmitted diseases. A few states require more complete examinations. The physician's statement must be signed within a certain time period before obtaining the license. The time period varies, depending on state law. Another test would be needed if the couple did not obtain the marriage license during this period.

Sound Mind

Most states have laws concerning the marriage of people who are mentally disabled or who are unable to understand the act of getting married. Such lack of understanding at the time of marriage is sometimes used as grounds for annulment or divorce later.

Prohibited Relationships

Consanguineous marriages, or marriages of people related by blood, run the risk of producing defective children. If faulty genes exist in a family, a consanguineous union allows a greater chance for them to combine and create a child with disabilities. Most states prohibit marriage of blood relatives such as brothers and sisters, fathers and daughters, mothers and sons, grandfathers and granddaughters, grandmothers and grandsons, uncles and nieces, or aunts and nephews. Marriages between first cousins and between second cousins are also prohibited in many states.

Marriages of affinity, or marriages of people related by marriage, are often prohibited. The most common interpretation prohibits stepparents from marrying stepchildren. State laws differ concerning marriages of affinity. Some states prohibit them on the basis that such relationships are less stable and have less chance of success.

Common-law Marriage

Common-law marriages are one of the outgrowths of our early history. If a couple wanted to marry, but did not want to wait for a circuit judge or minister to travel to their community, they simply started living together as husband and wife. These marriages are still recognized as valid in some states.

The distinguishing trait between common-law marriages and relationships involving living together is the intent behind them. If a couple intend to be husband and wife and present themselves in public as such, they have a **common-law marriage**. They are considered legally married. Property and inheritance rights apply as in legal marriage, and children of the couple are legitimate.

In states where common-law marriages are legal, any plan to live together should be considered carefully by both persons. Once the couple present themselves in public as husband and wife, one partner may declare the relationship to be a common-law marriage. If this should happen, a legal divorce would be required to terminate the marriage.

Obtaining a License

To get married, you must apply for and obtain a marriage license from the clerk of the city or county in which you live. Most states have laws that dictate the length of time people must wait to marry after applying for a license. Many states have a three- to five-day waiting period between the time a couple applies for and obtains a license. Some states require a one- to five-day waiting period between the time the license is issued and the wedding. In addition, most states limit the time that the license remains valid. This period varies from three weeks to one year.

The Marriage Officiate

A marriage **officiate** is a person who can legally marry a couple. **Civil weddings** may be performed by certain judicial officials and, in some states, by certain public officials. These officiates are chosen by couples who elope or who do not choose to have a religious ceremony. The most common of these officiates are judges, justices of the peace, magistrates, and mayors.

Many couples choose to be married by a minister, rabbi, or priest in a **ceremonial wedding**. See 13-13. Couples who choose ceremonial weddings tend to be those whose personal priorities include the customs traditionally associated with their religious and cultural beliefs.

Some couples choose to write their own marriage vows and marriage contract. To do this, they must consult the officiate who will marry them. Some officiates do not wish to deviate from traditional ceremonies. Others realize the value of individualizing the ceremony for the particular couple and will cooperate with the changes. Marriage contracts drawn up by the couple cannot, however, replace the legal marriage license.

Changing Your Name

Most women take the last name of their husbands when they marry. However, this is a custom, not a law. Today, more couples are choosing to ignore this custom. Some women keep their own last names. Some couples join their last names with a hyphen, such as Harper-Jones. When children are born, decisions must be made about the last name they will have.

Weddings

A wedding serves three important functions:

- It signifies the start of the couple's new life together.
- It announces the marriage to the public.
- It satisfies the legal requirements of the state.

13-13 **Many couples choose to be married by a religious leader.**

Any legal wedding ceremony fulfills these three functions. The emphasis you place on your wedding is up to you and your future spouse. It can be simple or elaborate. Your age and religious beliefs are likely to affect the type of ceremony you choose. The city, state, and country in which you live may also affect it.

The traditional ceremonial wedding is still chosen by the majority of people who marry, 13-14. Ceremonial weddings may enhance the stability of the marriage relationship. Most cultures and religious groups cling to traditions surrounding weddings.

On the other hand, many people prefer simple civil weddings. They feel that ceremonial weddings have become highly commercialized affairs. They feel that the beauty and meaning of a couple's vows are likely to be overshadowed by the pageantry, stress, and expense of a ceremonial wedding.

Some couples choose to elope. This choice is usually made because of parental objection to the marriage. Elopement bypasses the important function of the engagement period. It also may alienate friends and in-laws.

13-14 **A traditional ceremonial wedding is chosen by the majority of people who marry.**

Wedding Plans

Wedding plans begin when the couple informs both sets of parents of the engagement and sets the wedding date. The date should be chosen with the couple's education and career responsibilities as well as the parents' wishes in mind. Space in churches and synagogues needs to be reserved in advance. Attendants of the bride and groom are usually chosen with their availability in mind. Saturday is the most popular day for weddings. June, August, and December are the most popular months.

A couple should talk frankly with their parents concerning wedding costs. Both sets of parents should be consulted, for the responsibilities of both families can be sizable. See 13-15. Once the wedding budget is made, the couple should set their priorities. The wedding should reflect the honest wishes of the bride and groom, within the boundaries of financial limitations. See 13-16.

When planning a religious ceremony, a couple may find that their pastor, priest, or rabbi has restrictions on music, liturgy, videotaping, or photographs. The couple may wish to deviate from established religious ceremonies. They may want to add their own personal touches in music, setting, or vows. They may even choose to write their own ceremony, though some clergy may discourage these changes.

Plans for the reception may need to be made early. They can be very time-consuming, complicated, and costly, depending on the type of reception. A couple also may wish to plan a wedding trip.

Responsibilities of the Bride and Her Family

- Groom's wedding ring
- Bridal gown and trousseau
- Invitations, announcement, and postage
- Floral arrangements for decoration
- Bridal attendants' bouquets
- Organist and soloist charges
- Reception costs
- Engagement and wedding photographs
- Transportation for bridal attendants
- Bridesmaid luncheon
- Gifts for bridal attendants
- Personal gift to groom

Responsibilities of the Groom and His Family

- Engagement ring
- Bride's wedding ring
- Clergy's fee
- Marriage license
- Rehearsal dinner
- Bridal bouquet and going-away corsage
- Mothers' and grandmothers' corsages
- Boutonnieres for groom's attendants
- Personal gift to the bride
- Honeymoon

13-15 Traditionally, families have divided the wedding responsibilities in this manner.

Legal requirements, such as having blood tests and obtaining the marriage license, must be met. As the date for the wedding draws near, the couple should double-check all the arrangements and make any necessary final decisions. Complete and efficient plans will help the wedding day go smoothly so that everyone can enjoy it.

Christi Edgar

13-16 The bride's dress is just one of many expenses of a formal ceremonial wedding.

The Honeymoon

The honeymoon or wedding trip allows the bride and groom time for intimacy and relaxation following the busy schedule of their wedding. See 13-17. This can be an important time for the couple if they have the necessary resources of time and money. The location chosen should reflect the wishes of both spouses. A relaxed schedule that includes activities with other people as well as periods of privacy is best. A long, extended honeymoon is not often recommended by counselors. Most suggest a brief honeymoon, with a longer vacation planned about six months later.

Expectations for complete personal satisfaction are often not achieved during the honeymoon. This time is the beginning of a couple's life together. It represents a transition from single life to married life. Remnants of fears that you may not please each other may affect your ability to be completely relaxed.

The sharing of your future life together is just beginning on your wedding trip.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Your Wedding Budget

How much should a wedding cost? Each couple needs to decide this question for themselves, perhaps in consultation with their families. This is especially so if one or both families are paying for the event. Couples may choose from a range of possibilities. They might choose a very simple ceremony or a large wedding with many attendants and guests, a reception and sit-down dinner, a band, and a limousine.

As the average age at marriage increases, more couples are sharing wedding costs with their parents or are financing their weddings themselves. Couples tempted by the glamour of a lavish wedding may wish to consider the event in the larger perspective of their lives together. Would their lives be enhanced, for example, if some resources were reserved for higher education, a down payment on a home, furniture, travel, or other items?

Couples who opt for a large wedding may wish to budget for items such as the following:

- Wedding coordinator
- Stationery and postage (invitations, reply cards, guest book, thank-you notes)
- Flowers (bridal bouquet, attendants' bouquets and boutonnieres, corsages, arrangements) and other decorations
- Music (organist, soloist, band)
- Wedding gown and tuxedo
- Food (rehearsal dinner, wedding cake, refreshments, and/or wedding dinner)
- Fees for officiate and others
- Gifts for attendants
- Favors for guests
- Security, valet parking, coat check, restroom attendants
- Photographer
- Wedding trip

13-17 **For many couples, a honeymoon is a chance to travel. It is also a time to relax and to begin adjusting to the new roles of husband and wife.**

You should look forward eagerly to all you can learn and experience together. Any inhibitions you may have concerning living with your new spouse can be overcome through sharing, understanding, and a deep commitment to one another.

The wedding represents the start of a new life full of meaning. The honeymoon gives you and your spouse time to become intimately acquainted. Together, the wedding and honeymoon can establish a foundation upon which you can build an abundant and meaningful life.

Chapter 13 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- The engagement period announces the intended marriage, allows time to complete wedding plans, and serves as a testing period for the relationship.
- The engagement period gives the couple time to review personality traits and future career goals, to prepare for their sexual roles as husband and wife, and to receive medical counseling. It also gives them a chance to establish good relationships with future in-laws, to discuss money management and future living arrangements, and to assess their friendships.
- Honest communication during engagement can reveal important differences or patterns of conflict. If these are serious, breaking the engagement could prevent a later divorce.
- Marriage laws concerning age, health, marriage of relatives, and wedding officiates vary from state to state. The marriage ceremony may be civil or ceremonial.
- A wedding signifies the start of a couple's new life together, announces the marriage to the public, and satisfies legal requirements.
- Wedding plans should reflect the wishes of the bride and groom within the boundaries of financial limitations.
- The honeymoon gives the bride and groom time to become acquainted intimately and to begin to adjust to their new life together.

Review

1. True or False. Since a career is just a means of financial support, it seldom affects a person's marriage and family life.
2. List four reasons why a couple should have premarital medical counseling.
3. List two suggestions for maintaining good relationships with in-laws.
4. Describe one positive and one negative influence of friendships outside of marriage.
5. What five items should definitely be revealed about your past during the engagement period?
6. True or False. If patterns of conflict emerge during engagement, the couple should ignore them and hope they will get along better once they are married.
7. Give one example of a consanguineous marriage and one example of a marriage of affinity.
8. Who officiates at civil weddings? Who officiates at ceremonial weddings?
9. True or False. According to law, a married couple must share the same last name.
10. True or False. Most counselors feel that a short honeymoon is the best way to begin a marriage.

React

1. Role-play the following situations concerning engagement.
   - A. A couple who have known each other six months and have been engaged a week are planning to marry next month. Both sets of parents are against the hasty plans.
   - B. An engaged couple have differing views concerning career goals. They wonder if this will create problems in their marriage.
   - C. A couple attending college are debating whether to get married during the semester break or to wait until the end of the year when they will both graduate.
   - D. A couple who want to marry as soon as they graduate from high school, and both have low-paying jobs. Both sets of parents favor the marriage, but question the couple's financial capabilities.
2. Ask a panel of husbands and wives to discuss problems of career involvement in marriage. Ask them to point out both trivial and major conflicts.
3. Review the marriage laws in your state. Check on the physical, mental, age, and time qualifications.
4. Discuss reasons for choosing ceremonial weddings and civil weddings.
5. Research marriage vows that have been written by couples themselves. Compare them to traditional vows from a variety of religions, and to the vows from a civil wedding.
6. Write a calendar of events that could be followed to prepare for a wedding, including all the necessary details.
7. Research wedding costs such as invitations, flowers, reception, photographs, and honeymoon.

Reflect

1. Accept or reject the following statement: A broken engagement is better than a broken marriage.
2. Would you go through with the wedding if your fiancé revealed a previous marriage, major health problem, or criminal record a few days before the ceremony? Why or why not?
3. If you realized a few days before your wedding that the marriage was a big mistake, would you have the courage to call off the ceremony? What things could you do to compensate the families involved for their investment of time and money in wedding planning? What would you do with the wedding gifts you had received?
4. Accept or reject the following statement: The future husband should select the engagement ring on his own, and the future wife will like the ring because he picked it out.
5. Why do you think some people seem afraid of committing to marriage? Are some individuals better off remaining unmarried?
6. If you were to marry, would you prefer a large wedding or a small, private ceremony? Discuss the reasons for your answer.

Chapter 14

Building a Marriage

Terms to Know

- disillusionment
- compromise
- accommodation
- concession
- martyrdom
- ongoing hostility
- productive quarreling
- negotiation
- destructive quarreling

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- describe components of a successful marriage.
- analyze five techniques for handling marital disagreements.
- recognize the normalcy and function of conflict in marriage.
- distinguish between productive and destructive quarreling.
- assess the resources available to help couples resolve conflict.

The moment you become a husband or wife, you will undoubtedly feel that your marriage will be the best one of all time. This is as it should be, for it is important that you feel your marriage is special. Every couple hopes their marriage will succeed and last forever.

Components of a Successful Marriage

A successful marriage has many components or parts. In a successful marriage, many or most of each spouse's psychological, physical, material, and social needs are met to an acceptable degree.

In practical terms, success in marriage can be defined in many ways. Some people feel that if a marriage lasts a lifetime, it is successful. Others feel that if a couple prospers financially and has a nice apartment or house, their marriage is successful. Most people in our culture, however, are likely to define a successful marriage primarily in terms of happiness.

Happiness in Marriage

Happiness is a normal expectation of marriage. However, continuous happiness is not a realistic goal. Happiness is a fringe benefit. It is the side effect you feel as you strive for contentment. Some couples feel happy when they share affection, when they agree on issues, when they realize they are not lonely, and when they share common interests. It is important that a couple have a sense of commitment and sharing. Then happiness will be a natural by-product.

What brings happiness to one marriage may not work for another. However, a couple will have a better chance of being happy if they enter marriage with realistic expectations, good communication patterns, a sense of humor, and trust in one another.

Realistic Expectations

When you enter marriage, you should have realistic expectations. You will naturally hope for a full and satisfying life together. However, you cannot expect to have a fairy-tale life in which you "live happily ever after." No one's life is perfectly happy all the time.

Affection is the primary emotion couples hope to feel and show in marriage, 14-1. The high value placed on affection helps explain why the onset of disillusionment in a marriage can be so devastating. (**Disillusionment** is the shattering of illusions or unrealistic ideas.) The first instance of lack of affection often causes spouses to conclude mistakenly they are no longer loved.

If and when disillusionment occurs, the partners should be ready and willing to try to accept each other on a more realistic basis, taking the bad with the good. It is not wrong to have high expectations for marriage, but they must be within the bounds of reality.

No matter how understanding you are, you cannot know what to expect of marriage before you live together as husband and wife. The best way you can prepare yourself is to accept the fact that problems will arise. Then you need to be willing to face them one at a time with the help of your mate. If you can do this, your relationship will have a good foundation.

14-1 Affection is the primary emotion in a happy marriage. Something as simple as a touch and a smile can make the whole day better.

Importance of Self-Esteem

One of the most basic needs in marriage is the genuine acceptance of your own self. Self-esteem is very different from selfishness. If you have self-esteem, you have confidence in yourself. You do not need to seek constant attention and approval from your mate. You are able to focus on the "we" feeling rather than only on the "I" feeling.

The emotions of love and anger are closely related. When you love someone, you care deeply about how the person thinks and acts. Thus, you are more likely to feel angry when the person fails to meet your expectations.

Anger can be a healthy emotion, and it will occasionally arise in a marriage. If two people feel secure in their self-esteem, each can better withstand the other's anger and deal with it effectively. The secret to stopping the "love-anger cycle" is first to recognize the anger and try to step back from it. Then you can work on the issue that caused the anger. To say "I'm sorry" is often a step in the right direction. If you have self-esteem, saying "I'm sorry" will not hurt your pride. You will be able to say it and to go on and find a solution to the problem.

Intermittency of Love

Sometimes love seems to fade and then reappear. This is what is meant by the *intermittency of love.* It is a hard lesson for anyone to learn. When you love someone, you cannot possibly love the person all the time, in exactly the same way. Your love will have periods of growth where it attains great heights, 14-2. It will also have periods where it reaches a plateau and simply sustains itself.

This lesson of intermittency, as it concerns your love and happiness, may be hard for you to accept. However, if you demand a constant high level of happiness, you may drain the relationship. You should try to be in tune with your own feelings and with those of your mate. Be aware of the ebb and flow of love. A feeling of complete happiness will surge over you at times. Then there will be periods of quiet expectancy. If you have a good relationship, happiness will come again.

14-2 There will be times in a marriage when love reaches great heights.

Communication Is Vital

Communication is needed for a marriage to succeed. Communication is more than words. It is the sharing of feelings and thoughts. People communicate in many ways: by body movements, words, tone of voice, and even silence. The intimacy of marriage allows total communication, which can add depth to a relationship. This intimacy makes any communication, in any form, even more meaningful.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Marital Happiness: Do Children Make the Difference?

Childless young couples enjoying their relationship and their respective careers may wonder whether having children would add to their marriage. It is undeniable that many couples find childrearing a deeply meaningful, satisfying, and enriching experience.

Studies of married couples over time, however, suggest that children may represent a source of marital stress as well as marital satisfaction. There are a number of reasons for this. Often, one spouse puts a career on hold to devote time and energy to rearing children, with loss of wages, career identity, and career standing. Husband and wife may disagree over childrearing issues such as discipline, freedom, and actions that constitute "spoiling" a child. Raising and educating children may strain financial and other resources.

Many couples report that their marriages were happiest before the arrival of their first child and after the departure of their last one. Childless couples, on average, report higher marital satisfaction than couples with children.

What do these studies mean for a young couple thinking about having children? Some couples enjoy parenting more than others. All major life decisions—especially one as important as the decision to parent—require careful consideration.

Empathy is an essential ingredient of communication in marriage. Empathy allows you to understand how your partner feels without necessarily sharing those same feelings at the same moment. Empathy as a part of your communication allows you to understand your partner even when the two of you do not agree.

Another vital aspect of communication in marriage is keeping in touch with each other's changing feelings and thoughts. See 14-3. One way to do this is to recount the day's events to each other each evening. In this way, you can share the hours you are apart. Some stories may seem trivial, but

14-3 Communication about trivial matters, as well as about major issues, helps a couple keep in touch with each other's feelings and thoughts.

they help you stay aware of how each of you is changing and growing. This will help you grow together, so you become closer rather than farther apart.

Marriage partners also need to share their "ups" and "downs" in mood. Everyone has changes in mood. Through experience, you have learned how to deal with your own. When you marry, you have to learn how to deal with your partner's as well. You and your partner can help each other through the down periods by offering love and understanding. Good communication in a healthy marriage means that neither spouse should feel like saying, "What's the use of bringing it up?" Instead, both spouses should feel free to look to their mates for support and guidance.

When you marry, you may find that some of your personality traits differ from those of your spouse. In order to blend them in a fulfilling marriage, you need to discuss them openly. For instance, you may be a morning person, while your mate is a night person. The process of adjusting to this can be fun, or it can be extremely difficult. Communication makes the difference.

One frustrating aspect of communication is sensing that the other person is not really listening. Many times this is a signal that a marriage is having problems. Our human weaknesses often hamper our ability to be good listeners. You may tend to listen selectively, picking out the bits and pieces that interest you. You may twist the meaning of what is said to fit your own needs. Poor listening blocks effective communication. To keep the lines open, you need to talk honestly and listen carefully.

Sharing words is indeed important, but good communicators also recognize the value of unexpressed words. There will be glorious moments in your marriage when feelings and expressions surge over you. There will also be times when you have warm feelings of quiet understanding and support. A good climate of communication allows both periods of talking and of silence. Sometimes a few moments of quiet understanding can be the most comforting kind of communication. A smile across a crowded room of people or a gentle nudge can be as meaningful as spoken words. However, if the silence is due to anger or resentment, problems can arise. Someone must reopen communication in a situation such as this to prevent a prolonged stalemate, 14-4.

David Hopper

14-4 Prolonged silence due to anger can harm a relationship.

As you live together, you may increase in your ability to "read" each other. You may sense when something is wrong and when your partner does not feel like talking. One wife stated, "I can tell when Josh walks in the door if he has had a good day."

An inability to sense moods, however, is not the same as lack of love. A common mistake is to expect your mate to be able to read your mind. One young wife told her husband, "If you loved me, you would know how I feel." Such an expectation is unrealistic. Each mate is responsible for expressing thoughts and feelings to the other.

Give and Take of Marriage

Marriage is a give and take relationship, but it is not always a 50-50 proposition. Many people wrongly assume that if they have gone halfway, they have done their part in solving marital problems. Many times you may have to give much more than half in order to reach a solution. You may give 70 or even 80 percent while your spouse appears to be giving very little. The willingness to go more than halfway to reach a solution is the catalyst needed to bring happiness. See 14-5. If you always give only 50 percent, your marriage may be in for stalemates and

14-5 You may have to go more than halfway when you plan a vacation. If your spouse enjoys boating, you may find yourself on the water. You can both have fun if you are willing to try a new activity.

unresolved issues. Flexibility and willingness to adjust are among the most important factors in achieving a good marriage relationship.

A Sense of Humor

A sense of humor is a good quality to incorporate into your marriage. Laughter makes life easier and more enjoyable. While gloom is deadly to a household, laughter brings happiness and liveliness. If you and your mate have a healthy sense of humor, you will have fun times to share and remember. See 14-6. Mark Twain said, "Humans are the only animals that laugh—or need to."

It can be fun to laugh with your mate, but you should not laugh at your mate. Jokes pointed at your mate are not funny. Sarcasm and ridicule—either when you are alone together or with others—should be avoided. They can be extremely damaging to a person's self-esteem. Some television personalities may use ridicule to create audience laughter, but it is a poor method of communication to use in your marriage relationship.

Trust

Trust is a secure foundation for any relationship. It is especially needed in marriage. A relationship built on trust is caring and responsible. It contains no anxiety or apprehension, nor does it need power or force to hold it together.

As your marriage grows, so will trust. When you trust each other, your marriage relationship will be able to withstand the gravest of pressures. You will feel happy and secure as you live your lives together.

Appreciation

All humans need to know they are appreciated. As a small child, you may have received small rewards or "gold stars" when you did a task well. In school, your efforts are rewarded by good grades and honors. On a job, you are recognized for your work through praise, bonuses, raises, and promotions.

In marriage, too, you need to know you are appreciated, 14-7. You do not want to be taken for granted. Sincere compliments, praise, and thoughtfulness are methods of showing appreciation. Often all you may want is a simple thank you, or to be gathered into your mate's arms. Presents are not necessary. Money is not needed to express appreciation. The wife who feels misunderstood is probably just looking for a sign of appreciation from her husband. The husband who feels neglected may only need a word of understanding and approval from his wife.

14-6 **Can you laugh with each other and recognize how important a sense of humor is in your relationship?**

Adjustments in Marriage

No two people are so perfectly compatible that they can live together without any conflict. A certain amount of disagreement is to be expected in marriage. Some marriages require greater emphasis on making adjustments because these marriages have more conflict. For many couples, it is not the amount of initial conflict but the ability to make satisfactory adjustments that determines the degree of happiness in the relationship.

Whenever two people want to live together in harmony, adjustments have to be made. The couple may have realized they had areas of disagreement while they were dating. Before they were married, it was possible to ignore or dismiss these points of disagreement. However, when spouses settle down to the business of everyday living, these points of disagreement cannot be ignored.

There are five basic ways to make adjustments when disagreements arise in marriage or in any interpersonal relationship. These are described in 14-8 and the discussion that follows. Some of these ways of making adjustments are healthy, and others are destructive. You will not always use the same form of adjustment. Different situations will require you to use different techniques.

14-7 **Everyone needs to be appreciated, and a small, surprise token of affection can be very reassuring.**

Compromise

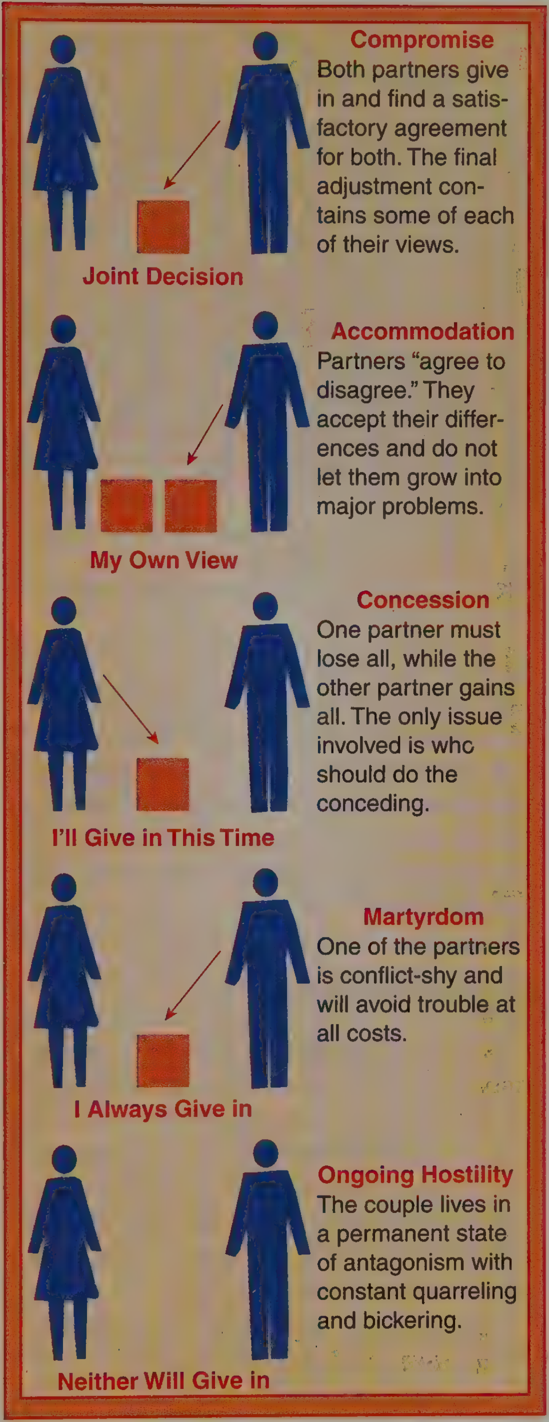
In a **compromise**, both partners give in and find an agreement that is satisfactory to both. This is the most common and, in many respects, the most desirable form of adjustment. The distinguishing characteristics of compromise include the following:

- Neither partner has to make a great sacrifice in giving in to the wishes of the other.
- The solution lies somewhere in between the partners' preferences, and it contains some elements of both.
- More companionship is maintained.
- No one wins or loses. Both partners share in the adjustment.

Compromise can be chosen in most decision areas in marriage. See 14-9. It is the best way to settle issues when both the husband and wife desire to have some say in the decision. Compromise does not foster indifference, for both participate in finding a solution. Neither partner wins all, but neither partner loses all. A "we" feeling is maintained. Compromise encourages further communication and helps feelings of security and trust to grow.

How can compromise be used to solve the following problems? Tiffany and Jamal are discussing what to do on Friday night. They plan to go out to dinner and to a movie. Jamal wants to see a mystery movie, but Tiffany wants to see a comedy. Jamal likes Mexican food, but Tiffany prefers Chinese dishes. They could compromise by allowing one to choose the movie and the other to choose the restaurant.

Juanita and Carlos may use compromise to solve the problem of where they will live. Juanita is a teacher. Her job is in an elementary school in a suburb on the west side of the city. Carlos' job is with a computer industry on the city's industrial



Compromise
Both partners give in and find a satisfactory agreement for both. The final adjustment contains some of each of their views.

Accommodation
Partners "agree to disagree." They accept their differences and do not let them grow into major problems.

Concession
One partner must lose all, while the other partner gains all. The only issue involved is who should do the conceding.

Martyrdom
One of the partners is conflict-shy and will avoid trouble at all costs.

Ongoing Hostility
The couple lives in a permanent state of antagonism with constant quarreling and bickering.

14-8 Your choice of a form of adjustment will depend on the situation and your personalities.

14-9 Compromise is a good way to settle the question of which to select. If both give in a little, the decision will be easier.

east side. Both would like to live close to their jobs, but they decide to live in the area between their jobs. In this way, each will have to travel about the same distance. They select a townhouse near the expressway interchange that will be convenient for both of them.

Accommodation

Marriage partners may hold some seriously opposing viewpoints. In these cases, the couple may consider the adjustment form of **accommodation**, where the partners "agree to disagree." The distinguishing characteristics are the following:

- Each recognizes the right of the other to have a different belief.
- Differences continue to exist, but they do not hinder the relationship.
- The couple focuses on what will be good for their total relationship.

No two humans have identical interests, opinions, or beliefs. In every marriage, some differences will arise. Accommodation allows a couple to work around these differences. They recognize that certain issues are not important enough to cause trouble in their relationship. See 14-10.

Accommodation is often used by couples who have widely divergent viewpoints in areas such as religion or politics. They realize their relationship is strong enough to survive these differing viewpoints. Each respects the other's right to a differing opinion or belief.

Accommodation can be used to prevent minor issues from becoming major ones. In one marriage, the husband enjoyed

David Hopper

14-10 You can use accommodation to solve big issues as well as trivial issues such as how you squeeze the toothpaste.

bowling as a form of recreation, but the wife preferred aerobic dancing. An accommodation was reached when the husband joined the bowling team at work. Now he bowls one night a week, and stays home with the children another night while his wife attends aerobics class.

In another marriage, a political issue caused extreme disruption during an election year. The wife, who was a Democrat, argued openly with her husband, who was a Republican. The couple settled their differences by using accommodation. The husband stayed with their baby so the wife could work in the local Democratic headquarters. The wife accepted the fact that her husband would be active in the Republican party. They went to the polls together, knowing they would "cancel" each other's vote. They agreed to disagree and recognized each other's right to freedom of choice in politics.

Concession

Concession is a form of adjustment in which one must win and one must lose. The only question is who should give in or concede. Concession has the following distinguishing characteristics:

- It allows a partner to win on certain issues.
- The partners communicate and bargain with each other.
- Both partners must live with the possible resentment of the loser and the impact of this resentment on the relationship.
- The winner is happy, and the loser must accept the loss. However, the loser can look forward to winning at another time.

A couple may arrive at concession in a number of different ways. The concession may be voluntary. One mate may simply say, "I will agree to do it your way." Perhaps it involves a simple choice such as the selection of a movie. It may be a larger decision such as, "I am willing to go to Iowa and visit your parents at Thanksgiving."

Sometimes the decision to concede may be forced. This will not promote an ideal adjustment. If a domineering husband wants to maintain financial control, he may force his wife to accept a tight budget, even if they have plenty of money. She, in turn, may quietly try to find ways to "get revenge." When forced concessions are used too often, a spouse may feel that he or she is being treated as a child rather than as an equal partner. Resulting problems may lead a couple to divorce.

Often one mate is more knowledgeable in the area under consideration. Then the other mate may be willing to concede final choices to him or her after some discussion. For instance, a spouse who works as an insurance agent would probably make the final decision about the couple's insurance policies. The spouse who does most of the cooking would probably choose most of the kitchen appliances. See 14-11.

There are times when a simple flip of the coin may be used to determine who must concede. This approach may lessen tensions and allow the partners to make a decision. For example, heated discussions can arise when a couple try to choose a place to go for a vacation. Flipping a coin allows the couple to use a childlike approach to make a decision that can lead to a pleasant time.

Taking turns may be another way to achieve a concession. If a stalemate seems

14-11 If one partner works at a computer every day, he or she would probably make the final choice of a home computer.

to be developing, one partner may bargain. "We'll choose your way this time, but next time it will be my turn!" This will renew communication. The wins and losses can be equalized.

A different approach may have to be used when the couple is unable to arrive at an agreement. In order to avoid a stalemate, a third party might be consulted, 14-12. The third party should be someone whom both spouses respect. He or she should also be free from emotional involvement in the decision. This approach is sometimes necessary for serious problems. Perhaps aging parents need care. Spouses may have to decide whether the parent should move into their home or into a nursing home. A counselor or physician could help the couple make the best decision. Someone who is not emotionally involved may be able to see all the alternatives and implications more clearly.

Concession will be used at times in every marriage. It can be a good way to settle conflict. As long as most of the concessions are voluntary ones, they can help spouses make many satisfactory decisions.

Martyrdom

The fourth form of adjustment could really be called a form of nonadjustment. **Martyrdom** results when one partner acts to avoid trouble at all costs. The distinguishing characteristics of martyrdom are the following:

- One partner always gives in, so the other always wins.
- The relationship deteriorates.
- Respect is lost for the person who always gives in.
- Adjustments are not satisfying to either.

Martyrdom is a sign of a weak relationship. The person who always wins seems a tyrant or bully. The person giving in seems to become less of a person. Spouses who choose to play the role of martyr tend to lose the respect of everyone involved, including themselves.

14-12 A third party can be consulted to help a couple reach a reasonable compromise.

Ongoing Hostility

In the fifth type of adjustment, **ongoing hostility**, the couple never really settle their conflicts. The distinguishing characteristics are as follows:

- Quarreling and bickering are continuous.
- Tension and antagonism occur frequently and are expressed destructively.
- Due to the hostility, no decisions and adjustments are made.
- Hostility in one area spreads to other areas.
- The marriage relationship deteriorates.

A relationship can hardly survive on a daily diet of hostility. Once the hostility begins in one area, it probably will expand and affect most other areas of the relationship, 14-13. The couple will be unable to cope with their hostility and will tear down any remaining mutual respect. Loud arguing, cutting sarcasm, or complete indifference may characterize their relationship. Friends of the hostile couple will feel uncomfortable in their presence and may discontinue further communication with them.

Children who are subject to ongoing hostility in the home tend either to grow resentful or to feel guilty and somehow responsible for it. The insecurity they feel in their home as children may damage their self-esteem and become a permanent part of their personalities. As adults, their marriages may also suffer from unresolved conflicts.

Adjustments need to be made in all marriages. If a couple boasts they never have problems and never argue, perhaps no "meshing" of emotions and needs is taking place. The relationship may exist only on the surface, without real feelings of involvement with one another.

14-13 If a couple cannot agree on a major purchase, even after a serious discussion, their hostility might spread to other areas of their relationship.

No one method of adjustment can be used all the time, for no method would suit every couple on every issue. You need to recognize you will have to make adjustments. Then you will have to try to select the best adjustment forms for the conflicts you will face. The important thing is to be honest with yourself and your mate about your true feelings and to work at finding the best ways to resolve issues as they arise. If you can do this, then your relationship is likely to remain strong and healthy.

Time as a Factor in Making Adjustments

Adjustments will be necessary throughout married life, but they are easier to make early in marriage for the following reasons:

- Each spouse is anxious in early marriage to please the other and to make the marriage succeed. Willingness to admit "I am wrong" is easier when you are starting out.
- Marriage habits have not yet been formed, and the relationship is still quite flexible. There are many new behaviors to be learned when you first marry. Many routines are established in the early months.
- If something your partner does upsets you, it is easier to mention this early in the marriage. Many adjustments are made during the first year of marriage.

Usually the trivial, day-to-day behaviors are the ones that cause friction when two people start living together. One may even criticize the way the other squeezes the tube of toothpaste. Most days, these little annoyances are overlooked. When tension exists because of other issues, the little annoyances can build up and become major problems. When two people who have lived alone suddenly live together, it is normal that each will have a few habits that irritate the other.

As you live together, new aggravations may continue to appear. You will need patience and understanding as you make adjustments throughout your married life, 14-14.

Functions of Conflict

Every marriage is to some degree a mixed marriage. Even if you married the girl or boy next door, you would discover that you have many differences. Conflict is normal because each of you brings your unique personality into the marriage. A great deal of conflict will, of course, have a negative effect on the marriage. However, some conflict can actually be helpful.

Conflict Can Lead to Problem Solving

A problem must be faced before it can be solved. Conflict helps bring troubles out in the open where couples can deal with them. Thus, conflict can help solve problems.

There are two schools of thought concerning expressions of conflict in families. Some people feel that open conflict can be damaging to the relationship and to

14-14 **Love, patience, and understanding can help a couple as they adjust to married life.**

children. On the other hand, many authorities feel if conflicting feelings are not expressed, the real solution to the problem may never be found.

When conflict exists, children are usually aware that something is wrong—whether or not they are told. It may be more damaging for them to wonder what is wrong than to realize that all families have problems that sometimes cause conflict. Family relationships can continue to function even when conflict exists.

Conflict can be a resource for your marriage, for it indicates willingness to bring a disagreement into the open. Acknowledging conflict is the first step in reaching a solution. Ideally, the family will recognize the problem and solve it for the benefit of all concerned.

If the problem is not brought into the open, the conflict will smolder beneath the surface. It may erupt later in a big fight as a result of an incident not even related to the real problem.

Conflict Can Release Tensions

Conflict produces tensions, but as conflict is resolved, these tensions are released. If the conflict is not openly expressed, it can only increase in volume and intensity. The "explosion" of tensions then might be more damaging. When tensions are building, you might be wise to "count to 10." This gives you time to see things in perspective and to think how best to express your feelings constructively.

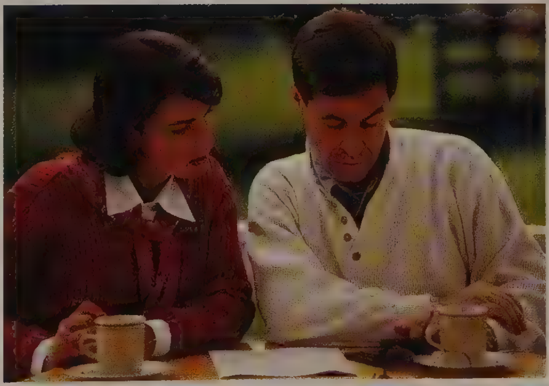
Many authorities feel you should not go to bed angry. Others point out that conflicts between tired spouses seem more solvable after a night's rest. The thing to remember is that conflicts have a way of multiplying if no attempt is made to resolve them.

Productive Quarreling

There is an art to quarreling. Quarrels may either be productive or destructive. **Productive quarrels** can actually strengthen a marriage as they often clarify issues so couples realize their viewpoints are not so different. Perhaps you have noticed this during a quarrel with a friend or parent.

A productive quarrel sticks to the issue, 14-15. It does not wander off into other topics. It involves honest expressions of feelings and careful listening on both sides. It does not involve attacks on the self-esteem of either partner. Sentences begin with phrases such as "I feel" (hurt, unimportant) rather than "You are" (insensitive, rude). If the issue is not clear, the couple may attempt to redefine it. In this way, both will be able to understand and agree, at least, on the reason for the quarrel.

Once the issue is clear, the couple can work on finding a solution. Through **negotiation**, they can confer with one another and arrive at a settlement of the matter. The problem can be solved with a minimum of hard feelings. Productive quarrels make the marriage stronger.



14-15 Identifying relevant information can help you settle a quarrel constructively.

Destructive Quarreling

Destructive quarreling attacks the self-esteem of the persons involved. It is devastating to the marriage and accomplishes nothing as far as problem solving is concerned. It succeeds only in harming the self-esteem of the people involved.

Destructive quarreling is often full of tension and irritation. The partners use personal attacks to hurt each other's feelings. As a result, both become defensive in order to protect their own self-esteem. Statements are made that cause emotional pain rather than clarify issues. In many cases, the quarrel extends beyond the original issue. Each person may add verbal attacks on relatives, cherished values, or prized possessions. See a comparison of productive and destructive quarreling in 14-16.

Quarreling is a part of most relationships. If you can stick with productive quarreling, your marriage will be stronger. A review of conflict resolution techniques that can be used by married couples is presented in 14-17. These negotiation techniques can help couples resolve conflicts.

Marriage Counseling

In a sense, there is no such thing as a successful marriage. There are only marriages that are succeeding or failing. As people and situations change, new adjustments are required within marriage.

As this discussion of adjustments and conflicts has shown, marriages can become troubled. Often the frustration and anxiety are so great that the help of a qualified marriage counselor is needed. This step requires the commitment of both spouses to the relationship. Both must be willing to make changes within themselves for the sake of their marriage. They also must be honest and open-minded enough to reveal their true emotions and to accept counseling.

Finding a Marriage Counselor

Once a couple decide they need marriage counseling, they have to decide where to find it. A couple seeking marital advice should beware of counselors who are incompetent and unqualified. They can do irreparable damage to an already unstable relationship. Only a few states recognize marriage counseling as a legal and independent profession. In many

Productive and Destructive Quarreling

Productive:

- Quarreling is limited to the issue.
- Issue may be redefined.
- All available information is used to find a solution.
- A solution can be reached without hurting anyone's feelings.
- Marriage is made stronger.

Destructive:

- Quarrel often extends beyond the original issue.
- Individuals become defensive as their egos are attacked.
- Arguments are often emotional and irrational.
- Tension and irritation are increased.
- Marriage relationship is damaged.

14-16 Productive quarreling resolves conflict. Destructive quarreling creates even more conflict.

states, almost anyone can profess to be a counselor.

Many ministers, educators, psychologists, psychiatrists, social workers, and physicians provide marriage counseling as part of their work. Some have had good training and are highly skilled. Others may mean well, but without adequate training, they may do more harm than good. However, those who recognize their own lack of expertise can often refer you to a good counseling service.

A growing number of businesses provide qualified counselors as part of employee-assistance programs. These businesses recognize that people who have problems need high-quality counseling. They are aware that their employees will be more productive if they can get good counseling when it is needed. If it is readily available to them, employees will lose less time on the job.

What Does the Counselor Provide?

Counselors rarely tell their clients what to do. They try to help people develop their own solutions. They help spouses see how their personal problems may be affecting the deeper level of feelings in their marriage.

Techniques used by counselors are varied, but most are designed to reestablish communication between marital partners. First, the partners have to want help. All the counseling in the world will not help them if they do not want to help themselves. The spouses have to be willing to talk and to listen to each other. Sometimes this is the only problem—neither has heard what the other was saying.

A Review of Conflict Resolution in Marriage

- Establish a climate in the relationship for open expression of both positive and negative feelings.
- Recognize that conflict is normal and that it can serve a constructive function in your marriage.
- Be aware that people handle conflict differently. Some people are slow to anger; others are quick to anger.
- Weigh the degree of conflict. Many mountains are made out of molehills. Look to see if the problem has been blown out of proportion.
- Quarreling can be destructive if it is allowed to attack a person's self-esteem. It can be productive if it sticks to the issue.
- Pinpoint the real issue. Do not allow old animosities to surface again. Don't choose a "safe" issue rather than revealing what you are really angry about.
- Use specific rather than general language. Confrontation is most effective when it is specific and timely. Use I-messages to state how you feel.
- Seek and find areas of agreement. Acknowledge where you agree—then the conflict will not tend to widen as easily. You may find you agree on more than you thought possible.
- Accept the fact that there may be more than one solution to a problem. Productive quarreling can produce alternative answers. Explore them together. Don't get stuck on one or two choices.
- Be willing to say no if you are not satisfied with the suggested solution.
- Try to arrive at the best possible solution. Recognize that both of you may have lost something, but both may also have gained something in return.
- Give each other credit for caring enough to engage in respectful conflict. This is crucial. Don't end the negotiation without giving each other credit.
- If your efforts at negotiation do not succeed, consider seeking professional counseling.

14-17 Your approach to resolving conflict will have a great effect on the overall atmosphere of your marriage.

Counselors sometimes suggest creating lists to reopen communication lines. Partners may be asked to list each other's faults. This list can reveal small, irritating habits as well as major problems. It may be the first time that a partner realizes that a certain behavior irritates the other. Similarly, a list of good points can help a spouse who feels undervalued realize that he or she is appreciated.

Counselors also use checklists of personality traits and of wants and needs to get the couple to communicate. Open-ended questions like "What would you do if..." can stimulate good discussions. Role-playing techniques in which one partner takes the role of the other can help the couple develop empathy and understanding.

The counselor may wish to see the partners alone at some meetings and together at other meetings. Seeing them as a couple allows the counselor to observe patterns of interaction. The counselor can note behaviors that add to the couple's continuing problems. Sometimes group sessions or weekend retreats may be helpful. This allows couples to listen to other couples who have relationship problems. Often some simple communication or conflict resolution technique used by one couple will help another couple.

In some troubled marriages, one partner wishes to see a counselor and the other refuses. In such cases, the partner who wishes counseling can often benefit from individual sessions with a qualified professional.

Marriage counseling can aid a marriage relationship when conflict seems to be unresolvable. A counselor can help a couple take a fresh look at their relationship. The couple can then evaluate the growth of their marriage and their own growth as individuals. After doing this and reopening lines of communication, the couple will have a good start toward renewing their relationship, 14-18.

14-18 **Marriage counseling can help a couple rediscover the love they thought they had lost.**

hapter 14 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- It is good to have high expectations for marriage, but they should be realistic.
- Positive self-esteem is basic to the success of a marriage.
- Feelings of intense love and happiness will be intermittent and will not be maintained on a constant level.
- Good communication, both verbal and nonverbal, is an essential part of a happy marriage relationship.
- Marriage is a give-and-take relationship, but it is not a 50-50 proposition in every situation.
- A sense of humor, trust, and mutual appreciation make marriage more enjoyable and secure.
- Five forms of adjustment are used in marriage: compromise, accommodation, concession, martyrdom, and ongoing hostility.
- Adjustments may be more easily made early in marriage.
- Conflict is normal, and it can be used as a positive communication device to strengthen a relationship.
- Productive quarreling sticks to the issue and helps settle a conflict. Destructive quarreling attacks the partner's self-esteem and makes the conflict even worse.
- When marriage partners cannot resolve their conflicts, they may want to find a qualified marriage counselor to help them.
- A marriage counselor does not usually tell husbands and wives what to do. The counselor simply guides the partners as they analyze their problems and work out possible solutions.

Review

1. The important point to remember about achieving happiness in marriage is _____.
   - A. couples who cannot express any negative feelings are more likely to be happy than couples who can
   - B. happiness can never really be achieved in marriage
   - C. happiness is a by-product as you strive for contentment
   - D. what brings happiness to one marriage will work for any other marriage
2. Select the true statement concerning communication in marriage.
   - A. A contented silence is a sign of poor communication.
   - B. Empathy means that you are able to feel exactly as your partner feels at the moment your partner communicates his or her feelings.
   - C. Good communication includes the verbal and nonverbal sharing of feelings and thoughts.
   - D. It is best not to bring up negative feelings.
3. True or False. If you have gone halfway, you have done your part in solving marital problems.
4. Name the adjustment form described in each of the following statements.
   - A. The couple agree to disagree.
   - B. One partner gives in constantly.
   - C. Tension and antagonism occur frequently and are expressed destructively.
   - D. The solution lies somewhere between the partners' preferences and contains some elements of both.
   - E. Both partners must be willing to live with the resentment of the person who "lost."
   - F. Respect is lost for the person who always gives in.
5. Explain how conflict can be helpful in a marriage.
6. Name two good sources of marital counseling.
7. Describe two methods counselors use to reopen lines of communication between spouses.

React

1. Complete each of the following statements:
    A. The most important characteristic my future spouse should have is…
    B. One of the most irritating characteristics of a future mate would be…
    C. The conflict that I think would be the hardest to solve if it occurred in a future marriage would be…
2. Role-play the following situations. Use each of the five forms of adjustment to settle each conflict.
    A. Where should they go for the holidays? Jason and Tracy live in Dallas. Tracy's parents live in Chicago, and Jason's parents live in Los Angeles. They have five days of vacation. They can go to only one place, but they do have money for the trip.
    B. Teresa and David have received an income-tax refund check. Teresa wants to put it in a savings account, and David wants to use it to purchase a DVD player.
    C. Eduardo and Julie married in college and have not made any decisions concerning their church membership. Julie wants Eduardo to join her church, but Eduardo is reluctant to do so.
3. Research resources available in your area for marriages that need help, such as marriage enrichment labs, religious groups, private counseling workshops, etc. Report your findings to the class.

Reflect

1. Evaluate the following statement: The more I give in to my spouse, the happier our marriage will be.
2. Why is the notion, "Love means never having to say you're sorry," a risky assumption for marriage?
3. If you are a "morning person" and your spouse is a "night person," what problems could occur in your marriage? How could these be overcome?
4. Think about a married couple you know who have experienced the hardships of life (for example, serious illness or unemployment). What do you admire about the way this couple has handled these hardships?

Part V

Dimensions of Families

Chapter 15
Family Life Today

Chapter 16
The Parenting Decision

Chapter 17
A Baby Is Born

Chapter 18
Your New Baby

Chapter 19
Helping Children Grow and Develop

Chapter 15

Family Life Today

Terms to Know

- family
- procreation
- given role
- chosen role
- functional family
- dysfunctional family
- two-parent family
- single-parent family
- stepfamily
- extended kinship family
- foster parenting
- family life cycle

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- analyze the trends contributing to the changing family.
- compare functions of the family in various cultures.
- explain the relationship between family roles and responsibilities.
- list characteristics of strong families.
- describe six common family structures.
- describe the six stages of the family life cycle.

15-1 From the moment of birth, a child's personality is affected by relationships within the family.

Your family is probably the most influential factor in shaping your personality. Almost everything you do is guided and affected by the relationships within your family, 15-1. In this chapter, you will learn more about family life and how it has changed through the years.

What Is a Family?

Family may be defined in many ways. Some definitions emphasize an emotional tie, while others stress the ancestry of the individuals. According to the U.S. Census Bureau, the term **family** means a group of two or more persons, related by blood, marriage, or adoption, who reside together in a household.

Families are as varied as people themselves. A family consisting of a father, mother, and children is only one type. Variations are caused not only by the different relationships within families, but also by different economic and social needs. Variations also occur because of a family's cultural heritage.

The Changing Family

Many of you have heard grandparents and parents describe their childhood years. Their stories may seem unfamiliar. Many family activities and functions they describe are no longer typical of the family today.

In early history, the family hunted and gathered food in order to survive. Family members filled roles that allowed the family to live off the land and to be protected from predatory animals. Permanent communities were not possible as the family groups continually moved to find food. This ability to adapt to changing needs is a characteristic that has been important to families throughout the ages.

As agriculture evolved, families set up permanent homes and acquired land. Each family was independent and able to meet its own needs by assigning a variety of tasks to family members.

The industrial revolution brought new pressures on society and the family. Families moved from rural areas to urban areas. Family members no longer worked solely for the survival of their own family. Instead, they took jobs that served a larger group, but provided income to purchase food and clothing for family members. Families thus became dependent on other families and adopted the role of consumers. Urban centers grew in population, while the number of people living in rural areas declined. The father typically was the main provider. His parenting role was limited to the short time he was home from his job. The mother, who usually was a full-time homemaker, provided the main care for the children. Marriages were based on meeting people's needs as well as on love. The government took over some of the family functions, such as providing for the education of the children.

The technological age that followed continues to affect families today. More jobs became available in a variety of businesses. Rural areas continued to decrease in population, and urban areas grew as they attracted people seeking careers in emerging technological fields. Household care was made easier with new equipment. Women began to join the workforce in greater numbers. Child care needs were met by child care providers in the home, in nursery schools, or in child care centers.

Elder care also changed through the years. Before Social Security was established in 1935, many elderly people lived with their adult children and their grandchildren. Just as they had taken care of their parents in the past, grandmothers and grandfathers now expected their adult children to take care of them and to provide them with most of the necessities of life. In return, the grandparents helped with things like child care and family chores. In some cultures, multigenerational households are still the norm. In our culture, however, Social Security and other sources of income help most elderly people live independently.

In today's society, families are adapting to change. New careers are attracting both men and women. People of both genders are seeking higher education and aspiring to responsible careers. Marriages are based more on love and affection than on the necessity of providing care for one another. Men and women are sharing the wage-earner role and sharing in child care and household tasks, 15-2. Parents are beginning to value time as highly as money. Employers are finding ways to help people meet the demands of both work and family.

How Families Adapt to Change

To be effective, families must be flexible and resilient as they adapt to changing societal, demographic, and economic trends. These trends are now very different from those of 100 years ago. In the early 1900s, most Americans lived on farms and experienced the social controls (based on anxiety about "what people will say") of rural community life. Today, however, the majority of Americans live in cities or suburbs and earn a living in an economy based on providing goods and services. People live in a more anonymous and permissive environment associated with urban life today.

15-2 In families today, fathers are spending more time with their children.

Families must also be prepared to cope with the effects of a technological society. A century ago, many of the technological advances we take for granted (for example, automobiles, air travel, computers, and medical diagnostic methods and treatments) were unknown. Many of the technological advances the average American enjoys at home (vacuum cleaners, dishwashers, and home freezers) were also unknown.

Although these and other advances have made life easier, they have also presented a challenge to families, both at work and at home. At work, the family breadwinners must keep up with the operation of new and more sophisticated equipment. If they do not, they risk being perceived as having obsolete skills and losing their jobs.

At home, people must make sure that the use of a new technological advance does not displace important family functions. The after-dinner ritual of washing and drying dishes, for example, used to provide a time for family members to work together and talk over the day's events. Children could discuss issues or problems, and parents could help them think through alternative courses of action in light of family values. Today, the use of microwave ovens, dishwashers, and other equipment have significantly decreased the time spent in the kitchen working together. To avoid losing this precious time, families must find or create other opportunities for interaction and discussion.

Throughout history, families have had to adapt to varying economic and social pressures. Today's families are developing strengths to meet contemporary pressures. Most Americans will continue to live in families. Though families may vary in form, they still offer the most stable environment for personal growth. Families are here to stay in one form or another.

Family Functions in Various Cultures

Although families take many forms, they perform many basic functions that are the same from culture to culture. Families provide economic support; education about many topics, including religion; love and affection; nurturance; children (through procreation); protection; and opportunities for recreation.

Provide Physical Needs

To the best of their abilities, families provide necessities of life such as food, clothing, shelter, furnishings, and health care for their members. The ways in which this is done, however, may vary between cultures. In one culture, for example, a family may focus its energies on gathering or growing enough food near its home to get through the day. In another culture, such as ours, families may buy food with wages earned a considerable distance from home.

Many physical needs are met by adult family members as they perform tasks within the home. Such tasks include preparing meals, keeping the house clean, and doing the laundry. One or more adult family members is likely to work outside the home to provide the income to meet many physical needs.

Education

Almost from the moment of birth, children are taught the ways of their culture by their families. Through the years, families teach children how to speak a language; how to feed, bathe, and dress themselves; how to get along with others; and many other necessary skills.

Families also convey their beliefs about religion to their children. Many families will take their children to worship services at a church, synagogue, mosque, or other house of worship and will observe religious holidays. Their children may receive a system of religious beliefs and personal ethics they will draw upon all of their lives.

Provide Love and Affection

An important family function is to provide an emotional "safe haven" for family members. Family members seek out this safe place, where they know their emotional needs for love, affection, and acceptance will be met. At the same time, family members learn the "give and take" of living together in a close relationship. They learn to live in harmony with each other while encouraging individual growth. As a result, each person is free to reach his or her potential within a loving family context.

Nurturance

The family provides the environment for nurturing the social skills of children, 15-3. This equips them to function in the

15-3 Children learn how to interact with others from the nurturing they receive within the family.

world. Children learn about the culture of the society in which they live and ways to function effectively in their culture.

The family transmits its personal priorities to children and guides them as they learn about right and wrong. Families teach, mostly by example, the difference between acceptable and unacceptable behavior. As a result, their children can take their places as productive members of society.

Procreation

Through **procreation** (reproduction), couples bring the members of the next generation into the world. Although a male-female bond forms the foundation for parenting and family life across cultures, marriage forms may differ widely. Our culture, for example, values monogamy (one husband and one wife). In some other cultures, polygamy (many wives) or other forms of marriage may be the norm.

The degree to which a woman is valued for her procreative ability differs among cultures. In cultures such as ours, a woman is seen as a valuable human being who is worthy of respect regardless of whether she bears children. She and her spouse can control whether or not they will have children and if so, the number of children they will have. Women are encouraged to get educations and to have fulfilling careers in addition to being wives and mothers.

In some other cultures, however, women are valued primarily for the number of children they can bring into the world. They are viewed more as "possessions" of their husbands. Women who are denied educations and careers tend to have greater numbers of children. In such cultures, population growth tends to be high.

Protection

Adult family members are responsible for the care of all family members. They also are responsible for protecting their members from harm. Accordingly, responsible parents encourage their children to practice good health and safety habits, form wholesome friendships, and avoid situations in which they are likely to become victims of crime.

Recreation

Members of families enjoy each other's company and try to make time for family-oriented leisure activities. Sports, games, and other recreational pursuits provide family members with relaxation and often much-needed physical exercise. Such experiences also provide children with opportunities to learn communication skills and good sportsmanship. When children grow up, they may wish to continue some of these activities with their own families.

Roles and Responsibilities of Family Members

Members of families have certain roles. Your role as a son or daughter is a **given role** that you acquired when you were born into the family. You may also have the given role of brother or sister. When you marry, you will assume a **chosen role** as husband or wife. You may also choose to assume another chosen role—that of father or mother. These and other family roles will overlap throughout your life. The emphasis you give to each particular role will change from time to time. If there is a major change in your family, such as a severe illness, divorce, or death, roles may change.

Roles are defined by responsibilities. How people fulfill these responsibilities determines to a large extent how well they perform their roles. Even if the mother works outside the home, she often has primary responsibility for the care and supervision of the children. As the children grow older, she may be the parent who usually volunteers at the children's school and arranges and supervises after-school activities. In recent decades, however, more fathers have been helping with these responsibilities.

Providing the income to buy food, clothing, and housing for family members has traditionally been the responsibility of the father. Today this responsibility is often shared by both father and mother. Today's fathers are also sharing more of the child care responsibilities and often are seen in grocery stores doing the shopping for the family. Care of the yard and outside chores have traditionally been the responsibility of fathers, but today the entire family may share in these tasks. If the mother works, the father may be the one to take the children to school or serve as coach for sports teams. Guiding children is a shared responsibility in many of today's families. Fathers are finding they enjoy the nurturing role, and mothers enjoy sharing the provider role. As they share these roles, they offer encouragement and support to each other.

Your role expectations for your future family are likely to be influenced by the roles played in your family today. If both of your parents work outside the home, for instance, you probably will be more likely to share the nurturing and provider roles in your future family. Your future family role responsibilities may also be affected by the career you choose, by changes in economic conditions (resulting, for example, in unemployment), and by social change (resulting, for example, in wartime conditions).

In all relationships, it is important to understand people's role expectations. If you decide to marry someone with different role expectations, the two of you will need to decide how you will share responsibilities. Each of you may need to alter your views in order to meet the needs of all family members.

Functional and Dysfunctional Families

Families operate as a system or team. In a **functional family**, all family members fulfill their roles and responsibilities. If one family member does not fulfill his or her responsibilities, the system may become out of balance, and the family may become a **dysfunctional family**. A parent who leaves the family with no thought for their ability to function on their own throws the family system out of balance. A teen who rebels and refuses to cooperate can create problems for the entire family. When family members fulfill each others' needs and treat each other with affection and respect, the family will sustain its functioning base.

Characteristics of Strong Families

Strong families are crucial to our nation's well-being. Parents have a primary obligation to raise their children to be responsible, caring, and contributing members of the community. The community, in turn, has the responsibility to help support families. Families do not exist in a vacuum.

Strong, healthy families have many characteristics in common. In today's strong families, members communicate and listen to each other, 15-4. They listen responsively. They pay attention to nonverbal communication, particularly when there is silence. Family members may express disagreements, but they recognize the importance of respectful communication.

Members of strong families support one another. They offer affirmation to each other and thus contribute to heightened

David Hopper

15-4 Family members listen and respect each other's wishes as they make plans for a family vacation.

self-esteem. They also respect the individual uniqueness of each person, recognizing both strengths and weaknesses. Healthy families value the contribution each member can make.

Trust is evident in many aspects of family living. Spouses trust one another. Parents entrust their children with responsibilities that help them learn. This helps children feel a sense of worth and value in the family. Children trust their parents and feel secure and loved in the family setting.

The healthy family has a sense of play and humor. Family members laugh with each other, and get-togethers become a time of fun and mutual relaxation. Members of strong families pay attention to signs of stress and use humor as well as empathy to diffuse tensions or explosive situations.

Members of strong families exhibit a sense of shared responsibility. They also realize the importance of individual responsibility on the part of each member.

Strong families recognize right and wrong. They guide children in choosing behavior that is acceptable to the family and to society. They assess the consequences when any member does something wrong as well as the responsibility that must be assumed. They guide children in critical thinking and in considering decision-making alternatives.

Strong families believe in upholding family traditions. They may also create new traditions that become very meaningful for the family. They respect the cultural and ethnic traditions of other families.

Strong families realize the importance of healthy interaction among members. They respect the desire for privacy at times, yet foster conversation and sharing at other times.

Strong families share a belief in the importance of a religious or philosophical foundation. They recognize the stability this provides for the children as they grow to adulthood and establish families of their own.

Strong families believe in the contribution they can make to their communities. Such families work together for a good balance between emphasis on individual rights and acceptance of responsibilities to the community.

Family Structures

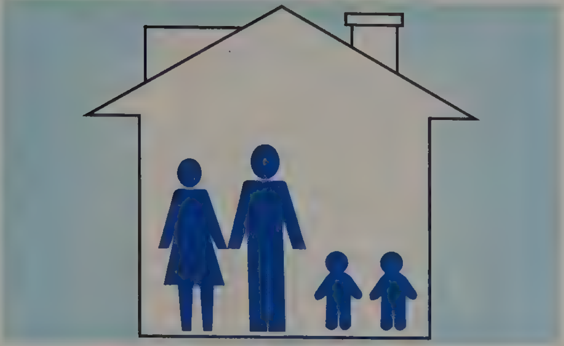
As society changes, new family structures emerge. Today there are many different family structures. There is no one best structure as long as the family is performing its functions and members are fulfilling their roles. The six common structures in our society today are the two-parent, single-parent, stepfamily, extended kinship, foster family, and adoptive family structure.

The Two-Parent Family

The **two-parent family** is made up of a married couple and their biological children, 15-5. One or both parents may work outside the home. If one parent does not work, he or she will usually care for the home and the children. Social activities often center around the family. The two-parent family is sometimes called the *nuclear family*. A little less than one-fourth of American families consist of married couples with children.

The Single-Parent Family

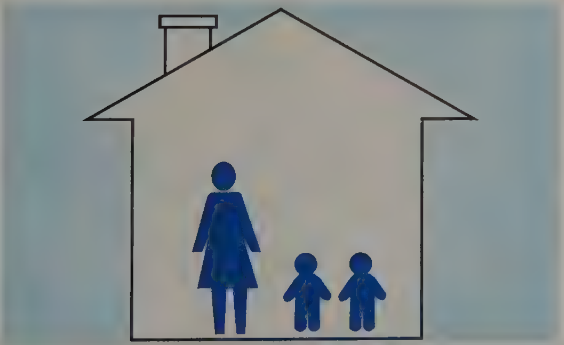
A **single-parent family** occurs as the result of divorce, separation, death, or



15-5 **The two-parent family structure is made up of a married couple and their biological children.**

having children outside of marriage. See 15-6. The single-parent family structure is growing faster than any other family form. About one-eighth of all families are currently single-parent families. About half of all children born in the 1980s will live in single-parent families sometime during their childhood.

Most single parents did not plan to be single parents. They have had to face an unexpected stress—the death, divorce, or desertion of a spouse or an out-of-wedlock pregnancy. The first stress may have created other problems that continue to affect the family. A single parent faces the strain of being the sole head of the household. Like all parents, single parents must provide supervision, care, and financial security for their families. Time, energy, and money may be in short supply. Single parents have the additional burden of compensating for the missing parent. In some instances, an absent parent may create tensions.



15-6 **The single-parent family structure is made up of one parent living with his or her children.**

Parents Who Are Single As a Result of Desertion, Divorce, or Death

People who have been deserted by their spouses or have divorced may begin single parenthood on a foundation of uncertainty. Such parents have the challenge of reshaping their own lives and the lives of their children under difficult circumstances. Time, effort, and the cooperation of all family members are needed to reestablish a secure family unit.

Death forces some people to accept the responsibilities of single parenting. The finality of the loss may be hard for these people to accept, but the needs of their children may help them overcome the feelings of personal loss. The surviving family members need to offer each other support in the readjustment period. A main concern of these single parents is to prevent themselves from growing too dependent on their children. They must allow their children to grow and to become independent and responsible adults.

Unwed Parents

Today, many unwed mothers are choosing to keep their babies rather than arranging for an adoption. A woman who keeps her baby should recognize her true reasons for doing so. Her reasons affect the way she behaves as a mother. If she keeps her baby just to have someone to love her, she will expect too much from the child. If she is trying to escape from an unhappy home life, she will probably find her new life even more disappointing. If she keeps her baby because she truly wants to raise her child, and if she is willing to accept all the responsibilities, she and her child can have full and satisfying lives.

Occasionally, an unwed father raises his child. A man who wishes to do this should claim paternity while the woman is still pregnant. He should show his sincere interest and involvement in the approaching birth. In addition, he should show his concern for his parenting responsibilities once the child is born. In some cases and in some states, a man who shows his concern in this way can be awarded custody of his child.

Single Parents by Adoption

Sometimes a single man or woman seeks to adopt a child. As in any adoption, the background of the prospective parent is investigated thoroughly. In single-parent adoptions, the reasons for wanting to accept parenting responsibilities are especially questioned. In addition, the person must be able to provide the child with adult contacts of the opposite sex. For instance, a woman would have to have male relatives and friends who would spend time with the child. A man would have to have female relatives and friends who would spend time with the child. Thus, the child would grow up with both male and female influences.

Support for the Single Parent

With the increase in the number of single-parent families, more sources of emotional support may be sought. Friends and other family members may supply support and serve as role models for the children. Businesses, governments, religious, and community organizations offer support and services. They may provide child care programs or services such as Big Brothers and Big Sisters.

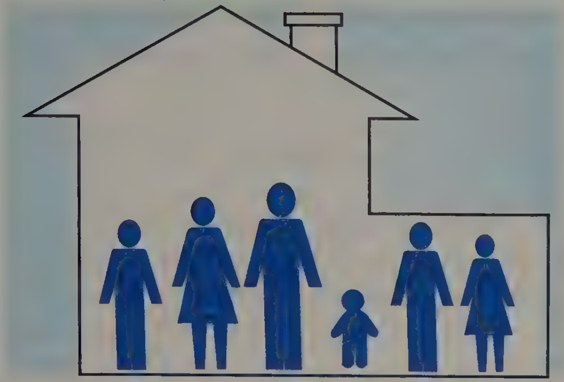
A single-parent family can provide a happy and positive setting in which children feel loved and secure. See 15-7. As in any family structure, children in a single-parent family can grow up to be cooperative, friendly, and responsible individuals.

The Stepfamily

Stepfamilies have become another major family structure in our society. In a **stepfamily**, either or both spouses have been married before and have one or more children from the previous marriage. If both spouses had been previously married, the stepfamily consists of two former two-parent family structures. The couple may or may not add to the family by having children of their own. See 15-8.

Relationships in stepfamilies may be complicated. For instance, one stepfamily

15-7 Members of a single-parent family can share many enjoyable activities, such as reading together.



15-8 In a stepfamily, either or both spouses may have been married before and have one or more children. The couple may or may not add children of their own to the family.

may include natural parents, brothers and sisters, stepparents and stepchildren, and half sisters and half brothers. Add to this relatives outside the immediate family. Children may have four sets of grandparents.

There may be increased financial concerns in the stepfamily. A larger household may create more financial burdens. Alimony, child support, or debts from previous marriages may also drain a stepfamily's financial resources.

When two families combine, their lifestyles have to be blended into one. Space, time, and energy resources must be allocated carefully. Needs and wants of individual members may have to give way to new family priorities. Each family member needs to be dedicated to making the new family system work.

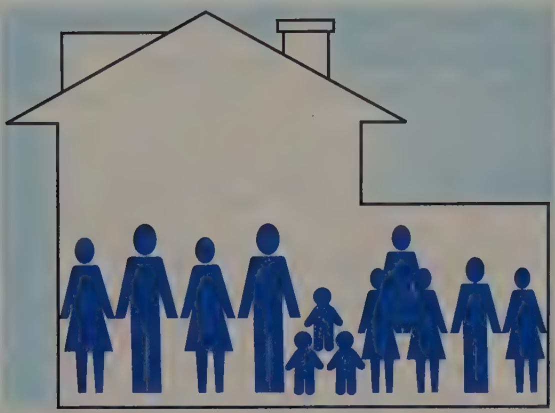
Stepfamilies can be happy and successful, 15-9. They can provide rich new experiences for all family members. When the strengths of all the family members are combined, the result is a powerful family structure, full of resources and potential. With time, cooperation, and understanding, more and more positive interactions take place. Those positive interactions help to increase feelings of self-esteem for each member and for the family as a whole.

The Extended Kinship Family

In the **extended kinship family**, several generations of a family live together, 15-10. A mixture of grandparents, parents, children, aunts, uncles, and cousins may be found living in one dwelling. Family needs in everyday living, as well as in crisis situations, are met by family members. In many foreign countries, the extended kinship family is more common. Many who immigrate to this country bring members of their extended family with them and set up this system in this country.

An advantage of the extended kinship family is the interaction between family members of all age groups. Aging members are likely to have an honored position in the family. Children can learn to respect and appreciate them. Elderly members, in

15-9 Life in a blended family can be happy, busy, and complicated!



15-10 **In an extended kinship family, several generations live together.**

turn, offer experience that can be helpful in raising children.

In some cases, extended kinship families control the family activities. For instance, senior members may choose marriage partners and careers for the children. In some other families, kinship activities are controlled, but marriage and career choices are made independently.

Many extended kinship families are formed for a short period of time. For instance, a family member may marry and the couple will live with a parental family until they can afford a separate living space. A divorced family member with children may temporarily move back into a parental home, 15-11. Other examples are young adults who find they can't afford to live on their own. They may have to "return to the nest" while establishing their careers.

Sometimes the family must focus on meeting the needs of aging parents. A grandparent may move in with an adult child's family. This may be temporary or it may become permanent, depending on the health of the aging family member.

In spite of these examples, the extended kinship family is not likely to become a major family structure in our country. Most families want to live independently.

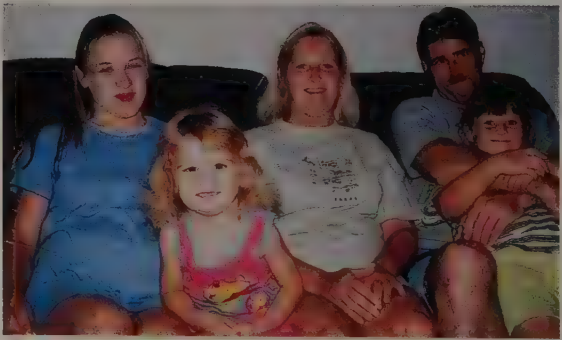
The Foster Family

Foster parenting provides children with substitute families while their parents are unable to care for them. This may be for a short period of time or for many years.

Some children are placed in foster homes because they and their parents do not get along. Others are placed in foster homes because their parents cannot give them adequate care. In other cases, the parents have, in effect, abandoned their children, but the children cannot be adopted because of legal restrictions.

Foster family homes are evaluated and licensed according to state requirements. Foster parents give their time, effort, and love. They are reimbursed only for the children's expenses. The payments vary with each child, family, and state.

Foster parents experience the joy of helping children grow and develop. They receive the reward of making important contributions to the lives of children who



Christi Edgar

15-11 **In this extended kinship family, three generations live together, sharing a home and daily activities.**

need parental models. On the other hand, foster parents face some special challenges. Children come to them from many different backgrounds. The children are often bewildered, angry, frightened, and resentful. They may be hesitant about living with strangers. They need time, love, and understanding to adjust to their foster homes. Once the adjustments are made, foster families may become very close. If a child has to leave a foster home at a later time, both the child and the parents may have difficulty saying good-bye, 15-12.

The Adoptive Family

When a couple chooses to adopt a child it means they become the legal parents of the child they bring into their home. Adoptive parenting is a rich and fulfilling way to realize the joys of parenthood. If the couple have been unable to have their own children, they will eagerly look forward to giving love and care to their adopted child, 15-13.

Most couples prefer to adopt newborn babies. Then they can experience all the joys of raising the children from infancy to adulthood. Children of all ages, however, can be adopted.

Adopting older children may be more challenging. The children may feel guilty or depressed about the loss of their

Cholla Runnels

15-12 **One of the hardest tasks of foster parents and grandparents is to say good-bye.**

The Gladney Adoption Center, Ft. Worth, TX

15-13 **When a couple adopts a child, grandparents experience a new excitement in their lives as well.**

biological parents. They may withhold affection from their adoptive parents while hoping their biological parents will return. Some adoptive children may even go through a stage of testing the love of the new parents. They may intentionally misbehave to find out if the adoptive parents will love them when they are "bad" as well as when they are "good." Eventually, most children come to accept and appreciate their adoptive parents. When this occurs, the family unit can grow stronger, and a loving and caring environment develops.

The Family Life Cycle

One of many young people's fondest dreams is the establishment of their own families. Young couples' expectations are high as they look ahead. Your family will be uniquely yours, but your **family life cycle** may consist of six stages that begin with marriage and end with aging. See 15-14.

Beginning Stage

The first stage of the family life cycle begins with the establishment of a family

Stages of the Family Life Cycle

Beginning Stage	Childbearing Stage	Parenting Stage	Launching Stage	Middle-Years Stage	Aging Stage
Major focus:	Major focus:	Major focus:	Major focus:	Major focus:	Major focus:
Adjustment to married life. Adjust to separation from parents. Establish feeling of interdependence. Both spouses may have careers.	Birth of children. Focus on needs of children. New responsibilities. Interpersonal relationships expand in family. Role conflicts may occur.	Reorganization of the family around school-age children. Parents recognize individual needs of each child while sharing family goals. Parents involved in children's activities. Teens seek more independence.	Children leave home. Children leave for college, careers, and marriages. Parents refocus on their relationship. Parents relate to sons and daughters as adults.	Preparing for retirement. Parents provide emotional support as adult children establish their own families and careers. Parents often become grandparents. Parents prepare emotionally and financially for retirement.	Retirement. Break away from work. Focus on friendships, hobbies, interest, and travel. Grandparenting continues.

15-14 **The number of years involved in the different stages of the family life cycle depends on the number and spacing of children. In many families, the stages overlap.**

unit when the couple marries. During this stage, the main goal is adjustment to married life. Newlyweds must adjust to the separation from their parents. They need to achieve a feeling of comfort with each other. They also need to establish a feeling of interdependence. This means each must learn to give and take from the other person while still maintaining his or her own individuality.

During this stage, each spouse must adjust to life with another person, 15-15. Each one has to learn to consider the other person's needs. Gradually, a couple works out acceptable patterns for everyday activities. Morning routines are settled, and household responsibilities are divided. Often in this stage, both spouses have careers. Further adjustments may be needed as spouses learn to support each other in their work as well as in their marriage.

The length of this stage varies. Some couples shorten this stage and enter the childbearing stage right away. Other couples may stay in this first stage and bypass the stages involving parenthood. Many will simply lengthen this stage as they postpone parenthood.

15-15 **During the establishment stage, a couple adjust to living together as husband and wife.**

Childbearing Stage

The second stage begins with expectant parenthood, when the couple's focus is on the coming birth. Pregnancy is considered to be a time of transformation. The couple prepares for a new family member and begins to realize that nothing will ever be the same again.

When the first child is born, the focus of the couple suddenly shifts, 15-16.

15-16 **Even before first-time parents leave the hospital after the birth of their baby, they begin to learn how much care their newborn will require.**

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

The Boomerang Age

Prior to World War II, leaving home before marriage was almost unheard of. Young adults lived with their parents even after they finished school, contributing to the family's resources until they married. After World War II, young adults began leaving home to marry at an earlier age.

Today, however, this trend has reversed once more as young adults are delaying marriage and living with their parents longer. There are several reasons for this change:

- More young people are continuing their education beyond high school. They know that most well-paying jobs now require either postsecondary training or a college degree.
- College costs are higher today and career tracks are more complex, causing young adults to take longer to finish school.
- Full-time college students are more likely to live with their parents or other relatives to save money while they complete their schooling.
- Local community colleges are expanding their programs, enabling more young adults to live with their parents while getting their degrees.

Even after their education is complete, young people may return home for awhile. Many young adults just entering the workforce have to live with their parents because their starting salaries are low. They cannot initially afford to live on their own. These young people continue to live with their parents until they are financially able to live independently.

For those people who do marry before the age of 25, over half of the men and more than two-thirds of the women get divorced. Teenage marriages in particular have a high rate of failure. If young adults divorce shortly after they marry, they are more likely to return to their parental home. Some return with their young children in tow. They may stay with their parents for a short while until they are able to make arrangements to live on their own again.

All of these trends have caused some social scientists to label this the boomerang age. Some adult children may leave and then return home, often several times, before they leave their parental home for good.

Primary attention is given to the needs of the infant. New responsibilities, new demands on time and energy, new limitations on freedom, and new expenses occur. The new roles of father and mother are added to the roles of husband and wife.

Parenthood can bring a couple closer together, or it can increase conflict. If parents want the child and have realistic expectations, a child can bring a sense of fulfillment. If one or both did not want a child, parenthood may be viewed as limiting and confining.

As a couple have additional children, the number of interpersonal relationships within the family expands. Children's roles also change. Sons become brothers. Daughters become sisters. The family experiences new levels of sharing and growing. Each additional child brings more challenges and responsibilities, but also more possibilities for love.

Parents with young children often experience role conflicts. They have to decide how to balance being a spouse with being a parent. One or both will also have the role of wage earner. Marriage partners have to communicate and make mutual decisions about how to handle their many responsibilities.

Parenting Stage

The main goal in this stage is reorganization of the family to fit the expanding world of school-age children. Parents need to recognize the individual needs of each child. Blending these individual needs and sharing family goals can bring both joys and pressures.

Children also become involved in many activities outside the home. Parents spend much of their time taking children to school, lessons, practices, and social events.

Parenthood during the adolescent years calls for increasing parental flexibility as children become more independent. A major family goal is to provide children with increased freedom and responsibility as they mature.

Learning how to blend assignment of responsibilities with teenagers' growing needs for independence is a challenge for parents. Some parents may fear losing their authority or control. At the same time, parents may be experiencing new stresses in their lives. Career demands often reach a peak at this time.

Launching Stage

During the launching years, children leave the family home to pursue education and career goals or to establish families of their own. Thus, the major family goal is reorganization of the family as members leave (and perhaps return temporarily).

As each child leaves, a void is felt. When the youngest child leaves, the parents are alone again. This is a big adjustment for parents. Their "on-the-job" parenting role may be over, but they feel continuing involvement with their children's lives. Parents have to learn to relate to their sons and daughters as adults.

This stage offers still another opportunity for growth. As husband and wife refocus on their marriage, they find renewed needs for communication and sharing. The couple learn to let their children live their own lives. Parents have more leisure time and can pursue new interests.

The couple's relationship often brings them increased satisfaction. If they maintain their friends, hobbies, and other interests, these are years of continuing growth. If they withdraw from friendships and activities, they may feel isolated and bored.

At this point in the family life cycle, some couples face the dual responsibility of caring for both their children and their parents. Elderly parents may need financial help or health care.

Middle-Years Stage

The middle-years stage begins when the last child has left home and continues until retirement. During this time, parents provide emotional and sometimes financial support as their children establish their own families and careers.

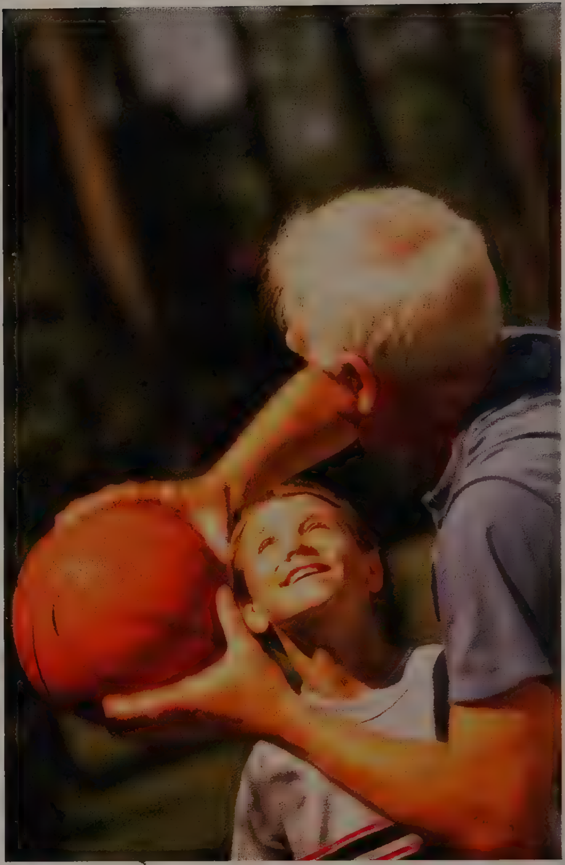
Although young adults are full of energy, ambition, and hope, they may also be aware of their inexperience in parenting and career-building. They often look to their parents for advice, reassurance, and other assistance.

Parents often become grandparents during the middle-years stage. Grandparents and grandchildren may form close bonds, 15-17. If the adult children are in crisis (for example, suffering from drug addiction), grandparents may find themselves providing all or most of the parenting for their young grandchildren.

At this stage, parents are not far from retirement. Since they usually are in their peak income-earning years, they may be able to save additional money as they plan in greater detail for this period of their lives.

When the last child has left home, parents typically experience feelings associated with the "empty nest." During this time, they continue to renew their relationship with each other. One husband whose wife was sad because she missed her children comforted her by saying, "All we had when we got married was each other. Now we will become even closer and mean even more to each other."

During this stage, elderly parents may continue to need financial help or health care. Coping with their deaths may be difficult as well.



15-17 The middle-years stage is one of the most enjoyable for grandparents who can spend time with their grandchildren.

Aging Stage

For most people, the aging stage begins at the time of retirement, 15-18. Couples enter this stage at varying ages. Some take early retirement, but many continue their careers as long as they are physically able to do so.

The retirement years mean breaking away from work and focusing on hobbies and interests. Travel and friendships can add enjoyment in the retirement years. Grandparenting roles continue to expand as grandchildren mature.

15-18 **Couples can enjoy quality time with each other during the aging stage.**

Chapter 15 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Family roles and functions have changed throughout history in order to meet the changing needs of family members and changing societal, demographic, and technological trends.
- Families perform several basic functions. They provide economic support; education; love and affection; nurturance; protection; and opportunities for recreation.
- Family members have both given roles and chosen roles. Each of these roles includes certain responsibilities, though the specific responsibilities will vary among families.
- When all family members fulfill their roles and responsibilities, communicate clearly, and treat each other with affection and respect, they contribute to a functional family system. When responsibilities are not fulfilled and interpersonal relationships deteriorate, the family may become dysfunctional.
- A number of characteristics appear to be common among strong families.
- The six most common family structures are the two-parent, single-parent, stepfamily, extended kinship, foster family, and adoptive family structures.
- The six stages in the family life cycle vary in length and may overlap. These stages are the beginning, childbearing, parenting, launching, middle-years, and aging stages.

Review

1. Define "family" according to the U.S. Census Bureau.
2. Name four factors in our society that have caused families to change through the years.
3. Briefly describe the nurturing function of the family.
4. Explain the difference between a given role and a chosen role.
5. Explain the difference between a functional family and a dysfunctional family.
6. List four characteristics often found in strong, healthy families.
7. Name the family structure described by each of the following phrases.
    A. A family structure made up of a married couple and their biological children.
    B. A couple become the legal parents of a child that is not their biological child.
    C. A family temporarily cares for children while their parents are unable to care for them.
    D. Either or both spouses have been married before and have one or more children from a previous marriage.
    E. Family structure that results from desertion, divorce, separation, death, or birth of out-of-wedlock child.
    F. Several generations of a family live together.
8. What is the main focus of the parenting stage of the family life cycle?
9. Name three key adjustments that a married couple must make during the launching stage.

React

1. Use the Internet and other resources to research family functions in our country and compare them with family functions in other cultures. Note similarities, differences, strengths, and weaknesses. Present an oral report to class.
2. Interview a grandparent or elderly neighbor. Find out how family roles and responsibilities have changed since their youth.
3. Identify societal, demographic, and economic trends that impact families. For each trend, determine adjustments individuals and families will need to make to cope with these trends.
4. Cite TV shows or movies that depict various family structures. Also cite shows or movies that feature families in various stages of the life cycle. Discuss how these families differ. What do these fictional family members do to strengthen their families?
5. Discuss the changes that occur in roles, major goals, length of stage, number of relationships, and special problems in each of the stages of the family life cycle.
6. Role-play each stage of the family life cycle, setting up a typical family as it moves through the six stages.

Reflect

1. Make a list of characteristics of strong families. What role do teens play in each of these characteristics? How do strong families influence community and society?
2. What are your role expectations of yourself in marriage? What role expectations would you have of a spouse? If your spouse has different expectations, how would you resolve the conflicts?
3. Which stage of the family life cycle do you think is the most enjoyable for family members? Why?
4. Which stage of the family life cycle do you think is the least enjoyable for family members? Name three ways in which family members can make the most difficult stage less difficult or more satisfying.

Chapter 16

The Parenting Decision

Terms to Know

- infertility
- artificial insemination
- in vitro fertilization
- genetic counseling
- amniocentesis
- ultrasound examination

After studying this chapter you will be able to

- describe the roles and responsibilities of parenthood.
- describe the sharing of parenting responsibilities in families today.
- identify several factors involved in the decision to become parents.
- explain the human reproduction process in females and males.
- describe methods of planning or preventing pregnancy.
- recognize alternatives available when a couple cannot achieve a pregnancy.
- assess the importance of genetic counseling and testing.

When two people marry, they often have preconceived ideas regarding their roles as husband and wife. They usually discuss their thoughts about household tasks and money management. They probably know about the biological aspects of conception and pregnancy. However, they may not be familiar with their options concerning parenthood. The decision-making process regarding if and when to have children is often overlooked. Before such a decision is made, a couple should carefully consider all that is involved in parenting.

Parental Roles and Responsibilities

Young husbands and wives today have more responsibilities, more career opportunities, and more choices. One of these choices is when and whether to become parents. This change in roles involves much more than a change from husband to father or wife to mother. Taking on a parental role should mean that both are willing to make a lifetime commitment to the child. Both must understand what that commitment means in terms of time, energy, financial resources, and love. If the couple wants a child and they are ready to be parents, their parenting responsibilities will be easier to fulfill. See 16-1.

Parenting responsibilities are constantly changing to meet the changing needs of the child. Every child is a unique individual with his or her own special needs and potential. This is what makes the parental role an exciting and fulfilling endeavor.

The most fulfilling responsibility of parenting is the nurturing of the personality of each child. Children need lots of unconditional love, and they need to be shown they are loved. They must feel they can count on their parents' love throughout their lifetimes. There may be times when parents don't like what their children are doing, but parents must assure them they will always love them.

Parents need to be sure the physical needs of the children are met. These include shelter, food, clothing, and medical care. Nutritious food in adequate amounts is important at every age as the child matures. Clothing should be appropriate for both temperature and aesthetic needs. The health needs of well children as well as ill children are the responsibility of parents.

Parents need to fulfill the intellectual needs of their children. Parents' attitudes toward learning can influence their children's motivation to learn. Many teachable moments occur in the home as part of everyday living. Parents can use these moments to expand the child's love for learning.

Parents need to give their children opportunities for social growth. Opportunities for social interaction, both within and beyond the family, are necessary for learning socially approved roles. Through these interactions, children will learn valuable lessons in sharing, communicating, and compromising.

Parenting Responsibilities Include...

- To provide unconditional love. Children need to be loved and to be shown that they can count on your love.
- To provide for children's physical needs. Food, clothing, shelter, and medical care must be provided.
- To provide for children's intellectual needs. Mental stimulation, instilling a desire to learn, should begin at an early age.
- To provide for children's social needs. Opportunities for social interaction, both within and beyond the family, are necessary for learning socially approved roles.
- To instill positive character traits and encourage mutual respect. Such traits as honesty, responsibility, loyalty, and courtesy, for instance, should be emphasized.
- To encourage independence when maturity is reached. Parents will have fulfilled their responsibilities when their children become self-sufficient adults.

16-1 Before deciding to become parents, a couple should consider the responsibilities that come with the parenting role.

The virtues of honesty, responsibility, trust, loyalty, courtesy, and mutual respect need to be instilled in children by the example and guidance of parents. These character traits will be internalized by the children as they see their parents react to day-to-day stresses and joys. As children mature, their ability to make responsible decisions will be enhanced.

One of the basic responsibilities of parents is to encourage their children's independence when maturity is reached. Parents will have fulfilled this responsibility when their children become self-sufficient adults who accept responsibility for their own decisions.

Sharing Parenting Responsibilities

In earlier times, a mother had the main responsibility of caring for children. The father's role was primarily that of provider. Children spent most of their waking hours in the care of their mother. The mother fed, clothed, and disciplined the children. The threat, "Wait until your father gets home," was often used as a last resort when children misbehaved. A father had less time for his children because he was busy making sure the family's needs were met.

Spousal roles have undergone many changes compared to those of earlier years. Many of these changes are due to the employment of wives outside the home, 16-2. When the wife is employed, a sharing of responsibilities usually occurs. Both parents know that when their baby cries in the middle of the night, either of them may comfort the child. If both have to go to work in the morning, they learn to take turns soothing a restless baby.

Fathers today have become much more involved in parenting their children from the very beginning. Couples mutually agree on when they are ready to start a family. Once pregnancy occurs, fathers-to-be often become involved in preparing for the baby. They may participate in birthing classes and be present during the birth of their child. The father's role has expanded to include changing diapers, giving baths, and taking the child to preschool. Fathers are often seen in grocery stores with babies and children in tow. More fathers are seen in parks with their children. Fathers are more involved with the care and guidance of their children throughout their growing

16-2 Parenting responsibilities need to be shared by the spouses, especially when both work outside the home.

years, 16-3. Mothers continue to be nurturing and caring, but fathers share the caregiving role.

Today's fast-paced world demands compromise and cooperation in the redistribution of family roles. Children benefit when they see that dads can fix meals and help with homework. They also benefit when they see that mom has an important role in the world of work.

Parenthood Is a Choice

Issues of family planning involve the attitudes and desires of each individual, as well as the mutual desires of the couple. Each individual must ask, "Do I want to be a parent?"

Parenthood is first an individual choice. As you look ahead to your future life, you will have many goals. Deciding whether or not to include parenthood as a goal is a decision you will have to make.

16-3 **Many fathers are spending more time with their children.**

Parenthood is also a mutual choice. Becoming parents is a future goal for many young couples. As they marry and look forward to their life together, they will consider their future goal of becoming parents. They will make choices as to when they wish to start their family and how many children they desire.

As you looked at your time/life line in Chapter 5, you may have had many alternatives as you considered your future goals. Your decisions about education and career goals can be based on information that describes alternatives and consequences. You can even try certain courses in school based on the major of your choice. If you find you don't enjoy them, you can change your major. If you go to work and decide you are in the wrong job, you can look for a different one. Your education and career decisions are not necessarily final.

Once you choose parenting as a goal, or if you "just happen" to become a parent, you cannot change your mind. When you have a child, you can't go back and decide you really didn't want to be a parent. Parenthood is one decision in your life that is irreversible. It will change your life forever. You can't "try out" a child. Parenthood is real.

Parenthood As a Personal Choice

In order to consider parenthood as a personal choice, you first need to accept yourself. You need to recognize your strengths and your weaknesses. You have to know yourself and like yourself. Once you have accepted yourself as you are, you are more likely to form successful relationships with other people. You are also better able to see yourself as the guiding force in a child's life. If you want to be a parent, you need to feel you have a lot to offer as a parent.

You have to ask yourself, "Do I honestly like children?" As you interact with children, you can evaluate how you feel. You also need to consider how you feel with children under less than ideal conditions. Can you soothe a frightened child? Can you clean up a mess resulting from a toddler's temper tantrum without losing your own temper? If you want to be a parent, you should enjoy being with children.

Parenthood As a Mutual Choice

Parenthood must be a mutual choice for both you and your spouse, 16-4. You may feel you want to have children, but find your partner does not share your feelings. It is important for you and your spouse to consider goals for your life together, including parenting goals. As you compare your individual goals, you will be able to talk about your mutual parenting goals. The two of you should consider whether you both want a family. Think about how you like to spend your leisure time and how career goals may affect family goals. If one seems unsure of parenthood, it would be wise to delay or forgo having a child.

The stability of your marriage will affect your parenting decision. You should feel secure in your roles as husband and wife and be ready to accept the roles of mother and father. Before you decide to become parents, you should be prepared to handle multiple role commitments.

Your emotional maturity as a couple is also important, 16-5. Ideally, your mutual commitment to parenthood will be based

David Hopper

16-4 Since parenthood is a lifetime commitment, it must be a mutual decision.

16-5 When marriage partners are emotionally mature and make a mutual commitment to parenthood, a baby adds to their feelings of sharing.

on a sense of complete sharing. As a couple, you also have to realize your lifestyle will change. If you say yes to parenthood, you will be saying no to some other options. Your social life may be limited and more confined. A view of parenthood as enriching and fulfilling can help you adapt your lifestyle to the changing demands of parenthood.

You both need to have some knowledge about children's growth and development. You can study child development, and you can find opportunities to interact with children. Knowing the basic principles of child development and basic parenting techniques will help you prepare for parenthood. You will never be able to predict exactly what your own child will be like. However, the more knowledge you have about children, the better able you will be to make a wise decision about parenthood.

Some common reasons for having children are listed in 16-6. Some common reasons for not having children are listed in 16-7. Review the lists and evaluate your feelings concerning parenthood.

Other Factors to Consider in the Parenting Decision

Taking responsibility for a new life is awesome. It is a decision that will affect you for the rest of your life. There are other factors to keep in mind as the parenting decision is made.

Age of the Woman

The best time for a woman to have children is when she is in excellent physical health. Today, many couples are choosing to start their families later in

Common Reasons for Having Children

Individual Decision

- I want to experience the delight and wonder that children will provide.
- I want to share my love with a child.
- I want the warmth and closeness of a family.
- I want to have the experience of being a parent.
- I want someone to carry on my family name.
- I feel my life would not be complete without having a child.
- I think children will expand my life.
- Having a child completes my feeling as being female or male.

Joint Decision

- We want to share our beliefs with children.
- We feel children would add another dimension to our marriage.
- We want our love to expand and to include children.
- We want children so we can enjoy being grandparents.
- We want to have a family lifestyle that includes children.
- We want to teach and nurture children.
- Having children is a true expression of our love.
- We feel children will deepen and strengthen our relationship.

16-6 **People want to have children for many different reasons.**

Common Reasons for Not Having Children

Individual Decision

I was not happy as a child, so I do not want to give birth to a child who might also be unhappy.

I value my personal freedom and feel that children would be confining.

Children are expensive. I don't feel financially secure enough to have children.

I don't want the responsibility of caring for children.

I want to travel, and children would make traveling difficult or impossible.

I want to do my part in controlling population growth.

I want to be able to maintain my privacy.

I don't want to bring a child into a world with so many problems.

Joint Decision

We want to devote our time and energy to each other and our marriage relationship.

We are both devoted to our careers.

We both feel there are too many problems in the world.

We do not feel our relationship is stable enough for children.

We want to be free to travel, and children would tie us down.

My partner does not want a child.

Neither of us feels comfortable with children.

It would be wrong to give my partner the added responsibility of children.

16-7 **People give many reasons for choosing not to have children.**

their marriages. As long as the physical health of the woman is good, delaying parenthood should not be a problem. Pregnancy during the teen years may pose some health risks if the woman's body has not yet physically matured. The key factor is good prenatal care for very young mothers as well as older moms.

Women over 35 may have some complications if they have not maintained good health. Also, older mothers are at higher risk of bearing a child with an abnormality. Couples who choose to delay pregnancy until their thirties should realize their parenting responsibilities will extend into middle age.

Career Considerations

Another factor for a couple to consider is career goals. Studies show that most people need successful and satisfying jobs even though both men and women consider family to be more important than work. A husband and wife should discuss their career goals and the ways in which those goals would be affected by parenthood. If both have careers, they should discuss how they feel about raising children in a dual-career family.

Financial Considerations

Having a baby costs money. Medical expenses for childbirth continue to rise. In addition, babies require food, clothing, furniture, blankets, and toys, 16-8. As children grow, their needs grow, too. An average child will cost middle-class parents over one hundred thousand dollars before the age of 18. See 16-9. Many parents continue to support their children

16-8 **Baby supplies can be expensive. Financial considerations are an important part of planning a family.**

beyond this age. College expenses can raise the total costs even further. This may be a factor in deciding how many children you will have, as well as the spacing of these children. Parents who have more than one child in college at the same time will have double the education costs during these years. These costs may be hard for a couple to handle if they have not saved for this purpose.

Couples who have their children soon after marriage are likely to find themselves under great financial pressure. If they need two incomes to handle their expenses, starting their family may mean loss of one income at the same time their expenses are increasing.

Another financial factor to consider is child care. Child care provided by others can be expensive. On the other hand, if an employed parent quits a job to stay home with the child, the family loses income. As spouses plan for a pregnancy, all of these financial factors must be taken into consideration.

Number and Spacing of Children

The number of children and the spacing between them affect both the marriage and the entire family. Some couples have just one child. Only children have the educational benefits of accompanying adults more often, 16-10. They have more contact with the vocabulary and ideas of the adult world. Such intellectual stimulation gives many only children a higher motivation to succeed.

Most couples plan to have more than one child. Siblings provide companionship for one another, 16-11. They also help one another learn the important lessons of sharing and getting along with others. In addition, their presence may allow parents to have more time for themselves.

Spacing children three or four years apart is recommended if possible. This allows parents to have greater interaction with each child. Children born closer together have less parent contact, and in some cases, the younger child becomes too dependent on the older sibling.

Spacing children a few years apart helps the mother to maintain better health. Physically, her body has time to return to normal after each pregnancy. Psychologically, this time span assures her greater stability.

Another advantage of three to four years of spacing is that the financial impact of the children can be spread over a longer period of time. Income has a greater chance to increase, and the impact of major child-raising costs is not as abrupt.

Spacing children a few years apart lessens the chances of sibling rivalry due to competition. These children will be able to establish themselves at their own developmental levels. Thus, they will be less likely to compete with each other.

What It Costs to Raise a Child

The total cost of raising a child from birth to 17 averages $160,000 ($237,000 when adjusted for inflation), according to the USDA, 2000 figures. The following are the categories of household expenditures that are affected. Percentages of the total dollar amount per category are also shown.

Housing (33 to 37%)

Parents and their new baby can live comfortably in a cozy apartment or small house. The family may need more room, however, as the child grows or more children are added to the family. If so, parents face the increased cost of renting or buying a bigger home. Their rent or mortgage will vary, depending on how big and expensive their new home is. Housing expenses also include taxes, utilities, furniture, and equipment.

Food (15 to 20%)

Food will take a big bite out of the parents' budget. If a baby is breast-fed, the mother will have extra nutritional needs. If a baby is bottle-fed, formula will need to be purchased. At six months, when the baby begins eating solid food, this will add to the family's grocery bill. As they grow older, children eat even more food. Grocery expenses can be quite large, and many meals are eaten in restaurants.

Transportation (15%)

Parents will need to buy a stroller and a good car seat for their new baby. If parents work outside the home, they may need to transport their child to and from child care. In cities, parents may use trains or busses. If they don't have a car, parents may decide to buy one, which can be expensive. As the family grows, parents may invest in a second car to meet the family's many competing transportation needs. Transportation costs also include gasoline, maintenance and repairs, and insurance on cars.

Clothing (6 to 8%)

The cost of baby clothes varies, but the cost for diapers adds a substantial amount. Disposable diapers cost at least $750 a year. Babies grow quickly. Parents must replace their clothing and shoes as often as necessary to ensure a proper fit. School-age children and teens grow less quickly than babies. Parents may not have to replace their clothes as often, but clothing for school-age children and teens usually costs much more than babies' clothing.

Child Care and Education (7 to 10%)

This is the biggest variable. It may include day care tuition and baby-sitting costs. If children attend private elementary schools, education costs will be high. Another consideration is whether parents will pay for any education and training their children need after high school, such as college or vocational schooling. (This is not included in the total cost since it occurs after a child is 17.) If parents pay for tuition and books at a state university, expenses for four years will cost at least $20,000. If they pay these expenses at a private university, the cost may be $55,000 or more.

Health Care (5 to 7%)

During pregnancy and delivery, new parents may suddenly realize the costs involved with bringing a baby into the world. These initial costs of pregnancy and delivery are just the beginning. The American Association of Pediatrics estimates babies visit the pediatrician an average of 10 times during their first two years. Over the next few years, children generally visit the doctor less, but the average child still requires about $600-650 a year for various medical expenses, including dental services. When their children become teens, parents may encounter additional medical expenses, such as braces, contacts, and sports-related injury expenses.

Other Expenses (10-13%)

Raising a child involves more than providing necessities. Music and sports lessons, camps, toys, books, software, and entertainment for children can be very costly. Regardless of their income level, most parents tend to spend as much as they can on their children's extra activities.

16-9 Raising a child from birth to adulthood includes expenses that add up to many thousands of dollars.

16-10 **An only child has more opportunities to receive the attention of parents.**

The Female Reproductive System

A woman has two ovaries. The *ovaries* store and mature eggs, and they produce hormones. Ovaries are solid, with an uneven surface. Each measures about 1½ by ¾ inches.

The *uterus* is a pear-shaped organ a little smaller than a fist. It is hollow and has thick walls. When a woman is pregnant, the fetus is held and nourished in the uterus until birth. As the fetus grows, the walls of the uterus stretch and become thin. After birth, the walls shrink back to their original size and shape.

The *cervix*, or neck of the uterus, dips down into the vagina. The cervix has a tiny opening through which menstrual flow can pass to the vagina and through which sperm can enter the uterus.

On either side of the uterus are thread-like tubes called *fallopian tubes*. The tubes are four to five inches long and have fringed ends. Mature eggs pass through the fallopian tubes on their way from the ovaries to the uterus.

Planning Pregnancy

Planning pregnancy can be a major part of family planning. Some couples plan to achieve pregnancy. Others wish to prevent pregnancy. Their plans should be based on the goals they have set for their families.

Couples who want to plan their families need to know the basics of the human reproductive system. With this knowledge, they can avoid being misled by false information. They will be able to make wiser decisions and to feel confident in their marital relationship.

16-11 **Siblings can be fun playmates.**

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

"Onlies" Are OK!

Many myths used to exist about families with only one child. Parents of "onlies" were often criticized for denying their offspring the companionship of siblings and real-life lessons about sharing. An only child was often pictured as being spoiled, lonely, and uncooperative.

The current thinking of psychologists, however, is just the opposite. They now agree that onlies are as cooperative as other children and are often leaders. Only children learn to negotiate with those who are older and younger, not simply their peers. As adults, onlies differ little from others. The type of parenting children receive has more influence on their personalities than does the presence of siblings.

Psychologists believe that earlier attitudes about only children were often based on economic issues. For example, before the Depression, farms needed extra hands—which spurred families to have several children. Now, for economic, social, and medical reasons, couples are having fewer children. Many women postpone childbirth until they have established careers, a time that often coincides with a slowdown in their fertility. Moreover, women who become pregnant after age 35 are at increased risk of developing health complications and of delivering babies with abnormalities.

Many adults deliberately make the decision to have just one child. They cite the advantages of greater independence and time for closer relationships with their own parents and other relatives. Parents of only children also recognize they have more resources in terms of time and money to devote to their child.

The *vagina* is the canal between the vaginal opening and the cervix. The walls of the relaxed vagina have many small folds of membrane. When the vagina is expanded, as in childbirth, the folds disappear, and the vaginal walls appear smooth.

Once every *menstrual cycle,* or about once a month, a mature egg is released from an ovary of an adult female. This is called *ovulation* and is regulated by a hormone. Each month, a different hormone causes the inner lining of the uterus, the *endometrium,* to grow rapidly. This lining becomes thick and spongy and ready to accept a fertilized egg.

Once the egg has been released from an ovary, it enters a fallopian tube on its way to the uterus. If the egg is not fertilized by a sperm in the tube, it will deteriorate and pass out of the uterus in the menstrual flow. If it is fertilized, it will implant in the endometrium and develop into a fetus.

The Male Reproductive System

The man has two testes. The *testes* produce sperm and the male sex hormones. The testes are oval and are about 1½ inches long.

The testes are contained in the *scrotum*, the skin pouch beneath the penis. The testes are located outside the body because sperm production requires a temperature lower than that inside the body. Next to each testicle is an elongated structure called an *epididymis*. Here, the sperm mature.

The *vas deferens* are long tubes that are attached to the epididymis and lead inside the body. The vas deferens store mature sperm. These tubes meet to form the *ejaculatory ducts*. These ducts are about one inch long. They both lead directly into the *urethra*, or urinary duct. The urethra extends through the penis and transports the sperm out of the body.

At the time of sexual excitement, sperm move through the vas deferens, the ejaculatory ducts, and the urethra. As they move through these organs, secretions from three sets of glands are added to them. The secretions form a thick, milky substance that helps the sperm on their journey to fertilize an egg. Together, the sperm and these secretions are called *semen*. On ejaculation, which occurs during intercourse, about one teaspoon of semen is released. It contains about 300 million sperm.

The erectile tissue in the penis fills with blood during sexual excitement. Pressure builds and causes the penis to become larger and firmer. The erect penis can then penetrate the vagina and expel the sperm near the cervix. From there, the sperm travel up through the uterus and into the fallopian tubes. If the timing is right, millions of sperm will meet the mature egg. They will crowd around it until one is permitted to penetrate and enter. At once, a chemical barrier will form and shut out all other sperm. The nucleus of the sperm will join the nucleus of the egg. *Conception*, or *fertilization*, will have occurred.

Methods for Planning or Preventing Pregnancy

Couples who want to plan or prevent pregnancy should investigate the methods that are available, 16-12. They should choose the one that will be most acceptable and effective for them. Though abstinence is the only sure way of preventing pregnancy, the following are the most common methods of birth control.

Hormonal Methods

Hormonal methods of family planning prevent ovulation from occurring by altering the hormone levels in a woman's body. If an egg is not released, pregnancy cannot occur. Several hormonal methods are now available.

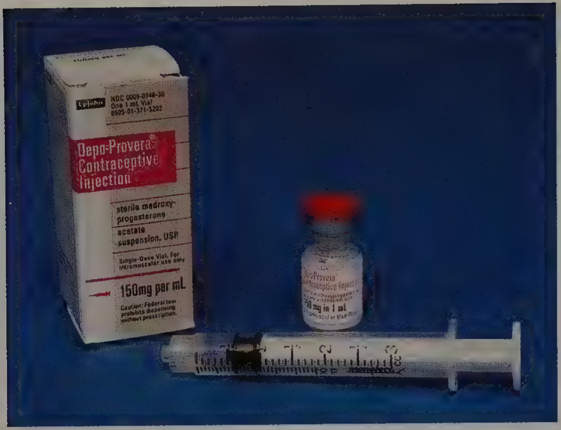
The most popular hormonal method, often referred to as "the pill," has been available since the early 1960s. Taken regularly, this *oral contraceptive* is a highly effective method of birth control. It prevents ovulation by use of synthetic hormones. Since no egg is released from the ovaries, fertilization cannot occur. The pill is simple to use and may be taken at a time independent from the sex act. For most women, merely stopping its use restores fertility. It is prescribed only after a careful examination by a physician. The most dangerous side effect is an increased tendency for some women to form blood clots. The risk of side effects increases for smokers, especially those over age 35. Regular checkups can reveal any problems.

16-12 **An engaged couple should discuss family planning during the engagement period.**

Another hormonal method involves a contraceptive injection (shot) given in the buttock or upper arm. The shot prevents pregnancy for a specified period of time (usually several weeks or months), 16-13. It contains a synthetic hormone that prevents a woman's egg cells from ripening and being released (ovulation). Possible side effects include bleeding, missed periods, breast pain, weight gain, headaches, and nausea.

In 2001, two new hormonal methods were approved by the FDA. One involves a patch placed on the skin that releases hormones into the bloodstream, preventing pregnancy. The skin patch, less than two inches in diameter, is placed on the lower abdomen, buttocks, or upper body, but not to the breast. A new patch is applied each week. It is replaced on the same day of each week for a total of three weeks. During the fourth week, a patch is not worn, allowing a woman to have her menstrual period. This is similar to the regimen for birth control pills. The patch must be prescribed by a doctor. Disadvantages of this method are skin irritation from the patch and having a patch detach from the skin before a week ends. Other risks are similar to those of other hormonal methods of birth control.

The other hormonal method approved by the FDA is a vaginal contraceptive ring. This flexible, transparent ring is placed in the vagina where it releases hormones that prevent conception. The woman inserts and removes the ring herself. Once inserted, it releases a continuous low dose of hormones. The ring remains in the vagina for three


Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection
sterile medroxyprogesterone acetate suspension, USP
150mg per mL

16-13 **An injection of Depo-Provera can protect against pregnancy for three months.**

weeks and is then removed for one week to start the woman's menstrual period. At the end of the fourth week, the woman inserts a new ring to continue the method.

Barrier Methods

Barrier methods of family planning prevent the sperm from reaching the egg, making conception impossible. Several barrier methods can be used.

Spermicides contain a chemical that immobilizes or kills sperm on contact. Spermicides are available as creams, foams, or jellies and may be purchased without a prescription. The preparation is deposited in the upper vaginal canal a short time before intercourse. Spermicides used without barrier contraceptives (such as a condom or diaphragm) have a comparatively low rate of effectiveness in preventing pregnancy.

A *diaphragm* is a shallow cup of soft rubber that fits over the cervix. A similar device, called the *cervical cap*, is smaller than a diaphragm and is shaped like a thimble. Both the diaphragm and cervical cap cover the cervix and act as a mechanical barrier to sperm, preventing them from entering the uterus. Spermicidal cream or jelly should be used with these devices. The diaphragm and cervical cap must be prescribed by a physician. They are comparatively effective in preventing pregnancy, especially when used with a condom. After childbirth or a significant weight change, the devices must be refitted by a doctor.

The *condom* is a male contraceptive that fits over the erect penis and traps semen so no sperm enters the vagina. If it is defective, slips off, or ruptures, however, it provides no protection. Condoms are available at a minimal cost. They are effective if used properly, and especially if used together with a spermicide. An added advantage of the latex condom is that it provides some protection against sexually transmitted diseases. This is because it serves as a barrier between the penis and the vagina. The condom has been highly promoted as a method of preventing the spread of AIDS. However, AIDS is a fatal disease, and relying only on a condom for protection is still very risky. The best protection against contracting the HIV virus that leads to AIDS is to practice abstinence.

Intrauterine Devices

Intrauterine devices (IUDs) are small plastic or metal devices that come in a variety of shapes. An IUD is inserted into the uterus by a physician. Once inserted, it can remain in place for one to five years and effectively prevent pregnancy. IUDs can cause side effects including heavy menstrual periods and severe cramping. They can sometimes lead to pelvic inflammatory disease and infertility. Newer IUDs that have come on the market may cause less heavy periods and less cramping. Because of infections and other problems using IUDs, fewer women use these devices.

Natural Family Planning Methods

The *rhythm method* is based on abstinence during the period of the female reproductive cycle when the egg is available for fertilization. The woman determines when ovulation is likely. During this time, the couple has no sexual intercourse. For example, if a woman has a 28-day menstrual cycle and is perfectly regular, she will ovulate at the midpoint of her cycle, or on day 14. Unfortunately, the woman's cycle is not always that regular. Her cycle can be affected by stress, by general health conditions, and by changes in environmental temperature. Therefore, ovulation does not always occur on the fourteenth day.

Natural family planning involves the careful observation of signs and symptoms of fertile and infertile periods. First, the woman can note the consistency of her vaginal mucus. During the fertile period, mucus usually flows for about three to five days. Its consistency becomes like that of a raw egg white as ovulation approaches. When this change in mucus is noted, the fertile period begins, and abstinence should follow for a period of 8 to 10 days. A woman also can take her body temperature daily during this time. When it rises, the fertile period will probably end in three or four days. The effectiveness rate of natural family planning methods is comparatively low. There are no side effects.

Ineffective Methods

Withdrawal refers to the removal of the penis from the vagina before ejaculation. Some people mistakenly believe that this prevents conception. Actually, some sperm may be released into the vagina before ejaculation occurs. The effectiveness rate is very low since any semen deposited in the vagina can cause fertilization to occur.

Douching is flushing the vagina with water or other liquids. It, too, is an ineffective method of birth control.

Permanent Methods

Sterilization brings a complete end to fertility. Methods are available for both men and women. Although research is being done to find ways of reversing sterilization, these methods must be considered permanent measures. Couples who do not want children or who have decided their family is complete may choose either the *vasectomy* for the male or *tubal ligation* for the female.

A vasectomy does not destroy a man's sexual desire or performance. The procedure is simple and quick. A tiny cut is made on either side of the scrotum. Each vas deferens tube is tied or cut and sealed. The sperm are prevented from traveling the route of the vas deferens at ejaculation. This procedure does not affect any of the other secretions of the male reproductive tract.

Tubal ligation is the most common operation for female sterilization. A small cut is made below the navel, exposing the fallopian tubes. These are tied or cut and sealed. Although there are many variations to this procedure, the result is always the same. The fallopian tubes are blocked, preventing the egg from traveling to the uterus. Sterilization does not decrease a woman's femininity or sexuality. Ovulation and menstruation continue, but the eggs cannot reach the uterus.

If a Couple Cannot Have Children

Some couples who desire children cannot have them. **Infertility** is the inability of a couple to conceive despite having intercourse regularly for at least a year. About ten percent of all married couples are infertile. Most cases of infertility are due to physical causes. These include hormonal factors, blocked fallopian tubes, blocked vas deferens, or a low concentration of sperm in the semen. These conditions require medical treatment. Some cases may be due to psychological stress, though stress may also occur as a result of infertility. If a couple believe they are infertile, they should see a doctor to determine the cause of infertility and to learn of possible treatments.

For couples who have not been able to conceive, there are ways they can possibly achieve pregnancy. These include artificial insemination and in vitro fertilization. If these two methods cannot be used, couples can become parents by adopting a child.

Artificial Insemination

Through a process called **artificial insemination**, a physician places sperm directly in the upper part of a woman's vagina or uterus. This increases the chances for fertilization. If possible, the husband's sperm are used. If his sperm cannot fertilize an egg, the sperm of a donor can be used, provided the husband and wife both agree. The donor is unknown, but he is chosen carefully so that physical hereditary traits will be similar to those of the husband. If artificial insemination is chosen, legal papers are signed indicating that the husband will accept responsibility as the father of the child.

In Vitro Fertilization

Advanced technology in human reproduction has enabled development of the technique of **in vitro fertilization**. In this process, an egg is removed from a woman's ovary and fertilized in a glass dish (not a test tube). After the fertilized egg has begun cell division, it is implanted into the uterus. Babies born as a result of this technique are sometimes called "test-tube babies."

This process presents an alternative answer for couples who want children but cannot achieve pregnancy. An increasing number of fertility clinics across the country are offering this service, though it costs thousands of dollars.

Adoption

If the couple cannot have children, or if their hereditary backgrounds are such that they have been counseled against it, they may choose to adopt children, 16-14. Adopting a baby requires careful consideration. Both husband and wife should be equally in favor of the adoption. Refer to Chapters 9 and 15 for information concerning the adoption process.

Genetic Counseling

Genetic counseling is advice given by a physician to prospective parents on matters of heredity. The doctor studies the medical histories of both prospective

16-14 **Adopting a baby can bring genuine contentment to a couple who cannot have children by any other means.**

parents' families. The doctor may also examine the prospective parents for possible disease conditions. If the risk of genetic disorders is high, the couple may want to consider adoption instead of childbirth.

The best time to seek genetic counseling is before conception. However, if an expectant couple fears their baby may be born with a genetic disorder, tests can be done.

Two common tests used to identify potential genetic disorders in the fetuses of pregnant women are amniocentesis and ultrasound examinations. Chorionic villi sampling is also used in some instances.

In **amniocentesis**, a long, thin needle is inserted through the abdomen and into the uterus. Part of the fluid surrounding the fetus is drawn out and analyzed for abnormalities.

Ultrasound examinations, sometimes called sonograms, use sound waves to provide an outline or "picture" of the fetus inside the mother, 16-15. It can show whether the fetus is growing normally. The test can provide evidence of such problems as an intestinal obstruction, kidney disease, brain abnormalities, or missing arms and legs.

Chorionic villi sampling may be available in some hospitals. In this technique, the doctor uses a special instrument to remove a small amount of tissue from the embryonic membrane for testing. This test can be performed earlier in a pregnancy, and results can be determined more quickly than with amniocentesis. However, the risks to the baby are higher.

Pregnant women who are over age 35, who have a family history of hereditary disease, or who have previously given birth to a child with a disability may be especially interested in genetic tests and counseling. Couples who receive genetic counseling can then make their parenting decisions armed with all the facts available to them.

16-15 **A pregnant woman may wish to have an ultrasound examination to detect any possible hereditary defects in the fetus.**

Chapter 16 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- The most fulfilling responsibility of parenting is the nurturing of the personality of each child. Children need lots of unconditional love, and they need to be shown they are loved.
- Spousal roles have undergone many changes compared to past generations. Many of these changes are due to the employment of wives outside the home. Couples are now sharing more parenting responsibilities.
- Once you become a parent, you cannot reverse your decision. Parenthood is both a personal choice and a mutual choice.
- Factors to be considered in the parenting decision include the goals of the wife and husband, the age of the woman, career and financial considerations, the desired number of children, and the desired spacing of children.
- Basic knowledge of the human reproductive systems can help couples plan their families.
- Couples who want to choose whether and when to have a child as well as the spacing of future children may choose different methods of birth control that are available to them. They should choose the one that will be most acceptable and effective for them.
- Couples who desire children but cannot achieve a pregnancy need to seek medical counsel to determine the cause of infertility and to learn of possible treatments.
- Couples who cannot have children, or whose hereditary backgrounds are such that they have been counseled against having children, may choose to adopt.
- Genetic counseling is advice given by a physician to prospective parents on matters of heredity. Examples of tests that can identify genetic defects in fetuses are amniocentesis and ultrasound examinations.

Review

1. Describe three parenting responsibilities.
2. Briefly explain how traditional spousal roles have changed in recent years.
3. Explain how parenthood is a personal choice as well as a mutual choice.
4. List three benefits of spacing children three to four years apart.
5. Name the reproductive organ described by each of the following phrases:
   - A. Stores and matures female eggs.
   - B. Thread-like tubes connected to the uterus.
   - C. Pear-shaped organ that holds the developing fetus.
   - D. The neck of the uterus.
   - E. Organ in the male that produces the sperm.
   - F. Thick, milky secretion containing the sperm.
   - G. Long tubes leading from testes to the ejaculatory ducts.
   - H. Elongated structures next to the testes.
6. The only sure way of preventing pregnancy is _____.
7. Name three ways hormones used to prevent ovulation can enter a woman's body.
8. Describe the rhythm method of birth control.
9. A _____ is a sterilization method for men.
10. _____ is the most common sterilization method for women.
11. Name two technological alternatives for couples who have not been able to achieve a pregnancy through sexual intercourse.
12. What is included in genetic counseling?

React

1. Ask two married couples to come to class to discuss how they share their parenting responsibilities.
2. Find pictures and cartoons that depict parenting roles. Discuss the differences and similarities of the roles and how they have changed from the past. Post the images on the bulletin board.
3. Use the Internet to find information concerning family planning or look for articles in newspapers and magazines. Also look for information on the newest methods of family planning. Write a brief summary of each.
4. Have several small-group discussions on the topics below, and share the results with the rest of the class. For each group, appoint a leader to record responses and report them to the class.

   Group A—Genetic counseling. Suppose your neighbor fell in love with a person whose heritage included an obvious hereditary disorder. Should the couple consider genetic counseling? What traits, characteristics, or disorders might prompt them to seek genetic counseling?

   Group B—Selecting the sex of a child. Should people be able to select the gender of their future children? Consider the consequences if all firstborn children were boys, or if all were girls. Consider the impact on business, politics, education, marriage, and families if gender selection were possible.

   Group C—Control of families and population. Some sociologists have proposed that family size be controlled by the government. Should people have to "apply to the government" in order to have their first child? What about their twelfth? Discuss the implications of world population growth for the future. (Interested students may wish to read *Future Shock* by Alvin Toffler.)

Reflect

1. Make a list of parenting responsibilities. Discuss whether most teens are ready to handle these responsibilities.
2. How many children, if any, would you like to have someday? Why?
3. If you lost your spouse through death or divorce, do you think you could cope well as a single parent? What support systems could you call upon or create to help you?
4. Would you consider adopting a child? How would you react if the child wanted to find his or her birthparents?

Chapter 17

A Baby Is Born

Terms to Know

- conception
- endometrium
- placenta
- amnio-chorionic membrane
- amniotic fluid
- embryo
- fetus
- quickening
- fetal alcohol syndrome
- miscarriage
- lightening
- Lamaze method
- Leboyer method
- family-centered childbirth
- cesarean section
- bonding
- postpartum period
- lactation

17-1 **The birth of a child is a joyful event.**

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- identify signs of pregnancy.
- describe the changes that occur during pregnancy.
- summarize important health practices for pregnant women.
- explain the process of childbirth.
- describe methods of childbirth.

When a couple is told they are going to be parents, it is an emotional time. Emotions can range from excitement and delight to fear and doubt. The announcement may be long awaited or come as a complete surprise. It may be welcomed or, in some cases, it may cause concern. Whichever the case, the months of pregnancy may seem to last forever, but the birthing process lasts only a comparatively short time. The birth of a baby is an emotional experience for new parents, 17-1.

Evidence of Pregnancy

The majority of married couples want children and are able to have them. Out of every 100 married women of childbearing age who have normal marital relations, 80 will become pregnant within a year. (This statistic assumes that no form of birth control is used.)

When a woman suspects she is pregnant, she has three sources of evidence to confirm it. These are her own observations of symptoms of pregnancy, the physician's observations, and laboratory tests.

The Woman's Observations

The woman will become aware of several symptoms of pregnancy. When she suspects pregnancy, she should make an appointment with her doctor so these symptoms may be confirmed. The following are common signs of pregnancy:

- ***Cessation of menstruation***. When an expected period of menstruation is missed by more than 10 days, under normal circumstances, pregnancy is likely. When the second period is also missed, the probability becomes stronger. There are times, however, when a woman might delay or miss her period for other reasons, such as stress or illness.
- ***Breast changes***. These changes may be one of the first symptoms noted by the woman. The breasts become larger, fuller, and more tender with a sensation of stretching. This is often accompanied by a tingling feeling in the breast and nipple. The *areola*, the pigmented area around the nipple, becomes darker in color, widens in diameter, and becomes puffy.
- ***Frequency of urination***. The growing uterus stretches the base of the bladder, causing the bladder to feel heavy. As pregnancy progresses, the uterus stretches and rises out of the pelvis, so the frequency of urination lessens. However, it increases again when the fetus becomes larger and actually presses against the bladder.
- ***Nausea***. About one-third of pregnant women experience waves of nausea for a few hours each day. In another third, the nausea will actually cause vomiting. This "morning sickness" may begin about two weeks after the first missed menstrual period. It usually ends after a month or six weeks, and almost always by the end of the third month.

The Physician's Examination and Tests

During a woman's first visit to confirm pregnancy, the physician will give her a thorough physical examination. The physician will also run lab tests and question her about her medical history.

The physician will give the woman a pelvic examination. He or she will study the woman's reproductive organs and note any changes that would indicate pregnancy. The woman's blood pressure will be taken, and samples of blood and urine will be sent to a lab for tests. The physician will note any changes in the breasts.

If pregnancy is confirmed, the physician will tell the woman what to expect. A possible birth date will be determined based on a formula, 17-2. During later visits, the physician will check the growth of the fetus and watch for abnormalities. The physician will advise the woman as needed and answer any questions she may have.

Laboratory Tests

For most women, confirmation of suspected pregnancy is done during a visit to a doctor eight to 10 weeks after conception (as previously described). However, a woman may want to know earlier than this for either medical or psychological reasons. She may be able to find out as early as one week after her missed menstrual period. She can go to her family doctor, an *obstetrician* (physician specializing in pregnancy), a medical lab, or a health clinic for a laboratory test. Home test kits are also available in drugstores or supermarkets. These tests are fairly accurate if instructions are carefully followed.

The most common test is an examination of a urine specimen. The presence of certain hormones in the urine confirms pregnancy.

The Developing Baby

Within about nine calendar months, one single cell can develop into a human being. This process follows a precise series of events, beginning at conception and ending at birth.

Conception

The instant a sperm and egg unite, **conception** or fertilization takes place, and pregnancy begins. Within hours, the fertilized egg begins to divide into two cells, then four, then eight, and so forth. It continues to grow rapidly as it moves down a fallopian tube, a trip that takes about four days. By the time the egg reaches the uterus, it has become a hollow ball of cells that implants in the **endometrium** or inner lining of the uterus.

Then the placenta forms between the endometrium and the hollow ball of cells. The **placenta** is a special organ that functions as an interchange between the developing fetus and the mother. It allows nutrients, oxygen, and water to reach the fetus, and waste products from the fetus to be passed to the mother.

When Will the Baby Be Born?

Note the first day of the last normal menstrual period.

↓

Count back three months from this date.

↓

Add seven days.

↓

This is the approximate birth date.

Counting from the first day of the last menstrual period, the average duration is 40 weeks, or 280 days. This is about nine calendar months.

17-2 This formula can be used to estimate the birth date of a baby.

Forming around the developing cells are two membranes. The outer membrane, or *chorion*, slips against the inner bag, or *amnion*. Together they form the **amnio-chorionic membrane** or "bag of waters." Inside the amnio-chorionic membrane is **amniotic fluid** that completely surrounds the fetus. This fluid maintains an even temperature for the fetus and cushions it against possible injury. The fluid also provides a medium in which the fetus can move easily.

Month-by-Month Development

The development of a baby can be studied by noting the changes that take place each month during pregnancy. The developing baby is called an **embryo** from implantation through the eighth week of pregnancy. From the ninth week of pregnancy through birth, the developing baby is called a **fetus**.

End of First Month

At this stage, the embryo is about 1/2 inch in length. Its heart resembles a bulging gland and is pulsating and sending blood through microscopic arteries. The backbone and spinal column are forming, as well as the digestive system and lungs. Buds that will become arms and legs have formed.

End of Second Month

The embryo is about 1 1/8 inches in length and weighs about 1/30 of an ounce. The face and features are forming, and eyelids are fused. The limbs show distinct elbows, hands, knees, and feet. The internal organs are developing.

End of Third Month

The developing child, which is now called a fetus, is about 4 inches in length and weighs about 1 ounce. The arms, hands, fingers, legs, feet, and toes are fully formed, as well as the fingernails and toenails. Ears are present. Tooth sockets and buds for teeth are forming in jawbones. Eyes are almost fully developed, but lids are still fused.

End of Fourth Month

The fetus is about 6 1/2 inches in length and weighs about 5 ounces. Fine, downy hair appears over the skin. The skin is transparent and thin. The fingerprint has formed. There is a strong heartbeat and active muscles. Eyebrows now appear.

End of Fifth Month

The fetus is 9 to 12 inches in length and weighs 1/2 to 1 pound. The internal organs are maturing quickly, but the lungs are insufficiently developed to cope with conditions outside the uterus. The fetus moves a lot. The skin is less transparent. Some hair is present on the head. The eyelids are still completely fused.

End of Sixth Month

The fetus measures 12 to 14 inches and weighs 1 to 1 1/2 pounds. The skin is very wrinkled, with no fat layers visible beneath it. Skin is covered by a fatty secretion. Eyelids finally separate, and eyelashes are formed. The fetus can open and close its eyes. It can hear and respond to sounds.

End of Seventh Month

The fetus measures about 15 inches in length and weighs about 2 to 3 pounds. The skin is still wrinkled with little fat under the surface. The baby is more active and gaining weight and size quickly. If the fetus is born at seven months, it has a good chance of survival if cared for by skilled physicians.

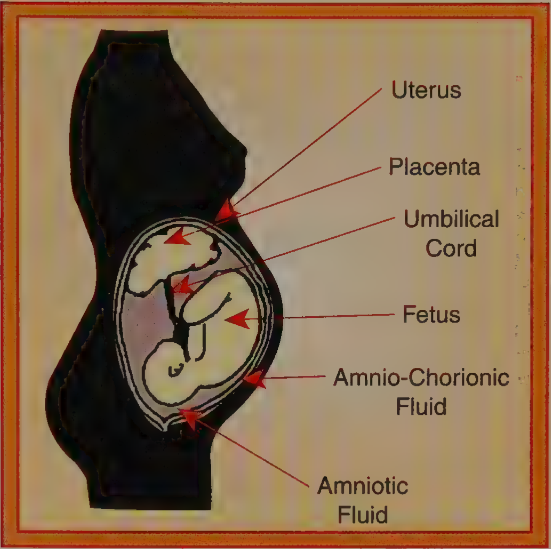
End of Eighth Month

The fetus measures about 18 inches and weighs about 5 pounds. The fetus is putting on more weight, and its internal organs are continuing to develop. Skin color is now pink instead of red. Rapid brain growth occurs. The fetus kicks strongly.

End of Ninth Month

During the last month, the fetus gains about half a pound each week. The fine, downy hair that had covered the skin has disappeared. The fingernails may protrude over the end of the fingers. The skin is pink and still coated with the protective fatty secretion. The baby's lungs are mature.

Full term has now been reached, 17-3. The fetus is ready to be born. Its length is about 20 inches. The average weight is 6 1/2 to 7 1/2 pounds for a girl and 7 1/2 to 8 pounds for a boy.

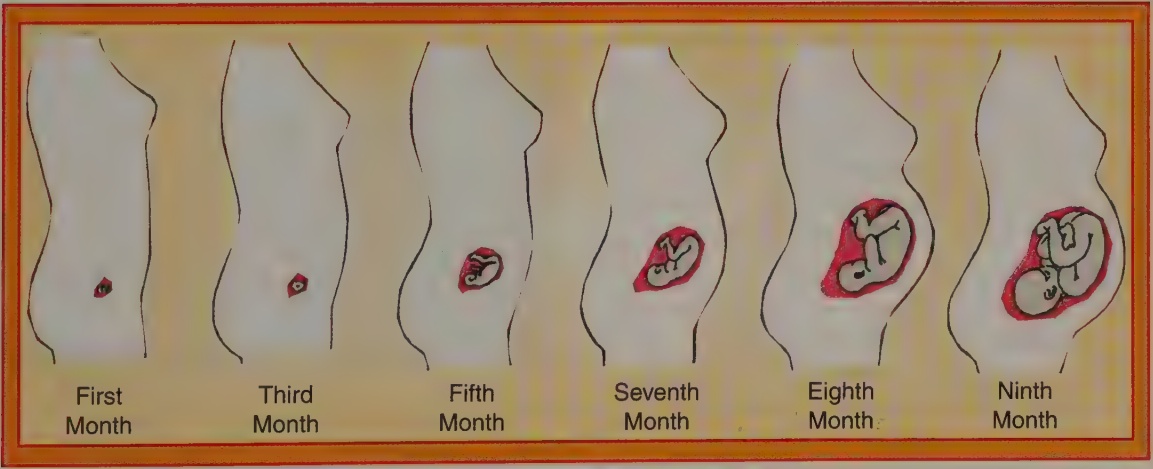

Uterus
Placenta
Umbilical Cord
Fetus
Amnio-Chorionic Fluid
Amniotic Fluid

17-3 **This fully developed fetus is ready to be born.**

Changes the Mother Will Notice During Pregnancy

During the first three to four months, abdominal changes are not noticeable. As early as the third month, the woman may be able to feel a lump just above the pubic bone, but it is not noticeable to others. It gradually enlarges to reach the navel by the fifth month. By this time it begins to show. See 17-4.

During the last half of pregnancy, pinkish streaks may appear over the woman's abdomen. These represent small breaks in the lower layer of skin, which is less elastic than the upper layer. These "stretch marks" usually fade after the baby is born. It also helps to keep weight gain under control.


First Month
Third Month
Fifth Month
Seventh Month
Eighth Month
Ninth Month

17-4 **Noticeable abdominal changes occur in the latter half of pregnancy.**

Near the end of the fifth month of pregnancy, the woman may feel active movements of the fetus. These first movements are referred to as **quickening**. This usually occurs as a flutter low in the abdomen. The first stirring of the baby is faint, but as time goes on, the movements grow stronger. They may occasionally disturb the mother's sleep during the later weeks.

Care of the Mother

The health of the developing baby is directly related to the health of the mother during pregnancy. Her history of health before conception can also affect the baby.

Diet and Nutrition

During pregnancy, a woman needs to be especially careful about the foods she eats, 17-5. Her diet affects not only her own health, but also the health of her unborn child. She needs a well-balanced diet that includes a variety of nutritious foods.

If the woman has followed a well-balanced diet throughout her life, she will not need to make many changes during pregnancy. Her doctor may recommend adding some foods to her diet or taking a few dietary supplements such as vitamins and iron. It is recommended that pregnant women consume three servings of milk or milk products daily to meet their need for calcium.

A pregnant woman should be sure to consume enough of a B vitamin called *folic acid* to reduce her baby's risk of spinal-column birth defects, including *spina bifida*. A disabling disease, spina bifida is associated with insufficient intake of folic acid during pregnancy. Foods rich in folic acid include leafy dark green vegetables, such as spinach and broccoli, and citrus fruits, such as oranges.

If the woman is poorly nourished, the stress of pregnancy may make her nutritional deficiencies more apparent. Unless she changes her eating habits and pays strict attention to her diet, she and her baby

Cholla Runnels

17-5 Nutrition is especially important during pregnancy. Fresh fruits such as apples are good snack foods.

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Pregnancy Myths and Facts

Responsible care of children begins before birth. There are many myths concerning the pregnancy period, including the following:

Myth: "It really doesn't matter what a pregnant woman eats—the baby will take whatever it needs from the mother."

Fact: Nature simply doesn't work the way this myth claims it does. Proper nutrition is essential to life. The quality of the mother's diet makes an immense difference in the health of the newborn.

Myth: "A pregnant woman should not gain too much weight."

Fact: In previous years, toxemia (a metabolic disorder that affects blood) was thought to be caused by a large weight gain. However, toxemia more likely occurs in women underweight at conception, especially if they fail to gain adequate weight during pregnancy. Gaining adequate weight is associated with a baby of higher birthweight. Babies of higher birthweight are generally healthier and have fewer problems during the first year of life.

Myth: "Since a pregnant woman is eating for two, she should eat twice as much as usual."

Fact: Pregnancy can be thought of as an energy equation. A woman needs about 80,000 extra calories during pregnancy, and these calories should come from eating extra foods. This averages out to about 300 extra calories a day. However, the nutrients contained in these foods are more important than the calories. Pregnancy is tissue-building time. A new human being is being created. The nutrients in greatest need are protein, vitamins, and minerals.

Myth: "You can make up for a haphazard diet before pregnancy by eating well for the next nine months."

Fact: The mother's health and well-being before pregnancy may be as important as how she eats during her pregnancy. When pregnancy occurs, cell division and development occur immediately. Vital organs are developed and functioning by the end of the first month. This development depends on healthful contributions from the mother. Good nutrition during pregnancy is very important, but it cannot make up for poor nutrition before pregnancy.

Myth: "A woman can have babies close together with no risk to her or her infant's health."

Fact: Women should wait at least nine months between pregnancies to improve the chances of producing healthy, full-term infants. Women need to pause between pregnancies so they can build up the nutritional reserves necessary for a growing fetus. From a psychological standpoint, child development professionals advise spacing children at least two years apart. Proper birth spacing avoids undue emotional stress, both on parents and on children.

may develop health problems. This is especially evident in teenage pregnancies. Besides possibly being underdeveloped, many teens are undernourished and unprepared for the physical stress of pregnancy. Research has shown that babies of undernourished teens have a greater chance of being born premature or with birth defects. These babies may also lack adequate nutrient reserves to protect them through birth and the first two months of life.

Weight Control

Weight gain in pregnancy is very important, 17-6. The doctor will set guidelines for the woman and help her gain the right amount of weight. For most women, a total gain of between 25 and 35 pounds is typically recommended.

17-6 Weight gain during pregnancy should be monitored closely.

During the first three months of pregnancy, the average woman should gain about two to four pounds. During the next six months, the woman should gain slightly less than one pound a week. A sudden large weight gain might be due to excess fluid in the body tissues rather than a normal growth of the fetus. Thus, any spurt in weight gain should be mentioned to the doctor so possible problems can be avoided.

Gaining too much weight usually means the woman is eating the wrong foods. Extra weight adds a burden to the woman's back and legs and may make delivery more difficult. Today, doctors are just as concerned about women who gain too little weight. Babies who are too small may have more health problems during the first months of life.

Just before delivery, an average fetus weighs 7 1/2 pounds. The placenta, amniotic fluid, uterus growth, and breast growth account for about 6 1/2 more pounds. The extra blood and fluid in the woman's tissues weigh about 5 pounds. Additional body fat accounts for the other weight gain. Within a month after delivery, the woman will have lost about 15 pounds. She should return to her pre-pregnancy weight within six to twelve months.

Exercise

Pregnant women are not invalids. On the contrary, continued exercise is beneficial to their general good health, 17-7. Walking is especially good since it aids digestion and circulation.

Each woman should consult her physician about exercise during pregnancy. Most doctors agree that, in general, healthy pregnant women can continue the types of exercise they were doing before pregnancy, if the exercise is done in moderation. However, exercise that involves lying on one's back is not recommended after 28 weeks of pregnancy. Such exercise may interrupt the flow of oxygen to the fetus. The doctor may also advise against horseback riding, diving, or any other strenuous exercise. Women may be advised to work out more slowly and to rest a few minutes several times a day.

Employment

Most employed women continue to work when they become pregnant. If a woman is in good health and her job is not too tiring, she may work almost until the due date for her baby. In each case, the woman's doctor should be consulted for advice.

Smoking

Smoking is not healthy for anyone. This is especially true for pregnant women. Smoking is detrimental to the health of the developing baby. Mothers who smoke heavily increase the risk of miscarriage or premature delivery. They also tend to have smaller babies. Smaller babies are more likely to develop health problems early in infancy than babies of normal weight. These children may also have learning problems in school. If ever a woman wanted to stop smoking, this would be a good time to do it.

Alcohol and Illegal Drugs

Alcohol passes through the placenta quickly. The unborn baby feels a drink as quickly as the mother does. Alcohol stays in a baby's blood longer than in the mother's. Drinking during pregnancy is not advised. Mothers who drink alcohol during pregnancy are more likely to miscarry, have a stillbirth, or have a low-birthweight baby.

17-7 Moderate exercise is beneficial to the health of most pregnant women.

Studies have shown that children of alcoholic mothers are sometimes born with a pattern of defects known as **fetal alcohol syndrome**. Common defects are growth deficiencies and limited mental capacities. The children usually have narrow eyes, low nasal bridges, and short upturned noses. Many are jittery and poorly coordinated, with short attention spans and behavioral problems. If you are pregnant, don't drink. If you drink heavily, don't become pregnant.

Illegal drugs, such as heroin, cocaine, marijuana, and amphetamines, can damage anyone's health and can be especially harmful to an unborn baby. Drug users are more likely to have miscarriages or premature deliveries. Babies born to drug users may have physical disabilities, brain damage, respiratory problems, and low birthweights.

The child of a drug addict may actually be born addicted to the same drug as the mother. The baby will then go through withdrawal from the drug after birth. Some babies do not survive this withdrawal period.

Use of Medications and Exposure to X Rays

Whenever an expectant mother is feeling ill, she should consult her physician. She should never take any over-the-counter or prescription medications unless they are recommended by her physician. This includes aspirin, vitamins, stomach remedies, laxatives, antibiotics, and sleeping pills. Tetracycline, a commonly prescribed antibiotic, can affect the development of the baby's bones and teeth. Even aspirin can cause the baby to bleed. The total effect of drugs taken during pregnancy is unknown, but a "better safe than sorry" approach is best, 17-8.

Exposure to radiation from X rays also poses risks to the fetus. Radiation can cause congenital disabilities in the developing baby. If a woman is pregnant or if there is even a small possibility she is pregnant, she should be sure to let her physician and dentist know. Dentists have women wear protective lead aprons during X rays. If possible, X rays should be postponed until after the baby is born. If X rays are necessary, the patient should be sure to tell the doctor and the X ray technician about the pregnancy before the X rays are taken. A pregnant woman should not work near X-ray machines (for example, in a hospital laboratory or medical office) during her pregnancy.

Miscarriage

Miscarriage refers to the birth of the baby before it has developed enough to live in the outside world. This usually means before the sixth month. (Physicians refer to this as *spontaneous abortion*.) Miscarriages are not rare. In fact, medical authorities estimate that as many as half of fertilizations end in miscarriage. Most of these occur in the first three months of pregnancy. Often, the woman miscarries before she is aware that she is pregnant.

Most miscarriages occur as nature tries to get rid of an imperfect embryo. More than half of all miscarriages are thought to be traceable to imperfect embryos. Thus, one miscarriage should not discourage a woman from becoming pregnant again.

Other miscarriages are caused by maternal conditions or diseases. Anemia (lack of iron) may cause a woman's body to reject any further burden. Lack of vitamin B may cause her to be incapable of

17-8 The total effect of drugs and medications taken during pregnancy is still unknown. A woman should use only those that are recommended by her physician.

carrying the fetus to full term. If she has a tumor, a tilted uterus, or abnormal hormone secretions, miscarriage may follow.

Time for Delivery

When the time for delivery arrives, the couple will be excited. Delivery is the climax of long months of anticipation and planning, 17-9. It is a time that is full of activity, but it is not a time to panic. The doctor will have told the couple what to expect and what to do when the time for delivery arrives.

Toward the end of pregnancy, the uterus sinks downward and forward. This is called **lightening** because it relieves abdominal pressure and makes breathing easier. Lightening is the result of the passage of the baby's head into the pelvic cavity and is actually the first step in the birth of the baby. It is often followed by feelings of greater pressure. The woman may have pains in her legs and may notice an increase in vaginal discharge. For women having their first baby, lightening can occur at any time during the last month. For women who have had previous babies, lightening is more likely to occur after labor begins.

The Onset of Labor

The onset of labor is heralded by one or more of three signs:

- painful, recurrent contractions of the uterus (labor pains)
- passage of a small amount of blood-tinged mucous (the *show*)
- passage of liquid from the vagina (rupture of the amnio-chorionic membrane or *bag of waters*)

At the onset, labor pains are usually located in the small of the back. After a few hours, they move to the front. They begin as a slight twinge, build in intensity, reach a peak that is maintained for a few seconds, and then diminish gradually.

The pains are caused by contractions of the uterus. They are spaced evenly and return in a rhythmic pattern. The time between contractions is entirely free from pain. As labor progresses, the contractions become closer together. They continue rhythmically, and they increase in severity.

Some women mistake true labor for "false labor." The intensity of false labor pains remains equal from the outset and

17-9 **When the delivery time nears, couples should be ready for their new arrival.**

does not increase with time. False labor pains occur at irregular intervals and are not rhythmical.

Many women make false runs to the hospital. Doctors prefer they come to the hospital if they think they are in labor. This is better than taking the medical risks involved in possibly having the baby at home.

The Three Stages of Labor

The birth of a child follows a precise pattern and is divided into three stages. The stages of labor vary in length and in intensity of pain.

Dilation Stage

The first stage of labor is the *dilation stage*. It begins with the first uterine contraction and ends when the baby's head is in the vagina or birth canal. It may last as long as 12 to 18 hours for a first delivery. It may be as short as two to three hours for subsequent babies. The average duration is about nine hours.

The pains at the beginning are slight and far apart. Pain relief is not necessary at first, but it is sometimes given toward the end of this stage. The cervix must dilate (open up) before the infant can be expelled from the uterus. Each contraction of the uterus dilates the cervix slightly. Often the amnio-chorionic membrane will rupture toward the end of this stage.

Expulsion Stage

The second stage of labor, the *expulsion stage*, begins when the cervix is fully dilated and the baby's head is in the birth canal. It ends with the birth of the baby. This stage is much shorter than the first stage, averaging 45 minutes. The uterine contractions continue to push out the baby. The pains are the most severe at this point, but the woman can be anesthetized now, for there is no danger of stopping labor.

As the baby's head moves down the birth canal, the amnio-chorionic membrane breaks if it has not already broken in the first stage. The doctor can see the baby's head. This event is known as *crowning*. At this point, an *episiotomy* may be performed. This involves an incision (cut) in the tissues next to the opening of the birth canal. An episiotomy allows more room for the passage of the baby and prevents any tearing of these tissues.

After the head is out of the birth canal, the doctor gently turns the baby's head so the shoulders can come out more easily. When the baby is born, the second stage of labor is over. The baby is helped to breathe, and the *umbilical cord* (which links the baby to the placenta) is cut. The baby is examined thoroughly and weighed.

Afterbirth Stage

The third stage of labor, the *afterbirth stage*, usually lasts only about 10 to 15 minutes. The uterine contractions continue and cause the placenta to separate from the uterine wall. When the placenta is expelled, it is examined to be sure that none of the tissues have torn and remained in the uterus.

Methods of Childbirth

Today, couples have options about how their children will be born. If a couple want a certain method, they should discuss their wishes with their doctor.

Traditional Method

This method of childbirth is used in most hospitals. It is very protective of both the mother and baby. The mother is given local or general anesthetics as needed to reduce discomfort. Monitoring equipment checks the baby's progress. Husbands may or may not be in the labor and delivery rooms. After birth, the woman is taken to a recovery room, and the baby is taken to a nursery, 17-10.

Lamaze Method

This method of childbirth was developed in France. The **Lamaze method** of childbirth is based on the theory that the pain of childbirth can be controlled by the woman. The pain cannot be eliminated, but it can be tolerated so the woman can enjoy the childbearing experience.

During the last two months of pregnancy, the couple attend several Lamaze training sessions. They prepare themselves for working as a team during the birth process. The woman learns exercises in breathing and muscle control that will help her control her body during labor. Instead of becoming tense when a contraction begins, she will be able to relax her muscles and focus her attention on her breathing. In the Lamaze method, the husband acts as a "labor coach." He encourages his wife to relax and breathe properly. In most cases, he is allowed to be with her in the delivery room. He helps her during the actual childbirth just as he has helped her during the training sessions.

Generally, women who have had Lamaze training need less medication during labor than women who have not had this training. In fact, some Lamaze-trained women receive no medication at all.

Leboyer Method

The **Leboyer method** of childbirth focuses on the birth experience of the baby. Its goal is to make the birth process less shocking and more comforting for the baby. Before birth, the environment of the fetus is dark, warm, and quiet. In the Leboyer method, a similar environment is provided after birth so the baby's adjustment to life outside the uterus is gradual. The lights of the delivery room are dimmed and everyone in the delivery room speaks in low voices. Immediately after birth, the baby is placed on the mother's warm, soft abdomen. When the baby is separated from skin-to-skin contact with the mother, he or she is placed in warm water.

The Leboyer method is accepted in varying degrees. Some hospitals and doctors accept all of it. Others accept only certain parts of the method. For instance, physicians may agree with the need for

ANTHONY
DAPAILE

17-10 The nursery in a hospital is staffed with pediatric nurses who are trained to care for newborns.

low voices and immediate skin-to-skin contact. However, they may say that bright light is needed to examine the baby properly.

Family-Centered Childbirth

Family-centered childbirth is based on the belief that birth affects the family as a unit as well as each individual family member. Some hospitals have "birthing rooms" where a woman can have her baby in a homelike setting and still have access to any medical facilities she may need.

The father is encouraged to remain with the mother throughout labor and delivery. Other support people may be present during labor and delivery if the mother so desires and the physician approves. The mother, father, and all support people who plan to witness the birth must first attend childbirth classes. These classes prepare them for what will take place in the delivery room.

The mother and father participate in the labor and delivery as they have learned in their childbirth classes. An obstetrical nurse or certified nurse-midwife is usually with them throughout labor and delivery. A physician may be present for the delivery or may just be on call if complications arise. The medical personnel encourage and support the natural forces of labor, interfering as little as possible. They try to make sure that the birth goes well while respecting the family's wishes to share this important experience.

After the birth, the baby, mother, and father may spend as much time together as they wish. Brothers and sisters may visit throughout the day. In some hospitals, the mother and baby are released within 24 hours of birth.

Cesarean Section

Sometimes a surgical procedure must be performed for a birth to occur. In a **cesarean section**, the walls of the abdomen and uterus are cut, and the baby is lifted out of the uterus. The operation is faster than a normal delivery. However, it is a major operation, and the recovery period of the mother is longer. Also, there are more chances for complications.

Cesarean sections are performed for several reasons. One is that the mother's pelvic cage may be too small to permit the baby to pass through. Some cesarean sections are performed to end a prolonged or difficult labor due to the size, position, or condition of the baby. Also, once a woman has had a cesarean section, other babies may need to be born this way.

After the Baby Is Born

Bonding begins from the moment of birth, 17-11. **Bonding** is the beginning of the formation of close emotional ties

17-11 For bonding to begin, it is important for mother and baby to be together as much as possible from the moment of birth.

between the mother and her baby. Both have been through the stress of birth. The baby needs to be comforted and the mother needs to relax. She needs to have a few moments to hold and caress her newborn. If the father has been present during the delivery, he can be a part of this early bonding, too. The bonding should continue as much as possible during the hospital stay.

A woman will probably stay in the hospital for a few days after delivery. Some go home after 24 hours if the mother and baby are doing well.

The **postpartum period** is the period of time following the delivery of the baby. During this time, the mother should try to get all the rest she can. Her body has been through a lot, and she needs to recuperate. She must make both physical and emotional adjustments as she returns to her "normal" state.

A period of six to eight weeks is required after childbirth for the uterus and other pelvic structures to return to their former condition. Most women feel quite well during this period if their deliveries were normal.

Lactation

All during pregnancy, the breasts have been undergoing many changes in preparation for providing milk for the baby. These changes will continue for three days after birth. At that time, the breasts will be enlarged and filled with milk. The secretion of milk from the breasts is called **lactation**.

Most babies will be put to the breast about eight hours after delivery, even though the milk is not yet ready. The baby will receive colostrum, the precursor of milk. Colostrum has a higher content of protein, antibodies, vitamins, and minerals than milk. It has a lower content of sugars and fats. Colostrum provides the infant with heightened immunity to certain illnesses. It also helps the intestinal tract begin to function.

The breasts become even fuller by the third day, and the baby will probably not be able to use all the milk that is ready. The woman's body will adjust to the demands of her child.

Women choose to breast-feed their babies for several reasons, 17-12. Breast-feeding is more economical than formula-feeding. For some women, breast-feeding is more convenient. Another advantage of

17-12 Breast-feeding is economical and convenient. It supplies the baby with human milk, the ideal food for newborns.

breast-feeding is that it supplies human milk, which is the ideal food for newborns. It contains most of the nutrients necessary for maintenance, growth, and development during the first months of life. Human milk is sweeter than cows' milk, and the proteins are easier to digest.

Some people feel that breast-feeding causes women and their children to grow emotionally closer. However, this has not been proven. All babies should be cuddled a great deal regardless of the way they are fed. The cuddling has a much greater effect on the children's emotional health than the method of feeding.

Some mothers cannot breast-feed their babies, and some choose not to do so. One advantage of bottle-feeding is that the husband and wife can share the experience of feeding their child, 17-13. Another is that the formula is consistent in composition, and there is always enough to satisfy the baby's needs.

Bottle-feeding is less tiring to the mother, and she may feel she has an easier time controlling her recovery. In addition, bottle-feeding makes it easier for an employed mother to return to work.

David Hopper

17-13 Bottle-feeding allows the father to share the experience of feeding his child.

apter 17 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Evidence of pregnancy can be confirmed by the woman's observations, by a physician's examination, and by pregnancy testing.
- Conception occurs the instant a sperm and egg unite. This is followed by a specific pattern of development until birth, which occurs about nine calendar months later.
- The health of the developing baby is directly related to the health of the mother during pregnancy as well as her history of health before conception.
- Most miscarriages occur as nature tries to get rid of an imperfect embryo.
- The three stages of labor are the dilation stage, expulsion stage, and afterbirth stage.
- There are several methods of childbirth: traditional, Lamaze, Leboyer, family-centered childbirth, and cesarean section.
- Babies may be either breast-fed or formula-fed. Both methods have advantages and disadvantages.

Review

1. List three evidences of pregnancy that the woman can observe.
2. List four functions of the amniotic fluid.
3. From the _____ week of pregnancy until birth, the developing baby is called a fetus.
4. _____ refers to the active movements of the fetus.
5. What is the recommended weight gain for an average woman during pregnancy?
6. What is fetal alcohol syndrome?
7. How can a woman tell true labor pains from false labor pains?
8. Which method of childbirth is based on the theory that although the pain of childbirth cannot be eliminated, it can be tolerated so the woman can enjoy the childbearing experience?
9. The emotional tie that begins to form between mother and baby immediately after birth is called _____.
10. Name two advantages of breast-feeding and two advantages of bottle-feeding.

React

1. Ask an obstetrician or an obstetric nurse to talk to your class about the care of a mother during pregnancy, fetal development, and labor and delivery.
2. Invite several parents to tell your class about their experiences during pregnancy and childbirth.
3. Refer to nutrition charts and compare the dietary needs of pregnant and nonpregnant women. Plan a week's diet for a pregnant woman.
4. Investigate the hospitals in your area. Ask about the available methods of childbirth, the costs involved, the average length of stay, etc. Report back to the class.

Reflect

1. Imagine that you are a pregnant wife, and the future baby's gender is unknown. Your husband has just told you he will be unhappy if it is not a boy. How do you feel? What should you say?
2. Imagine you are a husband and your wife has just become pregnant. She refuses to listen to her doctor, is eating poorly, and is continuing to smoke and to drink alcoholic beverages. What would you say to her? How could you help her?
3. Imagine that you are a mother who has just given birth to a first baby. You have experience in taking care of babies, but your husband doesn't. He wants to help care for the baby, but doesn't know how. How could you help him feel included? What kinds of tasks could you help him learn first?
4. Imagine you are a husband and that your wife has just miscarried a baby you both wanted very much. What can you do to deal constructively with your feelings? Name three ways you can provide emotional support to your wife.

Chapter 18

Your New Baby

Terms to Know

fontanels
tonic neck reflex
rooting reflex
grasp reflex
startle reflex
Babinski reflex
sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS)
physical development
mitten grasp
pincer grip
intellectual development
social development
separation anxiety
emotional development

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- describe how parenthood changes the roles of husband and wife.
- identify characteristics and abilities of newborns.
- describe scheduling, feeding, bath, and clothing needs of infants.
- summarize the physical, intellectual, social, and emotional growth and development of children during the first year.
- recognize the special needs of children with physical or mental disabilities.

The birth of your first baby will probably be one of the proudest moments of your life. It is a joyful occasion.

Parenthood gives you an even deeper appreciation of your mate. Together you realize a sense of completion as you reflect on the pregnancy period. You feel anticipation as you look ahead to new plans for your family. Throughout parenthood, you need to offer each other support. This strengthens your husband-wife relationship and adds to the feeling of security for the child. The best possible environment for your family is one in which your love for each other grows along with your love for your child.

Parenthood Brings New Roles

Your new roles as parents will be both exciting and tiring. You will have many joys as well as worries. You will face new demands as you realize the complete dependence of your new baby on you as parents. As you watch your child pass through the developmental phases of childhood, you will be developing your parenthood skills.

Parenthood causes changes. As parents, you may experience a change in your freedom to schedule activities. You may not be able to spontaneously decide to see a late movie or go visit friends. If you look upon these changes only as depriving you of freedoms, you may grow to resent your new baby. If you focus your thoughts on the positive factors of parenthood, you can truly enjoy this new dimension of your life. You can be a proud parent watching a school play or enjoying a walk in the park with your child. Being a parent is demanding, but it does have rich rewards.

The Newborn

Almost all babies are cute—after a few weeks. Immediately after birth, however, babies' bodies may look out of proportion, and their heads may have an odd shape, 18-1. Their skin is wrinkled and blotchy.

Average newborns are 20 to 21 inches in length, and they weigh about 7 1/2 pounds. Boys are generally longer and heavier than girls.

The heads of newborns look large compared to the rest of their bodies. Their heads account for one-fourth of their total length. (Adults' heads account for only one-seventh of their total height.)

A newborn has open spaces or **fontanels** between the bones of his or her head. Fontanels allow the bones of the baby's skull to move together and make birth easier. Because the bones of the baby's skull move together during birth, the head may have an elongated shape. However, the shape of the head will become normal before long, and the skull bones will grow together.

Newborns have fat cheeks; short, flat noses; and receding chins. These features are useful for sucking because their noses and chins do not get in the way. Newborns may have quite a bit of hair, or they may be bald. Eyebrows and lashes are hardly noticeable. The eyes of the newborns are smoky blue. Their true eye color will not develop for several weeks.

Newborns have almost no neck. They have narrow chests, sloping shoulders, and large, protruding abdomens. Their arms and legs look short and thin in proportion to their bodies. Their hands and feet are tiny.

The bones of newborns are mostly cartilage, so they are soft and flexible.

18-1 Newborns look quite different from babies who are two or three months old.

Newborns' muscles are soft, small, and uncontrolled. Their skin may be bruised from the pressure of birth.

What Can Newborns Do?

Newborns have many "skills." They can cry, cough, hiccup, sneeze, blink, yawn, and stretch. They can swallow, digest food, and eliminate waste products. They can see, hear, feel, smell, and taste, although their senses will become more refined, 18-2.

Most of the actions of newborns are general ones. Anything they do sets their whole bodies in motion. Even when they cry, they wave their arms and kick their legs.

Babies are born with certain reflexes. One of their reflexes is the **tonic neck reflex**. When babies lie on their backs, they turn their heads to one side. If they turn to the right, their right hand extends outward, and their left arm extends upward. If they turn to the left, their left hand extends outward, and their right arm extends upward.

When newborns are touched on one of their cheeks, the **rooting reflex** causes them to turn their heads in that direction and open their mouths. This is how they prepare themselves for feeding.

Newborns have three other reflexes that disappear within a few months after birth. The **grasp reflex** causes them to close their hands tightly when their palms are touched. Newborns use this reflex when they grasp your finger or a baby rattle that is put in their palms. The reflex disappears when the nervous system has developed to the point where the babies can voluntarily grasp objects.

When newborns are tapped on their abdomens or when their support is suddenly removed, they respond with the **startle reflex**. They spread their arms apart and then bring them together again in a bow. They perform the same motions with their legs. This reflex disappears when the babies are about three months old.

The **Babinski reflex** causes newborns to extend their toes when the soles of their feet are touched. Later, they will contract their toes when the soles of their feet are touched.

Planning a Schedule

Babies need sleep, food, and exercise. Planning a schedule around these needs takes time and patience. A schedule should fulfill the needs of your developing baby and enable you to achieve a sense of fulfillment.

When they first come home from the hospital, most babies sleep for about 18 to 20 hours a day. They have six feedings a day, or one every four hours. Babies are

18-2 You will be amazed and delighted at what your newborn can do.

individuals with unique needs. Your baby will tell you what is needed. He or she will refuse food when full and will cry when hungry. You should not hesitate to respond to your baby's cries. A newborn has not yet learned to use crying to get attention.

By the time your baby is a month old, you will probably have established a workable schedule. It may be similar to the one shown in 18-3. It will allow you to plan your daily activities.

A Typical Schedule for a Baby

6:00 a.m.
Feeding

6:30 a.m.
After feeding, be sure the bed is dry and clean and put the baby back to bed.

9:30 a.m.
Bath time.

10:00 a.m.
Feeding.

10:30 a.m.
Nap time. Try to establish this as the main nap period of the day.

2:00 p.m.
Feeding

2:30 to 5 p.m.
Nap time. Take the baby outside for a nap if possible.

5:00 p.m.
Exercise period. This is a good time to play and talk with the baby.

6:00 p.m.
Feeding.

6:30 p.m.
Put the baby to bed for the night.

10:00 p.m.
Feeding. Some parents wake up the baby for this, just before they retire for the night.

10:30 p.m.
Put the baby back to bed.

2:00 a.m.
This feeding will be required for about three to six weeks. The baby will sleep through this feeding when it is no longer needed. Do not awaken the baby for this feeding.

18-3 A schedule is a good guideline to follow, but daily adjustments will have to be made.

Crib Safety

Many parents worry their infant may become a victim of **sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS)**. SIDS is the sudden death of an apparently healthy infant during sleep. Although the cause is still unknown, several factors may be involved.

In 1992, the medical community asked parents and caregivers to place infants on their backs rather than their stomachs when putting them in cribs to sleep. Since then, the rate of SIDS has decreased significantly. SIDS remains, however, the third leading cause of death in infants between one month and one year of age.

The Consumer Product Safety Commission has reported that as many as 900 infant deaths occur each year from suffocation in bedding. Parents and caregivers should make sure the baby's mattress is firm and flat. Use a safety-approved crib rather than softer surfaces such as beanbag chairs or waterbeds. Keep stuffed toys as well as pillows and other soft bedding out of the crib.

Feeding Your Baby

Mealtimes should be enjoyable experiences for you and your baby. Providing your baby with food is one of the first ways to help your baby feel secure. If you cuddle your baby during feeding, your baby will sense your love and support, 18-4. Thus, mealtimes can satisfy emotional needs as well as physical needs.

Your physician will suggest any dietary supplements your baby may need, such as vitamins. Your physician will also suggest when you should begin giving your baby solid foods. Cereal, fruit, vegetables, and meat are usually introduced at intervals of two or three weeks. Some parents buy commercially prepared baby foods. Others prefer to prepare the food for their babies themselves. Electric blenders or food processors help reduce the food to a suitable texture.

18-4 Important emotional bonding takes place when you hold your baby during feeding.

Introducing new foods can be frustrating, but try to make the experience enjoyable. Smile and talk to your baby in a reassuring tone of voice. When you introduce a food, give the baby just a taste. Gradually work up to several spoonfuls. Introduce only one new food at a time. If your baby dislikes a certain food, wait a few days or weeks before you try it again.

Bathing Your Baby

You can bathe your baby at any time of the day that is convenient for you. You should try to do it at about the same time each day. Before a feeding is a good time, but do not wait until the baby is hungry.

Bath time should be uninterrupted and unhurried. It is a time not only to bathe your baby, but also for socializing. Both you and your baby will enjoy this time together, 18-5.

The room should be warm and free from drafts. Have all your supplies ready and within reach before you start giving the bath. Never, under any circumstances, leave your baby alone on a table or in a tub. Continually hold your baby with a firm grip.

Your baby's navel area should remain dry until the stump of the umbilical cord has healed. Until that time, you will need to give your baby sponge baths. You can give sponge baths on a bathroom counter or kitchen table. A large folded towel can serve as padding, and a small plastic tub can hold the water you will need.

As soon as the navel and the circumcision (if one has been performed) are healed, you can give your baby tub baths. Fill a tub or large dishpan with about 3 inches of warm water. Test the temperature of the water with your elbow. It should feel comfortably warm. A towel on the bottom

David Hopper

18-5 **Bath time can be an enjoyable time for both babies and parents.**

of the tub will prevent the baby from slipping. Hold the baby with a firm grip.

Clothing Your Baby

Diapers are the major article of clothing for your baby. Newborns may use as many as 90 to 100 diapers a week. You may choose to use disposable diapers or cloth diapers.

Disposable diapers offer convenience and ease of care, 18-6. They are prefolded and do not require pins. A disposable diaper has three layers. The inner layer, next to the baby, is made from a material that helps keep moisture away from the baby's skin and passes it through to the middle layer. The middle layer is made from a very absorbent material. The outer layer is a waterproof plastic film. They are fitted and have elastic around the legs to protect against leaks. Generally, disposable diapers are soft and absorbent. They may even help prevent diaper rash if you keep your baby clean and dry. However, using disposable diapers usually costs a little more than using cloth diapers. Some parents also are concerned about the environmental issues posed by disposable diapers.

Cloth diapers are usually made of cotton. They are reusable and soft. They can be folded in a number of ways to accommodate the growing baby. Contour diapers are also available, as well as diapers

18-6 **New parents are often surprised at the number of times they have to change their infants' diapers each day.**

that have hook-and-loop tape fasteners. They may be purchased according to the weight of the baby.

Diaper liners are often used with cloth diapers. Liners permit moisture to pass through to the diaper, so the baby stays drier and more comfortable. At the same time, liners prevent the cloth from becoming soiled and stained, making the diapers easier to launder.

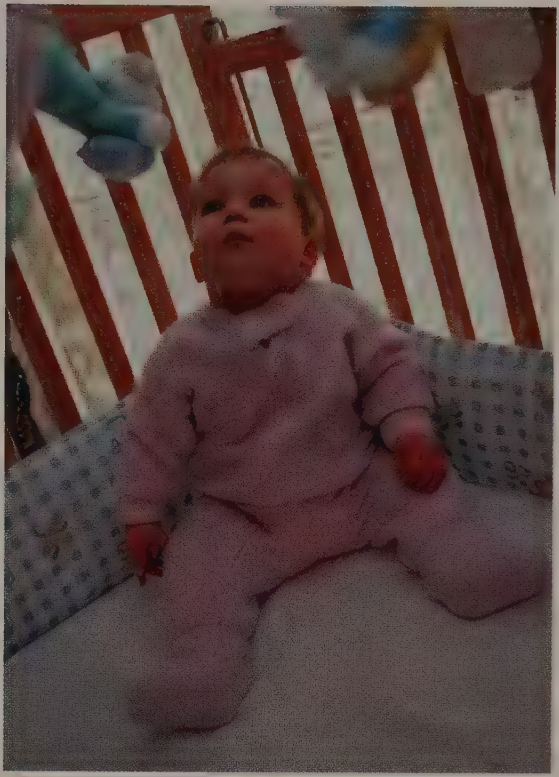
Even with liners, cloth diapers require quite a bit of work. Soiled diapers must be rinsed, stored in a covered container, and laundered daily. Then the diapers must be dried thoroughly and folded. Another disadvantage is that babies using cloth diapers often need the additional protection of plastic diaper covers, which can irritate babies' skin.

In addition to diapers, your baby wears other clothes, which should be chosen with care. The primary consideration should be the baby's comfort. See 18-7. Choose clothes that are loose so the baby can move about freely. Look for garments that are easy to put on and take off. For instance, neck openings should be large enough to allow the garment to slip over the baby's head quickly and easily.

Fabrics used for baby clothes should be soft, absorbent, and easy to launder. Cotton fabrics are the most desirable because they meet all these requirements. Blends of polyester and cotton work well for some outer garments.

Before you buy sleepwear for your baby, check the labels. It is important to be sure the fabrics have met the government regulations for flammability.

Do not overdress your baby. Babies have more skin surface in relation to their body weight than adults have. Therefore, they warm up and cool off faster than adults do.



18-7 **Comfort is the most important feature of children's clothing.**

Discomforts and Problems

When your baby is uncomfortable or ill, he or she will tell you about it by crying. Before long, you will learn to recognize different types of cries.

You will have three clues to help you recognize a hunger cry. First, it is the cry you will hear most often. Second, it usually begins shortly before feeding time. Third, your baby is likely to work up to a hunger cry gradually.

A cry that occurs shortly after feeding is probably an indigestion cry. Try burping your baby again. If your baby has frequent problems with digestion, consult your physician.

Another common cry announces wet or soiled diapers. Diapers should be changed as often as needed to help keep your baby comfortable.

Occasionally, you may hear a different kind of cry from your baby. This cry may be your baby's way of telling you of an illness. A sick cry may alert you to other symptoms, as listed in 18-8. If you suspect your baby is ill, write down your observations as accurately as possible. Then consult your physician and describe what you have observed. Never give your baby any medication or treatment that has not been recommended by your physician.

Growth and Development During the First Year

Children grow and develop according to a patterned sequence. This same sequence is followed by all children, everywhere. As a parent, you need to understand this sequence of development as well as other developmental principles. By knowing the principles of child development, you will be better prepared to care for your children. You will be able to help your children proceed smoothly through the various stages of development.

Your baby's growth and development will follow the same general pattern that all babies follow. However, within this general pattern, there will be some differences. Your baby is a unique person who will not develop exactly like anyone else.

The growth and development of children occur in four main areas: physical, intellectual, social, and emotional. Children pass through many different stages within each of these areas. Each stage builds upon another, so what children learn in one stage helps them in the next stages.

Examining how development proceeds within the four main areas makes

Signs and Symptoms of Illness

General behavior	Unusually quiet or irritable; drowsy or restless; any extreme in behavior
Appetite	May refuse more than one feeding
Vomiting	All or part of feeding vomited; vomiting forcefully as opposed to the usual spitting up.
Bowel movements and urine	Sudden increase or decrease in number of stools; stools unusual in color, odor, or consistency.
Fever	Rectal temperature of 101° F or above.
Color	Unusually flushed or pale complexion.
Skin	Dry or hot skin; excess perspiration.
Breathing	Hoarseness; continued sneezing or coughing; labored or slow breathing.
Eyes	Red; irritated; especially sensitive to light.
Bodily movements	Twitching or shaking; stiffness or immobility.
Pain	Sharp screaming; head-rolling; ear-rubbing

18-8 A dramatic change in a baby's behavior or appearance may be a sign of illness.

learning about children easier. However, you should not expect to see clear-cut stages in the development of your child. Children do not suddenly leave one stage and enter another. Their growth is gradual and continuous.

Physical Development

The most noticeable growth in infants during the first year is in the area of physical growth. **Physical development** is the controlled development of physical abilities including motor coordination, which controls and balances the movement of body parts. Stages of physical growth and development during the first year are described in 18-9.

Babies' physical growth will depend on both hereditary and environmental factors, but it will follow a definite sequence. Growth progresses from the trunk outward and from the head downward. Control of large muscles comes before small muscle control.

Large muscle development involves skills that use the large muscles of the body, such as those of the trunk, neck, legs, and arms. Large muscle control helps babies learn to roll over. They learn to control leg and arm muscles as they kick and reach for objects. Still later, babies gain control of their hands and feet, and finally their fingers and thumbs, 18-10. Small muscle development refers to actions that use the small muscles, such as those of the hands, fingers, feet, and toes.

Babies' large muscle development provides them with mobility while their small muscle development proceeds more slowly. At first they reach for mobiles and crib toys. They notice their hands and spend much time tracking their hand movements. They grab with a **mitten grasp**, using the palm and fingers opposing the thumb. They love to transfer objects from one hand to another. Slowly they are able to handle objects with the **pincer grip**, using just their thumb and index finger. They love to point and poke fingers into holes.

Parents will be amazed at the speed of physical development during the first year, 18-11. Babies can wave their arms and kick their legs so vigorously parents may have difficulty changing diapers. By six months, babies enjoy sitting up with slight support. When they are placed on the floor, they may try to get up on their hands and knees. They will practice rocking and balancing themselves in this position for some time. Then suddenly they start to crawl.

Babies are born with an instinct to achieve an upright position. By six to nine months, they will start to pull themselves up to a sitting position. Standing becomes a favorite activity for babies by the end of the first year. Some babies enjoy this so much they may not actually start walking for another month or so. Others will seem to be ready to learn to walk so they will practice walking around furniture.

Intellectual Development

Changes in physical development may be easier to see, but advances in intellectual development are equally as amazing. **Intellectual development** refers to development in the areas of perception, attention, association, and other aspects of the mind. As parents watch their babies develop, they can almost see their minds at work. Intellectual development advances

Physical Development

Birth to Three Months

Tonic neck reflex, grasp reflex, rooting reflex, startle reflex, and Babinski reflex present.

Head is wobbly and tends to be turned to one side.

Whole body twitches when crying.

Tear ducts are not refined, so baby cries no tears.

Can follow large moving object with eyes.

Blinks when objects move close to eyes.

Reaches out to hit objects but may miss them.

May raise chest and head high when placed on tummy.

Kicks legs in air.

Can roll from side to back.

Three to Six Months

Holds head erect.

Back still rounded when placed in sitting position; cannot sit alone.

Can roll from one side to the other side.

Notices hand and may follow movement of own hand.

Hands are not so predominantly fisted.

Turns head purposefully and fixes eyes on objects that are interesting.

Studies and plays with fingers and hands.

Shows eagerness to touch and moves body to try to reach for objects.

Reaches out to grasp, but cannot voluntarily release grasped article.

Uses hand to brush aside a tissue or cloth placed on face when playing peekaboo.

Will double birth weight by five months.

Six to Nine Months

Can pull up to sitting position.

Can stay in sitting position without support for a short time.

Can roll over from stomach to back or from back to stomach.

Likes to creep and crawl when placed on floor.

Stepping reflex when held with feet resting on floor.

Transfers objects from one hand to another.

Coordinates hands in inspecting articles.

Discovers feet, may study them for periods of time.

Thumb and forefinger work together in pincer movement.

Can pick up small objects with finger and thumb.

Able to use pincer movement to grasp food, but has difficulty finding mouth.

Likes to drag things.

Likes to bang things together and drop them.

First tooth appears.

Nine to Twelve Months

Can sit alone.

Crawls well.

Stands without holding on.

Can stand and bounce in one position.

Toddles by holding onto assisting hands.

May walk independently, varies with each child.

No longer enjoys lying down; wants to be up as soon as awakened.

Enjoys playing with large blocks.

Can grasp a cup by its handle.

May exhibit handedness preferences.

May have two to eight of the 20 baby or temporary teeth.

18-9 As children grow, they pass through many stages of physical development, but there is no exact time when a child leaves one stage and enters another. The stages described are approximate.

18-10 **Before babies can feed themselves, they have to learn to grasp food using their small muscles.**

in an orderly way, but there are no definite timetables. See 18-12.

Babies learn about the world using their five senses: seeing, hearing, feeling, smelling, and tasting. At about three months, babies begin to coordinate their hand and eye movements. At this time, you can note the interest they take in watching their hands move across their field of vision. Gradually their vision improves, so they can watch moving objects. Loud noises startle young babies, and the sound of their parents' voices reassures them. They may become quiet when they hear a noise or a familiar voice. Infants like to be hugged, and they like the feel of cuddly toys. Babies like the taste of some foods, but they dislike the taste of other foods. Everything babies learn as they respond to their environment helps their intellectual development.

Babies are learning about themselves. They learn to recognize and respond to their own names. They smile at themselves in mirrors. They try to mimic sounds. The game of peekaboo intrigues them as they learn that the person who disappears will reappear. They develop their own games of dropping objects off their highchairs. Once babies learn to crawl, they become very inquisitive and like to pull open doors and drawers.

Babies make their first deliberate sounds at about three months. They begin cooing one-syllable vowel-like sounds, such as ooh, ah, aw. As early as the ninth month, babies learn the meaning of a few specific words such as *no.* Toward the end of the first year, they may be able to say mama or dada. They like to learn labeling words. When prompted by words and gestures, they can learn to point to their nose, eyes, and other features.

18-11 **Babies may grow 10 inches in length in the first year.**

Intellectual Development

Birth to Three Months

Crying is the primary form of communication.
Learns to respond to perceptions of the five senses.
Learns to bring hand to mouth and to suck on fingers or thumb.
Discovers fingers and hands and may watch movement of hands.
Indicates recognition of person by cooing or becoming excited.

Three to Six Months

Each new activity is the result of mental growth.
Voluntary actions are possible because certain brain cells have matured.
Studies and plays with fingers and hands.
Uses hands to reach for desired objects.
Does not search for object when it disappears.
Recognizes mother and father.
Laughs aloud to express delight.

Six to Nine Months

Talks to self in mirror and registers recognition of mirror reflection.
Able to change facial expressions.
Likes to drop objects to explore disappearance and reappearance.
Uses hands to reach, grasp, crumble, bang, and splash.
Inspects objects held in hand very attentively.
Reaches for spoon when being fed.
Perceives depth.
Can distinguish between angry and friendly tones of voice.
Likes to mimic simple adult sounds.
Recognizes own name.
Crawls or propels self to reach certain destination.
Shows understanding of spatial relations; can detour around objects.

Nine to Twelve Months

Mimics sounds, adds facial expressions to aid communication.
Can say very simple words.
Verbalizes dada and mama.
Can wave good-bye.
Loves to play pointing games such as "Where's your nose?"
Enjoys locomotive behavior to investigate space.
Learns by trial and error.
Tries to produce new events; develops curiosity.
May look for disappearing object where it disappeared instead of place where it was last found.
Can reach and manipulate objects with good control.
Enjoys filling boxes with many items.

18-12 Intellectual development can be observed during the first year. Remember that these are approximate stages and ages.

Early Brain Development

Scientists have recently discovered that experiences soon after birth affect much of the brain's development. Early childhood experiences play a key role in determining how the circuits of the brain are wired. Babies whose parents and caregivers talk and read to them and play simple games with them have enhanced intellectual, motor, and emotional development.

The first few years of a baby's life are the most important ones for brain development. Some abilities are acquired more easily during certain time-sensitive periods. These are sometimes referred to as "windows of opportunity." Time taken to interact with the baby then will have lifelong positive effects. Time lost can be difficult to make up later.

Babies and toddlers whose physical and emotional needs are met in a predictable, responsive way in the first years of life have a head start in life, 18-13. These early relationships lay the foundation for healthy emotional development and help protect children from the stresses they may face in later years. Children whose needs are seldom met and who experience harsh words and rough handling will do less well.

In making child care arrangements, parents should look for caregivers who will be responsive to their child's needs and who will interact frequently with their child in a positive manner. If quality care is not available, one parent should seriously consider staying home to nurture the baby's development during these important years.

Social Development

Social development is the process of learning to relate to other people. It is shaped by how other people affect the baby and how the baby affects other people. It is influenced by the warmth, attentiveness, and consistency with which the parent or caregiver responds to the infant's needs. See 18-14.

Babies' social development begins as they listen to human voices and focus on their faces. When they make eye contact, they often become quiet. They seem to be staring as they study faces. When they smile for the first time, parents are thrilled.

18-13 Early brain development is enhanced by the close emotional ties between parents and children during the early years.

Babies love attention and show their delight and excitement by waving their arms and cooing. They also learn that if they fuss or cry, someone will come. They reach with their arms to signal, "Pick me up."

Babies need social contact, 18-15. They love to play games of interaction, such as peekaboo. Babies learn to babble, and find parents will talk back to them. They like to make funny faces and have people laugh. They learn to laugh themselves.

Babies become so sociable by the end of the first year that they may not want to go to bed. Since babies like routines, a routine of bedtime activities can help to smooth the transition from playtime to bedtime.

By the end of the first year, babies may indicate a preference for certain people.

Social Development

Birth to Three Months

Interest centers on parents.
Responds to being picked up and held.
Stops crying when baby sees parent or hears approaching footsteps.
Responds to a human face; smiles.
Gurgles and coos spontaneously.
Enjoys being cuddled by a loving adult.
Feels contentment when cared for by calm and loving parents.
Responds to bathtime with either a positive or negative reaction.

Three to Six Months

Begins to interact with people.
Enjoys a playful peekaboo game.
Laughs when nudged or tickled.
Smiles at familiar people.
Stares solemnly at strangers.
Likes to watch people move around in room.
Likes attention.
Will play alone but prefers to be with people when awake.
Likes to hear people talk or sing.
Shows growing interest in all family members.
Learns that parents will return after they have been out for a while.
Begins to feel love.

Six to Nine Months

Stranger anxiety exhibited (attachment to familiar person and fear of strangers).
Highly responsive to parents' moods and emotions.
Likes to talk to image of self in mirror.
Loves company and attention.
May begin to creep to investigate surroundings.
Enjoys imitating parents.
Invents new ways to communicate with adults.
Enjoys being sung to and talked to.
Enjoys social games such as "This Little Piggy" and "Where's Baby?"
Enjoys "riding" on parent's knee.

Nine to Twelve Months

Cooperates when being dressed.
Recognizes self in mirror; plays with reflection.
Waves good-bye.
Crawls and follows parents as they move throughout the house.
Loves being "chased" by sibling.
Loves an audience.
Enjoys applause.
Likes to show off.
Will repeat performances that elicit response, especially laughter.
Loves to imitate.
Enjoy rhymes.
Capable of communicating jealousy, affection, and sympathy to another person.
One parent can often soothe baby when the other has tried and failed.

18-14 As children grow, they pass through these approximate stages of social development. Because development is gradual and continuous, some of the stages overlap.

Separation anxiety is shown by babies when adults they love leave them for a short time. This often occurs when a parent leaves an almost one-year-old with a babysitter. Babies fear their parents will not return. By the second year, this anxiety usually passes.

18-15 **Babies enjoy being with other people.**

Emotional Development

Emotional development is the continuing refinement of emotions or mental states that causes a person to act in a certain way. Emotions (feelings) play an important role in the development of the child. Emotions reflect children's mental states and are expressed in their behavior. Babies readily exhibit emotions ranging from happiness to frustration. Knowing the pattern of emotional development can help parents in dealing with the emotional changes in their children. The stages of emotional development are described in 18-16.

A climate of love in the home lays the foundation for feelings of affection and trust. Withholding love from babies and children can be damaging, for they need to know they are loved. Loved children feel secure and are able to show affection to others, 18-17. Babies who feel insecure will cry more often and show their restlessness. Parents who think they might spoil a baby if they respond to the baby's cries need not worry. Most authorities believe it is practically impossible to spoil a baby. When babies' needs are reasonably met, they seldom display stress and frustration.

Fear as an emotion begins around six months. Babies begin to realize they can be hurt. They may be fearful of the unknown or of experiences they have learned can hurt them. For instance, they may learn to fear the doctor after they have received a painful injection. As babies become more mobile, more fears may develop. They may be frightened by loud noises, such as the noise of the vacuum cleaner. Parents can reassure their babies by allowing them to touch and examine frightening objects to show them there is nothing to fear.

Emotional Development

One to Three Months

Shows affection by looking at person while kicking, waving arms, and smiling.
Responds to continuous warmth and affection.
Gurgles and coos when responding.
Responds to human face.
Shows no fear of strange face.
Responds to comforts of bathing and feeding.
Very content when nursed or fed.
Reflects emotional state of person providing care.
Develops sense of trust when baby feels loved and secure.
Becomes unresponsive if left alone most of waking hours.

Three to Six Months

Smiles, laughs aloud, coos, gurgles, and chortles to show delights.
Cries, kicks, and waves arms to show distress.
Desires attention.
Expects to be held.
May cry strongly, but will stop abruptly when picked up.
Moves excitedly when sees food coming.
Smiles at familiar people and stares solemnly at strangers.
Initial reaction to being startled is crying, screaming, stiffening body, holding breath.

Six to Nine Months

Highly responsive to other persons' moods.
Enjoys games of imitation.
Does not like to be held in a restricted position.
Anger is not directed toward any one person or object; just registers general anger.
Shows anxiety when with strangers.
Reacts with shyness or withdrawal when afraid.
Sensitive child may be overly aggressive or overly timid.
Quiet, placid child may be very congenial.
Aggressive child is highly active and exhibits extreme responses.

Nine to Twelve Months

Will show affection for others or for toys by hugging.
Still prefers to receive, rather than give, affection.
Wants to be held by a loved one.
Bangs toys excitedly on chair or floor.
May shriek with delight.
Likes to feel, grab, and pull hair.
Baby's whole body conveys feelings of pleasure.
Anger is directed against a specific object or person.
Child learns to recognize attitudes of parents.
Learns that positive behavior will win parental approval.
Learns that negative behavior may promote punishment.

18-16 Children pass through several stages of emotional development during their first year of life.

By the end of the first year, babies also are capable of showing anger when they are frustrated. Babies may become frustrated by toys that may be too advanced for their physical development. They may also become frustrated in their early attempts to walk. Most of the time, however, babies are cheerful and responsive.

David Hopper

18-17 **A baby will respond to continuous warmth and affection shown by parents.**

Children with Special Needs

When a child is born with a mental or physical disability, parents will have an even greater need to show caring and love. Parents may have feelings of fear and even guilt, but the care of the child is of first importance. Parents must understand the nature of the disability and then find the best possible way to care for the child.

Children with Physical Disabilities

A child with a physical disability has an abnormality of body structure, function, or metabolism that interferes with the child's ability to walk, lift, hear, or learn. The cause may be either hereditary or environmental.

Some physical disabilities are present at birth. Others do not occur until later in life, sometimes as the result of an illness or injury. Often, corrective surgery can be done. In other cases, nothing can be done to remedy the disability. The parents will have to decide what is best for the welfare of the child and the entire family. If the child can receive adequate care at home, this is probably the best solution. If the child requires constant attention and special care, the child may be placed in a residential facility geared to handle these needs. Parents have a responsibility to the disabled child, to their other children, and to themselves. Their decision about the care of the child with a disability must be made with the welfare of everyone in mind.

Parents who decide to keep the child at home should research all available resources so the child will receive the best possible care. Schools have special programs for children with mental disabilities. Also, many day care programs offer assistance to parents for care during the day. This relieves the parents from direct responsibility for total care and also provides training and therapy for the child. If parents need to place the child in a residential facility, their physician can help them find an appropriate one.

Adaptive Technology

A wide array of technological devices are currently available to help children with disabilities cope successfully at home and at school. People with impaired hearing, sight, mobility (movement), and speech have many resources from which to choose.

Hearing impaired individuals may make use of speech amplification equipment to make voices easier to hear on the telephone. Visual signaling systems can be

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Relating to Children with Disabilities

According to the National Center for Health Statistics, about 9.6 million children in this country have chronic conditions that restrict their activities or cause them pain. People often use the term "disabled children"—which puts their disability at the forefront—rather than using the more appropriate phrase, "children with disabilities." The National Easter Seal Society offers the following hints to help you relate to children and adults with physical disabilities:

- It's okay to offer your help to someone, but ask first. You can also wait for someone to ask you for your help.
- Although you may be curious about how a person became disabled, a sensitive person does not ask prying questions. Disabled people should be allowed to share this information voluntarily, if and when they are ready to do so.
- Remember, just because people use wheelchairs doesn't mean they are sick. Many are healthy and strong.
- When you're talking with people who use wheelchairs, sit down so their necks won't get sore looking up at you.
- It's okay to use words such as *see, hear, walk,* and *run* when you're talking with friends who have disabilities.
- It's okay to ask people who have speech problems to repeat what they said if you didn't understand the first time.
- If an interpreter is helping you speak with a person who is deaf, make sure you talk to the person who is deaf, not the interpreter.
- Don't talk loudly to blind people. They usually can hear quite well.
- Never pet or play with Seeing Eye dogs. They can't be distracted from the job they are doing.
- Invite friends with disabilities to come to your home. Think about ways to make sure that they can be included in your activities.
- Don't let drivers you are with park in places reserved for people with disabilities.
- When you go to restaurants and shopping malls, see if a friend with a disability could be there with you. If not, ask the manager to put in ramps, get raised numbers for the elevators, or have braille menus printed.
- Treat a person with a disability the way you like to be treated.

used to indicate sounds. Flashing lights, for example, can alert the user to a fire alarm or a ringing telephone or doorbell.

Telecommunications devices allow use of a telephone and keyboard or computer to communicate with others. To make television programs accessible, hearing impaired people have access to open captions, in which words appear in print on the screen, or closed captions, which require a decoder to make the words visible.

People with speech impairments also find telecommunications devices useful. Using a special modem, a caller may type a message on a computer and have the type converted into speech that can be heard by a person on the telephone.

A number of braille systems are available to assist people with visual impairments. *Braille* uses raised dots that substitute for printed text and can be "read" through touch. See 18-18. People wishing to make notes can use devices for entering braille codes. Special computers can display braille codes that appear as raised dots on the screen. Printed words on a computer screen can be converted into spoken words using synthetic (computer-generated) speech. Images portrayed on television or a computer screen can be enlarged.

18-18 **The raised dots of braille allow people with visual impairments to read.**

People with limited hand use or mobility may use computer keyboards that have been reduced in size or adapted for one hand. Using an infrared pointing device, a person can point at a picture of a keyboard so that the selected letters or words appear on the screen. Another option is a "sip-and-puff" keyboard. A mouth device is used to "sip" (inhale), placing a character on the screen, and to "puff" (exhale), moving the cursor.

The equipment described here provides only a sample of the many devices available to assist people with disabilities. Combined with patience, courage, and determination, adaptive technologies can help children with disabilities lead rewarding, productive lives.

Children with Mental Disabilities

Children with mental disabilities are usually divided into the following three groups for educational purposes:

- Those who are educable.
- Those who are trainable.
- Those who have severe/profound mental disabilities.

Children who are educable can be taught normal patterns of living and can function as good citizens. They simply need more individualized instruction and special teaching methods, 18-19.

Children who are trainable can be taught certain skills and tasks. They can learn to be productive in a sheltered workshop setting, but they cannot get along by themselves in a community setting.

Children who have severe/profound mental disabilities have very limited mental abilities and may need to live in a residential facility. They need complete care, which parents in a typical home setting may not be able to provide. Today, day care services make it possible for parents to keep such children at home. During the day, the children receive special care and therapy. This provides a break for parents and at the same time gives the children the care that can help them.

Parents of a child who is mentally disabled should treat the child as normally as possible, especially in the areas of discipline and love. The child should not be regarded as a source of shame, embarrassment, or hardship for other members of the family. In fact, the presence of a child who is mentally disabled may become a source of positive feelings and cooperation in the family.

Cholla Runnels

18-19 Children who are educable can learn if special teaching methods are used.

Most communities have several sources of help for people who are mentally disabled. Some are funded privately, and some are funded by the government. Parents should investigate all sources of help available for their child.

apter 18 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Parenthood brings many changes in roles as husbands become fathers and wives become mothers.
- Immediately after birth, babies tend to have wrinkled, blotchy skin and other characteristics associated with newborns.
- Babies are born with several reflexes, including the tonic neck reflex, rooting reflex, grasp reflex, startle reflex, and Babinski reflex.
- Mealtimes should be enjoyable experiences for parents and their babies. If parents cuddle their babies during feeding, their babies will sense their love and support. Thus, the babies' physical and emotional needs both will be satisfied.
- When bathing or dressing a baby or changing a baby's diapers, never leave him or her alone for even an instant.
- Children grow and develop according to a patterned sequence. All children follow this same sequence with slight variations. Their growth is gradual and continuous.
- The four main areas of development are physical, intellectual, social, and emotional.
- When a child is born with a mental or physical disability, parents will have an even greater need to express love and caring as they help their child.

Review

1. Describe the appearance of a newborn.
2. When newborns are touched on one of their cheeks, they turn their heads in that direction and open their mouths. This behavior is known as the _____ reflex.
3. Why should newborns be given sponge baths instead of tub baths?
4. Why are cotton fabrics more desirable for baby clothes?
5. List three common reasons for newborns to cry.
6. True or False. Children learn large muscle control before they learn small muscle control.
7. How do babies learn about their new world?
8. What do babies learn through the game of peekaboo?
9. What is separation anxiety?
10. What are the three classifications for the education of children who are mentally disabled?

React

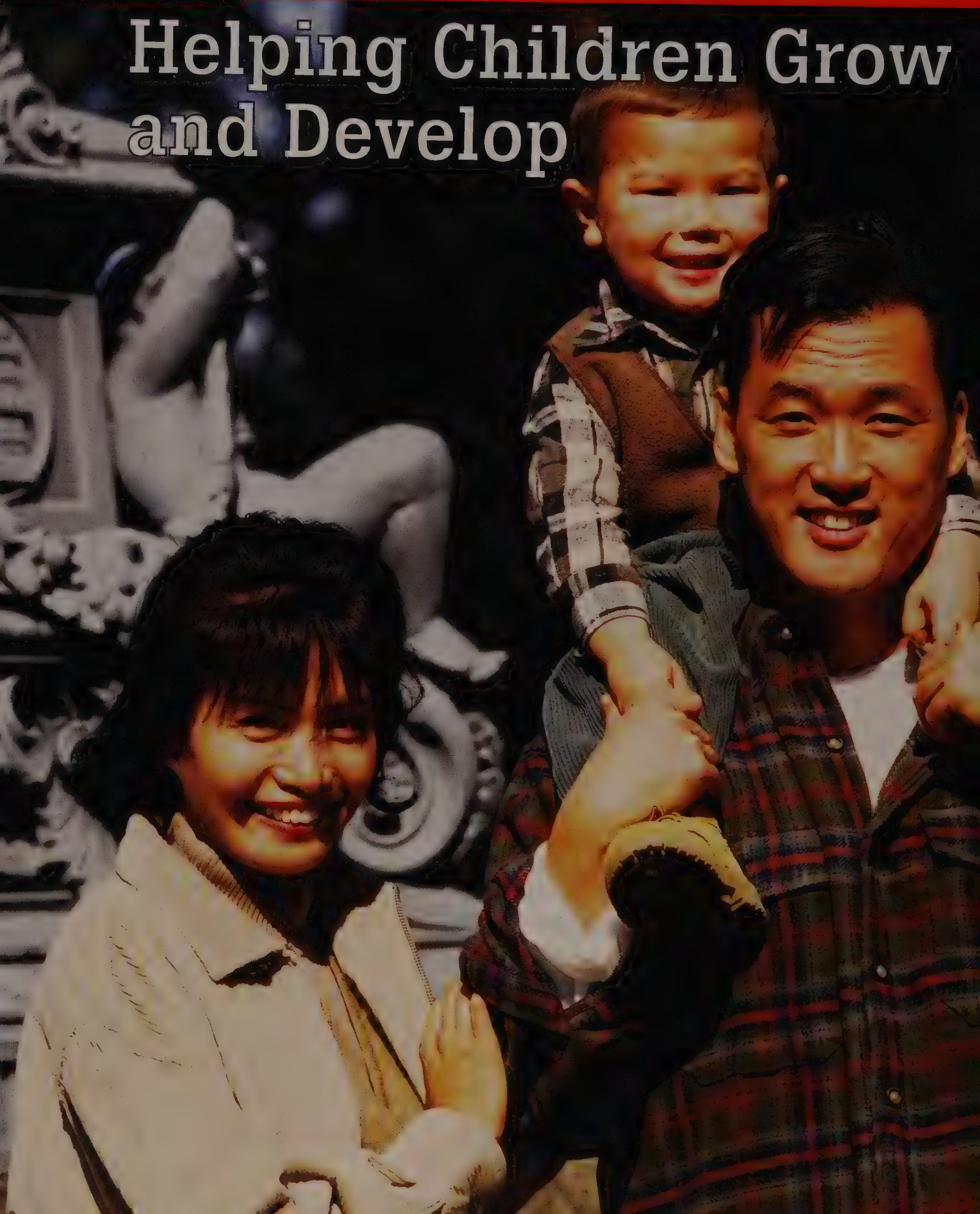
1. Ask several young parents to come to class to discuss changes that a first child makes in the life of a married couple.
2. Ask a pediatrician to speak to your class about the abilities of the newborn and how they change through the first year of life.
3. Investigate the feeding, bathing, and clothing needs of babies. Ask class members to look for magazine articles discussing these needs. Also use the Internet to research this topic. Organize the information into a file that will be available to everyone.
4. Divide the class into four groups. Ask each group to prepare a bulletin board display on one of the four areas of development.
5. Research the availability and varying costs of disposable diapers and cloth diapers.
6. Ask a mother to bring her baby and bathing equipment to class to demonstrate bathing a baby.

Reflect

1. List the pros and cons of disposable diapers and cloth diapers, including financial and environmental considerations. Which option would you choose and why?
2. Evaluate the following statement: Parenthood means slowing up your own growth and development so you can help your child grow and develop.
3. If you had a child with a disability, do you think you would be strong enough emotionally to be a successful parent? In what areas of your personality would you be challenged to grow?

Chapter 19

Helping Children Grow and Develop



Terms to Know

- nurturance
- modeling
- positive reinforcement
- encouraging
- immunizations
- motor development
- parallel play
- cooperative play
- discipline
- timeout
- temper tantrum
- children in self-care

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- describe a nurturing, healthy, and safe environment for children.
- summarize the physical, intellectual, social, and emotional growth and development of children from ages one through five years.
- explain parenting concerns related to the preschool years.
- evaluate different types of child care.
- explain parenting concerns related to the school-age years.

An important responsibility of parenting is to nurture your child from infancy to adulthood. **Nurturance** means affectionate care and attention. To nurture means to supply with nourishment. Parenting a child means not only supplying the nourishment that comes from food, but the emotional nourishment that comes from love and affection. To nurture a child is to love the child and to show this love and affection.

Without love, a child may not develop normally. For example, a condition known as *failure to thrive* has been found in some infants. These infants are below average in height and weight and do not respond normally to people, though they were normal and healthy at birth. Sometimes there is a medical cause, but often a lack of emotional interaction with parents or other caregivers is identified as the cause of this condition.

Creating a Nurturing Environment for Your Child

From the very beginning of life and continuing throughout their development, children need to hear, feel, and experience love. Children need to know they can always count on their parents' love, even if children and parents disappoint each other from time to time. Children need to be told again and again that they are loved.

Young children can sense this love when, as a parent, you cuddle and hold them, 19-1. A simple touch goes a long way in saying "I love you." Getting down on their level or picking them up and talking with them assures them of your love. As children grow older, lots of hugs and reassuring looks and smiles can help to satisfy their emotional needs. Teens also feel reassured when parents actively listen to their concerns. Assuring children that you are there for them and willing to help them whenever necessary is an important part of nurturing.

19-1 Children need to be reassured of your love again and again.

Another part of nurturing children is encouraging them to do their best. There is a fine line, however, between encouraging children and pushing them to do things they either cannot do or do not want to do. Parents who have realistic expectations for their children know that a three-year-old cannot accomplish what a five-year-old can. If you help your children to accomplish reasonable tasks, they can feel successful. When children learn they can succeed, they will look forward to new challenges. When they do succeed, they will welcome your praise. When they feel self-confident, they will be on their way toward independence.

Positive Guidance Techniques

Guiding your children in a positive way will help them become responsible and effective members of their family, community, and society. Children learn best by parental example. Children imitate the behavior of "models" they admire, particularly their parents. This method of learning behavior—providing an example—is called **modeling**. If the behavior is rewarded with praise, the behavior is likely to be repeated. When appropriate behavior is rewarded with a positive message, children are likely to repeat the behavior. This guidance technique—praising good behavior—is called **positive reinforcement**.

Children learn behavior from others, and parental models have a profound influence on them. When they see parents act and react to day-to-day situations, children learn valuable lessons in how to relate to others, make decisions, and express and control emotions. Virtues such as honesty, perseverance, and loyalty are best learned by example. When children see these virtues modeled in their parents, their character development will be strengthened. Modeling involves setting a good example for the child. A positive example may be far more effective than delivering lectures, especially if the parent says one thing but does another.

Parents can also use guidance techniques that promote responsibility and independent behavior in children. To the extent that a child is capable of learning to do things independently, he or she should be allowed and encouraged to do so. **Encouraging** is a guidance technique that helps children believe in themselves. Children will make mistakes, but their willingness to try should be encouraged. Parents sometimes become impatient when teaching their children to perform tasks, saying, "Here, let me do it." Such behavior may save time, but it can threaten the child's self-esteem and his or her willingness to try to do new things.

Creating a Safe and Healthy Environment for Your Child

Providing a safe and healthy environment is another responsibility of parents. Parents must provide nutritious food for their children and see they get adequate sleep. They must make sure children receive the necessary medical care throughout the growing years. Children also need to be protected from accidental injury and other risks to their safety.

Food and Sleep

Parents are responsible for providing their children with nutritious food and the opportunity for sufficient sleep. Nutritional needs change throughout the growing years. Small children need small amounts of food several times a day, 19-2. Older children will need larger amounts of food but will eat less often. The Food Guide Pyramid provides guidelines to

19-2 Young children can begin to feed themselves as their coordination improves.

follow in planning meals for your child. Meals must be balanced with a variety of nutritious foods in adequate amounts.

Toddlers and preschoolers need 10 or more hours of sleep a night. The amount of sleep that older children need will vary with the child. Generally at least eight hours of sleep are needed during the growing years.

Health Care

Parents are responsible for preventive health practices involving their children. Regular visits to the pediatrician during the early years are very important. The pediatrician will check to see that the child is growing and developing properly. The doctor will also outline a series of immunizations that all children need. **Immunizations** are injections of vaccines that prevent people from getting certain diseases, such as diphtheria, whooping cough, tetanus, and polio.

Parents need to watch for signs of illness in their children. When children are ill, parents may need to take them to see a doctor. Parents need to know when an illness requires medical care.

Taking the child for regular visits to the dentist is another parental responsibility. Parents need to help children brush their teeth until the children are old enough to do this for themselves. Helping children develop other hygienic habits, such as washing their hands before eating and after bathroom trips, will also promote good health.

Safety

Children must be provided with a safe environment. As soon as a young child begins to crawl, parents need to make a safety check of possible hazards that exist within the home. Accidents are the main cause of death for young children. Most of these deaths could be prevented.

Little children love to explore, and they are inquisitive about doors and drawers. In the home, safety latches on cupboard doors can prevent children from finding objects or substances that might harm them. Poisonous substances should be kept out of reach, and medicines should be capped with safety caps. Plastic bags should be kept out of reach of children. A child can suffocate if a plastic bag is placed over the head. Hot liquids or pots with hot food should be kept out of children's reach and the handles turned away from the edge of the range or counter. Water heaters should be set for no more than 125°F so bath water will not burn a child. Children should never be left alone in the bathtub, and electrical appliances such as hair dryers should be kept far out of reach.

Young children like to investigate open windows and doors, and neither should be left open without an adult present. Young children love to climb up on tables and counters using chairs or stools. Sometimes they cannot get down without help.

Parents need to supervise children when they are outside and teach them the danger of streets. Parents need to set rules for safety on crossing streets or climbing into unattended cars. Parents should warn their children about accepting any favors, including rides in a car, from strangers.

When in a car, children should be placed in child safety seats in the back seat of the car, 19-3. They should not be placed in the front passenger seat. If passenger-side airbags inflate, children can be injured. As they grow older, they need to continue to be buckled into car safety belts.

When riding their bikes, children need helmets. They also need to be taught the rules of proper signals and safety precautions. When using in-line roller skates, serious injuries can be prevented by wearing knee pads, elbow pads, and helmets. Children who receive head injuries should be seen promptly by a physician. Even if the child seems to be all right at the time, a brain disorder may develop later.

Sun protection is important for children, as adult skin cancer can be traced to severe sunburns years earlier. In addition, overexposure of the eyes to the sun's rays is associated with cataracts later in life. Children can be protected with appropriate clothing, sunglasses, and sunscreen or sunblock lotion.

Parents need to keep children with them as they shop in malls and visit public parks. They should explain boundaries and limits that protect the child. All warnings should be explained, and then parents need to insist on obedience.

19-3 All children need to be securely fastened into child safety seats placed in the rear seats of cars.

Growth and Development During the Preschool Years

After the first year of a child's life, physical growth slows down, but significant advances in the areas of intellectual, emotional, and social development occur.

Physical Development

Motor development is significant as infants become toddlers. **Motor development** is the achievement of control over movement of different parts of the body. Motor ability involves the ability of muscles and nerves to work together. As motor ability develops, children will learn to crawl, then to pull themselves up, and eventually to walk. Learning to walk is a significant step in physical development. Failure to achieve motor ability in the earlier stages often results in slower overall development.

Parents who are not familiar with developmental principles often expect far too much from their child too soon. They may be overly anxious for their first child to reach certain stages of physical development such as walking and being toilet trained. Their anxiety may cause emotional problems and frustrations for their child.

Knowing when to expect a child to develop certain motor skills can reduce frustration for you and your child. You will not ask your child to do something which the child is incapable of doing. Rather, you will encourage the development of skills that are possible for your child to accomplish. The physical changes outlined in 19-4 will help you to know what to expect during the preschool years.

Physical Development from One to Five

The One-Year-Old

Prefers walking to creeping when walking is achieved.
Walks with feet spread wide apart.
Likes to climb stairs, and can be taught to back down by 18 months.
Indicates strong motor drive, of wanting to move all the time.
May exhibit handedness.
Likes to fill small boxes with objects.
Likes to feed self, at first with fingers, then with a spoon.
Can help turn pages of books.
Averages six teeth by one year of age and eight by 18 months.

The Two-Year-Old

Still does not walk erect because knees and elbows are slightly bent.
Spine strengthens and back straightens.
Development of legs, arms, feet, and hands is refined, which helps balance.
Likes to run but cannot measure sudden stops.
Likes to go up and down stairs; may alter feet or go down one step at a time.
Able to throw ball overhead without aiming.
Eye-hand coordination shows improvement.
Likes to fit one object inside another.
Likes to lift everything, lug objects around.
Able to crudely remove wrapping from candy and gum.
Likes to poke fingers into holes.
Has 12 to 16 teeth by two years of age.

The Three-Year-Old

Average toddler is about 3 feet tall and weighs 31 to 33 pounds.
Body assumes more adult shape—less chubby, more upright, longer legs, broader chest.
Increase in muscle growth.
Can run better and maneuver sharper turns.
Eye-hand coordination improves.
Can string large beads, draw with large crayons.
Drawing movements are mostly up and down.
Has full set (20) of baby teeth.
Better coordination in physical skills.
Gets dressed with little help.

The Four-Year-Old

Arms and legs grow proportionately more than trunk of body.
Enjoys vigorous outdoor play.
Likes to climb on play equipment.
Catches and throws ball fairly well.
Can skip in unison to music.
Can hop on one foot, skip rope in simple pattern.
Can pour from small pitcher into glass.
Can place blocks horizontally on floor and stack blocks vertically.
Can stay in lines when coloring.
Forms crude objects with clay.
Can do finger plays.
Can fold paper.
Can use small scissors with difficulty.

The Five-Year-Old

Performs more gracefully, with fewer wasted motions.
Motor activities are accomplished with much greater skill and dexterity.
Has better coordination in throwing balls, building blocks, etc.
Can ride a bicycle that is small enough to balance.
Uses much energy so appetite may increase.
Is independent in toilet habits.
Can draw and paint recognizable pictures.
Can copy designs, letters, and numbers.
Handedness definitely exhibited by physical choice.
Able to bathe self.
Shows definite likes and dislikes in clothing and able to dress self more easily.
Can tie shoelaces and fasten buttons.

19-4 **Physical development from the age of one to the age of five is outlined in this chart.**

Large muscle skills still dominate in the toddler years. Muscle strength increases as children pass through the preschool years. Body proportions change, bringing about improved coordination. Improved walking and running soon expand to include hopping, skipping, and jumping as preschoolers become more coordinated. They use these new skills as they try new stunts of climbing, balancing, turning somersaults, and hanging upside down, 19-5. They enjoy pedal toys, and their speed and strength improve quickly.

Preschoolers' skills of drawing, putting things together, and even working with simple tools often amaze parents, 19-6. By the time they reach five years of age, children are learning life skills such as tying their own shoes and dressing themselves completely.

19-6 Improved eye-hand coordination allows this two-year-old to stack many objects.

Intellectual Development

The intellectual development of your child is fascinating to observe. The stages of intellectual development for one- to five-year-olds are outlined in 19-7. Try not to be too concerned with perfection or with comparing your child to your friends' children. You may miss the fun of watching your child make intellectual progress.

Children's intellectual development is related to their interaction with the

19-5 Children may amaze you with their physical skills during the preschool years.

Intellectual Development from One to Five

The One-Year-Old

Able to find mental solutions to problems, instead of using trial and error.

Likes labeling words, and points when the word is spoken.

Uses gestures along with verbal noises.

Loves to throw things now that releasing objects is understood and mastered.

Knows where things are and where they belong.

Responds to verbal directions.

Enjoys sound patterns of nursery rhymes and TV commercials.

Likes to imitate and pretend.

Enjoys books and colored pictures.

Cannot think from any point of view except own.

Vocabulary of several words by end of year.

The Two-Year-Old

Single words are being replaced by sentences.

Likes to talk to self.

Repeats words to name things.

Can solve problems by imitating past action.

Child thinks mostly from own point of view.

Has a good memory. Can deliver simple message from one parent to another.

Enjoys stories of families sharing experiences.

Begins to use imagination and is able to create a make-believe world.

Can assume some responsibility for simple cleanup.

Can take simple things apart and put them back together.

Recalls events of previous day.

Can repeat parts of favorite stories.

The Three-Year-Old

Is attentive to words; likes to repeat words.

Responds to adult suggestions.

Likes to talk with adults.

Likes stories that answer questions about self.

Knows his or her own age.

Can remember fright caused by one experience.

Can play follow the leader.

Can name some colors.

May count to 10 or more.

Can recognize different sizes.

Matches puzzle forms; square, circle, or triangle.

Enjoys praise and uses more words.

Can draw a recognizable man or house.

Can remember simple commands.

Asks questions often, "What's this?" "Why?"

The Four-Year-Old

Sentences become longer.

Likes to experiment with words.

Makes up words.

Can draw a vertical line and then cross it with a horizontal line.

Interested in death and asks questions about it.

Learns to distinguish fact from fantasy.

Enjoys dramatic and imaginative play.

Tends to think things that change in shape also change in quantity (as when pouring from tall jar to short jar).

Likes to have explanations of many things.

Can draw a square, rectangle, and circle.

The Five-Year-Old

Knows full name, address, age, and birthday.

Counts to at least 20.

Can give and follow simple directions.

Can create a story about a picture.

Enjoys looking at books and listening to stories.

Sees the likes and differences in objects, pictures.

Can draw a recognizable figure and some letters.

Pays attention, and is able to do a simple reasoning problem.

Can tie shoelaces.

Appreciates humorous situations.

Knows several finger plays, rhymes, and poems.

19-7 Children continue to develop intellectually throughout the preschool years as they relate to their environment.

environment. In the first two years of life, children are interested in objects. They like to explore their environment. They need to have objects they can touch, bang, pile, and carry. Most children like to use familiar household objects and investigate what they can do with them.

Between the ages of two and seven, children think mostly about themselves. They tend to be *egocentric*, or concerned only with their own well-being. They tend to have difficulty understanding an adult's viewpoint or putting themselves in the position of an adult.

Children like to imitate and pretend, but their knowledge is not yet systematized. They are influenced primarily by what they see and hear at the moment. Because children at this stage cannot comprehend abstract concepts, they learn best by playing with objects and by being with people.

In this area of development, you can do much to either encourage or frustrate your child. Each accomplishment, no matter how small, should be praised, 19-8. It is a stepping stone for your child. If your child is sure of your love and support, accomplishments and failures alike will be easier to handle. If your child is not afraid of failing and disappointing you, he or she will have more courage to try new things. By trying more, your child will learn more.

Social Development

As children develop socially, they learn how to get along with other people. Stages of social development for preschoolers are described in 19-9.

Children's self-esteem will have much to do with their socialization. If they feel

19-8 Children develop intellectually if they are praised and encouraged for their successes.

Social Development from One to Five

The One-Year-Old

- Enjoys talking to adults with simple sounds.
- Enjoys playing with pet.
- May be easily frustrated when someone says no.
- Ability to walk and talk allows child to gain some independence from adults.
- Enjoys playing simple games with siblings.
- Likes to run from adult in chasing game.
- Learns to express affection for persons other than family.
- Is constantly on the move, looking for something to do.
- Wants to be independent, yet likes to be near parent or sibling.
- Likes to listen to music and "dance."
- Benefits from being with older children.

The Two-Year-Old

- Enjoys watching people.
- Enjoys opportunity to use large muscles and participate in climbing activities.
- Likes to play near other children rather than with them (parallel play).
- Begins learning masculine and feminine social roles.
- Becomes a "grabber" will try to snatch objects.
- Does not like to share toys.
- May pull hair or bite before giving up a prized possession.
- May give up a possession more easily when offered a substitute.
- Has not learned to say please, but often desires toys held by other children.

The Three-Year-Old

- Child is able to play with other children in cooperative play.
- Very sensitive about being watched.
- Tries to please and conform.
- Asks many questions.
- Likes simple guessing games.
- Enjoys playing dress up.
- Loves dirt, water, and mud.
- Needs some group experiences and social play.
- Can go places without parents and feel comfortable.
- May cry when parents leave, but parents should leave, reassuring child of their return.
- May exhibit direct aggressive feelings by saying, "I hate you." When this happens, parents should not withhold their love, but instead show the child their love can be counted on.

The Four-Year-Old

- Gets along better with adults and peers and is capable of cooperative play.
- Loves to play dress up and imitate adult roles.
- Enjoys parties and anticipates going to them.
- Talks about not inviting someone to a party to show dislike of them.
- Tries to gain favor of someone.
- Asks many questions of everyone.
- Does not hesitate to talk to anyone who comes into house–repair persons, etc.
- May pick up "dirty" words and enjoy shocking a parent by saying them.
- Learns to obey rules at school and may sometimes rebel at following them.

The Five-Year-Old

- Gets along reasonably well with other children and takes part in games and other activities.
- Acts courteously in certain situations.
- Waits for turn to talk; says please and thank you.
- Participates in singing.
- May choose special friends for the first time.
- Can be silly with friends.
- Likes to phone friends, but does not say much.
- May not like organized games, but prefers to make up own games and play activities.
- Enjoys being left alone while at play.

19-9 **This chart outlines the stages of social development during the preschool years.**

threatened, they may resort to defense mechanisms and display negative behavior.

The family provides the first model for socialization. If children sense optimistic, positive attitudes within their families, they will usually behave confidently in other social situations.

The success with which children learn to relate to the world around them affects the degree of cooperation and responsibility they will display as adults. As children move through different stages of social growth, many of their actions are the result of watching and imitating adults, 19-10.

David Hopper

19-10 Children enjoy dressing up and imitating the behaviors of adults they have watched.

Children's Play

Play is very important in the social development of children. As children grow, their play changes in form. Young children are self-centered and play by themselves. As they grow older, they may prefer **parallel play**. In this form of play, children like to play next to their peers, but they do not play with their peers, 19-11. They watch what others are doing and may copy their actions, but they do not interact. This onlooker behavior prepares them for the next form of play.

In **cooperative play**, children interact with one or more people. At first, most children will choose different playmates each day, but they may eventually choose "best friends."

Preschools and neighborhood play groups give young children opportunities to expand their social skills, 19-12. These opportunities help children prepare for their next major new social situation—the school environment. Children who have had a generally positive experience in earlier social situations will feel more secure when they enter school.

Cholla Runnels

19-11 In parallel play, children enjoy playing next to each other, but they have little interaction.

Emotional Development

As emotional development continues, the interactions within families are reflected in the emotions displayed by children. Children learn to manage such emotions as fear, anger, jealousy, and anxiety. Parents can help their children learn acceptable emotional responses by providing good examples in their own behavior. Parents can also recognize and encourage desirable behavior patterns in their children. The stages of emotional development during the preschool years are described in 19-13.

The emotional climate in a home can do much to foster healthy, well-adjusted children. A climate of love in the home lays the foundation for affection and trust. Withholding love can be damaging, for children need to know they are loved all the time—not just when they are "good." Loved children feel secure and are able to show affection to others. They gain self-esteem and thus will be better able to develop self-discipline and independence.

Negative behavior patterns are sometimes displayed in families, and in turn, by children, 19-14. If children feel insecure, their feelings may be displayed in overaggressive behavior, temper tantrums, nervous habits, speech problems, or fretful sleep. If children frequently display such behavior patterns, try to determine what might be causing the problem. If the behavior is persistent, professional help should be sought.

The Preschool Years

Parenting involves many joys as well as responsibilities. During your child's

Cholla Runnels

19-12 **Imitating adult roles helps children develop socially.**

Emotional Development from One to Five

The One-Year-Old

- Is very self-centered.
- Emotionally unpredictable; may respond in different ways.
- Capable of indicating affection.
- Likes to be near people.
- May respond to commands in the opposite manner.
- Negativism may be apparent, but it is normal.
- May have favorite toy; carries it at all times.
- Displays fear of high places, strangers, loud noises, and insecure footing.
- May hug pet too hard while showing love and cause injury to animal.

The Two-Year-Old

- Enjoys expressing love and affection.
- Responds to praise and wants to please parents.
- May choose a security toy or blanket.
- Needs firm and consistent guidance.
- Does not respond readily to commands.
- Unable to make confusing choices.
- Punishment aggravates frustration.
- Emotions are "brittle" and feelings are easily hurt.
- Exhibits little patience and is easily frustrated.
- Anger is directed at person responsible for frustration.
- Jealousy is a recognizable emotion.
- Fear of dark may develop.
- May resent new foods and dawdle while eating.
- Has little sense of time; hurrying a child often makes him or her stubborn.

The Three-Year-Old

- Is more cooperative and considerate.
- Able to show self-control.
- Is able to share and wait for turn.
- Praise and affection are eagerly sought.
- Takes pride in tasks performed for others.
- Very proud of self-made items.
- Learns more socially acceptable ways of displaying feelings.
- Temper outbursts become less frequent.
- Capable of lasting hostility; may try to get even with offender.
- Sympathy is displayed by attempting to comfort or help a friend.
- Emotional experiences of the night may upset sleep.
- Shame or harsh actions promote fears.
- Displays fear of the dark, animals, and storms.

The Four-Year-Old

- May say "I love you" one minute and "I hate you" the next.
- May use silly names.
- Likes to boast they are bigger and better.
- May overexaggerate about anything.
- May become more selfish and impatient.
- May fight, boast, and boss.
- Concerned with imaginary dangers.
- Has a strong sense of family and home.
- Becomes interested in rules of games.
- Is willing to take turns.
- Able to plan ahead with adults.
- Is learning to accept limits.
- Runs ahead when walking with others, but then waits for them.
- Acts silly when tired.
- Angers last longer and child may want to hurt person or object causing anger.

The Five-Year-Old

- May be embarrassed when showing affection.
- Wants to be with favorite people.
- Is proud of parents.
- Is more protective of siblings.
- Is learning to take responsibility for own actions.
- Accepts instruction and supervision.
- Asks permission to do things.
- Is more patient and generous.
- Shows sympathy.
- Feels guilty when knows thoughts are "wrong."
- Has longer attention span.
- Expresses ideas through dramatic play.
- Displays jealousy by tattling, belittling, or lying.

19-13 Emotions play an important role in the development of the preschooler.

Pam Ryder

19-14 Sometimes a disagreement will have to be settled with the help of an adult.

preschool years, the days will be full of activity. You will marvel at the boundless energy of a preschooler, and you may sometimes breathe a sigh of relief when you tuck your child into bed at night.

Every family faces unique challenges as children develop. As parents, you will find yourself filling a variety of roles. The important goals are to enjoy the preschool years with your child and to assure your child of your love.

Discipline

It may be hard for you to think in terms of "discipline" as you hold your one-year-old. However, to be effective, discipline should begin in early childhood. **Discipline** is the use of various methods and techniques to teach children self-control and limits. The goal is for children to develop behavior patterns that are acceptable to society.

Discipline should be based on love and understanding. It should involve respect, support, and encouragement as well as communication of limits or boundaries. Discipline should be as normal a part of daily life as eating or sleeping. Children at any age should be able to count on it.

Discipline is often equated with punishment. Punishment is one of many forms of discipline. However, many other forms of discipline that are more effective in guiding children's behavior, such as setting limits, being consistent, and using consequences and timeouts.

- ***Set limits***. Children want and need you to set limits for them. Limits give children a feeling of security, for limits help them define and understand their environment. See 19-15. Children will still try to get around some rules, but limits will help them feel loved and secure.
- ***Be consistent***. Discipline must be consistent. Children have to be able to

19-15 When discipline is based on love and understanding, it helps children learn their limits.

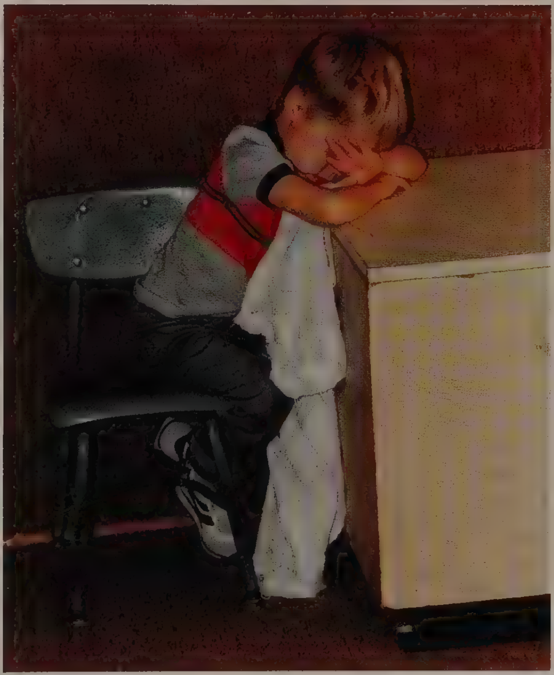
count on the no's as well as the yes's. When a bed time is established, and children have been reminded a few minutes earlier that bedtime is coming up, they need to know their whines will not force parents to relent. In addition, parents should try to agree on matters of discipline. If they don't, children will soon learn that one parent can be played against the other to get what is wanted.

- ***Use consequences.*** *Consequences* are results that follow and are caused by certain actions or behavior. When children are allowed to experience consequences when they choose certain behaviors, their choice of future behaviors is often affected. Some consequences occur as a natural result of certain behavior. For instance, if a child leaves a toy outside, it might get rained on and damaged. The child will learn not to leave toys outside after play. Parents can also set up artificial consequences to guide behavior. For example, a parent might tell a six-year-old that if he or she does not pick up the blocks after playing with them, the blocks will be put away for a week. This is not a natural consequence, but it is a logical and related result of a child's behavior.
- ***Use timeouts.*** A **timeout** involves moving a child away from others for a short period of time, usually a few minutes. A child whose behavior is disruptive may benefit from a brief "timeout" period in an area away from others but within the parent's range of vision. The child is given time to calm down, 19-16. A brief explanation of what rule has been broken should be given. Parents should give the child a warning before using the timeout.

Understanding how to become caring parents is a challenge. If you base your actions on love and understanding, you will help your child establish the basic foundation of trust that is so important in life.

Anxiety and Fears

Although every person experiences fears, the fears of childhood often seem overwhelming. It is not uncommon for children to have fears. When fear affects children's ability to accept the daily demands of living, then they need help to overcome it. The most common childhood fears are of the unexpected, the dark, loud noises, strangers, and being left alone, 19-17.



Cholla Runnels

19-16 A timeout away from others helps a child to calm down and learn that some behaviors are unacceptable.

Cholla Runnels

19-17 Children's fears are very real to them.

Fears can be handed down from parents to children. Parents who are frightened by storms may close curtains so they do not have to look outside. The children may learn to fear storms, too.

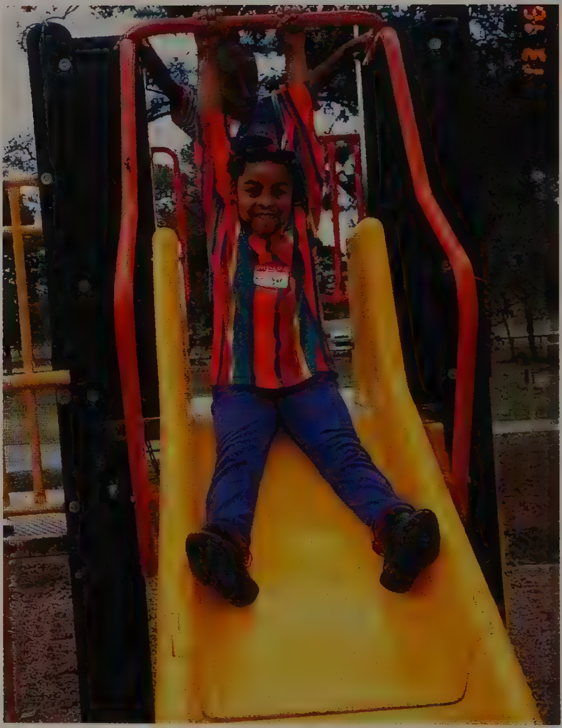
Often the anxiety of a small child remains unknown to the parent. A small boy who sees his mother going to the hospital to give birth to a baby may remember that his grandmother went to the hospital and never came back.

Parents need to help their children separate fantasy from truth. Sometimes they can simply say they are going to read a "pretend" story and then explain what pretend means.

Fears can be useful in the lives of children, 19-18. Understanding that fires burn and that knives cut can protect children from harm. However, fears that prevent a child from meeting life normally can produce damaging habits and actions. Such negative responses to fear may create long-lasting problems.

When you introduce a new experience to children, try to anticipate any fears they might have. Offer them extra encouragement. Give them time to work through the experience in their own minds. Show them how to do it. Do not force them to accept a new experience because this could cause fear. Never shame or laugh at children for being cautious. Let them know the security they seek from you is always there.

As parents, try to recognize the fears of your children and the causes of those fears. Then help your children dispel the fears with reassurance, security, and love.



Pam Ryder

19-18 Some fears will keep children from hurting themselves by playing on equipment that is meant for older children.

Anger

Children are humans, and like all humans, they sometimes become angry. If a child says, "I hate you," you may feel hurt at the time. You need to understand that a child who feels that way may be anxious or frustrated. Simply talking with the child in a calm manner may dispel the child's anger.

A parent or caregiver can help by making a sincere effort to understand and empathize with an upset child. In many cases, children can overcome their anger when a new activity is suggested, such as a game of follow the leader.

Some children need to vent their anger, but it should be done in a way that will not be harmful. They could release their anger through physical activities, such as throwing a ball or punching a pillow.

A **temper tantrum**, a violent outburst of anger, is common in young children. A tantrum should be ignored, as long as the child is not harming anyone or anything. Giving in to children's demands in order to end a tantrum will only encourage such behavior in the future. However, parents can try to be aware of situations that trigger a tantrum and try to reason with or distract the child to avoid one.

Your child may learn to imitate your displays of temper. If you can help your child handle frustration and anger constructively, you will be teaching your child skills that will be helpful throughout his or her life.

Preparing for Another Child

If you plan to have more than one child, be sure to prepare your first child to accept a brother or sister. If the event is a total surprise to the child, it may be very upsetting. If the child believes that the new baby will add to the pleasure of all family members, the child will look forward to the birth. See 19-19. Some jealousy is natural, but it will be minimal if the child is allowed to help prepare for the new baby.

Once the baby is born, try to be even more generous in giving love and attention to your older child. Help him or her feel secure in the role of an older sibling. Your child will learn you cannot always give children equal amounts of attention, but you love the children equally and will always be fair. The new baby will need more of your attention, and the older child may even enjoy helping you care for the baby. If the child can see all the care the baby needs, the child may understand why you spend so much time with the baby.

David Hopper

19-19 This sibling's parents prepared her for the birth of another child. As a result, she is eager to hold her new sister.

Child Care Options

The ideal environment for a young child, according to most authorities, is in the home with loving and caring parents. They believe that a child should have a parent as the primary caregiver for at least the first three years of life. In today's society, this is not always possible. Child care provided by others is a fact of life in many families.

As a parent, you will want to provide the best environment possible to help your child achieve his or her full potential. This environment may include child care provided by others. Parents should discuss their opinions about child care before children are born. In fact, this should be discussed even before marriage.

When making decisions about child care, parents need to review their goals for rearing children. They also need to review alternatives for meeting those goals. Parents who decide to use child care should put some time and effort into the selection, 19-20. Children's development is greatly influenced by their environment and their caregivers.

There are several options for child care. These include in-home care, family child care, and child care centers.

In-Home Care

In many cases, the most desirable type of child care is care given in the child's home. This is especially true if the caregiver has experience with children and has values much like those of the parents. If the caregiver is a warm and loving person who enjoys children, the quality of the care is likely to be good. Often the caregiver is a grandparent or other relative.

Parents who hire a caregiver to work in their home should check the person's references. They should discuss methods of discipline and theories about rearing children. They should also be sure the person interacts well with their children. After a period of adjustment, parents should review the arrangement. If the child seems unhappy

Points to Check When Comparing Child Care Options

1. Is the center licensed? Is the license displayed?
2. Do the people who care for the children have training in child development and child care?
3. Is the center clean and sanitary? Does it meet requirements for fire protection and sanitation in food and toilet facilities?
4. Are the surroundings pleasant?
5. Are the children's routines structured, but not rigid?
6. Is the health of the children well protected and regulated?
7. If food is served, is it nutritious? Is it served under sanitary conditions?
8. Are the children divided into age groups with adequate supervision for each age group?
9. Are the groups small enough to facilitate interaction?
10. Is the play equipment safe and appropriate for children of all ages?
11. Have precautions been taken in case of emergency? Are phone numbers listed next to the phone? Are evacuation plans practiced?
12. Are records kept on the progress of each child? Are these records available to the parents?

19-20 If you are considering child care options, you should thoroughly investigate the choices available to you.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Evaluating Child Care: What to Look for

Child caregiving staff and facilities vary widely in cost and quality. Before entrusting staff with the care of your child, take some time to visit and evaluate several facilities. Spend enough time to gain a real sense of the facility's physical and psychological atmosphere, rather than just its superficial aspects.

Pay special attention to the following:

- *Safety, health, and cleanliness.* Look for environments that are not only educationally stimulating but free of furniture with sharp corners, hazardous electrical appliances, and other sources of potential accidents. Meals and snacks should consist of nutritious items rather than "junk food." Caregivers should supervise children in developing basic health habits, such as hand washing before meals and after bathroom use.
- *Caregivers' openness to interacting with parents.* Look for a caregiver who seems genuinely interested in being your partner in helping your child develop. Such a person will be open to discussing everything from the cause of your child's scraped knee to how the child is interacting with the other children.
- *Caregivers' willingness to interact positively with your child.* Look for kind, intelligent, affectionate staff members who will interact with your child rather than encouraging him or her to sit in front of the TV all day. A positive staff-to-preschooler ratio will increase the chances that your child will receive individual attention.
- *Constructive disciplinary methods.* Caregivers with a philosophy of discipline based on physical or verbal abuse should be avoided at all cost. Also, pay attention to the actions the caregiver feels are deserving of punishment. For example, if a child is humiliated or punished for accidentally spilling a glass of milk, look for a different facility.
- *Opportunities for both activity and rest.* Children need to be able to take "time out" from active play and constant interaction during the day. A good facility allows for a child's need to follow his or her own rhythms of active engagement and quiet time for self.

Finding the right child care setting may not be easy. However, taking the time to search for the best available environment will give parents peace of mind. They will have the satisfaction of knowing that their child is spending each day in a caring, constructive environment.

or the parents feel uneasy, alternative arrangements should be made.

In-home child care often costs more than other types of care. The government does not regulate or license such care, so parents are responsible for seeing that their children's developmental needs are met.

Family Child Care

The most common type of child care is that provided in the home of the caregiver. This arrangement provides an atmosphere similar to the child's own home with a small group of children. It is often available within the child's neighborhood.

People who care for children in their homes are often parents themselves. While they stay at home with their own children, they also care for other children. Ideal caregivers in these situations are people who truly love and enjoy children. They have had experience working with children and maintain discipline with gentleness as well as firmness.

Before placing a child in a caregiver's home, parents should visit the home a few times. They should watch the children interact with each other and with the caregiver. Parents should also ask for references and check them thoroughly.

In most states, child care homes are registered but not licensed. Certain restrictions exist, such as limits on the number of children allowed in each home. Parents have to judge the care their children receive, for these homes are not inspected on a routine basis.

Child Care Centers

If child care is not available in a home setting, a child care center may be an option, 19-21. There are advantages to this

Jac
Lindsay
Jasmine

JoAnn Macander

19-21 **Children in child care centers learn to interact with other children their age.**

type of setting. In a child care center, staff are more likely to have received formal training in child care. There may be more opportunities for social interaction among children in a center. More facilities for learning, as well as for play, may be available in a center than in a home. There may be a more organized program of activities to help children learn.

On the other hand, your child may not receive as much personal attention. The atmosphere will be more institutional and less homelike. A large group of children may be overwhelming to your child.

There are many different kinds of child care centers from which to choose. All may not be available in your community, however. Costs and programs will vary considerably.

Nationally Franchised Child Care Centers

Child care centers that are part of a national chain offer uniformity in child care. The equipment and overall programming are much the same from center to center. These centers generally have good, safe equipment and well-developed programs designed and supervised by trained personnel. Meals and snacks are usually available. Extended hours allow flexibility in parents' schedules. These centers generally maintain high-quality programs for medium-range fees.

Privately Owned Child Care Centers

Some child care centers are privately owned. Most of these centers have excellent programs run by well-qualified staff members. The good centers have plenty of safe play equipment and a variety of supervised activities. Costs vary according to the services and quality of care provided. Tuition must cover all operating expenses.

Church-Linked Child Care

Some churches sponsor child care programs. Most church-linked programs have high standards and are run by well-qualified staff members. Fees may be charged to cover expenses, but they are usually low. Many of these programs operate a limited number of hours and days. A few offer full-time, daily child care.

University-Linked Child Care

Child care programs are a part of many colleges and universities. They are often called laboratory schools. They offer care for the children of faculty, students, and the general public. They also offer educational opportunities for university students studying child development. Children receive excellent care and guidance, and the fees are generally low. Most have a highly qualified staff, a well-planned curriculum, and excellent equipment, 19-22. These programs are so popular among parents that they usually have waiting lists.

Publicly Sponsored Child Care

Head Start, Home Start, and entitlement programs are sponsored by the government. They are available to families who qualify for free or low-cost child care. These programs must comply with strict guidelines in order to be licensed. They are usually excellent programs, but they are not available to everyone. Most of the expenses for the program are funded through grants received from the federal government.

Landscape Structures, Inc.

19-22 **Laboratory schools usually have well-equipped facilities.**

Cooperative Child Care

In many communities, parents have started cooperative child care centers. In these centers, parents provide many of the services for which other centers would have to pay. This lowers the tuition fees. Parents also serve on the board of directors, hiring teachers and managing finances. Maintenance may be provided at "work parties" or on an assigned basis. In this type of child care, parents are able to participate with their children and with other parents. The sharing of experiences between parents and their children and the support system among parents are special advantages of cooperative child care.

Employer-Sponsored Child Care

Business managers know many of their employees are parents. They know these employees are concerned about their children's welfare. As a result, businesses are becoming more involved in child care. They have found this benefit often helps their companies to attract and keep good employees.

Some businesses provide child care in the workplace for employees' children. This allows parents to be close at hand if their children need them. It also allows parents and children to spend time together as they go to and from work and perhaps during lunch breaks.

Other businesses offer company-paid child care as a fringe benefit. Employees who have children may choose the child care facility they want for their child, and the employer will cover some of the tuition costs.

Day Care for Children Who Are Ill

Across the country, there is an increasing demand for day care for sick children whose parents are unable to stay home with them. Children in child care centers and schools are exposed to many illnesses. Special child care facilities allow children who are ill to get well in a center designed exclusively for sick children.

Some communities also have services available that provide in-home care for sick children. Individuals trained in basic home health care are on call to care for sick children in their own homes. Often, these people are senior citizens.

The School Years

Most parents think they are busy when their children are babies. When their children enter the school years, however, parents may find themselves even busier. School years include car pooling, dropping off and picking up children from after-school activities, watching school plays, serving food at picnics, and nursing sick children. For parents, the demands of the school years can be exhausting, yet exciting. Parents need to get involved in their children's activities in order to share these important developmental years.

Time for Family

It is important that family members find time to be together as a family during the school years. *Leisure time* is the time you have free from your work and other duties. Leisure time should not be filled with activities that take each member of the family off in a different direction doing his or her own thing. At the same time, your free time should not be spent just taking children to various lessons and activities. Instead, the family should spend some part of their leisure time doing activities together. In busy families, this time may have to be scheduled. A certain time each week can be designated as family time. No other activities should be scheduled at this time. Family members can decide together how they wish to spend this time each week, or members can take turns choosing an activity.

Shared leisure time is important for the health and well-being of the family, 19-23. Participating together in recreational activities helps to pull families together. Communication is sometimes easier when family members are enjoying relaxing activities. Parents and children who find recreational activities they all enjoy are drawn together because of their mutual interest and enjoyment. As children enter their teen years, this mutual interest can help to sustain a bond that will keep teens from drawing away from their parents.

19-23 Parents and children become closer when they enjoy leisure activities together.

Children's Use of Computers

Computers are wonderful tools. They give family members new options for learning and entertainment. Children are able to enjoy a variety of educational games and tap into a vast resource for school projects. At the same time, the addition of a computer to the home adds to parenting responsibilities. There are potential dangers involved. By taking certain precautions, your child is less likely to be exposed to inappropriate material or people online.

First, place the computer in a common area where you can monitor your child's use of the computer, 19-24. Limit the amount of time your child spends on the computer since this takes away from active play, social activities, and homework. Pay attention to games your child might download or copy. Some are violent or contain sexual content. You may want to look into software or online services that filter out offensive materials and sites.

Children should be warned to never give out personal information online or share their password with anyone, even friends. E-mail messages should be monitored. Children should not respond to messages that make them feel uncomfortable. They should also be warned that people they chat with online are not always who they say they are. They should never agree to meet with someone they have met online.

19-24 Computers are wonderful tools, but parents need to monitor their children's use of the computer.

Your Children's Friends

Once your child starts school, he or she may begin to bring home a continuing array of friends. They will be important to your child and will help your child develop feelings of security and self-esteem. How you react to your child's friends may have a lasting effect on the continuing relationship of trust and respect between you and your child.

Sometimes you may sense that certain friends are undesirable. This presents a problem, and you should act. Child authorities recognize the tremendous influence of friends, and if the friends are undesirable, you would be wise to try to ease the child away from the involvement. Examples of situations that warrant concern include sex play, substance abuse, vandalism, cruelty to animals, a gang mentality, or violent or lawless behavior.

Children need friends, but they need friends who will increase their self-confidence and self-esteem, 19-25. If your children know their friends are welcome in your home, you will have a greater chance of controlling who the friends are. Having friends visit your home also allows your child to judge the friends in a familiar setting. Your child may see the differences between the friends and your family and realize that not all friendships are good ones.

19-25 **Friends are important to the school-age child.**

Lying

Some school-age children have a need to be smarter, stronger, or braver than anyone else, so they may tell lies. Children may be so eager for parental approval that they tell lies just to get it. If children are caught telling lies, let them know. Then try to discover the reason for the lie. If a child lies because he or she fears your anger or disappointment, you need to provide reassurance and help the child overcome the problem that led to the lie. If, for example, a child lies to cover up a poor grade on a test, you need to help the child find ways to do better on the next test.

Reward children for telling the truth. Help them accept the fact that all people make mistakes. Let them know they will not be severely punished for making mistakes. Punishment may make children even more skillful liars if they find they can protect themselves from punishment by lying. Also set a good example yourself. If children see their parents lying, they learn from them that lying is acceptable behavior.

Developing Responsibility

Developing responsibility in your child is a worthy goal, but before it can be achieved, you will experience many ups and downs. At times, you will feel frustrated. There will also be times when you say, "I am so proud of you."

Responsibility involves consideration for others and fulfillment of obligations. Your child can learn to be responsible with your guidance, 19-26. Your child should be encouraged to think "Let's see what I can do about this problem." As a parent, you can help your child realize that he or she can solve problems. Praise your child when he or she has shown responsibility, and provide opportunities to be responsible again.

Your child can learn to take care of personal property. Present your child with tasks he or she can handle. Such tasks could include picking up toys, making the bed, setting the table, or caring for a pet. As your child performs these tasks, he or she will develop responsibility. Children show an amazing willingness to help out when a real problem or need exists. They like to feel needed.

If your child has trouble meeting responsibilities, take time to explain tasks clearly and completely. Be sure your child is capable of doing the tasks you assign. Then remember to praise your child when the tasks are completed.

If you can help your child develop responsibility at home, your child is likely to be responsible at school and throughout his or her entire life. See 19-27.

19-26 Children become more responsible when you praise them for a job well done.

Children and Money

It does not take long for children to realize that money plays an important part in life. How can you help your child develop healthy values concerning money?

Most authorities feel the practice of giving an allowance is still the best

Barrier Free Environments, Inc., Raleigh, NC

19-27 A part of being responsible is taking care of personal hygiene without being told.

method of teaching children money management. An *allowance* is money given by parents to children for their personal needs. The object is to help children become self-reliant and capable of handling money.

Under an allowance system, children are given a certain sum at regular intervals, often each week. Several factors are considered when deciding on an amount. The children's needs are a major factor. The income of the family and the needs of other family members should also be considered. Children have to realize they are part of a family and every member has needs. Another factor to consider is the amount that other children their age are getting. Children in the same community often have similar needs.

The allowance should include a small amount more than is really needed. This extra amount is what really gives your children the most experience. How will they handle this extra money? Some will waste it. Some will give it away. Some will save it. However, most will eventually learn they can have what they need and some of what they want if they successfully control their spending. They can learn how to set and achieve financial goals.

Allowances should be paid regularly. They should not be held back as punishment. If the wrongdoing had no connection with money, then the allowance should not be withheld. Likewise, allowances should not be given in advance, as a rule. If children spend or lose their money, they will have to learn to live with the consequences.

If the allowance system is not used, what other methods are available? You may assign a value to all household and yard tasks and pay for each job done. Parents who like this method feel it teaches children the value of work as well as the value of money. Opponents feel it places a price on tasks that should be a part of family duties and that it teaches children to work only when they will be paid.

Some parents think a combination is good. They give an allowance for regular needs and pay by the job for special tasks. In this way they combine the good points of both methods, 19-28.

Some parents simply hand out money when children need it. This can promote good communication between parents and children. If it is not overdone, it can successfully meet the needs of all family members.

19-28 **If parents pay children for special tasks, the children will be more likely to appreciate the money they earn.**

After-School Child Care

When a child reaches school age, parents may have a need for after-school child care. Many working parents need supervision for their children between the time their children leave school and a parent returns home. Communities realize this growing need and are developing programs to meet this need. These programs may be offered in extended-day programs in schools, community centers, churches, and existing child care centers. Many school districts are extending half-day kindergarten to full days, often to accommodate working parents.

Children in Self-Care

Children in self-care are children who are regularly left without direct adult supervision before or after school. Such children have also been referred to as *latchkey children*. Across our country, a growing number of children arrive home from school and enter an empty house to wait for their parents.

Studies of children in self-care reveal the following: Children who are left to care for themselves during nonschool hours have more academic and social problems than their peers who receive adult supervision. Children who are alone tend to be more fearful, lonely, and bored than children who are supervised. The primary fear of these children is that someone will break into their homes while they are alone and hurt them.

Many specialists argue that children in self-care are expected to assume too much responsibility too early in life. They agree, however, that for some children, self-care experiences have not been all bad. Self-care has fostered such positive outcomes as increased self-confidence and greater independence.

Much depends on the attitude of self-responsibility and security instilled in the children by their parents. The age of the child is also an important consideration. Parents need to assess the needs of their children, their own work responsibilities, and the neighborhood in which they live.

Children in self-care need to be trained in the skills of self-sufficiency and safety. Parents need to establish a safe environment for their children when they are home alone. They need to establish guidelines for the use of appliances and equipment. Emergency telephone numbers should be easy to find. There should be ground rules for allowing other children or acquaintances into the home. Safety precautions concerning strangers should be discussed with the children. Proper use of the telephone should also be covered.

Communities and government agencies are investigating the particular needs of children in self-care. Many communities have designed support services to help children in their homes. Telephone programs offer reassurance for children who are home alone. Children can call for help in emergencies, to report problems, or just to talk.

After-school child care is a concern that is being addressed. However, parents will continue to have the major responsibility for the well-being of their children should they need to be left alone.

Web Sites on Parenting and Child Care

Web sites featuring authoritative information:

National Association for the Education of Young Children
www.naeyc.org

National Council on Family Relations
www.ncfr.org

Family Information Services
www.familyinfoserv.com

U.S. Department of Education
www.ed.gov

Popular parenting Web sites:

BabyCenter
www.babycenter.com

Parenthood.com
www.parenthood.com

Parent Soup
www.parentsoup.com

ParentsPlace.com
www.parentsplace.com

Note: Internet addresses and content are subject to change without notice.

19-29 Web sites can provide useful sources of parenting information.

Parenting Information Online

Web sites, message boards, and chat rooms on parenting topics may be useful resources to parents with access to a personal computer. Some Web sites offer expert advice on a wide range of subjects, from finding quality child care to helping children learn to read, 19-29. Chat rooms allow parents to share advice with one another. Although common sense is a "must" in accepting advice from non-experts, parents can gain helpful tips as they deal with similar problems.

While using message boards and chat lines, parents should be careful not to reveal any personal information that could identify themselves or their children. Anything shared on the Web becomes public information that is available to anyone.

Chapter 19 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- An important responsibility of parenting is to nurture children from infancy to adulthood. Nurturing a child means loving the child and showing this love and affection.
- Providing a safe and healthy environment is another responsibility of parents. Parents must provide nutritious food for their children and see they get adequate sleep. They must make sure children receive the necessary medical care throughout the growing years. Children also need to be protected from accidental injury and other risks to their safety.
- Physical growth and development slow down after the first year of life, but refinement of physical capabilities increases. Children's intellectual development is related to their interaction with the environment. In the first two years of life, children are interested in objects. Between the ages of two and seven, children think mostly about themselves. They may not understand an adult's point of view.
- Play is an important part of the developing child's social development. As children grow, their play changes in form from parallel play to cooperative play.
- The emotional climate in the home can do much to foster healthy, well-adjusted children.
- Discipline that is based on love and understanding helps children learn self-control and self-discipline.
- Fear and anger are normal emotions of all humans, but children may need help handling these emotions.
- Parents who require child care should evaluate the many different types of care available, including in-home care, family child care, and child care centers.
- During the school years, parents can help their children establish good friendships, develop responsibility, and learn to handle money.
- Children in self-care must be mature enough to handle the responsibility of caring for themselves. Many communities offer support services to help children who are home alone.

Review

1. Briefly describe how parents can provide a nurturing environment for their children.
2. Give an example of how modeling could influence a child's behavior.
3. List five safety precautions parents need to take to keep their children safe.
4. True or False. Children learn large muscle control before they learn fine muscle control.
5. Describe the three stages of children's play.
6. Explain the difference between discipline and punishment.
7. Explain how some fears can be useful and others can be damaging to children.
8. Briefly describe four child care options available to parents.
9. How can shared leisure time improve the well-being of the family?
10. Describe three practices parents can follow to protect children from potential dangers involved with computer use.
11. How can you help children learn not to lie?
12. What can parents do to help assure the safety of a child in self-care?

React

1. Divide the class into several groups. Assign each group a different area of the child's environment, such as the home, the neighborhood, shopping areas, cars, parks, etc. Develop a list of rules, limitations, and safety precautions parents should provide in each of these areas. Share the lists with the class, and post them on the bulletin board. Try to find pictures in magazines that depict some of these points to create an informative display.
2. Role-play a variety of situations in which parents are trying to teach their children self-control and responsibility. Situations might include picking up toys, sharing with another child, displaying anger, or learning how to manage money. Present your conclusions to the class and discuss.
3. Write a report on various methods of discipline.
4. Investigate types of child care in your area. Compare their facilities, staff, programs, and costs.
5. Observe a child either in a child care center or in your neighborhood. Using the developmental charts in this chapter, compare this child's abilities to the abilities of an average child of the same age.
6. Ask a child psychologist to speak to the class about children's fears, citing the most common types of fear, how parents influence children's fears, how fears can hamper or help a child's development, and steps parents can take to help children overcome their fears.
7. Research and design an informational pamphlet for parents on the subject of safe computer use for children.

Reflect

1. Accept or reject the following statement: There is a fine line between encouraging children and "pushing" them. Explain and give examples to support your response.
2. Name two methods of discipline you feel are effective. Name two you believe are ineffective. Support your answer.
3. Discuss the pros and cons of parents working different shifts so one is always home to care for the children. Include consideration of possible effects on the couple's relationship.
4. Name three positive and three negative things you would note in evaluating an after-school child care program. What do you feel is the single most important factor to look for in an after-school program?

Part VI

Families Face Change

Chapter 20
Balancing Family and Work Concerns

Chapter 21
Dealing with Family Crises

Chapter 22
Divorce and Remarriage

Chapter 23
Aging and Death

Chapter 20

Balancing Family and Work Concerns

Terms to Know

- dual-career families
- part-time workers
- displaced homemakers
- alimony
- rehabilitative alimony
- family-friendly policies
- flextime
- compressed workweek
- job sharing
- fringe benefits
- employee-assistance programs (EAP)
- Family and Medical Leave Act
- quality time

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- explain reasons why people work.
- evaluate various types of work and family arrangements and patterns.
- determine how work and family life impact each other.
- describe employment practices and trends that support families.
- identify techniques for balancing family and work demands.

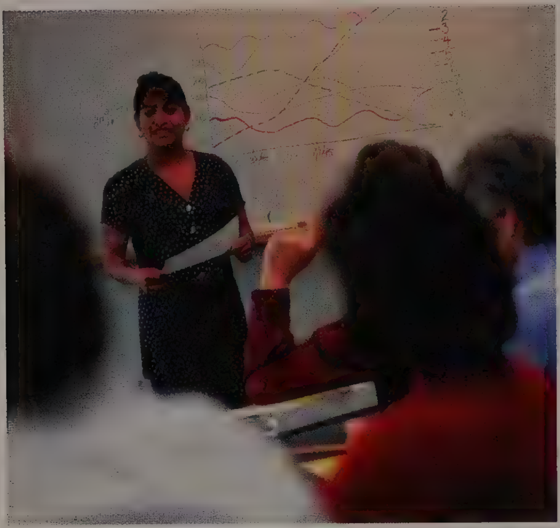
Two of life's greatest satisfactions are experiencing a satisfying family life and fulfilling a life's calling—usually through paid or unpaid work.

Both family life and work take time and effort. Sometimes one area can be going well while the other needs special attention. It is easy to get over involved with one area at the expense of the other. Dealing with the joys and challenges of both is a lifelong adventure.

Why Work?

Most people in our country work during most of their adult lives. Most men and unmarried women have traditionally held full-time jobs. In recent decades, more married women and women with children have also been employed outside the home.

Almost two-thirds of all married women with children under age six are



20-1 **Many mothers with small children are employed outside the home.**

currently employed, 20-1. About seven out of ten women with children under age 18 are in the labor force.

Why do people work? Working provides opportunities for self-expression, personal growth, and satisfying interaction with other workers. Paid employment also provides the means by which the family supports itself.

In three out of five marriages in our country, both the husband and wife have jobs. Working couples often find that the added dimensions of outside contacts and interests can enhance their marriage. Employed spouses can share interesting work-related experiences with each other. They can also better help each other deal with job pressures.

Working for pay has other benefits as well. An additional income contributes to greater financial security and purchasing power for the family. If one spouse becomes jobless or disabled, the other spouse's income will help make ends meet.

Financial self-sufficiency gives people greater independence and more life choices. Although many marriages are very happy, others end in divorce. Some family situations involve emotional or physical abuse. Financial self-sufficiency can make it easier for the abused spouse to leave and start a new life.

Changing Attitudes

In many areas of society, the terms "men's work" and "women's work" have lost their meaning. Most people no longer think that a person's gender (whether one is male or female) should determine the type of work one does.

At home, more women can be found taking care of the car, and more men cooking meals. In the working world, more men are becoming nurses, and more women are becoming police officers. It is illegal for an employer to refuse to hire someone because of gender.

Types of Work and Family Arrangements

Which is better, for a mother to be employed or to stay home with the children? Is it okay for a father to stay home to raise the children? What if both the mother and father want (or need) to work full-time? What if there is no father around? Families in our society have a variety of needs, preferences, and opportunities related to work and family roles. Each family must find the way of managing these roles that suits it best.

Dual-Career Families

In some families, both the husband and the wife are employed. These are called **dual-career families.** If both spouses are committed to their jobs, they must work out ways to divide up household tasks fairly. They must also make time for satisfying family life.

Dual-career families often find that finding high-quality care for children is a major concern. Often there are other family members, such as elderly or ill grandparents, who also require care. Two incomes may allow couples to purchase more services, including child and elder care, rather than doing everything themselves, 20-2.

Families with Part-Time Workers

Many families find it works out well to have one spouse working full-time and the other part-time. **Part-time workers** work less than a full workweek and thus have more time to focus on raising the children and managing the household.

20-2 With two incomes, spouses in dual-career families may be able to hire a physical therapist to help an elderly parent.

In addition to childrearing, typical household responsibilities include such things as food shopping; cooking and cleaning up after meals; keeping the family's clothing clean and in good repair; providing a clean, safe, pleasant home environment; managing family finances; and caring for ill family members. The part-time worker usually cannot take on all the responsibility for all of these tasks. However, part-time work does free up some time that can be devoted to homemaking.

Families with Full-Time Homemakers

Less than one family in ten now fits the traditional pattern of husband as full-time breadwinner, wife as full-time homemaker, and children at home. However, full-time homemaking is a legitimate, responsible, worthwhile career for either husbands or wives.

A spouse who stays home today is not rewarded with paychecks or job promotions. Instead, the homemaker finds pride and satisfaction in caring for the family, 20-3. Family members should show their appreciation for this work.

Homemakers provide many services that would otherwise have to be purchased or provided by other family members. These services typically include such things as child care (and sometimes elder care), meals, laundry, housework, furnishing and decorating the home, family financial management, driving children to medical appointments and after-school activities, caring for ill family members, and many other tasks. To avoid exhaustion, homemakers must establish priorities and make choices based on them.

Wage-earning spouses also face challenges. They may feel the pressure of

20-3 **A full-time homemaker may find pride and satisfaction in caring for family members.**

being the sole source of the family's support. Often, wage earners feel they have little free time to spend with their families. Thus, wage earners deserve the family's appreciation, too.

Displaced Homemakers

A full-time homemaker who is supported by a spouse may feel financially vulnerable in the event of divorce. **Displaced homemakers** are longtime homemakers whose husbands have left or remarried and whose children have grown. After a divorce, homemakers may lose financial support, medical insurance coverage, and other sources of financial security that had been provided by their spouses. Displaced homemakers may find themselves unexpectedly dependent on their own resources for these things.

The financial situation of the displaced homemaker is of special concern in the later years of life. Some homemakers rely solely on Social Security benefits provided through their ex-husband's contributions. However, they usually find it difficult to make ends meet. Worse, some homemakers find their marriage did not last long enough to qualify them for any lifelong Social Security benefits.

Some homemakers expect to receive **alimony**—financial support from the breadwinning spouse—after a marriage breaks up. However, the current trend is for courts to award only **rehabilitative alimony**—financial support for job retraining—rather than lifelong support.

Homemakers who drop out of the workforce for long periods of time are at risk of becoming displaced homemakers. They can protect themselves to some degree by obtaining as much education, job training, and job experience as possible.

Single-Parent Families

The single parent faces the double challenge of trying to be both mother and father to the children in addition to providing for the family's support. The challenge is even greater if the parent lacks sufficient education or training to get a job that will make ends meet.

More than six out of ten teenage mothers have not completed high school by the time they have had their first child. Some will go on to receive a high school diploma, and a few may even go to college. However, women who bear children in their teens are less likely to complete their educations. Until they do, they will find it more difficult to get a job and support their families. They are at risk of living in poverty.

Although some single parents receive child support, many receive only partial payments or none at all. Congress has passed several laws designed to improve the rate of child support payment. Improved enforcement of child support will probably ease—but not eliminate—the problem of women and children living in poverty.

Members of single-parent families have a special responsibility to pitch in with household tasks. Often, the older children can help out by looking out for and taking care of the younger ones.

Each of the above work and family arrangements involves sacrifices as well as rewards for each member of the family. Each family member needs to recognize and appreciate the pressures faced by the others. Still, family members all have each other. Together, they can work toward a satisfying and fulfilling lifestyle.

Patterns of Work and Childbearing

If a career-oriented couple want to have children, when is the best time to have their first child? Soon after marriage, or after they have finished their educations and acquired some job experience? How many children should they have? Is it necessary for every couple to have a child?

Most women today, compared to previous generations, are marrying later, having fewer children, and having children at a later age. Since 1960, the average age at first marriage for women has risen from 20.3 years to 25.1 years. For men, it has risen from 22.8 years to 26.8 years.

On average, women are having about two children today, compared with 3.7 children in the late 1950s. Couples are also choosing to have their first child later in life. Today, on average, a child is born within a few years of the parents' wedding. In the late 1950s and early 1960s, couples on average had their first child within only 15 months of their wedding.

Many women are currently waiting even longer—until they are over age 30—to have a baby. At present, nearly one birth in three in our country is to a mother over 30.

Delaying childbearing for a reasonable time has many advantages, 20-4. A couple can establish healthy patterns of work and family life without the added complications of children. Spouses can finish their educations and get started on their careers. They can also gain a sense of themselves and each other as wage earners.

Also, one spouse may choose later in life to become a part-time or full-time homemaker. Then the other spouse will remember a time when the homemaking spouse was a respected wage earner in the outside world. The homemaker will be less likely to be viewed as a "servant." If the homemaking spouse later decides to return to work, a reliable work history will help in finding a job. This is especially true if the homemaker's job skills have been kept current.

The drawbacks of delaying childbearing are mainly those associated with older parenthood. Women over 30 are at somewhat higher risk for complications during pregnancy than younger women. Also, keeping up with high-energy toddlers is easier when parents are younger themselves.

20-4 This couple is delaying childrearing until they can fix up a house suitable for raising children.

Is it okay to have only one child or to remain childless? Today, more women than in previous generations are choosing these options. Nearly one woman in five in her late thirties currently has not yet had a child. Another one woman in five has had only one child. Such choices are legitimate lifestyle options.

Impact of Work and Family Life on Each Other

Have you ever had a bad day at school and later been out-of-sorts with your family? Maybe you have had trouble concentrating at school because of an argument you had earlier at home. Similar events occur once you enter the working world. What happens to workers on the job affects their family life, and what happens to workers at home affects their job performance.

Effects of Employment on Family Life

Employment means many positive things to most families. Most importantly, employment provides them with a means of support. If wages are high, families can enjoy a higher level of living. Although a higher-paying job may mean longer working hours or more business travel, many families prefer this to lower wages and less purchasing power. Employment often also provides families with benefits such as Social Security and access to health insurance.

Working fathers and mothers can serve as good role models for their children. They can teach them good work habits and ways of interacting effectively with others. Children can observe the satisfaction their parents take in doing a job well and working cooperatively with colleagues to achieve work goals. They can see that when their parents' jobs are going well, their parents are happier and have more energy for family life, friendships, and community activities.

Children can also learn about the sacrifices their parents make to earn a living. They can observe the stress caused by long hours, tight deadlines, and conflicts with supervisors or coworkers. They can see how stress affects the time and energy their parents have for family life and activities outside of work.

However, children can learn positive ways to cope with job stress. For example, they can learn the value of talking over work problems with one's spouse or a trusted friend, taking a brisk walk, spending an hour pursuing a relaxing hobby, or even looking for another job.

In choosing a career, you may wish to take into account the amount of stress that is "built into" various jobs, both for you and for your family. Some careers involve high personal risk (for example, jobs in the military, law enforcement, or firefighting). Some involve irregular working hours. Some require frequent moves to different locations. Some involve higher potential for layoffs during times of economic recession. If you choose such a career, you and your family will need to find ways to live with your choice.

Effects of Family Life on Employment

Because employment is so important to most families, family problems that "spill over" into a job are a source of concern, both for the employer and the worker. Workers with unresolved family problems may be less productive due to absenteeism, tardiness or early departure from work, excessive numbers of personal phone calls, or inability to focus on job responsibilities.

Dual-career families may find that juggling work and family responsibilities is a special challenge. Such families face the need to find reliable child care and perhaps elder care as well. Somehow, household tasks must also get done.

Knowing that the first years of a child's life are crucial to mental and emotional development, dual-career parents must consider their choice of a caregiver very seriously. If quality child care is unavailable, one or both parents should consider alternatives such as full-time homemaking or part-time work until the child is of school age.

Working parents with a young child in a child care facility may miss some memorable moments in their child's life. They are likely to feel disappointment if the caregiver—not the parent—is the one who witnesses the child's first step or first spoken word. If the parents have chosen a good caregiver, however, they will find comfort in knowing that the child is in good hands.

Balancing work and family demands becomes especially challenging during illness and times of family crisis. An example of a family crisis is a serious illness of another family member. Such a crisis, stressful in itself, can be even more stressful for someone trying to hold down a job while looking after a loved one.

Before a couple commits to marriage and a family, they should discuss each other's expectations regarding children. If a child or elderly parent becomes ill, does one spouse expect the other to always be the one to miss work to care for the family member? What about the sharing of household chores? See 20-5. Having a clear understanding about such matters before marriage can save much stress later on.

As you have seen, career and family have a direct effect on each other. Employees who are happy at home tend to be more productive at work. On the other hand, if work and family roles are not managed effectively, work performance suffers, and family relations may become strained. As families learn to balance both roles, all members will be better able to reach their full potential. An attitude of

20-5 **Before they are married, couples should discuss how they will share household chores such as grocery shopping.**

empathy and cooperation can go a long way toward making even the most stressful day bearable.

Employment Practices and Trends That Support Families

Legislators and many business executives are recognizing the new realities of family and work patterns discussed above. They are putting policies and programs in place that help employees meet their family responsibilities. These are often referred to as **family-friendly policies**. Employers are finding that such policies can be workable and *cost-effective* (economical in terms of benefits yielded by money invested). They not only motivate current workers, but also help to attract new employees. The following sections describe some of the family-friendly policies and programs provided by many employers.

Flexible Work Schedules

Many companies now offer employees the option of varying their work schedules to accommodate family responsibilities. Traditional work schedules may be appropriate when only one person in the family is employed. If both parents work, however, it is helpful if they can work different hours so one parent is always available to provide child or elder care. Many companies provide several options for their workers.

Flextime

One option, called **flextime**, allows the worker to choose his or her own working hours, subject to certain rules. Under flextime, firms require their employees to put in part of their hours during a specified time each day, for example, from 10:00 a.m. to 3:00 p.m. The employee puts in the remainder of his or her hours either before or after that period of time.

Flextime offers employees greater flexibility in coordinating work and family schedules. For example, employees who can come to work early may be finished with their day's work in time to pick up their children from school, 20-6.

Compressing the Workweek

Another option offering flexibility is a **compressed workweek**. This allows employees to work 40 hours (a typical work week) in four days. This way, workers can have at least one weekday available for family responsibilities. On workdays, the employee might work from 7:00 a.m. until 5:45 p.m., with a 15-minute lunch period. A variation of a compressed workweek is a compressed two-week period in which the employee puts in 80 hours of work in nine days and gets the tenth day off.

Job Sharing

With **job sharing**, companies allow two employees to share one full-time job. Together with their supervisor, the two employees find mutually agreeable ways of fulfilling the functions of the job. Frequent communication between the two workers and with the supervisor is key to making job sharing a success.

Employee Benefits

In addition to a wage or salary, most employees are offered a variety of fringe benefits by their employers. **Fringe benefits** are nonwage extras provided by an employer in addition to a regular paycheck. These benefits can provide significant financial advantages to workers. In addition, many are family friendly because they contribute indirectly to a more fulfilling and satisfying family life. Common benefits often include the following:

- health, dental, and disability insurance
- life insurance
- paid vacations and holidays
- sick leave
- retirement or profit-sharing plans
- bonuses
- advanced training or tuition reimbursement

20-6 **Flextime may allow one parent to be with the children at all times, saving child care costs and providing quality time.**

Additional fringe benefits include employer-sponsored child care and employee-assistance programs. These benefits are more likely to be offered by larger companies.

Employer-Sponsored Child Care

Many employers have recognized the importance of helping their employees find suitable child care for their children. They can assist their employees in a variety of ways. Some businesses provide on-site child care. An *on-site child care facility* is one that is provided by the employer at or near the job site. This allows parents to be near their children. They may even share lunch times.

Some companies offer to pay for all or part of the child care costs in place of other benefits. Parents may receive a voucher or coupon worth a certain amount of money from the company. Parents can then make their own child care arrangements. Other companies provide flexible work schedules that allow parents to work at times when good child care is available. Flexible work schedules may allow one parent to be with the children most or all of the time.

Employee-Assistance Programs

Another way that some companies are offering support to workers and their families is through **employee-assistance programs (EAPs).** EAP staff can counsel employees faced with problems such as alcoholism or other substance abuse, family illness, financial debt, or finding child or elder care. If necessary, EAP staff can refer employees to outside services.

Some workers hesitate to share personal problems with EAP staff out of fear their confidentiality will not be respected. Employees may find it helpful to talk with coworkers who have used these services before deciding whether to participate.

Family and Medical Leave Act

An important piece of legislation designed to support working family members was passed in 1991. This was called the **Family and Medical Leave Act.** This act entitles workers to 12 weeks of unpaid leave per year following the birth or adoption of a child. This time can also be used to care for a seriously ill relative or to take care of a serious personal health condition, 20-7. At the end of the leave period, a worker has the right to get his or her former job—or a comparable one—back.

20-7 **The provisions of the Family and Medical Act allow a parent to take time off from work to care for a seriously ill child.**

Under the Act, an employer may require that the worker use up some vacation or personal time for part of the time the worker is gone. Benefits may be more extensive in some states. (For information on benefits in your state, contact your state attorney general's office.)

The Family and Medical Leave Act applies only to businesses with 50 or more employees. Sixty-six percent of U.S. workers are covered under this law. Smaller businesses are exempt, though they may have leave policies of their own.

Legislators' and companies' efforts to help employees meet family responsibilities involve complex issues. However, progress is being made as the challenges of balancing family and work demands become apparent throughout society.

Realities of the Workplace

Both men and women may sometimes face challenging situations at work that occur simply because of their gender. For instance, a company representative interviewing prospective women employees may ask if they are married or how they intend to handle their child care arrangements. These questions are discriminatory. However, some people are faced with such questions in job interviews.

Women may also be discriminated against when they become pregnant. The *Pregnancy Discrimination Act of 1978* requires that pregnant employees be treated the same as employees with temporary disabilities. This law applies to all employers who provide disability insurance or paid sick leave.

Sexual harassment—for example, making off-color remarks and jokes or making sexual overtures toward employees—is also illegal. Men as well as women may be victims of this type of behavior. Sometimes, a worker may be able to discourage inappropriate behavior such as this by maintaining a businesslike attitude. If sexual harassment does occur, the victim has an obligation to report the incident to the person designated by the company to handle such reports as stated in their sexual-harassment policy. In most cases, the manager can be held responsible for the harasser's actions unless the company has a clear policy against harassment that is disseminated and enforced effectively.

Women have made great advances toward equal treatment at home and in the workplace in recent decades, 20-8. However, many challenges remain. Although 15 percent of wives now earn at least $5,000 more per year than their husbands, women make on average only 76 cents for every dollar made by a man in a comparable job. At home, many dual-career husbands do not yet share equally in the child care and household tasks. Sensitivity to such issues throughout society is needed for full equality to be achieved.

Techniques for Managing Family and Work

As you have seen, a dual-career lifestyle gives spouses many opportunities for sharing. They share financial burdens, and they share home and family tasks. However, sharing does not necessarily mean a 50-50 split on each and every task.

20-8 More women are employed outside the home, but they may earn less pay than men in comparable jobs.

Although older children can help out with home chores, they must still be given time to do their schoolwork. They may also be involved in extracurricular activities. Each family must work out its own plan, according to each member's abilities, preferences, and school or work schedule.

Getting Organized

Organization is absolutely essential to juggling the demands of marriage, children, and a job. Being organized means wearing different "hats" at different times, setting priorities and standards, and planning ahead. It also means learning to schedule, to delegate tasks, and to communicate effectively.

Fulfilling Multiple Roles

Many adults feel torn about the many roles they must play. They may sometimes wonder, Am I a worker who happens to have a spouse and children, or am I a spouse and parent who happens to work?

Both work and family roles are important. Most people find that when they are at work, they wear an imaginary hat labeled "worker." When they leave the workplace, they put on an imaginary hat labeled "family member."

Sometimes, of course, it's not so simple. You may be absorbed in your work assignments when the phone rings, and the caregiver informs you your child is seriously ill. Maybe you are looking forward to a weekend with the family when the boss asks you to work on a report over the weekend. In situations such as these, flexibility, a supportive spouse, and a positive attitude can help you cope. See 20-9.

20-9 Each family member can contribute to a smoothly running household.

Setting Priorities and Standards

Setting priorities means deciding which things out of an array of possibilities are the most important. Some tasks are "must do's," some are "nice-to-do's," and some can be put off until a much later time. Most workers find it helpful to make a list of tasks, to prioritize them, and then to scratch the items off the list as they are completed. Setting priorities helps workers get the important tasks done each day.

Setting standards for how well a job needs to be done is important, too. For example, some families set a high standard for how a bedroom should look before family members leave for work or school. They believe the bed should be neatly made. Other families have lower standards of neatness. The neatness of a bedroom is not a matter of right and wrong, but rather of the individual family's preference.

Most families have high standards in some areas, and lower standards in others. To hold standards of perfection in all areas sets the family up for feelings of frustration, stress, and failure. Having lower standards in areas that are less important can free up time and energy to focus on more important areas.

Scheduling and Planning Ahead

Many busy working parents find that a calendar with space for recording appointments is a valuable aid in keeping track of after-school activities and other commitments. A calendar can also help parents avoid scheduling conflicts. For instance, you would not want to make a dental appointment at the same time you have committed to take your ten-year-old to baseball practice.

Planning ahead means thinking about how tasks can best be accomplished in the time allotted. It also means saving money and vacation days for use in emergencies. For example, you may use up all your vacation time and then get a phone call informing you your elderly mother has fallen and broken her hip. In order to help her in this crisis, you may have to take leave without pay.

Saving part of family paychecks for unexpected expenses is also important. Sometimes, money can be substituted for time if time is more valuable. For example, let's say you have received permission to leave work early to bake a birthday cake for your child. However, just before you leave, the boss asks you to stay late and work on a project. If money is available, you can stay late at work and buy a birthday cake at the bakery on your way home.

The family member who plans ahead can make each day of the week go more smoothly. Some workers pack family sack lunches on the weekends, when they have more time, and stow them in the freezer for the week ahead. Parents with young children may wish to assemble the child's clothing for each day of the week on a separate closet hanger. This technique may make dressing the child go faster on weekday mornings, when time is short.

Delegating Tasks Effectively

Delegating—or assigning—tasks is one way to maintain a fair distribution of household work among family members. Tasks should be assigned with the abilities, preferences, and schedules of family members in mind. If the task is new, clear instructions should be given. Even if results are less than perfect at first, family members should be praised and encouraged.

Family members should try to be patient with one another while new skills are being learned. Some women complain that their husbands don't help with cooking, but ridicule their husbands' efforts when they do attempt to cook.

Husbands, too, may be impatient with their wives in teaching them a household fix-it job. They may give them hurried, unclear directions and then brush their wives aside, sighing, "Never mind, I'll do it myself."

Learning new home and work skills is a lifelong process. Family members can contribute a great deal to each other's development if they can maintain a loving, encouraging attitude at these times, 20-10.

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Sharing Household Chores: What's Fair?

Despite the increase in dual-career households, studies show that married women on average spend much more time on household chores than their husbands. Perhaps because of their traditional roles as full-time homemakers, employed women may feel more responsible for planning and doing more of the housework. As a result, many women are unable to put in the extra on-the-job hours needed to advance in their careers.

Husbands are doing more housework today than they were several decades ago. However, husbands who see themselves as primary breadwinners are less likely than other husbands to share equally in household tasks. Men who believe their wife's income is essential to the family's well-being are more likely to put in more hours working around the house.

For a happy marriage and a smoothly running household, each couple must arrive at its own housework-sharing arrangements. The arrangements must be viewed as fair by both spouses and should reflect each spouse's time, skills, and preferences. Some couples like to rotate work responsibilities; others do not. Some couples prefer to lower their standards so fewer hours of housework are necessary each week. Others opt to pay for outside help. The best solution is the one that works best for the individual couple.

Communicating

Good communication between family members is very important to balancing work and family demands successfully. The family member coordinating the household tasks needs to give and receive information regularly to keep things on track.

At home, family members can use phone calls, e-mail messages, telephone answering machines, notes posted on the refrigerator, and other ways to keep each other informed. At work, an employee can use a break or part of the lunch hour to keep in touch. A quick phone call can make a big difference to an elderly family member facing a lonely day, a teenager who has come home from school to an empty house, or a spouse facing a stressful business meeting.

Using Technology for Managing Family and Work

Technological advances, such as the personal computer and electronic communications devices, are creating new ways for people to manage their career and family responsibilities. Home appliances have also helped the family handle household chores more efficiently.

20-10 **Family members should take time to teach skills to other family members.**

As pointed out in Chapter 3, the practice of telecommuting allows people to work using their personal computers at home—rather than commuting, or traveling, to work. They can then send the completed work to the office electronically. Telecommuting provides greater employment options and schedule flexibility for people who wish to combine family responsibilities with employment. For example, a worker who needs to care for a child or chronically ill elderly person might be able to do so while working from the home.

The use of home computers has also provided other tools that help families manage tasks more efficiently, 20-11. If home computers are connected to the Internet, even more useful tools become available to family members. Some of the uses for the home PC that assist the family include:

- electronic tax filing (you can complete your tax returns and send them to the IRS online)
- electronic bill paying (you can transfer funds from your bank account to a merchant's account)
- electronic shopping (you can view catalog pages and order products online)
- grocery shopping (your grocery list can be e-mailed to a supermarket and your groceries delivered to your home)
- information gathering (up-to-the-minute information on any topic can be accessed online from a multitude of Web sites)
- travel planning (schedule information and tickets can be purchased online)

20-11 **The home computer has made it possible to complete tasks that earlier required trips to the store, bank, travel agency, or post office.**

Other electronic devices are being used by family members to allow instant communication with one another. School-age children and teens can carry pagers or cellular telephones so that parents can be in touch with their children wherever they are. Children can page or telephone their parents when they need to be picked up after school activities. Pagers or cellular telephones can be carried by parents at work or in their cars so they can always be reached by their children. Much time can be saved by family members when they can communicate quickly with each other. Stress is also reduced when working parents know they can be contacted by their children whenever there is a problem that needs their attention.

The handheld computer is another technological device busy families can use to coordinate their activities and schedules while "on the go." This battery-operated device allows family members to perform tasks such as accessing and sending e-mail, keeping a calendar of events, maintaining address and "to do" lists, performing math calculations, viewing documents, and browsing the Internet. To keep current with each other's activities, spouses and children can regularly share information (for example, on upcoming appointments and after-school events) with each other's computers. The device's capabilities can be expanded to include use of a computer keyboard, printer, and digital camera.

An important advantage of a handheld computer is its portability. You can take it with you and use it whenever you have a spare moment. Some businesspeople find the handheld computer helpful in creating a "mobile office." The device allows them to access information while on a business trip or on their way to a meeting with a client.

Home appliances designed to ease household chores are continually being updated to make them faster and more efficient as a result of new technology. The microwave oven has been perhaps the most significant innovation affecting food preparation in recent decades. Meals can be prepared in much less time using the microwave. In addition, food items can be warmed up quickly for family members who arrive home late, after other family members have eaten. Other home appliances, such as dishwashers, clothes washers and dryers, and cleaning equipment, make many household tasks easier to complete.

Spending Quality Time

Quality time refers to time you spend giving your full attention to another person or persons. Working parents who find quality time for children and each other usually have a more satisfying family life.

When you were young, do you remember how important it was to tell Mom or Dad of the day's events when you came home from school? Maybe it is still important to you. Many parents find their children need them most when they first see each other after work. In their quality time together, parents can pay special attention to their children. They can listen to their stories about the day's events and provide guidance and affection. It may also be the time to read them a story or to enjoy a recreational activity together. See 20-12.

At the heart of all successful family life are love, sharing, support, communication, forgiveness, and appreciation. There is also the simple enjoyment of belonging to a family circle. Management techniques

20-12 **These working parents find the time to give their children loving attention at the end of a busy day.**

such as setting priorities and making lists are meant to be tools to enhance family life—not ends in themselves.

There are times when even the most careful plans just don't work out. A patient, problem-solving attitude at such times can make a big difference in the life of each member of your family.

When children become adults, they are more likely to remember the emotional quality of their family life together than the spotlessness of the house. It will be more important that their parents found time for them than that the parents got everything on their lists accomplished each day.

The time that family members share nourishes lifelong bonds. These ties are based on love, affection, and memories of shared experiences. The love that family members feel for one another will endure throughout life—long after one's working days are over.

Chapter 20 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Working outside the home provides the family with financial security as well as opportunities for self-expression, personal growth, and satisfying relationships with coworkers.
- In recent decades, society has become more supportive of nontraditional, nongender-based roles at home and at work.
- Types of work and family arrangements include dual-career families; families in which one spouse works part-time in order to devote more time to homemaking; families with full-time homemakers; and working single-parent families.
- Although full-time homemaking is a legitimate career choice, the homemaker is financially vulnerable if the wage earner's income is lost. Full-time homemakers can protect themselves to some degree by acquiring as much education and job training as possible.
- Compared with recent decades, women are marrying later, having children later, and having fewer children. Many women are choosing to finish their educations and establish themselves in careers before having children.
- Because contented family members make more productive employees, many companies are providing ways to help their employees meet family responsibilities. Increasing numbers of companies are offering flexible work schedules, employer-sponsored child care, and family-friendly fringe benefits.
- Although it is illegal, workers are sometimes subjected to discriminatory gender-based hiring and promotion practices as well as sexual harassment in the workplace.
- Techniques for managing family and work include getting organized (fulfilling multiple roles; setting priorities and standards; scheduling and planning; and delegating tasks effectively) and communicating effectively (using technology and spending quality time).
- Spending quality time with family members is important to preserving a close and loving relationship.

Review

1. List three reasons for wanting to be employed.
2. Name four basic types of work and family arrangements, and describe one advantage and one disadvantage of each type.
3. What is a displaced homemaker?
4. Why are more married couples today having children later in life compared to 30 years ago?
5. Give an example of the impact of work on families. Give another example of the impact of families on work.
6. Match each of the following with its descriptive phrase.
   _____ Compressed workweek
   _____ Job sharing
   _____ Employer-sponsored child care
   _____ Flextime
   _____ Employee-assistance programs
   A. Child care provided at the workplace, or care provided elsewhere and paid for by the company for whom the employee works.
   B. Compressing the hours in a full workweek into fewer days.
   C. Assistance on personal problems provided by the company for whom the employee works.
   D. An arrangement in which two workers carry out the functions of one job.
   E. An arrangement that allows workers to come to work early or stay late as long as they are present during a certain specified range of time each day.
7. Explain the basic provisions of the Family and Medical Leave Act.
8. True or False. Women—but not men—can experience gender-based discrimination in the workplace.
9. Describe how setting priorities can help family life run more smoothly.
10. Define quality time and explain its importance in family life.

React

1. Research and evaluate the personnel policies of three companies in your area. How "family friendly" are their policies? How could their policies be improved?
2. Identify a recent family television program illustrating the balancing of work and family life. What type of work and family arrangement does the family have? What conflicts arise, and how are they resolved? Present your findings to the class in an oral report.
3. Interview a family friend or relative who had her first child after age 30. Did her wish to build a career influence her decision about when to have a child? Is she happy with her decision? Why or why not? Does she believe there are any drawbacks to waiting until after age 30 to have a child? Summarize the interview in a confidential written report.
4. Role-play an exhausted working mom enlisting the cooperation of her teenage son and daughter in sharing more of the household chores. Who ends up doing what? Is the type and level of work assigned to each family member fair? Why or why not?

Reflect

1. What do you think is the ideal age for a couple to have their first child? Their last one? Support your answer from the standpoint of both the parents' and children's well-being.
2. What are your feelings about couples who decide not to have children?
3. What do you think of couples who decide to have only one child? Many children?
4. If you became a working spouse and parent, would you consider yourself a worker who happens to have a spouse and children, or a spouse and parent who happens to work? In other words, which role would you view as more primary—your family role or your work role?
5. List 10 common household tasks. Rank them in order of priority based on your personal priority system. Then indicate the standard of quality you hold for each task by writing "high," "medium," or "low" beside each item. What if your future spouse has different priorities and standards? Discuss methods of resolving such conflicts.
6. Discuss the following statements:
   A. Women workers should feel flattered when male coworkers comment on their physical attractiveness.
   B. Workers should feel free to call other workers of the opposite sex "dear" and "honey" to express their affection.
   C. Women who "flirt" with their male bosses are more likely to get a promotion.
   D. Men who "flirt" with their female bosses are more likely to get a promotion.

Chapter 21

Dealing with Family Crises

Terms to Know

- crisis
- shelters
- telephone hotlines
- intervention
- enabler
- codependency
- compulsive gambler
- chasing
- bailout
- sexual assault
- violence
- domestic violence
- child abuse and neglect
- physical abuse
- physical neglect
- sexual abuse
- incest
- emotional abuse
- emotional neglect
- halfway houses
- preparedness

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- identify resources and support systems that can help people manage crises.
- describe strategies for the management of problems and crises.
- list various types of family crises and explain their effect on individuals and families.

All people have problems, but the ways people handle problems differ greatly. Some people magnify unimportant matters into gigantic problems or refuse to recognize and deal with them. Other people absorb serious problems and maintain happy, successful lives. What is the nature of crises, and why do people meet crises so differently?

A **crisis** can be defined as a crucial time or event that causes a change in a person's life. A crisis situation may have no ready solution. Time may be needed for adjustments to be made.

To some people, a crisis is the end to happiness and achievement. They live the rest of their lives wishing to relive their pasts and dreading their futures. To others, a crisis serves as an incentive to achieve new and different goals, 21-1.

21-1 **Crises give some people even greater incentives to live productive lives.**

Resources to Help Withstand Crises

Why do some people manage to survive a crisis while others seem to "fall apart?" One difference is that those who handle crises well have incorporated resources for handling crises into their lives. Through the years, they have prepared themselves for the unexpected. They have mental, physical, financial, and social resources that can help them through crisis situations. They also know what community resources are available to them.

Mental Resources

Mental resources allow people to cope with the complexities and unpredictable elements of a crisis. Mental resources are the internal props that help people withstand external pressures.

In some crisis situations, people need courage to make changes and to follow new plans of action. A crisis may actually improve a person's life if the person reacts positively and makes the best of the situation.

In other crisis situations, people need courage to accept what cannot be changed. Accepting the finality of a crisis can be difficult. Sometimes the only way to make a situation tolerable is to change your attitude. For instance, parents who learn their newborn has a congenital disability may have difficulty accepting this fact. Because this type of crisis may be irreversible, they will have to change their attitudes and accept reality. Endlessly going over reasons the crisis happened delays acceptance. When they can accept it, they will find the strength to go on. Some people find the strength to meet crises within themselves and their circle of family members and friends. Some may find the strength in their religious beliefs.

Physical Health

Most people feel that if they have good physical health, they can handle anything, 21-2. Good health is a rich resource that people can use to meet the demands of crisis situations.

An interesting aspect of physical health is that people can demonstrate unusual physical strength during a crisis. Under stress, the human body produces the hormone adrenaline, which makes the heart beat faster and causes the body to react with increased energy. Adrenaline provides the strength to move extremely heavy objects to free persons trapped

21-2 Good health gives people the confidence to feel they can meet any challenge.

under them. Adrenaline also gives parents increased energy to get help when their children are injured. Pediatricians can cite many cases in which a parent somehow gets a child to a hospital even though the parent is also injured. Once the parent knows the child is receiving good care, the parent may collapse from his or her own injuries.

Financial Resources

Many crises involve increases in spending, 21-3. The spending demands of a crisis can become so great that they cause financial instability—another crisis in itself.

The majority of personal bankruptcies result from sudden, large monetary needs caused by illness or injury. This is why insurance protection is so important. Car, property, health, long-term care, and life insurance can help people meet the high cost of a crisis.

Savings that are easily accessible are helpful. It is also beneficial if both spouses are completely knowledgeable concerning the financial affairs of the family.

Family Relationships

In most marriage vows, husbands and wives promise to support each other in

21-3 A young couple making a large investment in a new house must be certain they have the financial resources to cover the payments and still have a financial cushion for unexpected crises.

both good times and bad times. The partnership may be easier during the good times, but it is more important during the bad times.

Particularly in a crisis situation, the relationships within the family must remain strong. The problem causing the crisis should not become more important than the family itself. Families that successfully meet crises are those in which family members love and care for each other. Together, the members adapt to the changes that must be made.

Some of the changes made during crises are changes in the roles of family members. The role changes may be either temporary or permanent. During a severe illness, a child may require the care of a nurse and therapist. A family member who learns to care for the child and to help the child do the required therapeutic exercises may help speed recuperation. By taking on the roles of home nurse and physical therapist during the crisis period, the family member can help the entire family. Imagine another crisis situation in which the wage earner for a family has a heart attack and is unable to work. The spouse may have to take on the role of wage earner for the family, 21-4. A refusal to accept role changes in either of these situations would mean greater problems for the family.

Parents should allow their children to help the family adapt to a crisis. If children are not allowed to become a part of the

21-4 **Roles may need to change during times of crisis. Another family member may need to take over as the wage earner.**

family's struggle, they may feel they are a part of the problem. Children can sense when something is wrong. If they are told that nothing is wrong, they begin to question themselves. In some instances, they may feel they caused the crisis. This can create greater problems for the family. Children need to feel they are needed. Parents may be pleasantly surprised by the help their children want to give during a crisis. When all is well, children may not offer much help. In a crisis, their sense of involvement becomes greater, and they want to help.

Sometimes, a severe crisis may break up a family. Spouses whose mates are physically or emotionally abusive, for example, often wish to leave the marriage. They may wish to find a safe environment and start a new life.

Other times, a crisis may actually pull a family together. The drug involvement of a family member, for example, may shake a family into action. The drug user may be able to solve his or her problem when the whole family is supportive. Once family members begin to work together on a problem, they are likely to continue to function as a unit.

Support of Friends

The emotional support of relatives, friends, and neighbors helps families face emergencies. If you have ever witnessed an outpouring of support to a family during a crisis, you realize how important this help can be.

Relatives, friends, and neighbors will help in emergency situations. However, any long-term assistance may be difficult because they are involved with meeting their own families' needs. The family can then turn to community resources.

Community Resources

Individuals and families are primarily responsible for their own well-being. However, in a crisis situation, these people may need help from other sources. Many community resources provide services to individuals and families. In previous generations, a network of extended family members may have helped. Today, with more family members living apart, the role of community agencies has become more important.

Various community resources are described in 21-5. Some of the resources listed are national organizations that might have local chapters. If a phone number for an organization is not listed in the white pages of your phone directory, contact your public library. A librarian can help you find the address and phone number for the national office.

If your community is small, the available resources may be limited. In large urban areas, there may be many community resources. Often, however, individuals and families are not familiar with their services. Try to become familiar with the community resources that are available in your area.

Shelters

Shelters are establishments or agencies that offer food and housing for people who have nowhere else to go. Most communities have realized the need to provide help for individuals and families who are in need of food, clothing, and shelter. Sometimes entire families may become homeless for a period of time. Some shelters specifically provide protection for people who are victims of domestic violence or sexual abuse.

Many people find themselves in crisis situations in which they need protection

Community Resources

Resource	Clientele	Services
American Red Cross	Provides services to families in the community.	Provides food, shelter, and other essentials to disaster victims and families in emergencies. Promotes health and safety awareness.
Battered Women's Center	Provides help for victims of family violence.	Offers shelter, counseling, public education, and advocacy for victims. Centers provide shelter, food, and clothing for victims and their children.
Big Brothers and Big Sisters	Provides adult companionship for children from single-parent families.	One-to-one relationship between adult volunteers and children, ages 7 to 15, from one-parent families. Adult provides guidance, social contact, and academic enrichment through regular weekly contacts.
Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF)	Families with children in need of assistance.	A government program that provides assistance to needy families with children while promoting job preparation, work, and marriage.
Children's Protective Services (Agency name may vary)	Children who are in need of protection due to abuse, neglect, abandonment, or sexual exploitation in their family environments.	This government agency assigns social workers to supervise families against whom there have been complaints of abuse and/or neglect. In severe cases, the agency will remove children from the home and provide substitute care, supervision, and related services for the children.
Family Counseling Center	Individuals, families, and groups needing counseling.	Family, marital, parent-child, and individual counseling are provided. Efforts are made to improve interpersonal relationships and family living.
YMCA **YWCA**	The general public.	Programs include child care, camping, health and fitness groups, family life education programs, older youth programs, parent-child programs, senior citizen programs, and other related services.
Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)	Americans preparing for or coping with disasters.	A government agency that provides emergency management and preparedness education. FEMA's Community and Family Preparedness Program helps people obtain information, education, and skills to protect themselves and their families, homes, and businesses from disasters.

21-5 These are just some of the many community resources available to help families in crises. Also see the support groups listed in Chapter 7.

immediately. Battered women, often with their children, may need to escape their abusive homes. Shelters for battered women provide housing, child care, and emotional support as well as counseling and legal services. Shelter staff help these women find permanent housing as their lives become more stable. Phone numbers for Battered Women's Centers are usually listed in the community services sections in the front of phone books. Police departments and hospitals can also refer people to these shelters.

Hotlines

Telephone hotlines offer an immediate source of information for individuals who need help in a crisis. Most are toll-free numbers. Some hotlines are managed locally and can be reached with a local number. Many hotlines can be used at any hour of the day or night. A person familiar with the particular crisis situation will answer the phone, offer guidance, and refer callers to local services.

Hotlines are typically available for those seeking information about child abuse, domestic violence, drug abuse, AIDS, STDs, and missing children. Young people who have run away can call a runaway hotline and ask that hotline personnel assure their parents they are okay. If the young people do not want to reveal their locations, at least they can let their parents know of their well-being. See the white pages of your phone directory for a listing of hotlines available in your community.

Intervention

Sometimes the person in a crisis has lost the ability to handle or control the situation. Through intervention, an outside professional trained in handling such a crisis can bring about changes that might not otherwise occur.

Intervention is a means of forcing a person to look at his or her behavior without the mask of denial. The aim of intervention is to convince the individual, such as an addict, alcoholic, or person with an eating disorder, that he or she needs to get help before it is too late. This is done by bringing together family members and other important people in the person's life. Under the guidance of the trained professional, these people speak truthfully, out of love, confronting the victim with specific details of his or her problem. The outcome in successful intervention is that the person admits the problem and voluntarily enters treatment. Intervention is direct and forceful, but it may bring about the change that is necessary for the well-being of the entire family.

Support Groups

Support groups may be available in your community to help individuals or families through specific crisis situations. Support groups include people or family members who have experienced a similar crisis situation. Because they have been through the same type of situation, they can offer empathy, give advice about the use of various resources, and recommend specific people or services that may be of help. Listening to and sharing ideas with other people who have experienced similar situations can help a person sustain a positive attitude through a very difficult time, 21-6. (See Chapter 7 for a list of support groups.)

21-6 **Support groups can help people who are battling addictions.**

Coping with Crises

You may believe that the strongest and healthiest families are those that have never had to cope with a crisis. In fact, the strongest families are probably those who have experienced a crisis and have been able to overcome it.

Crises are inevitable. They can occur at different stages of life and in different degrees of severity. As you look ahead to your life, you will benefit from establishing the resources just described. You will still need to know the four steps to follow in coping with a crisis.

Recognize the Existence of a Crisis

The first step in coping with a crisis is to recognize that a crisis does exist. In some situations, the crisis is undeniable, such as when a death occurs or a person loses a job. Even in these situations, however, a person may respond with disbelief, denial, or total shock. In other cases, a crisis might not be immediately recognizable. A person who has an alcohol problem may not realize he or she has become an alcoholic. The problem develops over time and the alcoholic may deny there is a crisis. Family members may need to seek intervention before the alcoholic will recognize the existence of a crisis.

Seek Alternative Solutions to the Crisis

The second step in coping with a crisis is to identify alternative solutions to the crisis. Solutions that will benefit all family members with the fewest possible negative effects should be sought. If the family has established a good foundation of resources, the solution may be found within the family unit itself. Adequate financial resources and the support of friends and other family members may be sufficient to withstand the crisis. Available community resources may need to be identified as well.

Even though the primary impact of the crisis may affect only one person, the entire family needs to recognize how the crisis will change the lives of every family member. If the crisis is a serious illness, this means family members will not be able to function in their normal roles for a period of time. If the ill person is the main wage earner, others may have to help out either by seeking employment or by reducing spending. In most families, both of these solutions have to be initiated. Care for the ill person will have to be supplied either by family members or by hiring a home health-care aide. Schedules may need to be adjusted and obligations outside the home reduced.

When evaluating alternatives, all family members whose lives are affected should be a part of the decision-making process. Underlying these decisions is the importance of communication among family members, including small children who may need help in understanding what is happening.

Once the alternatives have been reviewed and the family has decided on a direction to take, everyone can focus on resolving the crisis. Having a plan can help family members to focus on positive outcomes rather than living in dread of what lies ahead. Family members can begin to get on with their lives.

Look to Each Other for Support

When a crisis occurs, family members should look to each other for support. Some family members may be overwhelmed by the crisis and become emotionally distraught. They may not know what to do or where to turn, 21-7. These family members need help in coping with the crisis. This help can come from other members of the family or close personal friends.

As a family member or friend, you can help a family in crisis by offering encouragement to those who need it. Be there to listen, and encourage the sharing of personal concerns and feelings. Knowing there are people who love them and understand the difficulties they face can help family members through the most trying crises.

Resume Efforts to Achieve Personal and Family Goals

Most crisis situations eventually come to an end. Adjustments are made, health may be restored, or a solution is found. Life begins to return to normal. Family members can resume efforts to achieve personal and family goals.

Cholla Runnels

21-7 Some people do not know where to turn for help during a crisis. They need the support of family members and friends.

Due to the crisis, however, the means of achieving certain goals may need to be adjusted. For instance, a teenage family member may have been counting on going to college. If the family's savings have been depleted as a result of the crisis, the teen may have to attend a local community college the first year or two. Other alternatives would be to get a loan or take a year off from school to work full-time and build up a college savings fund. It is important that personal and family goals be maintained—they may just take a little longer to achieve.

Types of Crises

The rest of this chapter examines various types of crises. You will not be faced with all of the crises discussed here, for not every family encounters every crisis. However, as you study the following crises, think about how you might react to each one. Someday, you may be able to use this information as a frame of reference. Most people say one of the worst aspects of a crisis is the element of the unknown. If through this study you become familiar with these crises, the impact of a future related crisis in your life may be lessened.

Loss of Job

Unemployment occurs both in times of recession and in times of prosperity. In a recession, unemployment is more common, and many people will share the same fate. During prosperity, the unemployed are surrounded by the sights and sounds of prosperity, and their isolation and despair may be more intense.

The threat of unemployment may force people to retrain themselves for other occupations. If their skills are no longer in demand, they should investigate available jobs and the skills needed for those jobs. Many industries offer training programs. Community colleges and technical schools also offer programs that teach valuable skills.

What happens in families when unemployment occurs? If people are out of work, the attitudes of family members can make the difference between financial failure or a comeback. It is important that family members be supportive of the unemployed person. Without their family's support, the crisis of unemployment may be too much for them to handle. Jobless people may turn to alcohol or drugs. They may abandon their families and be content to live on unemployment checks. Some may even become so discouraged they consider suicide. A positive attitude is the best resource for avoiding disaster and overcoming the crisis of unemployment.

Financial Decisions Related to Unemployment

When a family faces the crisis of unemployment, a program of financial "first aid" must be followed. The family members should sit down and work together as a unit. They should assess all their obligations and make a family budget, 21-8. The situation may be less serious than they first thought once they find out just where they stand.

The family's next step may be to talk to its creditors. If they go to the creditors

David Hopper

21-8 When a family member loses his or her job, a review of the family's financial status is in order.

with a logical repayment program and obvious good intentions, the creditors may accept smaller monthly payments.

The whole family should be aware of the crisis. Children typically want to take part in the family's efforts and plans. They may offer to help by reducing their spending or by doing odd jobs in the neighborhood. No budget is workable until all members of the family understand it and agree to stick to it.

A job loss can cause massive changes in the lives of family members. Savings are depleted, and feelings of security are replaced by fears and tensions. The family may need to call on all of their resources to pull through the crisis.

Relocation

The average family in the United States moves several times. Some businesses demand many relocations by their employees. People who accept jobs in such businesses expect to move as their careers develop. Other families move as new job opportunities come along.

What happens when family members are told they have to move? A feeling of vulnerability may surround the entire family. They are not sure what the future will hold. They may be hesitant to leave their familiar surroundings.

Children may be especially upset if the move means leaving special friends. Parents can help by involving the children in the move, 21-9. If possible, children should be allowed to help select the new home. They can help make plans for decorating. Then they will feel more a part of the move and view it in a more positive way.

Once the family has moved, members still may refer to their old residence as "home." Refusing to accept the new residence may cause everyone in the family to be homesick. After the move, the family would be wiser to remember the former home as just that—a place where they used to live. The new residence deserves a chance to be called "home."

Some couples view frequent moves as opportunities to learn about different parts of the country. Other couples resent every move they have to make, and some may simply refuse to move. They decide the move is not worth the stress it causes their family.

If a move becomes a reality in your life, try to look at the positive aspects. Develop an attitude of acceptance and anticipation. Make the most of the positive contributions the move can make in your life.

Addictions to Alcohol and Other Drugs

Drug addiction is one of the most destructive and far-reaching family crises.

21-9 Children will have a more positive attitude about moving if they are allowed to participate in the process.

People addicted to alcohol or other drugs harm not only their own lives, but the lives of many people around them. Family members, friends, neighbors, and coworkers are all affected.

Addiction is the abuse of any drug that results in a physical or psychological need for the drug. The user has taken enough of the drug to cause the body and brain to need the drug to feel normal. If use of the drug is suddenly stopped, symptoms of withdrawal occur. The addicted person has lost control over his or her drinking or drug use. The drug is in control. The user's tolerance for the drug increases, requiring the user to take increasing amounts of the drug in order to feel its effects. When addicted, the user becomes preoccupied with obtaining the drug. (Refer to Chapter 8 for more information about alcoholism and the abuse of other drugs.)

What Causes a Person to Become Addicted to Alcohol or Other Drugs?

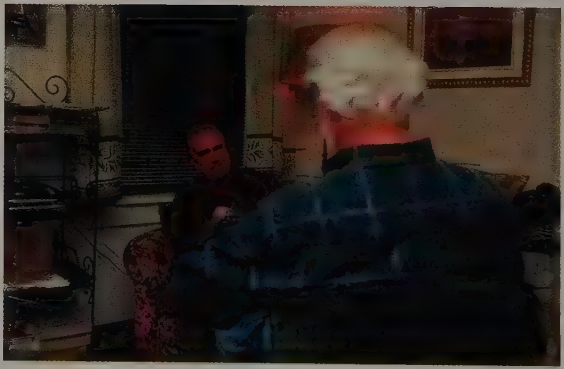
Alcohol causes alcoholism, an addiction to alcohol. If people do not drink, they do not become alcoholics. This is a simple answer to the question of cause, but it is true. The decision to begin drinking is an individual decision.

Some people drink responsibly, while others let their drinking get out of control. Many people who drink say that social pressure caused them to begin drinking, but other reasons compel people to drink beyond their capacity for control. The two most common reasons are job stress and family problems, but when alcohol takes control of a person's life, problems actually increase in these two areas, 21-10.

The use of other drugs has also increased in our society. Most abused drugs are illegal. Those who begin using drugs usually start with marijuana. As with alcohol, they are often introduced to the drug by friends in a social setting. The person experiments with the drug for "fun." Once people start using illegal drugs, they find additional reasons for continuing their use. They may use drugs in an attempt to escape their problems or to relax. They may feel drugs will give them an extra "kick" to help with a challenging task. Gradually they begin using more and more of the same drug, or trying new drugs, as their tolerance level changes. The drug is used regularly to cope with normal events. As side effects become more and more uncomfortable, alcohol and tranquilizers are used to try to calm the shakiness and unpleasant side effects. Users become preoccupied with obtaining drugs. Financial resources may be depleted, and work and home life are adversely affected. The user loses control of his or her drug use. The drug has taken control of the person's life.

How Do Alcoholism and Other Drug Addictions Affect Families?

Whenever a person becomes addicted to alcohol or any other drug, he or she can



21-10 Many alcoholics use alcohol to escape from family problems or job stress. Once professional counselors help alcoholics understand why they drink, the alcoholics have a better chance of quitting.

no longer behave in a completely responsible manner. The addicted person will suffer physically, emotionally, socially, and intellectually. That person's family members will suffer as well. The drug abuser behaves in ways that hurt the very people he or she loves the most.

Small children do not understand why their mother is "sick" all the time or why their father acts "funny." Older children may realize what is happening and blame themselves for the problem. Teens avoid bringing friends home, and they try to hide the problem from others. Children of all ages tend to do poorly in school. These children may complain about their physical health in an attempt to receive the attention they are not getting at home. Spouses learn not to count on their addicted mates, just as children learn not to count on their addicted parents.

Unfortunately, family members sometimes become enablers for the addict. An **enabler** is someone who unknowingly acts in ways that contribute to the addict's drug use. When the enabler sees that the addict is not behaving responsibly, the enabler tries to protect or "cover for" the addict. The enabler may take on the responsibilities that the addict should be fulfilling and may feel that this is "helpful." In reality, however, the enabler may be protecting the addicted person from the negative consequences of the addictive behavior. Thus, the enabler may be decreasing the motivation of the addicted person to fight the addiction.

All family members may become involved in helping the addicted person cover up his or her problem by denying there is a problem. They may act to "rescue" the addict by lying for him or her. For instance, they might call and lie to an employer if the family member is too drunk to go to work. Instead of helping the person, the net effect is to perpetuate the addiction.

The enablers of drug-dependent people may be victims of codependency. Codependency is a condition that often follows when a family member has a compulsive disorder, such as alcoholism or drug addiction. **Codependency** is a set of unhealthy behaviors learned by family members in order to survive in a family that is experiencing great emotional pain and stress.

The family members around the addicted person may get caught up in the deceit that is practiced to cover up the problem. Ultimately, the emotional health of everyone is adversely affected. Financial pressures increase, and the well-being of the entire family is at stake.

Since the addict has lost control, family members often must take the first step toward breaking the cycle. They will need to stop their enabling behaviors and get professional help. Intervention (described earlier in this chapter) is often a first step.

How Can the Crisis Be Overcome?

Alcoholics and drug addicts must want to help themselves before anyone else can help them. They must be able to admit they have a problem. They then must decide for themselves to stop drinking or using drugs. No one else can make the decision for them.

Once this major step is taken, the recovery period can begin. It will not be easy. Alcoholics and drug addicts need professional help as well as the support of family members and friends. See 21-11.

Professional help is available from the National Council on Alcoholism, family service agencies, community health centers, detoxification centers, and hospitals. You can also contact self-help groups such as Alcoholics Anonymous, Narcotics Anonymous, or Cocaine Anonymous. To find sources of help in your area, look in the white pages of your phone book under "alcoholism" or "drug abuse."

What Can the Mate of an Alcoholic or a Drug Addict Do?

1. Learn the facts about alcoholism and drug addiction. Be open-minded in admitting the problem that exists in the family.
2. Realize that alcoholism and drug addiction are learned behaviors and that treatment can be given to change the behavior.
3. Accept the fact that a person can stop drinking or using drugs only if he or she wants to stop.
4. Confront the spouse or family member with the results of his or her drinking or drug use. This may humiliate the user, but it may motivate him or her to seek help.
5. Realize that the spouse cannot be protected from being tempted by alcohol or other drugs. The alcoholic or drug abuser has to learn to turn down drinks or drugs.
6. Seek help for the rest of the family. Many private and community resources exist. When the spouse sees the family seeking help, he or she may seek help, too.
7. Avoid lecturing, nagging, and begging. Also, avoid developing a martyr-like attitude. All of these will make an alcoholic or drug abuser use even more.
8. Do not argue with an alcoholic or drug abuser when he or she is under the influence of the alcohol or drug. It will be futile at this point.
9. Do not threaten, "If you love me…." An alcoholic or drug abuser can love people and still be an alcoholic or drug abuser.
10. Do not make deals or promises. Alcoholics or drug abusers have to quit because they want to quit. They cannot be bribed.
11. Do not expect an immediate cure, and do not expect all the family's problems to disappear when the spouse starts getting help.
12. Talk to someone other than relatives about the problem. Relatives are often reluctant to admit their family member could be an alcoholic or drug abuser. They may blame the other family members for the problem.

21-11 These suggestions can help a person deal with an alcoholic or drug-addicted mate.

Compulsive Gambling

When a family member has a gambling problem, the potential losses are high for the whole family. A gambler can go through the family savings and leave nothing for future family needs such as improved housing, health care, or college educations for the children. A gambler can go through the family savings and leave nothing for the future, such as a new house or a college education for the children. As a result, family members—often children—must "do without" and may become dependent upon welfare. Compulsive gambling often threatens family relationships and jeopardizes educational and career opportunities.

A **compulsive gambler** is someone who loses control over gambling and continues to gamble despite the harmful consequences. The compulsive gambler, who may begin gambling to escape problems or for the thrill of winning, becomes addicted to gambling. Compulsive gambling is a serious problem with many of the same consequences faced by people with drug or alcohol abuse problems.

Gambling is a growing problem among teens. Teenagers may be especially vulnerable to becoming compulsive gamblers because they may lack the self-knowledge and self-restraint that come with maturity. Rather than avoiding gambling, they may gamble repeatedly and eventually dig themselves deeply into debt.

Parents may dismiss their teenage children's gambling behavior as preferable to substance abuse. They may even become enablers by bailing their children out of gambling debts. This does not address the problem.

The compulsive gambler often goes through four phases. These are: (1) winning, (2) losing, (3) desperation, and (4) hopelessness.

- *Winning.* Everyone likes to win. This gives a person the feeling of power and control, 21-12. This is often how the beginning gambler becomes hooked. Usually, all it takes is one big win to make a person feel good about himself or herself. This is almost like the "high" obtained from using drugs. The person begins to crave this winning feeling again and again, so more and more money is wagered. This is when the losing phase often begins.
- *Losing.* Once the gambler begins losing, he or she attempts to get back what was lost. This is called **chasing**. The gambler may use money set aside in savings. This money, which should be going toward family necessities or future plans, is spent trying to win back losses. The gambler often discovers that chasing the losses does not work. This is when desperation occurs.
- *Desperation.* It is at this point when a gambler, in a desperate financial situation, may turn to family or friends for a **bailout** (money to finance gambling-related debts). By bailing out the gambler, the well-meaning family member or friend has not helped the gambler. The money often only enables the gambler to chase more losses, creating even more gambling debts. The gambler ends up even deeper in debt—and even more desperate. The gambler feels guilty and is ashamed to face the people who have bailed him or her out. This is when illegal means of obtaining money may be sought. Compulsive gambling often leads people to engage in illegal activity such as forgery, fraud, or theft in order to pay debts and finance their gambling.
- *Hopelessness.* During the hopelessness phase, compulsive gamblers realize they will never be able to pay off debts or escape the problems they have created. Compulsive gamblers are prone to develop stress-related problems such as high blood pressure, heart disease, and depression. Sometimes they may even turn to drugs or suicide as a way to escape their problems.

Only three states, Utah, Tennessee, and Hawaii, now ban all gambling. Seventy years ago, it was banned everywhere. Legal betting is one of today's fastest-growing industries. Opportunities for gambling have increased as many states

21-12 A win can be exciting for the gambler, and this may lead to compulsive gambling.

now have lotteries, casinos, and horse and dog racetracks. In many states, gambling has become legalized in order to increase state revenues. These increased opportunities to gamble are actually having the opposite effect. Many gamblers become bankrupt and turn to state welfare to support themselves and their families. Also, crime increases as gamblers seek illegal ways to pay back debts. States then must spend money to fight crime and support prison inmates.

Gambling treatment programs such as Gamblers Anonymous are available to help compulsive gamblers deal with their problems. Effective treatment often focuses on behaviors such as facing reality, planning for debt repayment, and pursuing educational goals. Such programs can be located in phone books or through local hospitals or mental health agencies. A hotline on compulsive gambling is available in most communities.

If you think you are developing a gambling addiction, seek help before the problem becomes worse. By getting help now, you can avoid much unhappiness and look forward to a fulfilling, productive life.

Suicide

Suicide is a major concern across the United States. In the last 25 years, the rate of suicide among teenagers and young adults has increased dramatically. It is one of the leading causes of death among young people. Reasons for committing suicide are varied, but the two most common are love conflicts and the feeling that life is not worth living. Suicide is often linked to depression.

There are four general patterns of suicide. Perhaps the impulsive suicides are the hardest to comprehend. Highly successful people or seemingly happy individuals suddenly shock families and friends by taking their own lives. They seldom give any signs they are considering suicide. However, diaries or letters they leave behind often reveal deep feelings of loss regarding some aspect of their lives.

The second group includes people who give many signs of their depression. They tell their friends and family that they feel life is not worthwhile. They can find nothing good about themselves or their lives. They may complain so much and so often that their friends no longer listen to them. Then they attempt suicide.

The third group includes people who have suffered from illness or who suddenly find out about a serious illness. This can push some people to take their own lives because they do not want to exist in poor health.

The last group includes people who are extremely depressed over lost loved ones. Love conflicts, broken engagements, divorces, or the death of a loved one drive them to suicide. Sometimes they make a weak attempt at suicide with the hope of winning the other person back. If they fail to regain the lost love, they may make another, more serious suicide attempt.

If a family member or friend has hinted about suicide or has openly talked about it, do not ignore the remarks. Suicide talk should not be taken lightly. If a person hints of committing suicide, express your concern to the person directly. Take a firm stand against any suggestions of suicide. The friend will probably be grateful that you cared enough to say, "No, don't do it." Let your friend talk about his or her problems, but suggest that the person see a professional counselor.

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Worried About a Friend? How You Can Help

Everyone can have a bad day, but maybe you know someone who seems to be "down" most of the time. How can you help a friend who appears to be heading toward severe depression and even self-destruction?

First, watch for clues, such as those listed elsewhere in this chapter. They can be the first indication of a problem. Be alert if a friend shows prolonged despondency, leading to talk of not caring about anything—the future, family, or even life itself. Moodiness is typical of teens, but severe mood swings and dramatic changes in activities often signal depression.

If you ask your friend, "What's wrong?" don't give up if he or she answers, "Nothing." Young people have to be convinced that someone is really concerned about them. Be direct, and tell your friend exactly how you feel—that you care and that you are worried. This is a time when honesty and directness are needed. Let your friend know how deeply you care about his or her welfare. Do not minimize problems with comments such as, "It will be better tomorrow."

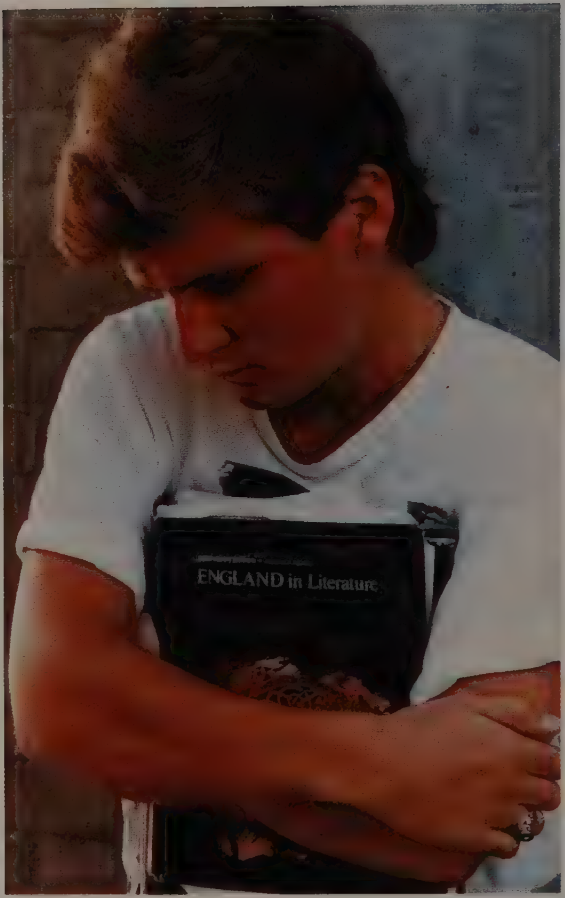
Really listen to what your friend is saying (or not saying). Try to listen without making judgments or giving advice. Be supportive and empathetic. Be alert to words and phrases that suggest severe depression, hopelessness, or self-destruction. Statements such as "I can't take it anymore" or "I'd rather leave than go back to school" indicate your friend is struggling with a serious problem.

Your friend may be very reluctant to get professional help. He or she may be concerned that the school will put this on his or her record, or that everyone in school will find out. Some young people may be afraid to talk to relatives because they want their feelings to remain private. You may be able to help your friend by offering to go with him or her for help. Even if your friend is reluctant to tell anyone else, it is crucial to enlarge the circle of support and get others involved. You should not try to bear the burden all by yourself, and it is not fair for anyone to expect you to do so.

You may feel that you can't help your friend, but you can seek out trusted adults who may be able to supply the kind of help needed. Your friend's future—perhaps even his or her life—may be in the balance. Do seek help yourself when you don't know what to do for a friend.

If you feel so depressed that you begin to think of ending your own life, it is important to talk with someone, 21-13. Try to talk to a family member or close friend. If you feel you cannot talk to them, see a school counselor or favorite teacher. If this is not possible, call a suicide hotline. Trained counselors will listen to you and can suggest where you can go for help with your problems. No matter how painful your life may be, there is always a way out.

Many community resources are available today. There are more than 200 suicide prevention centers across the United States. By contacting one of these or your own family physician, you can be referred to a professional agency or hospital in your area.



Cholla Runnels

21-13 **If you begin to feel that life is not worth living, find a professional who can help you with your problems. Help is available.**

Criminal Attack

One of the negative aspects of living in a complex society is the high number of criminal attacks. Urban areas report the most attacks, but rural and suburban areas are not immune.

Criminal attacks do not have "average" or "typical" victims. Anyone is vulnerable, at any time and any place. Although some crimes are well planned, many are spontaneous reactions to tempting situations. Alertness and common sense are your best guards against attack.

In Your Home

What can you do to protect yourself and your family in your home? A few simple precautions are described here:

- Keep doors and windows locked when you are home as well as when you are gone. Use dead bolt locks. Also, solid wood or metal doors offer more resistance to forced entry than some other doors.
- When people come to your door, ask them to identify themselves before you open your door. If it is a service person, ask to see proper identification, 21-14. Install peepholes and chain guards.
- If you leave your home, even for a short time, never leave a note on the door explaining that you will be back by a certain time. This tells a burglar the exact amount of time he or she has to do the job.

- If, when you return home, you find your door open or unlocked, do not go in alone. By entering under these circumstances, you may surprise the intruder and he or she is more likely to overreact with violence. A better plan is to go to a neighbor's home and call the police. Have them look through your home before you enter.
- If you are leaving and must leave a key, do not place it in an obvious place, such as under the doormat or on top of the doorjamb.
- If you go out at night, it is best to leave and return with another person. If you have to walk to your front door alone, keep this area well lit. Have your key ready, and go inside quickly.
- If a person you do not know telephones your home, never indicate you are alone. Tell the caller that your parent or your spouse cannot come to the phone at this time. Also keep emergency telephone numbers near your phone at all times.

In Your Car

You can take several precautions that may minimize the risk of your becoming a victim of an attack while you are going to or from your car or while traveling in your car. First, have your keys ready when you leave your house or business. Go to your car quickly, get inside, and lock your door immediately. Do not leave a purse on the seat beside you. If you stop at a traffic signal, someone can quickly smash your window and grab your purse.

Keep your car full of gas and in good repair so you will not be stalled and need to ask for help. If you can't start your car in a parking lot, call a service station for help. More people are carrying cellular phones so they can call for help in emergencies, 21-15. If your car stalls on the road, turn on the flashing hazard lights and wait for help. When someone comes, ask the person to phone for help if you were unable to do so, but do not open your door. You are safer in the car. Once you leave it, you run the risk of attack.

21-14 **Before you allow a service person to enter your home, be sure to check for proper identification.**

21-15 **Many people are now carrying cell phones with them to use in case of an emergency.**

If you are driving and you sense someone is following you, drive to a police station or someplace where you are sure to find people. Do not drive to your home.

Be cautious about getting out of your car if another vehicle bumps you from the rear or stops suddenly in front of you. These acts may be done deliberately in order to collect from your insurance. If you suspect this may be the case, do not get out of your car. Instead, drive to the nearest police station.

When you leave your car with parking attendants or service persons, remove your house key. They could find out your address and have a duplicate key made. They could use this key to burglarize your home.

Sexual Assault

Sexual assault is any form of unwanted sexual behavior forced on one person by another. Rape is one type of sexual assault. Rape involves forced intercourse against a person's will. Sexual assault is a crime—all 50 states have laws against this crime. It has devastating effects on its victims, and it also affects their families and friends.

Almost a million sexual assaults are reported each year, but many more than this occur. It is estimated that only half of all sexual assaults are reported to the police. If a sexual assault is not reported, the offender does not face any legal consequences for his or her actions. This offender is also more likely to commit sexual assault again, with the same victim or a different one.

According to studies by the Justice Department, girls under 18 are the victims of more than half the rapes reported to police. Younger victims are more often raped by relatives or acquaintances.

Sexual offenders are men and women of all ages. (Most sexual offenders are male, but females sometimes commit sexual assault, too.) They represent all social, economic, ethnic, and religious groups. Sexual offenders do not have a distinct appearance, so there is no way to spot a rapist. In fact, about 80 percent of sexual assaults are perpetrated by a person the victim knows. This person may be a relative, acquaintance, friend, dating partner, or spouse. (Date rape and acquaintance rape are described in Chapter 11.)

People do not commit sexual assault to satisfy their needs for sexual gratification. Instead, sexual assault is a crime of violence in which sexual behavior is used as a weapon. The offender uses sexual behavior to overpower, humiliate, and harm the victim.

Sexual assaults by a stranger are often more violent than those caused by a date or acquaintance. When sexual assault is committed by a stranger, it can happen anywhere and at any time. Sexual assaults happen in crowded shopping centers, dark alleys, schools, parks, and even at parties. Public areas are often places where assaults and abductions occur. If a person follows the safety precautions already described in this chapter, this can reduce the likelihood of being sexually assaulted by a stranger.

If you are sexually assaulted, first get to a safe place. Then, call someone you trust to be with you. Most cities have a rape crisis center operated by people who are trained to help in this type of emergency. They can give you advice and support. A rape crisis center can help you file a police report, accompany you to the hospital for medical help, and provide counseling for you.

Violent Behavior in Families

A family is a collection of individuals whose beliefs and behaviors can differ in many ways. Sometimes the differences are insignificant. At other times, the differences are so important that they can lead to conflicts, 21-16. If a conflict cannot be resolved, it may escalate into violence. The true test of family members' commitment to one another is not in the avoidance of conflict, but how they respond to conflict.

Violence is any harmful physical contact that results in pain, injury, or death. **Domestic violence** is violence between family members or intimate friends. Spouse or partner abuse, elder abuse, and child abuse are types of domestic violence.

The Incidence of Violence in Families

The incidence of domestic violence is increasing in our society. Newspapers and other mass media daily report cases involving violent behavior within families. Every year, more than four million women in the United States are battered, and 1,500 die as a result of domestic abuse.

Domestic violence involves people from every ethnic, religious, educational, and economic background. The abusers are of both sexes.

A recent survey disclosed that women and men were physically abusing other family members in roughly equal numbers. Half of spousal murders had been committed by wives. The survey also

DEPT. OF PSYCHIATRY

21-16 Through counseling, conflicts can be resolved before they lead to violence.

found that 54 percent of all violence termed "severe" was by women. Mothers abuse their children at a rate approaching twice that of fathers, according to a survey of state child-protective service agencies.

If children are the victims of abuse, they are three times more likely to abuse their own children. Sons of battered mothers are three times more likely to become wife abusers.

Experts also agree that violence at home can lead children to "act out" violently outside the home. Children learn that violence is an acceptable way to get what they want.

Reasons People Use Violence

Anger is often the emotion that forms the core of domestic violence. It is an emotional reaction to frustration. The frustration can come from many factors. Often abusers are having problems at work, are unhappy with their jobs, or are unemployed. They feel they've lost control over a part of their lives. They may feel isolated from the community and lack support. Stress over money problems or how to rear the children can cause anger and frustration.

Some people use violence to get back at others when they feel angry and frustrated. Abusers tend to be filled with anger, resentment, suspicion, and tension. They may feel insecure and have little self-esteem. They may resort to violence to vent the bad feelings they have about themselves or what's happening to them. They may resort to violence at home to prove they can control at least some part of their lives. They can't express anger at their bosses, so they take out their frustration on family members. Weaker family members become targets of vengeance.

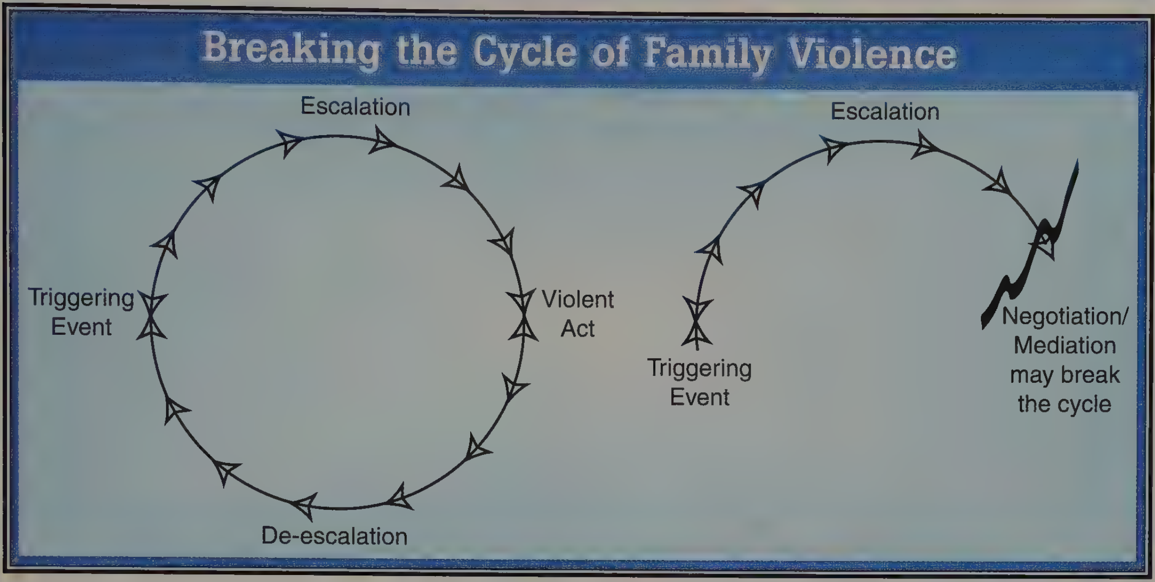
Forms of Violence

Violence can take many forms. It may begin with *psychological violence*—threats, intimidation, controlling behavior, jealousy, and verbal abuse. Verbal abuse can consist of stinging put-downs, name calling, swearing, and sarcastic remarks. Attempts may be made to isolate the victim from his or her support system, such as other family members and friends. Some family members physically throw things or may punch a door or a wall. This is called *property violence*. Eventually, the violence becomes *physical*—pushing, hitting, slapping, punching, or kicking a person.

The Cycle of Family Violence

Because one form of violence often leads to another, many psychologists speak of a "cycle of violence." See 21-17. The cycle of violence starts with some triggering event. This can be a minor misunderstanding or frustration, or it can be a major problem with a particular family member. Tension builds, and accusations related to other issues may be thrown in to add to the conflict. Mounting verbal exchanges may escalate the conflict. If the family members are unable to end this escalation of anger, there is a greater chance for a violent act to occur.

If, before a violent act occurs, a third party can intervene, steps toward conflict resolution can help de-escalate the tension. (Conflict resolution is discussed in Chapter 10.) Someone acting as mediator may be able to defuse the violence and mediate a win/win solution to the problem. If this movement is made, the immediate conflict will have been resolved. However, unless the family members get professional counseling, the problem may recur.


Breaking the Cycle of Family Violence
Escalation
Triggering Event
Violent Act
De-escalation
Escalation
Triggering Event
Negotiation/ Mediation may break the cycle

21-17 **Mediation may de-escalate family tension and break the cycle of violence.**

Legal Action in Domestic Abuse

If the violent behavior is not stopped, a pattern of abuse may result. Family members may not be able to control the violence, and legal recourse will have to be sought. In recent years, almost every state has passed legislation to provide help for abused family members. Laws have been passed that strengthen both civil protection and criminal penalties. See 21-18. Legal remedies are available to protect and assist victims of domestic violence.

Spouse or Partner Abuse

Spouse or partner abuse is one kind of family violence that happens far too often. It is believed that one-fourth of all relationships include violence. In most cases, it involves the man beating the woman. The term "battered woman" is often used to describe these victims. In rare instances, the man is the one that is physically abused.

The spouse who suffers from physical abuse is often a person who was abused as a child, or who witnessed the abuse of one parent by the other. He or she feels violence is a normal part of domestic life. Now, as an adult victim of abuse, the person feels terrified and trapped within his or her own home.

Victims of spouse abuse may attempt to leave following a violent act, but they are often persuaded to return. They are led to believe that the battering will stop. Instead, a three-phase cycle repeats itself.

- *Phase one.* Tension builds over a series of small incidents that displease the abuser. The tension becomes explosive and the abuser loses control, 21-19.
- *Phase two.* This tension results in a violent incident involving physical abuse.
- *Phase three.* Following the incident, the abuser realizes he or she has overreacted and is very sorry, often asking for forgiveness. This phase is often called the "honeymoon" stage. The abuser believes he or she will never hurt the victim again, but often the cycle is repeated over and over.

Legal Rights of Victims of Domestic Violence

Civil Court

Civil courts settle disputes that are noncriminal. They make decisions about legal relationships such as marriage. The victim can receive legal protection from the abuser without filing criminal charges. In most cases the victim will need to hire an attorney, but free legal assistance may be available for those who have low incomes. The following actions can be taken by a civil court:

An *Order of Protection,* also called a restraining order, is a written court order, signed by a judge, that requires an abuser to change his or her conduct. The judge will specify the conduct that is or is not allowed. For instance, the order may require that the abuser refrain from abuse of any household member, move out of a residence shared with the victim, provide alternate housing for the victim, pay for the support of the victim and any minor children, and pay any medical expenses of the victim. Rules may vary from state to state.

A permanent restraining order requires a court hearing at which both parties are given an opportunity to testify. A temporary or emergency restraining order may be issued within a few hours or a few days of the time it is requested. A temporary order may be issued with only the victim present in court. This order remains in effect until a full hearing can be held. It may be issued if “immediate and present danger of abuse” is shown.

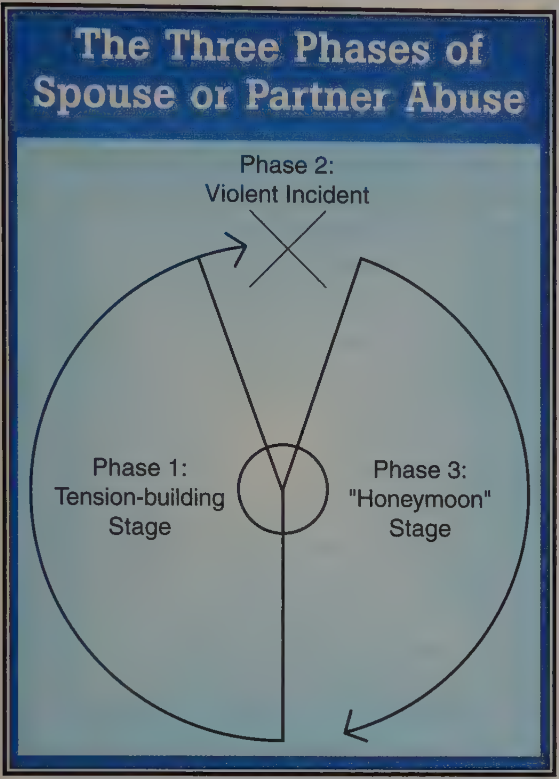
Criminal Court

If a victim wants to charge the abuser with aggravated battery, he or she must do so in a criminal court. Every state has laws prohibiting physical assault. Conduct that may violate state criminal laws includes hitting or other physical assault, sexual assault, or harassment or threat of physical assault. In addition, any act causing the death of another, destruction of private property, kidnapping or confining another against his or her will, or violation of the terms of a protection order can be grounds for criminal charges.

The police can make an arrest when responding to a call. After an arrest is made, a criminal charge is filed either by the police or by the prosecutor’s office. The victim can also sign a complaint. A complaint is a paper filed with the court that describes the abusive incident. After the complaint is filed, the prosecutor’s office will conduct an investigation and decide whether charges should be filed. If charges are filed, the court will issue a warrant for the arrest of the abuser and set a date for the trial. An attorney from the state’s attorney’s office will prosecute the charges against the abuser.

21-18 Presently, several forms of legal protection are available for battered family members through the civil and criminal courts.

The first step an abused person should take is to get away from the abuser. There are places to go for help. For immediate assistance, there are special homes for battered women and their children in many communities. These homes provide refuge, counseling, and legal advice. Civil protection is available through the courts. A judge can issue a restraining order to the abuser to abstain from abuse, move out of the residence shared with the victim, and pay support. A victim may also need to apply for public assistance. These remedies and others may give the victim of abuse the strength to end a violent relationship.


The Three Phases of Spouse or Partner Abuse
Phase 2: Violent Incident
Phase 1: Tension-building Stage
Phase 3: "Honeymoon" Stage

21-19 **Spouse abuse typically follows three phases, which are repeated with each episode of violence.**

Elder Abuse

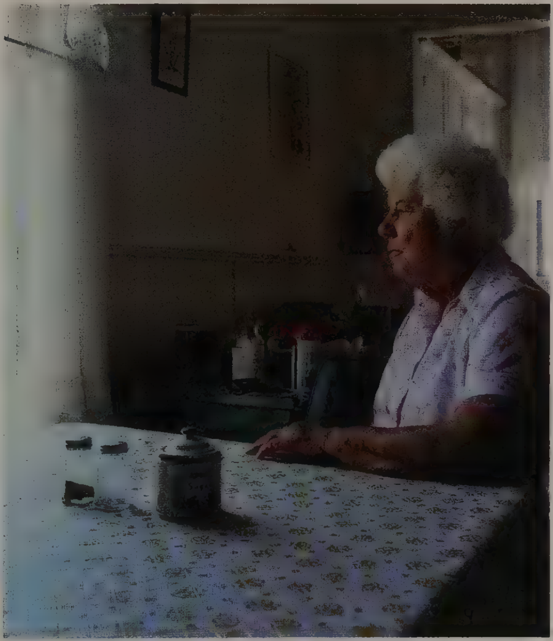
Elder abuse is emerging as a growing, largely hidden problem in our society. Many victims remain silent out of fear of being moved to a nursing home. The declining birthrate in our country means there are fewer adult caregivers. The middle age group, often called the "sandwich generation," must care for both dependent children and dependent parents. They may feel caught in the middle.

Elder abuse may involve psychological violence. Insults and threats of stronger action may be used against them. Elder abuse may be physical, such as slapping, kicking, or denying adequate food or other basic needs. It can be economic, such as withholding or diverting money. In other cases, overmedication may be used, particularly when the elder person is placed in a nursing home.

In small communities, victims of elder abuse might contact a minister, priest, rabbi, or social worker, the family doctor, or the police, 21-20. In larger urban areas, many agencies exist that can intervene. Religious organizations, civic organizations, and county and state agencies can all provide help. The phone numbers may be found in the white pages of most phone books under "Social Service Agencies."

Child Abuse and Neglect

Child abuse and neglect can be defined as the physical or mental injury, sexual abuse, negligent treatment, or maltreatment of a child under the age of 18



21-20 **Victims of elder abuse may suffer in silence if they do not know where to turn for help.**

by a person who is responsible for the child's welfare. Abused children range in age from infants to adolescents. About half are six years of age or younger.

News stories often focus on the tragic realities of child abuse and neglect. These aspects of family crisis demand the attention of individuals, families, and entire communities.

There are several forms of child abuse and neglect. **Physical abuse** is the infliction of physical injury upon a child. This may range from one strong slap to repeated beatings. When a child is hit, slapped, or kicked, severe bruising and bleeding can result, and bones can be broken. In most cases, an abusing parent will make sure the child receives medical attention, but the parent is careful to use different hospitals and physicians. The parent will usually blame the injuries on falls or accidents.

Physical neglect is the failure to provide sufficient food, clothing, shelter, medical care, education, guidance, and supervision for a child. A case of physical neglect may be detected by neighbors or school officials who notice the condition of the child's appearance, lack of alertness, or even episodes of stealing. Authorities may help the parents acquire the resources necessary to provide adequate care for the child. The child may be placed in a state agency or foster home until the parents are able to provide adequate care.

Sexual abuse is inviting, pressuring, or forcing a child to engage in sexual activities. This abuse leaves long-lasting emotional scars. Child sexual abusers seldom use physical force. Instead, they gain the child's cooperation through bribes, threats, or use of their position of authority. In a large majority of the cases, the abuser is known to the victim. In many cases, incest is involved. **Incest** is sexual activity between persons who are closely related. Parents also need to be aware of child care situations that may indicate sexual abuse. If children seem frightened, or if they become withdrawn and behave differently after their child care experiences, parents should investigate.

Emotional abuse occurs when parents continually make demands that their children are not capable of meeting. The abuse continues when parents criticize and humiliate the children for not living up to the demands. Continued emotional abuse destroys children's sense of self-respect. It makes them feel inferior and guilty.

Emotional neglect is the failure to provide children with love, support, and affection. Even children who receive excellent physical care may be emotionally neglected. Children need constant assurance that they are loved. Without this assurance, children may lack self-confidence and self-esteem. They may have trouble accepting themselves as worthy individuals. They may also have trouble relating to other people.

Emotional neglect is difficult to measure and prove. The real results of emotional neglect may not be revealed until years later. The child then gets into trouble with authorities or fails to function as a productive member of society.

Understanding the Problem

Actions of child abuse and neglect are not necessarily planned. These incidents generally result from parental immaturity or inability to handle personal needs or frustration.

Child abusers are often immature parents who are looking to their children for the very support and love the parents should be giving. These parents feel their needs are not being met by spouses, friends, or society. They have only one hope left—that their children will give them love and comfort. This is a role reversal that places unfair demands on the children.

Many child abusers were abused as children. This cycling effect is a frightening phenomenon in our society. If children are abused or neglected, they have little self-esteem, and they may even dislike themselves. They may take out their hostilities on their children years later, and a pattern of child abuse occurs.

In a two-parent family, there cannot be just one abusive parent. One parent may be the active abuser, but the other parent becomes the passive abuser. The *passive abuser* remains silent and does nothing to stop the abuse. Passive abusers usually remain silent for two reasons. They are ashamed of the way their spouses abuse their children, and they fear the consequences of telling authorities of the problem.

Why do older abused children accept abuse? In most cases, they are very confused about what they can do. They may fear the parents and expect even more punishment if they try to do anything about it. The children may actually feel guilty, thinking they caused the parents to become so angry.

What Can Be Done About Child Abuse and Neglect?

The problems of child abuse and neglect can be approached in several ways. The best approach is prevention, and one of the best methods of prevention is parenthood education. This education helps people learn about stages of children's development and growth. Parents learn, for instance, that children cannot be expected to even begin toilet training until about two or two and one-half years of age. After that, they will need to wear diapers at night and will still have accidents. Some days children may not feel like finishing their meals, or they may allow their curiosity to get them in trouble. Parents should do all they can to acquaint themselves with what to expect of children. Then they will be able to understand and appreciate children's behavior. They will also learn successful ways of guiding their children's behavior.

Individual citizens, teachers, social workers, physicians, and police officers can work together to try to protect children from abuse and neglect, 21-21. Their immediate goal is to give the children help and treatment. Their long-range goal is to change the parents' behavior. The total personalities of abusive parents need attention.

Many therapy programs are available to child abusers. They may be sponsored by private organizations, religious groups, or the government. Parents

21-21 Teachers are generally aware of the signs of child abuse and neglect and know what to do when they suspect a student may be a victim.

Anonymous is an organization for child abusers that is based on the self-help theory of Alcoholics Anonymous. Members of Parents Anonymous can meet together and work out methods of coping with their frustrations. They can call each other for help if they sense they are on the verge of abusing a child.

Missing Children

No one knows exactly how many missing children there are, but more than one and one-half million children are reported missing each year. Investigators say runaways or children who leave home because of abuse account for most of the missing. Abductions by parents in divorce cases account for many of the other missing children. Contrary to public belief, the smallest number are abducted by strangers.

Authorities stress that it is not just the stranger that should be feared, but also the situation. Very few child molesters break into homes to abduct children. More often the children are lured by acquaintances or people the children do not regard as strangers. These people make contact with children through youth groups, sports groups, and recreational organizations. Parents whose children belong to these groups have a responsibility to monitor their activities to be sure they are legitimate.

Another area of concern for parents is their children's use of the Internet. Chatting online is becoming the activity of choice for many young teens anxious to explore the outside world. Though chatting online is generally safe, children should be cautioned to never give out their real names, addresses, or phone numbers over the Internet, 21-22. They should also not arrange to meet people they contact online. In some instances, adults seeking sexual encounters with young people pose as teens online and arrange secret meetings. When a meeting takes place, the teen may be kidnapped and forced into sexual activities.

Children should be taught certain precautions to take. They should know how to use the telephone for emergencies and should be warned against giving too much information to unknown callers, 21-23. They should be told not to tell callers they are home alone or when their parents will return. Not only should they be taught not to ride with strangers, but they should also be warned of some of the stories they might be told. For instance, a stranger might tell them a parent has been in an accident and is in the hospital.

21-22 **Children's use of the Internet should be supervised from an early age and on into their teens.**

21-23 **Children should know how to call 911 when they need help in an emergency.**

Today's parents are practicing more caution, and communities are attempting to provide more security in public areas and in schools. Community fingerprinting drives are providing parents with records of their children for identification purposes. Photos of missing children are distributed through the mail and are seen in many public locations.

As a result of incidents such as the abduction and murder of Adam Walsh, a 6-year-old boy in Florida, the Missing Children Act of 1982 was passed. The law authorizes the FBI to enter descriptions of missing children in the National Crime Information Computer. It also allows parents of missing children access to the system.

The best assurance that a child will not become a missing child still lies with parents and caregivers. They must be alert and do what they can to prevent child abductions. Tips for parents and caregivers are given in 21-24.

Runaway Children

Runaway children are a nationwide problem. Young people from all backgrounds are affected. In most cases, a breakdown of family communication is cited as the cause. The breakdown usually involves disagreements between parents and teens on issues such as curfews, drug use, choice of friends, and performance in

Tips to Prevent Child Abductions

1. Know where your child is at all times.
2. Do not leave your child alone in a car, a store, or other public areas.
3. Teach your child how to use the telephone. Make sure the child knows your home number, including the area code. Also make sure the child knows how to call the police in an emergency.
4. Do not write your child's name on his or her clothes or books. An abductor could see it and begin talking to the child on a first-name basis.
5. Choose a secret code word that you and your child can use for identification in case of an emergency. Tell your child never to go with anyone who does not know the code word.
6. Teach your child not to talk to strangers, ride with strangers, or get involved with strangers in any way. Be sure the child understands the meaning of the word "stranger."
7. Teach your child to beware of people who appear to be friendly and who suggest the child go with them.
8. Ask the school to notify you at once if your child does not report to school.
9. Fingerprint your child. Keep a copy of the prints on hand for identification purposes.
10. Cooperate with your neighbors. Let children know which homes are "safe homes" where they can go if they need help. Also, ask neighbors to keep an eye on children when they play outside and to watch for suspicious adults.

21-24 **These tips may help parents prevent the crisis of a missing child.**

school. Divorce and remarriage may also create problems that drive teenagers away from home.

Some teens run away toward a vision of an independent life or an alternate lifestyle. Some leave to escape from abusive situations—physical, emotional, or sexual. Some leave their homes because they are forced out.

Runaways can find refuge in several places across the country, but the shelter they get is not always ideal. To improve the situation, many programs have been started. They vary from one area to another. Some local governments have funded **halfway houses**, or centers where runaways can receive care as well as counseling. A telephone program, originally called "Operation Peace of Mind," encourages runaways to contact their parents. This program is now called the Texas Runaway Hotline. Runaways can keep their whereabouts secret, but they can reassure their parents they are alive and well.

Teenagers live with many pressures, and lack of communication in the family does not help relieve these pressures, 21-25. However, the problem causing the stress will not disappear by running away from it. In most cases, running away just makes the problem worse. As young people mature, they must learn to cope with their problems instead of running away from them. If they are having difficulty coping by themselves, a respected teacher or school counselor may be able to refer them to professional help.

21-25 Serious conflicts between teens and their parents may cause some young people to leave home.

Community and National Crises

In this chapter, many types of personal and family crises have been discussed. Crises, however, can occur on the community and national levels as well. Examples of a community crisis include a local terrorist incident or a natural disaster such as severe weather, a fire, an earthquake, or a flood. Examples of a national crisis include a military attack or a widespread terrorist incident.

Under some circumstances, people are warned of a crisis or can see it coming. At other times, a crisis can occur without warning.

Some families live in fear of a community or national crisis. They feel helpless and worry a great deal about what could happen.

Other families emphasize the importance of **preparedness**—being ready for crises that could occur. These families prepare for emergencies and then live their lives. Although no one can foresee every crisis, they make a realistic assessment of what could happen. They choose a degree of preparedness with which they are comfortable. If a crisis occurs, they feel ready to deal with it.

Emergency Preparedness

Families should discuss the kinds of community crises that may occur and what to do in each case. They should stay aware of current events and should have emergency plans and resources ready for use on short notice. Although young children should be protected from potentially alarming discussions, parents and older children should plan and work together as a team if possible.

Many families find that a family disaster plan is helpful in dealing with the threat of a community or national crisis. As a first step, families should agree on two places to meet. One location should be just outside their home, in case an emergency occurs within their home, such as a fire. The second place selected should be a location outside their neighborhood in case they cannot return home. Everyone must know the address and telephone number of this place.

Families should choose an out-of-state friend or relative as their "family contact." In a disaster, it often is easier to call long distance. Family members should be told to call this person in an emergency, and tell them where they are. Everyone must know the contact's name and telephone number.

Plans should be made to take care of children and elderly or disabled family members. These individuals may need extra help during an emergency home evacuation.

Emergency Preparedness Checklist

To prepare for an emergency:

- Post lists of emergency phone numbers (fire, police, ambulance) by telephones and tape them to cell phones.
- Teach children how and when to call 911 for emergency help.
- Be sure each family member knows how and when to turn off the water, gas, and electricity at the main switches.
- Place fire extinguishers in the home. Be sure each family member knows where they are and how to use them.
- Install smoke detectors on each level of the home, especially near bedrooms. Check batteries regularly.
- Conduct a home hazard hunt for objects that can move, fall, break, or cause a fire. Correct the hazard situation.
- Stock emergency supplies, and assemble a disaster supply kit.
- Take a Red Cross first aid and cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) class.
- Determine the best escape routes from the home. Find two ways out of each room.
- Find safe places in the home or neighborhood where family members can stay during various types of disasters.
- Check on whether the family has adequate insurance coverage.

Source: Based on information from the Federal Emergency Management Agency (www.fema.gov).

21-26 Family members can use this checklist to help them prepare for emergencies, should any occur.

Families may have little time to prepare for a disaster once it hits. Completing the Emergency Preparedness Checklist in 21-26 can help families plan for emergencies. They should practice emergency evacuation of their homes from time to time. Families should maintain the family disaster plan by reviewing and updating it periodically.

Chapter 21 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- A crisis is a crucial time or event that causes a change in a person's life. There is usually no ready solution to the crisis, and adjustments often need to be made.
- Resources that help people handle crises include mental health, religious beliefs, physical health, strong family relationships, financial resources, and the support of friends. Community resources include shelters, hotlines, intervention services, and support groups.
- The strongest families probably include those who have experienced a crisis and have been able to come through it.
- Unemployment is a crisis that affects all family members and forces financial decisions to be made.
- Relocation is a crisis that may be viewed either positively or negatively.
- The crisis of drug addiction affects not only the life of the addict, but also the lives of family members, friends, and coworkers.
- The compulsive gambler often goes through four phases. These are winning, losing, desperation, and hopelessness.
- Severe depression can lead to suicide. Suicide is one of the leading causes of death among young people.
- Anyone is vulnerable to criminal attack, at any time and any place. The best defenses are alertness and common sense.
- Violent behavior in families includes spouse or partner abuse, elder abuse, and child abuse. Anger is often the emotion on which domestic violence is based. It is often an emotional reaction to frustration.
- Domestic violence takes many forms, including psychological violence, property violence, and physical violence.
- Cases of child abuse and neglect occur in all segments of society and demand the attention of individuals, families, and communities.
- Parents, caregivers, and community officials are working with children to prevent the crisis of missing children and runaways.
- Crises can occur at the personal, family, community, and national levels. Many families emphasize the importance of preparedness.

Review

1. True or False. If a crisis occurs, such as the loss of a job, children should not be told that anything is wrong.
2. Explain how intervention is used in a crisis situation.
3. List the four steps to follow in coping with a crisis.
4. Why might family members sense a loss of power when they are told they will have to move?
5. Explain the stages that lead to addiction to illegal drugs.
6. Give an example of how an enabler might unknowingly perpetuate a drug addiction problem.
7. For the compulsive gambler, what does the term "chasing" mean?
8. Name the four general types of people who commit suicide.
9. List three precautions to take in your home to protect yourself from criminal attack.
10. Describe the three phases of spouse or partner abuse.
11. The failure to provide sufficient food, clothing, shelter, medical care, education, guidance, and supervision for a child is called _____ _____.
12. True or False. Most missing children are abducted by strangers.
13. What is the most common cause of child runaway situations?
14. Being ready with plans and supplies in the event of a natural disaster or national crisis is called _____.

React

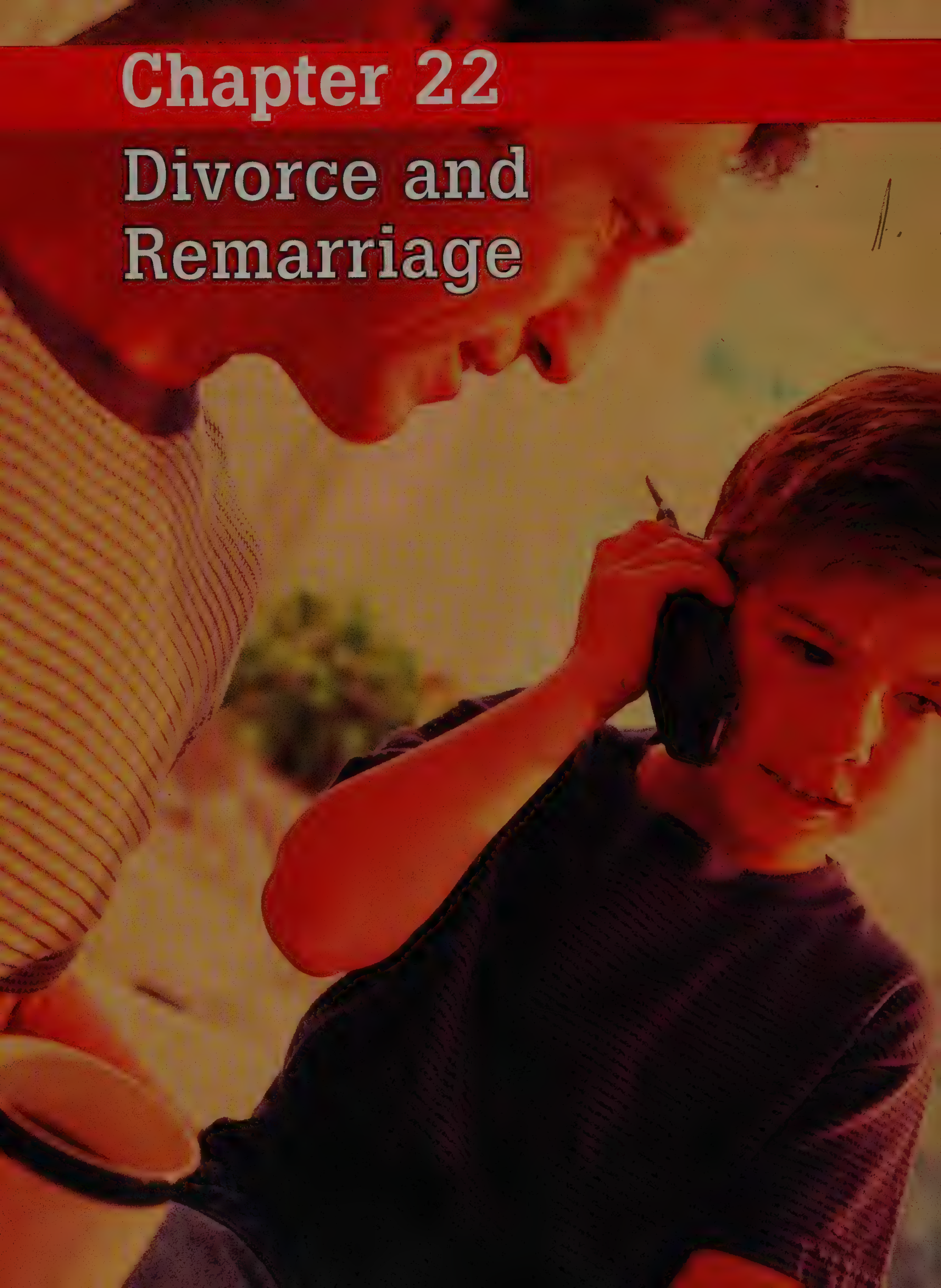
1. Write a fictional story about one of the crises listed below. In the story, mention the cause of the crisis, who is involved, resources available, adjustments required by family members, and financial demands.
   A. Sudden unemployment
   B. Move to another state
   C. Alcoholic spouse
   D. Suicide of a sibling
   E. Criminal attack on a family member
   F. Disappearance of a younger brother or sister
2. Working in groups, investigate your community's resources for helping people withstand various types of crises. Each group will fill out index cards with key information such as type of crisis; name, address, and phone number of organization; and key person contacted. Combine the index cards of the groups in a class file. Also prepare an oral report on the community resource you researched.
3. Role-play situations that might occur in families who face the crisis of drug addiction or child abuse.
4. Arrange chairs in a circle for a round-robin discussion. Select a particular crisis. Each class member will make one statement concerning the crisis.
5. Do an Internet search on gambling among teenagers and share your findings with the class in a report. Why do teenagers gamble? What proportion of compulsive adult gamblers started gambling as teenagers?
6. As a class, make a list of reasons why children run away from home. Then make another list of ways—other than running away—to solve these problems.
7. Conduct a "home hazard hunt" for objects in your home that could move, fall, break, or cause a fire. Explain how you would correct each hazard.

Reflect

1. Name seven situations you would consider crises. Rank them according to the effects you think they would have on your life.
2. Imagine that a spouse you love very much is developing a drinking problem. What do you say to your spouse? How can you encourage him or her to face the problem and do something about it?
3. A woman was diagnosed with breast cancer. Her husband held her in his arms and said, "Don't worry. Whatever there is to face, we'll face it together." Could you be this supportive if your spouse was diagnosed with a serious illness? Name several other things a spouse could say or do to be supportive.
4. Imagine that you are engaged and your fiancé is starting to use mild forms of physical violence against you when you have disagreements. You have discussed this problem, but he or she is having a difficult time changing his or her behavior. Would you go through with the wedding? Why or why not?
5. Imagine that the telephone at your house rings at 2 a.m. The authorities are ordering your family and your neighbors to evacuate to an area several miles away because of a flash flood or terrorist threat. What should your family disaster plan include? What should your family's disaster supply kit include?

Chapter 22

Divorce and Remarriage



Terms to Know

- annulment
- divorce
- legal separation
- desertion
- contested divorce
- noncontested divorce
- no-fault divorce
- Enoch Arden divorce
- custody
- visitation rights
- child support
- community property
- separate property

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- explain possible reasons for the high rate of divorce in the United States.
- summarize the differences between annulment, legal separation, and divorce.
- list the basic procedures, grounds, defenses, and terms of agreement typically used in divorce proceedings.
- explain the adjustments faced by divorced people.
- describe the challenges faced by stepfamilies.

Divorce is one of the most emotionally charged crises of life. Perhaps some of you have witnessed the divorce of parents, relatives, or neighbors. If so, you have seen and felt the effects of divorce.

Divorce Trends and Issues

Statistics concerning divorce are not encouraging for young people considering marriage. There is one divorce for every two marriages in the United States. The rate of divorce has more than doubled since the 1960s. Similar trends have occurred in other industrialized countries.

Many authorities believe that high divorce rates may be here to stay. Some view divorce as evidence of moral decay and the breakdown of the family in our society. Others point to broad social and economic trends as primary factors.

In the early part of this century, the family served as an economic unit as well as a source of personal fulfillment. When the U.S. population was largely rural, family members had to work together to make the family farm a successful enterprise. Career opportunities for women were limited, and society viewed women's primary role as that of a full-time homemaker. Divorce was comparatively rare and carried significant social disapproval. Thus, personal happiness was viewed as only one factor among many in assessing the strength of a marriage.

In recent decades, however, this picture has changed. Although the family is still viewed as an economic unit, the nation has become industrialized. Most family members earn wages individually rather than as part of a family enterprise, 22-1. Marriage and family life are now valued more for the personal fulfillment they can offer than as an economic enterprise.

Opportunities for women have also changed. More and more women are working full-time outside the home, although employed women's earnings still lag behind men's. American women have greater freedom of career choice today. Because most women can support themselves, they may no longer feel compelled to stay in an unhappy marriage solely for financial reasons. This is especially true for married women with no children or women whose children have grown up and left home.

22-1 Today, most family members earn wages individually rather than as part of a family.

Along with increased emphasis on personal happiness has come a decrease in the social stigma attached to divorce. Surveys indicate that although most Americans view marriage as a lifelong commitment, they do not feel it is wrong for unhappily married couples to divorce.

Your attitude toward marriage may be affected by your attitude toward divorce. Many experts who study marriage and divorce feel that if people were better informed about divorce, they might better understand the commitments of marriage. Some people go into marriage thinking, "If it doesn't work out, we can always get a divorce." With this kind of attitude, it is doubtful if the couple will really try to make their marriage work.

As you learn about legal termination of marriage, keep in mind the commitments involved for you, your future mate, and any children you may have.

Legal Termination of Marriage

A marriage can be legally terminated in the following two ways:

- By **annulment**, which is a court order stating a legal marriage never took place.
- By **divorce**, which is a legal dissolution of the marriage contract.

A **legal separation** allows a couple to live in separate households, but does not end their marriage. It is often, though not always, followed by divorce.

Some people attempt to dissolve their marriages by **desertion**, abandoning the marital partner. In the past, the husband was usually the one who deserted. However, runaway wives account for a growing number of desertions today. Although desertion is not a legal means of terminating a marriage, it can be used as grounds for divorce in most states.

Annulment

When a marriage is annulled, the court rules the couple were never legally married. The annulment decree reaches back to the time of the marriage and says that it never occurred. It restores both persons to single status. Their legal rights are settled as of the time of the marriage that legally never took place.

The reasoning behind annulment is that a marriage contract that resulted from fraud was not a legal contract. Therefore, it can be set aside if fraud is proven.

Rules concerning annulment vary from state to state. However, some of the most common types of fraud that may lead to annulment are as follows:

- Concealment of a previous marriage or divorce.
- Use of threats or force to induce a mate to enter marriage.
- Financial misrepresentation.
- Misrepresentation of pregnancy (when the woman claims to be pregnant but is not).
- Concealment of pregnancy (when the child is not the husband's).
- Concealment of disease.
- Marriage for ulterior motives (such as to obtain the property of another, to become an American citizen, or to legitimize an unborn child).
- Marriage entered into when under the influence of alcohol or drugs.

Many states have broadened their rules concerning annulments to include certain post-marital developments. Some of these are:

- Insanity of either spouse.
- Inability of either spouse to engage in normal sexual intercourse.
- Sterility of either spouse discovered after marriage, unless it was caused by a post-marital accident or disease.
- Refusal of a spouse to abide by a premarital agreement to change religions or to raise the children in a certain religion.

Annulment proceedings must be begun within a reasonable time after marriage. The length of a "reasonable" time depends on the nature of the fraud or complaint. For instance, a woman who learns of her husband's disease immediately after marriage cannot live with him for two years and then expect to have their marriage annulled.

Annulment gives the partners the right to remarry. Each spouse regains his or her property, and joint property is divided between them. The court decides the custody of the children. In some states, the children of annulled marriages may, under some circumstances, be considered legally illegitimate and may lose their right to inheritance.

Legal Separation

A separation does not end a marriage, but it does end a marriage relationship. A couple who are separated do not reside in the same household, 22-2. This recourse is sometimes used if religious beliefs discourage divorce, but the couple do not want to live as husband and wife.

In an *informal separation*, one of the spouses moves to a separate residence. None of the marital rights and obligations is changed. In a *legal separation*, the partners make a legal agreement to live apart, to divide their property, and to provide for their children.

Sometimes one partner, usually the woman, uses a legal separation suit for financial reasons. The court can award her *separate maintenance*. This means the husband would have to continue to provide for her financial support just as if they were living together. However, if it were proven that the wife was guilty of any marital misbehavior, this maintenance would not be granted.

Legal separation does not give the partners the right to remarry, for they are still legally married. Thus, some people view legal separation as a limited divorce. Terms of the separation agreement (such as custody of children, division of property, financial support, and visitation rights) may later become the basis for the terms of a divorce settlement.

David Hopper

22-2 Sometimes a couple decide they can no longer live together, so they file for a legal separation.

Divorce

Divorce is the most widely used method of ending a marriage. In spite of the growing number of divorces, a divorce is still an emotional and legal crisis. Even if both parties want a divorce, ending the marriage relationship is not easy. The marriage contract must be honored, and the couple must go through legal divorce procedures before the contract can be terminated.

Divorce is much more complicated than the average person suspects. This is why people need to be aware of all aspects of divorce, even before they marry. When they become aware of all the commitments marriage involves and how difficult breaking those commitments can be, they may be more cautious in committing to a marriage.

Three Stages of Divorce

The process of marital conflict that ends in divorce has three distinct stages. The first stage is *emotional divorce*. Some couples in this stage have periods of emotional outbursts and repression. Others just grow farther and farther apart, causing their marriage to die slowly and quietly. During this time, the spouses are living together, but they begin to realize their relationship is no longer based on close emotional feelings and love.

Physical divorce occurs when the spouses actually separate, and one moves out of the home. See 22-3. At this point, family and friends become aware of the breakup.

This may add to the spouses' feelings of guilt, insecurity, and failure. However, separation can also bring feelings of relief, especially if the marriage has been physically or emotionally abusive.

Legal divorce is the final stage. The spouses typically consult lawyers and go through the legal issues of deciding property settlements and child custody. The finality of a divorce decree may leave the spouses feeling emotionally drained. Legal divorce is often emotionally shattering, even for couples who have fairly friendly divorces. However, it may be the best course if a relationship has deteriorated beyond repair.

22-3 **Physical divorce occurs when one spouse moves out of the home.**

Divorce Proceedings

To obtain a divorce in any state, you must be a resident of that state. A divorce action starts with the filing of a summons and complaint. The *summons* informs the spouse that a divorce action has been brought against him or her. The *complaint* states the other spouse's reasons for wanting a divorce, such as adultery, desertion, or cruelty.

In a **contested divorce**, a spouse who wants to fight the divorce files an answer and tries to prove that no grounds exist. Contested divorces usually include difficult questions of child custody and property settlements. They require complicated courtroom action, 22-4. They are usually settled by a judge, though some cases are settled by a jury.

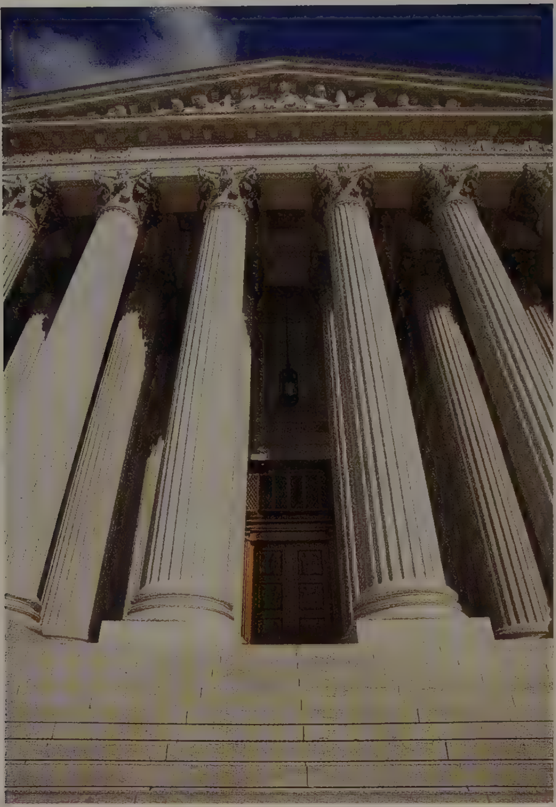
A large majority of divorces are **noncontested**—the spouses agree to the divorce. Together, they decide which one shall bring the action against the other and what type of action will be brought. Noncontested divorces are less complicated and expensive than contested ones. They are settled quickly before a judge.

No-fault divorces or no-fault grounds for divorce are now common in the United States. The details vary among states, but all **no-fault divorce** laws eliminate the need for proving one partner guilty. They allow the couple to end the marriage by mutual agreement. This makes the divorce less bitter and less expensive.

If a married person disappears for a stated period of time, the spouse is entitled to freedom from the marriage through an **Enoch Arden divorce**. The average time of absence is five to seven years, though this varies in different states. The law also states that some effort should be made to locate the missing spouse. Persons who remarry without getting a legal Enoch Arden divorce run the risk of having their mates come back and charge them with bigamy.

Grounds for Divorce

Divorce laws differ among states. The number of *grounds* (legal reasons) for



22-4 **Complicated divorce proceedings often must be handled by a judge in a courtroom.**

divorce and their interpretations vary widely.

Incompatibility is used as grounds for divorce in many states. This means that the two spouses are unable to live together peaceably or in harmony.

In some states, the term *insupportability* is used to indicate that the personalities are no longer able to support a continuing relationship of marriage. It should not be confused with financial support.

Other grounds that are often used are cruelty (mental or physical), desertion, impotence, insanity, alcohol or drug addiction, adultery, separation (living apart), and nonsupport (willful neglect).

Defenses to Divorce

Defenses may be used by individuals or courts to prevent a divorce. These laws place restrictions on the ease of getting a divorce in order to protect the rights of individuals and states. However, such laws are seldom used. Few spouses resist divorce when their mates desire it.

The following are defenses to divorce:

- *Condonation* means that once the "guilty" party has been condoned or forgiven for a certain action, that action cannot be the grounds for divorce. For instance, suppose a wife finds out that her husband is having an affair. She files for divorce and then allows him to move back in with her. Once he is back, he can use condonation as his defense against the divorce suit if he wishes to avoid divorce.
- *Connivance* means one person is guilty of scheming to cause the condition used as grounds for the divorce. For example, if Mr. Brown asked his friend to seduce Mrs. Brown so Mr. Brown could charge adultery, Mrs. Brown could charge connivance.
- *Collusion* occurs when a couple schemes to set up grounds for divorce. They plan to make one partner appear guilty of something such as desertion or adultery. Collusion represents a fraud committed against the court, and the court can refuse to grant the couple a divorce.

Terms of Divorce

Through divorce laws, the state can regulate the property distribution and child-rearing activities of its citizens. The following terms of divorce are covered in most state laws.

Alimony

Alimony is financial support provided by the primary wage earner to the other marriage partner during and after divorce. (In some states, alimony is called maintenance.) In theory, most states still hold the primary wage earner liable for alimony. However, alimony is actually awarded in only a small percentage of divorce cases, 22-5.

When alimony is granted, the amount is set by the court. It is usually based on the wage earner's income, the couple's standard of living, and the defendant's degree of guilt.

In some cases, *rehabilitative alimony* is awarded. This type of alimony is paid to enable a spouse to update or upgrade his or her job skills and ability to earn a living. Rehabilitative alimony is limited in amount and duration.

Many alimony agreements remain in force until they are adjusted in court or until the recipient dies or remarries. Because alimony is a state matter, the recipient may have difficulty collecting the payments if the former spouse moves to another state.

22-5 Alimony is awarded in only a small percentage of divorce cases. Occasionally, rehabilitative alimony is awarded to help a spouse upgrade his or her job skills.

22-6 In most divorces, mothers are awarded custody of their children.

Child Custody

In a divorce, one or both parents are awarded custody of the children. **Custody** refers to the right to raise the child in the home and to make decisions about the child's care, upbringing, and overall welfare. Women are awarded custody of children in about 90 percent of divorce cases. Most mothers desire custody, even though this often places the greater (if not the total) financial burden of child care on them, 22-6.

There are several types of custody arrangements. These include the following:

- *One-parent custody*: One parent has sole responsibility for the upbringing of the child.
- *Joint custody*: Parents share responsibility for the child's upbringing. Joint-custody arrangements work best if the divorced parents live in the same area, get along reasonably well, and are willing to work together for the well-being of the child.

- *Split custody*: Divorced parents "split" the children between them. For instance, one parent may have custody of the older children while the other parent has the younger ones. This alternative separates siblings, which may not be in the best interest of the children.
- *Third-party custody*: The court judges neither parent to be fit or otherwise able to assume custody of the children and awards custody to a third-party. In such cases, the children may be raised by relatives or foster parents.

Visitation rights for the noncustodial parent are also awarded by the court. A parent with visitation rights can arrange with the custodial parent to see the child during specified times (for example, weekends or summers).

Child Support

Parents—divorced or not—are legally responsible for the financial support of their children until the children are 18 years old. **Child support** payments—by law—are directed to the financial support of the children. In most cases, the noncustodial parent (usually the father) is required to pay child support, even if alimony is not ordered. The amount paid is determined by his income and the children's needs. The custodial parent is not paid for the labor involved in caring for the children.

Unfortunately, many fathers stop payments after a number of years. Some states, however, have passed legislation whereby the person ordered to pay child support may be arrested for failure to do so. Other states have instituted other ways of collecting child support. They may, for example, withhold state income tax refunds from parents who are behind in their payments.

Property Division

Arrangements for property division are a major feature of divorce settlements. Some states, called community property states, view any property acquired through the labors of either spouse during their marriage as **community property** (owned equally by both spouses). If the couple divorce, each partner receives one-half of the property they have acquired. **Separate property** exists only when it can be positively shown that such property was owned prior to marriage or acquired during marriage by gift or inheritance and retained as separate property.

Adjusting to the Divorce

Once the divorce is final, many adjustments will have to be made. One of the results of divorce is that the living standards of everyone concerned typically decline. Each former spouse must set up a separate household. Each needs a place to live, furniture, and possibly a car. This financial stress often adds to their bitterness.

If there are children, the parent who is awarded custody must meet the additional costs of the children's food, clothing, and other needs as they grow up. The other parent may be responsible for child support or alimony. However, as noted earlier, these payments are not always made regularly. The parent who has custody of the children may take the other parent to court, but may become tired of fighting to get the money.

Divorce creates concerns for children, too. When they hear discussions about the settlements and payments, they may worry about who will take care of them. Younger children may worry they will never see the other parent again, 22-7. Children need to be reassured that their parents still love them and will still

22-7 **Children whose parents are divorcing may need special reassurance from their parents.**

provide for them. The parents need to talk with their children honestly. They should let their children know what to expect during the divorce process, immediately after the divorce, and in the future. The parents should reassure the children that the divorce is not the children's fault.

Child visitation may create friction. The parent with custody of the children may want to place certain conditions on the visiting privileges of the other parent. Children may become pawns in the negotiations. The visiting parent may use the time with the children to seek out information about the former spouse. When the children return home, they may be asked again for information. They may be asked, "What did you do? Who was with you? How does the other home look?" Children may become confused. They would rather not choose sides, but they may feel pressured to do so.

Emotional Aftermath of Divorce

After a divorce, people may experience a variety of emotions. They may feel lonely, depressed, resentful, bitter, and guilty. They may even regret getting the divorce. The parent who has custody of the children may resent the freedom of the other parent who is no longer responsible for the daily care of the children.

Divorce is never "fair," and the final settlements may be the final blow. However, spending painful hours questioning "why" will only throw a person deeper into emotional turmoil. Instead, divorced individuals need to begin thinking of how they will live their new lives as single people.

Divorced persons have to make many adjustments. They have to stop thinking of themselves as spouses and begin thinking of themselves as single. In reality, they can never erase their past marital experiences—good or bad. They can only resolve to learn from the past as much as possible and to go on with their lives.

Divorced persons who have children certainly cannot change the fact that they are parents. Their children will continue to be one of their most pressing concerns. Finding ways to maintain close parent-child relationships may not be easy, 22-8.

Divorced people must continue to live productive lives. They must also achieve an inner security so they can find peace of mind. They must be able to adapt to changes, accept new roles, rebuild self-esteem, and develop new, fulfilling relationships.

Some people find help in building a new life by seeing a mental health professional. A good therapist can help the client sort out what happened in the marriage and to process feelings such as grief, guilt, and regret. The counselor can also help the client become more emotionally independent of the former spouse and to develop healthy new relationships. If destructive behavior was a

22-8 **It is important for both parents to make a special effort to spend time with their children.**

cause of the failed marriage, it is important for the client to work with the counselor to identify this behavior. The individual can then learn to avoid repeating it in new relationships.

The children of divorced parents also have adjustments to make. They must learn to accept their parents' decision to divorce. They must resist the impulse to feel they somehow "caused" the divorce. They must remind themselves that in almost all cases, the parent who has left the home still loves them very much.

Children of broken homes are asked to accept a difficult situation not of their making. If they try to maintain a positive attitude toward themselves and their parents, they will learn lessons in dealing with change that will help them throughout their lives.

Remarriage

Although people who seek divorce do so to "get out" of marriage, four out of five divorced persons marry again. Most people who remarry do so fairly soon—within less than three years, on average.

Remarriage rates are affected by many factors, such as age and the presence of children. Women divorced after age 40 are much less likely to remarry than younger women. Divorced women with children at home are also less likely to remarry. In the final decades of life, longevity (length of life) becomes a factor. Recent estimates indicate that for every 100 older unmarried women in this country, there are only 29 unmarried men.

Stepfamilies

Remarriage after divorce has created a whole new type of family—the stepfamily. See 22-9. In a stepfamily, either or both spouses may have been married before and may have one or more children. The couple may or may not add to the family by having children of their own.

Roles may become complex in stepfamilies because most children of divorced people retain their relationships with their natural parents. These relationships are permanent links between the first and second marriages. A child in a stepfamily may have four parent figures in addition to eight grandparents and a variety of siblings, half-siblings, and step-siblings. As a result, family members' expectations of one another may be unclear and confusing.

Financial problems are common in stepfamilies. The multiple obligations to former and present children and households stretch the financial resources.

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Do Remarriages Succeed?

Some divorced persons are reluctant to risk another try at marriage. Some may fear they will repeat the mistakes that contributed to the end of their earlier marriage. Others may think, "I'm just not cut out for marriage." What are the chances of success for remarried couples?

Couples who have been married before are somewhat less likely to divorce than couples marrying for the first time. A recent study of 87,000 couples found that 29 percent of first marriages had ended in divorce 16 years after the wedding. In contrast, 25.5 percent of couples in remarriages had divorced during the same 16-year period.

The lower divorce rate for remarriages may be due to spouses' more realistic expectations of marriage. The maturity that often comes with age probably is also a stabilizing factor.

The parent-child relationships in stepfamilies are sometimes strained. Parents are expected to love their stepchildren as much as their own. At the same time, they may not have equal parental discipline and control. New roles and expectations based on mutual respect need to be established.

Siblings in stepfamilies must also adjust to one another. In many cases, they have been raised with different priorities, standards, and rules for behavior. They may feel awkward as they try to get used to their new brothers or sisters and may feel they have little in common with them. Siblings should watch for opportunities to try to help each other. In a few years, the children will grow up and be on their own. In the meantime, kindness and patience can smooth the way.

In spite of challenges such as these, most stepfamilies are successful. Their members are aware of the obstacles they

David Hopper

22-9 **The stepfamily makes up a large segment of our society today because of the high rate of divorce and remarriage.**

face, and they work together to overcome these obstacles. The tips for stepparents listed in 22-10 can help ease the transition. With the passage of time, many of the early misgivings the new families experience will disappear. They will probably be replaced with positive feelings. The new family will build its own set of traditions and memories as the events of life—both happy and sad—unfold.

Tips for Stepparents

- Let family members get used to each other gradually. Don't expect too much too soon.
- Encourage stepchildren to express their feelings, and be understanding of their needs.
- Stepparents should not think of themselves as replacements for the missing parent. Understand that children need time to mourn the loss of this parent in their daily lives.
- Make sure that each child has a space in which to put personal belongings.
- Praise acts of kindness and cooperation among stepsiblings.
- If there are problems, don't "gloss over them" and pretend that everything is fine. Communicate about issues and deal with them.
- Do not be afraid to seek professional help if needed.

22-10 Stepparents have found these tips helpful in easing the adjustment of their children to the stepfamily arrangement.

apter 22 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- It has been estimated that there is a divorce for every two marriages in the United States.
- Marriages may be terminated in two ways: annulment and divorce. Legal separation allows the couple to live in separate households but does not end their marriage.
- Grounds commonly used for divorce include incompatibility, cruelty (mental or physical), desertion, impotence, insanity, alcohol or drug addiction, adultery, separation, and nonsupport (willful neglect). States commonly have no-fault divorce laws that eliminate the need to prove one partner guilty.
- Defenses in a divorce proceeding include condonation, connivance, and collusion.
- The terms of a divorce settlement usually include provision for child support and division of property and may occasionally include alimony.
- One common consequence of divorce is a decline in the financial well-being of both spouses.
- Adults and children must both make psychological adjustments in the aftermath of divorce.
- Stepfamilies are families in which either or both spouses may have been married before and may have one or more children. The couple may or may not add to the family by having children of their own.
- With patience and understanding, stepfamilies can overcome obstacles to make positive, successful adjustments.

Review

1. Describe the two methods of legally terminating a marriage relationship.
2. Name five possible reasons for the high U.S. divorce rate.
3. Which of the following are legal grounds for the annulment of a marriage?
   - A. Concealment of disease
   - B. Financial misrepresentation
   - C. Wishing to marry someone new
   - D. Use of threats or force to induce a mate to enter marriage
   - E. Falling "out of love"
4. Explain how legal separation differs from divorce.
5. What is a no-fault divorce?
6. Identify the grounds for divorce described in each of the following statements:
   - A. Spouses are unable to live together peaceably or in harmony.
   - B. Spouses have been living apart for a significant period of time.
   - C. One spouse engages in abusive psychological or physical behavior toward the other spouse.
   - D. Prolonged and habitual substance abuse.
7. List and explain three examples of defenses in a divorce proceeding.
8. Explain the difference between alimony and child support.
9. Explain why divorce usually results in a decline of financial well-being for both spouses.
10. Describe two special challenges that stepfamilies may face.

React

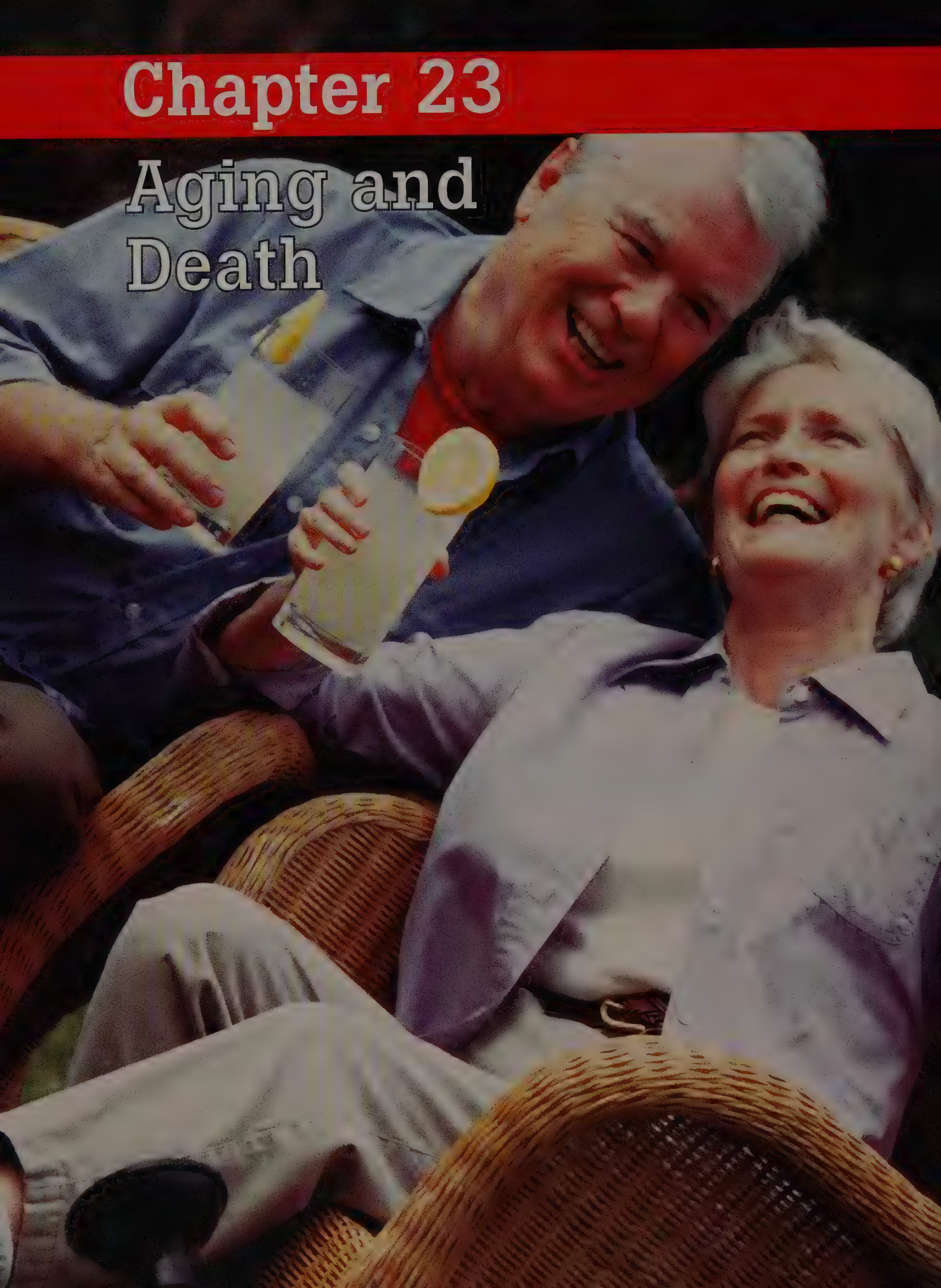
1. Research the divorce laws in your state, naming the legal grounds for divorce, conditions that must be met, defenses to divorce action, and terms of divorce.
2. Invite a respected mental health professional from your community to make a class presentation entitled, "Getting Past Divorce: How Counseling Can Help."
3. Research the problems involved in divorce and remarriage and summarize them in a report. Cite challenges faced by stepfamilies, including problems of finances, emotional pressures, the disciplining of children, etc.
4. Ask a panel of respected adult community members who grew up in successful stepfamilies to make a panel presentation to your class. Ask them about the challenges they faced in adjusting to their new families and how they met these challenges.
5. View a television situation comedy concerned with a blended family. What challenges are presented in the program? Did the family members address the challenges successfully? Why or why not?

Reflect

1. How can attempts to tear down or "punish" a spouse during a divorce be harmful to the children? Name three constructive ways of dealing with feelings of anger and betrayal.
2. What would you say to a child who is suffering over the thought that he or she has "caused" his or her parents' divorce?
3. What would you say to a child who is grieving the loss of a parent through divorce or death?
4. Imagine that you have just acquired a younger stepsister or stepbrother. Name three things you could do to get to know this person and help him or her feel welcome in the family.

Chapter 23

Aging and Death



Terms to Know

- lifespan development
- sandwich generation
- intergenerational caregiving
- empty nest syndrome
- menopause
- climacteric
- hospice
- stages of dying
- stages of grieving
- autopsy
- living will
- organ bank
- will
- beneficiaries
- intestate

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- describe the young-adult years and the challenges of this stage of life.
- describe the middle-age stage and the added responsibilities of intergenerational caregiving.
- summarize the emotional, physical, and financial aspects of aging.
- explain hospice care.
- list the stages of dying and the stages of grieving.
- define terms related to the legal issues of death.

Aging begins at birth and continues throughout life. People grow older each day. The concept of **lifespan development** emphasizes the changes and challenges that come with each stage of life throughout the human lifespan.

The young-adult years are the years from the early 20s to age 45. They typically involve the challenges of establishing oneself in a satisfying career and forming one's own household or family. In many ways, these years form the basis for the direction of the remainder of a person's life.

Middle age begins at 45, and old age begins at 65. The average life span in the United States today is about 76 years. Thus, the average person spends almost half a lifetime as a middle-aged or elderly person.

People's attitudes about aging vary. Some people dread old age. They view it as a time of life they want to avoid. Other people view aging with the same zest for living they have always displayed. They are glad to have the chance to experience a new aspect of life. They accept the changes aging brings and take advantage of the new opportunities it presents. See 23-1.

23-1 **Some people enjoy getting older and the time it brings to pursue interests and hobbies.**

Young Adulthood

The years from the early 20s, when a young person often becomes financially self-sufficient, to age 45 are called the young-adult years. At this stage of life, a young person typically is faced with the need

- to form an independent household;
- to form meaningful relationships, often involving engagement, marriage, and parenting; and
- to establish oneself in a satisfying, rewarding career.

These tasks are not simple ones. Young adults usually enjoy good health and have energy and enthusiasm, but they may lack experience and the judgment that comes with it. In matters of the heart, they may commit too easily to a relationship or, conversely, find it difficult to commit at all. In the world of work, young adults may need to try several different types of jobs or get more training before settling on a line of work that "feels right."

This stage of life also can be challenging financially. Young adults may be paying off college debts, saving for a down payment on a home, or struggling to keep up with rent payments. With the arrival of children come joys but also responsibilities, including financial ones. Moreover, young adulthood is the time to start a savings program in order to take advantage of the interest that can be earned in the years before retirement.

Emotionally, young adults still may have some maturing to do, including resolution of issues left over from adolescence. Substance abuse problems, conflicts with parents, or lingering doubts about one's self-worth or abilities are only a few of the concerns that may need to be addressed. Some unresolved problems may best be handled with professional help.

The young adult years are interesting and exciting ones. Although personal relationships and jobs may not always work out, there are usually new opportunities for fresh starts, 23-2. At this age, there is time to try out new situations, learn from them, and go on to new challenges.

Perhaps the most striking aspect of this stage of life is that it seems to pass so quickly. As one young person observed, "It's quite a shock when you consider that there are only 12 years between age 28 and age 40!" Some young adults may feel

23-2 During the young adult years, a couple may devote long hours to starting a new business before they have children.

that just as they are beginning to sort things out, they are confronted—almost unexpectedly—with the challenges of middle age.

Middle Age

Middle age includes the ages between 45 and 65. These years are perhaps the most misunderstood years of people's lives. They are also busy years involving a wide variety of activities.

Four out of five people survive to age 60. Most parents have their children before they are 35, and the children leave home by the time the parents are 48 to 55. With increased life expectancy, the parents may live 20 to 30 years longer. They may spend this time as wage earners, as independent singles, or in renewed companionship with their spouses.

The frantic rush of middle age sees many people reaching a top level in their careers, perhaps sending their children to college and seeing them marry. They may also be caring for elderly family members and meeting new expenses. These years are not all easy, but they are busy!

The Sandwich Generation and Intergenerational Caregiving

Middle age has taken on a new image in recent years, reflective of the changes in our society. Some sociologists have labeled today's middle-aged couples as the **sandwich generation**. The couple is often "sandwiched" between caring for their children and caring for their parents at a time when they would really like more time for themselves. Care provided for both older and younger generations by the middle generation is an example of **intergenerational caregiving**. This term refers to the provision of care to members of one generation by members of another. More families today may engage in intergenerational caregiving due to the needs of young adult children and elderly parents.

Why do today's young adult children require more help from their middle-aged parents? First, young adults face increasingly complex choices today and have more options to investigate before they can settle into adult life. This often creates added burdens and responsibilities for parents. Adult children, who may have left home to attend college, return home after graduation and often remain until they find jobs. Even after they begin working, many find they cannot afford to live on their own. Instead, they live with their parents. Some get jobs and move out, only to quit and move back in with their parents if the jobs don't meet their expectations. In other instances, adult children who have married and divorced move back to the parental home because they need help in reestablishing their lives. Often these adult children have children of their own who accompany them to the parental home.

Care for elderly parents is another factor increasing the complexities of the sandwich generation. The lengthened life span of people today means that many middle-aged couples find they must provide care for their elderly parents, 23-3. There are various options for such care, including having the elderly parents move in with them. This adds to the many responsibilities of the middle generation.

Intergenerational caregiving requires many adjustments. Finances may have to be stretched to provide for more members of the household. Space may be a problem in trying to provide comfortable living arrangements for several generations of people. Time will be at a premium if extra care is required for either an elderly parent or a grandchild.

23-3 Middle-aged parents often have to make arrangements for the care of their elderly parents.

For intergenerational caregiving to succeed, everyone needs to help out. House cleaning, meal preparation, and laundry are activities that need to be divided among members of the household who are able to participate. Available income will have to be carefully budgeted to meet critical needs. Additional medical care costs may affect the budget. Child care will need to be provided for very young members of the household. School-age children may be involved in many activities, and someone will need to help them get to where they need to be. This help could be provided by any member of the family who can drive.

Many middle-aged persons suffer from guilt if they don't feel they are adequately meeting their children's or parents' needs. They may think they are not doing enough for their parents, their children, or their grandchildren. Sometimes the desire to provide total care for an elderly parent causes the son or daughter to have health problems of his or her own. A few dependent parents add to the problem by encouraging their adult children to feel ashamed for not taking good enough care of them.

Families caught in the pressures of intergenerational caregiving should look at the resources available in their community. Many communities have community-based day care for the elderly as well as for children. Home health care services may be available through social service agencies. These services allow elderly people to remain in their own homes. Nurses or aides visit them to provide help. If necessary, nursing homes can provide constant care for elderly residents.

These options can be considered by middle-aged couples who may need to find care for their elderly parents.

Old Age

As a whole, our society is growing older. About 35 million people in the United States today are at least 65 years old. This is one out of every eight people, or 12.4 percent of the population. In 2000, more than 2 million people turned 65. By 2030, the number of people age 65 or higher will reach nearly 70 million.

The older population has been growing at a rate much faster than that of the general population. By the year 2025, the number of people age 80 and older is expected to grow to almost 15 million or about 4 percent of the population. By the year 2050, this group is expected to total 31.6 million or almost 8 percent of the population.

Impact of the Growing Population of Older Adults

The increased proportion of older adults will have a major impact on our society. There are fears that a shrinking workforce of younger people may someday be hard pressed to pay for programs that support an ever-growing older population. The sheer number of persons 85 years and older will be substantial enough to have a major impact on the health care and social service systems in our society.

With fewer young people in the workforce, some companies have turned to older workers to round out their ranks of part-time and full-time workers. What older people may lack in agility and physical endurance, they tend to make up for in reliability and a strong work ethic.

Elderly people are generally politically active. Their numbers are sometimes powerful enough to swing elections. As their numbers increase, their influence will be even greater.

The elderly face significant problems. Over time, inflation seriously erodes their incomes. Older people living on fixed incomes worry about medical costs and other costs associated with increasing poor health.

Aspects of Aging

Every stage of life has its changes. At each stage, some things are lost, but other things are gained. Aging persons may lose some strength or physical vigor. However, they may gain new leisure-time interests and more meaningful relationships with family members and friends, 23-4.

When asked, many elderly persons list finances as their biggest concern. Their other major concerns are crime, poor health, and loneliness. Not all older people have all these problems. Some are financially secure and in good health. Some have cultivated many friendships and have maintained close family ties. Each person is unique as a child, a youth, a young adult, a middle-aged adult, and a senior citizen.

Emotional Aspects

Emotionally, people may experience some identity problems in redefining their roles as they age. Parents who have stayed at home to raise their children may exhibit the **empty nest syndrome**. They may feel

23-4 **This middle-aged woman has developed a hobby that she will enjoy throughout her lifetime.**

useless and depressed after their children have left home. People who have followed a career often reach the peak of career achievement in middle age, 23-5. This causes some to plunge themselves even further into their work. Others are able to slow down, but they may have difficulty using their leisure time to develop new areas of companionship with their spouses.

On the positive side, middle-aged and elderly people have access to a whole new world. They can begin new recreational and leisure-time activities. They can consider moving to a new home that requires less upkeep. They can enjoy visiting with their children, who may now seem more like friends and less like dependents.

Middle-aged or aging couples can profit from broadening and deepening intimacies in their relationships. These intimacies may vary in form. Creative intimacy allows a couple to share appreciation for the arts, music, or hobbies. Intellectual intimacy allows a couple to share a closeness in discussing politics, books, plays, or speeches. Recreational intimacy offers a couple companionship on the golf course, at the bowling alley, or during a long walk. Sexual intimacy allows a couple to share themselves completely with each other. Parenting

23-5 **Many people reach the peak of their careers during middle age.**

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Accidents and Aging

Accidents at any age seldom "just happen." As a person ages, accidental injuries occur more frequently and are often more serious. Many result in death. The National Safety Council reports that each year about 24,000 people over the age of 65 die from accidental injuries. This amounts to 23 percent of all accidental deaths, even though older people constitute only about 11 percent of the population. At least 800,000 others sustain injuries severe enough to disable them for at least one day.

Why are elderly persons more accident prone? Poor eyesight and hearing may decrease awareness of hazards. Impaired coordination and balance can sometimes make an older person unsteady. Many suffer from arthritis, an inflammation of the joints that often makes normal movement difficult and painful. Women, in particular, have more brittle bones as they age. Thus, a minor fall may result in broken bones. Accidental injuries in older persons tend to heal more slowly.

Preventing accidents is the best course of action. Following are suggestions for preventing the most common accidents. If you know elderly people, you may want to share these safety precautions with them.

Falls are the most common cause of serious and fatal injuries in elderly people. The following suggestions can help prevent falls:

- Illuminate all stairways and provide light switches at both the bottom and top of stairs.
- Provide nightlights or bedside remote-control light switches.
- Install sturdy handrails on both sides of stairways.
- Use nonskid pads under loose rugs, and tack down carpeting on stairs.
- Install "grab bars" on bathroom walls, and place nonskid mats in the bathtub.
- Rearrange furniture and other objects so they are not obstacles.

The following suggestions will help prevent accidental burns:

- Discourage an older person from smoking in bed or when drowsy.
- Discourage an older person from wearing loose-fitting, flammable clothing when cooking because it may touch the flame or source of heat.
- Check water heater thermostats so tap water does not cause burns.
- Be sure the elderly person knows which exits to use in case of a fire or other emergency.
- Don't install multiple door locks that will be hard to open in an emergency. Install one good lock that can be opened quickly from the inside.

intimacy allows mates to share their dreams through their children and grandchildren.

Together a middle-aged couple can build a new identity. Their success will depend on two factors: their ability to adjust to new situations, and their ability to find new meaning in life. Their success in establishing a middle-aged identity will influence their success in coping with retirement and old age.

Physical Aspects

Physically, a human matures in about 25 years. At this time, the body's framework reaches its maximum size and strength. Then, at an extremely slow pace, the body begins to deteriorate. Some parts of the body age more rapidly than others. Individuals' bodily changes take place at different rates of speed. Aging becomes a different experience for each person.

Persons who eat balanced meals, exercise regularly, have regular medical checkups, and maintain a positive attitude about life are likely to feel the effects of aging more slowly than others. See 23-6.

Eventually, all people show signs of aging. One of the earliest visible signs is noticed in the skin. Loss of elasticity results in wrinkling.

Bones change little in size, but they do change in chemical composition. Bones become weaker and more fragile. Many elderly women suffer from *osteoporosis*—a bone disease caused by insufficient calcium in the diet.

The heart muscles may become less efficient, and blood vessels may become narrower. As a result, circulation problems may develop. The supply of blood to the legs and the brain may be reduced.

Sensory problems most often begin with a hearing loss. Loss of vision may follow and add to an elderly person's frustrations. The inability to focus on printed material interferes with the ability to read.

Aging persons need to pay special attention to their diets. If their diets improve, their overall psychological and physical health can improve. Nutritional needs vary for each person, but certain generalizations can be made. Most older persons need to reduce the total number of calories they consume, but the need for

23-6 Regular exercise is an important factor in maintaining good health throughout life.

most nutrients does not decrease. They need a well-balanced diet that includes a variety of foods. They should try to cut down on fats and sweets that have many calories. Individuals with constipation problems should be sure to eat plenty of foods that are high in fiber. Examples include fresh fruits and vegetables and whole-grain cereals.

The nutritional problems of elderly persons are sometimes associated with loneliness, 23-7. Some persons do not eat regularly because they do not enjoy eating alone. Mealtime in a family is a social time. When people live alone, they may skip meals because they do not have anyone with whom to dine. This problem can partially be solved by utilizing community centers that offer meals for older persons.

Menopause

Both women and men experience a "change of life" in middle age. The period of time when this change occurs in women is known as menopause. In men, it is referred to as the climacteric.

During **menopause**, physical changes occur that trigger both psychological and emotional changes in women. When a woman is about 51 years old, the production of the female hormones estrogen and progesterone slows down. As a result, her ovaries cease to produce a ripened egg regularly each month. Eventually the menstrual periods cease.

The imbalance of hormones in a woman's body during menopause may cause her to have *hot flashes*. These are

23-7 **Mealtime may be more enjoyable when it is shared with others.**

sudden, brief feelings of heat that occur as the blood vessels dilate and fill with blood.

Irregularity in hormone production can be emotionally disturbing to a woman. Mood swings, nervousness, irritability, and increased fatigue may result. Well-balanced diets, regular exercise, and an active interest in life can help a woman get through menopause with a minimum of discomfort. Women who have been able to adjust well to various situations throughout life usually do not experience overwhelming problems. They look upon menopause as a stage in their lives that will pass. They maintain a positive view of the future.

Climacteric

The climacteric in men is a much less pronounced change than menopause in women. Production of the male hormone testosterone peaks at about age 20. The level of production is usually maintained until the man is in his fifties. Then it decreases steadily until age 80, when very little is produced.

During the **climacteric**, a diminishing supply of hormone production in the man results in changes in moods and emotions. The changes are similar to those of a woman during menopause. The man's general state of health, his attitude toward life, and his self-image will determine how he adjusts to these changes.

Both husband and wife should maintain a positive attitude toward this time of their lives and emphasize the positive aspects that the years ahead can bring.

Financial Aspects

Many older persons list finances as their greatest worry. Financial resources will affect adjustments in all other areas of aging. Social Security benefits alone will not meet living costs. Medicaid and Medicare—government-sponsored programs that help pay medical expenses—may not be adequate. Many pension plans have not been able to meet the increased financial needs caused by inflation.

Financial planning must be started early in life to build up savings and investments for the aging years. People should take advantage of all the information available to them as they plan ahead for their financial security. Many types of investment programs are available. They meet different needs for different individuals and families.

As people reach an older age, they should reevaluate their investments, 23-8.

23-8 **People need to reevaluate their investments from time to time to make sure they will have enough to live on when they retire.**

A very elderly person may want to turn the management of his or her financial affairs over to someone else, completely or partially. This step can be taken voluntarily, or in some instances, it may be decided by a court. A relative or friend with an interest in the person's welfare can ask the court to declare the person incompetent (unable to manage financial affairs). An older person would be wise to make arrangements for assistance in financial management while he or she is still capable of making sound decisions.

People work hard all their lives to reach security in their old age. Just as wise money management is crucial in the early years of family life, it is also essential in later life. The way a person manages, saves, and invests his or her money throughout life will be important in acquiring peace of mind in old age.

Housing Arrangements

Where people live is a major factor in their lives. Many elderly people decide to continue living where they have lived for years. That is the most secure plan, if the housing is convenient, safe, comfortable, and easy to maintain. See 23-9. Moving older persons from familiar surroundings can be a devastating blow to their feelings of security.

Sometimes a move has to be made. If low-cost housing is needed, public housing facilities may provide special units for the elderly. Housing facilities for older persons with low or moderate incomes sometimes are sponsored by churches and other nonprofit groups with federal aid. Some have private units, and some offer services such as meals and recreation.

United Way of Houston

23-9 Many older people want to remain in their homes. This is a good plan if the necessary adjustments, such as a wheelchair ramp, can be made.

There are many leisure villages, retirement communities, and condominiums available to older people. Many of these are designed exclusively for elderly residents and do not allow children or younger people, except as visitors. Social activities, complete health care, and shopping facilities are often available. Such areas should be thoroughly investigated before a commitment is made to them. Some people enjoy these environments, but others have been disappointed. They dislike being surrounded completely by older people. They miss a small child's play and the liveliness of teenagers. Many people find they still prefer a typical neighborhood made up of a variety of people rather than a specific community of all older people.

If elderly people move in with their children, they may have to accept a secondary role. The adult children should clearly define their own roles without offending their parents. The older people should be able to feel they are a useful and active part of the family even though the adult children make the major family decisions.

About five percent of people over the age of 65 in the United States live in nursing homes. However, for people age 85 and over, the percentage increases to 22 percent. When nursing home care is needed, the facility should be chosen carefully. Factors to consider when making a choice are listed in 23-10.

How to Select a Nursing Home

1. Ask for advice from physicians and people who have already chosen nursing homes.
2. Look only at those nursing homes which are near enough to allow frequent visits by family and friends.
3. Visit the home during mealtime. Is the kitchen clean and free of insects and rodents? Do the people preparing the food use sanitary practices? Does the food look appetizing? Are adequate amounts of food served? Are snacks available between meals?
4. Look at the physical condition of the building. Is it well-maintained and free of offensive odors?
5. Observe the staff. Do they treat the patients with kindness and respect?
6. Observe the patients. Do they seem happy? Are their clothes neat and clean? Are they well-groomed?
7. Ask about the opportunities for recreation. What facilities are available for recreation? Are activities regularly scheduled?

23-10 These suggestions can help you choose a good nursing home for an elderly person.

New Roles in the Later Years

Your overall attitude toward living will determine how you approach the last stages of life. Middle age and old age are no better or worse than other stages. You will give up some things as you approach each stage, and you will gain some others. As you experience the last stages of your life, two events may stand apart from the rest. If you have had children who have married and had children of their own, you will gain the new role of grandparent. If you have been employed, you will look forward to retirement.

Grandparenting

Most couples have their children when they are in their twenties or early thirties. Thus, people may become grandparents when they are middle-aged. They will continue this role throughout their lives.

The family systems in our society currently focus on independence. As a result, ties between grandparents and grandchildren may not always be as strong as in former generations. This is a loss since children can gain a great deal by being close to older people, by loving them and being loved by them, and by understanding their needs. In many families, however, the grandparents do keep in close touch with their grandchildren, 23-11. They may act as babysitters, or they may even help raise their grandchildren in times of crisis.

Grandparents today have more independence than in the past. They are freer to travel, to enjoy new leisure-time activities, and to be friends with their children. They can share their experiences from the past with their grandchildren. Many grandparents find they can enjoy new types of social contact with their grandchildren and their children. Grandparenting is a role that many older people enjoy, 23-12.

23-11 **This grandfather is looking forward to spending time with his grandson as he grows up.**

Retirement

Whenever retirement occurs, it creates change. If a person can adjust to change easily, retirement will not be a problem. Almost everyone at one time or another has said, "Just wait till I retire!" Retirement can be a pleasant stage of life, or it can produce frustration and loneliness. It is more likely to be pleasant if you look ahead to it with positive plans and goals.

Retirement is a process—not just one event. People should start planning for retirement long before they actually reach this stage of their lives. They should investigate preretirement programs that are available to them. In addition to financial matters, they should consider health programs, legal matters, and housing possibilities. They should also develop some outside interests or leisure-time activities so they will have something to do during retirement. Some people even turn a hobby into a second career.

Retirement causes changes in a couple's daily schedule. These changes may be difficult for the husband and wife to suddenly accept. If they have planned ahead of time for these changes, they can make better adjustments. The best plan is to give themselves time to adjust to the

23-12 **Children benefit in many ways from spending time with their grandparents.**

new abundance of free time that retirement offers. Married couples should work to develop common areas of interest. They should also try to maintain close relationships with their friends, 23-13.

In all communities, there are human needs that need to be met. Many organizations eagerly accept the volunteer help of elderly persons, 23-14. These organizations can be identified by contacting local hospitals, religious groups, community centers, or the National Center for Voluntary Action.

Accepting Death As a Reality of Life

If we are to study living, we must study dying, for it represents the final stage of development. Death is as much a part of the human life cycle as birth is. You must learn to accept it as a reality of your life.

Cholla Runnels

23-13 Retirement is more enjoyable when old friendships are maintained and new friendships are developed.

Ingalls Memorial Hospital

23-14 Elderly volunteers fulfill others' needs for help.

Accepting death may be difficult, for we have created a death-denying culture. Medical achievements have almost led us to believe that it is possible to conquer nature. We can prolong life, but we cannot deny the inevitability of death.

Hospice Care

When a family member or friend is dying, many people turn to hospice programs for help. The term **hospice** refers to a medical facility designed for people who have only a few months or weeks to live. Hospices provide a more homelike atmosphere than that of a hospital. Emphasis is placed on pain management and maintenance of a peaceful, supportive environment. Hospice-type care can also be provided in the home by family members and friends. This is done with the assistance of hospice health professionals and volunteers.

Hospice care or hospice-type home care appeals to those who, given a choice, would prefer to die in a peaceful environment with family members nearby. If an illness is terminal, and death is only a matter of time, some people prefer this alternative. On the other hand, some terminally ill people wish to remain hospitalized. They prefer to fight their illnesses to the very end with the most aggressive medical resources a hospital can offer. This choice is available to terminally ill individuals and their families.

Stages of Dying

Death can come at any time to persons of any age. Those who know that death is near pass through clearly defined stages in the acceptance of death called the **stages of dying**. Dr. Elisabeth Kubler-Ross has identified these stages based on her study of the needs of dying people. The stages are listed below.

- *Stage One—Denial*. When a patient first learns that he or she is terminally ill, the typical reaction is, "No, not me." The denial stage is important and necessary. It helps cushion the impact of the patient's awareness that death is inevitable.
- *Stage Two—Anger*. In this stage, the patient resents the fact that others will remain healthy and alive while he or she must die. God is regarded as imposing the death sentence, and thus is a special target for anger.
- *Stage Three—Bargaining*. During stage three, patients accept the fate of death, but they try to bargain for more time. They usually bargain with God. Even people who are not religious will bargain at this time. They promise to be good, or to do something special in exchange for another week or month or year of life. Sometimes a special future family event, such as a wedding or graduation, is used in their bargaining. "Just let me see my grandson be married," a person may say, or "I want to be there when my daughter graduates."
- *Stage Four—Depression*. In this stage, the person at first will mourn past losses, things not done, and wrongs committed. Then the person enters a state of preparatory grief. He or she grows quiet and wants no visitors. This indicates the person feels ready to die and will be able to go peacefully.
- *Stage Five—Acceptance*. This is the final stage. The patient knows that death is close and is ready for it. This stage is neither happy nor unhappy. It is simply the calm acceptance of reality.

Knowledge of these stages can help family members and friends understand what the dying person is feeling. This can help the person achieve the kind of death he or she wants.

A person can usually sense when death is near. You should not let a dying person feel that he or she is being given up on. However, you should not try to help the person hang on to false hope. The best approach in most cases is to be caring, honest, and responsive as the person prepares for death.

Those Left Behind

The death of a loved one is painful to survivors. When someone you love dies, thoughts of what might have been enter your mind. You may feel guilty about apologies not made or injuries inflicted. You may even resent the dead person for dying and leaving you behind.

Stages of Grieving

Those left behind when a loved one dies eventually adjust to the loss. However, the grieving process of the survivors generally follows a series of stages similar to the stages of dying presented earlier. These may be thought of as the **stages of grieving**.

- *Stage One—Denial*. If the death is sudden, the survivors experience a strong sense of disbelief. They might say, "This can't be true." However, if the person had a lingering illness, few people are capable of accepting death without questioning, "Why?"
- *Stage Two—Anger*. The anger may be directed toward the deceased: "Why did you leave me like this?" The survivor takes on the role of the victim because the deceased died and left him or her behind.
- *Stage Three—Bargaining*. If the person is still alive, the future survivor may seek a bargaining posture, trying to prolong the person's life. The person may say, "Please let him live. I will be good to him." As the survivor recognizes the futility of bargaining, he or she moves to the next stage.
- *Stage Four—Depression*. This carries with it feelings of loneliness and isolation. "What will I do now?" There is a sense of great loss, 23-15. Depression involves facing reality, but it leaves a person feeling helpless.
- *Stage Five—Acceptance*. Finally, the stage of acceptance begins as the person realizes that the death is a fact and cannot be changed. The survivor starts to look at the loss in a constructive way. He or she begins to think about what has to be done now to get on with living. This is the stage of healing and recovery.

The death of someone close to you is one of life's most shocking, and often shattering, experiences. Understanding the stages of grief can help prepare you to cope with the death of someone you love. It will also help you to understand what others may be going through when a death occurs in their lives. The survivors

23-15 In the fourth stage of grieving, a person often feels lost and alone.

need understanding and comfort from their friends and family members. They need to talk to others about their feelings and about the one who died. Do not be afraid to talk to bereaved persons. They often need and want to talk.

The passage of time will help ease the pain of death. The following suggestions may help you during the grieving process:

- Allow yourself to work through your grief. Try to recognize the full reality of what has happened. View the body and discuss the death with friends and relatives so you can begin to accept the permanence of the loss.
- Accept the comradeship of your friends and relatives as a source of comfort.
- Talk out your grief and cry. This is a normal part of grieving, and you should not be ashamed of it.
- Remember the good times you had with the deceased. Be thankful for the time that you had together. This will help you understand that the time spent together is worth the grief.
- Delay any major decisions until you have sought proper advice and can think clearly.

Telling Children About Death

Suppressing or denying grief can have a damaging effect on anyone, especially on a child. Psychiatrists believe that children who experience the death of a loved one should complete the task of mourning at that time. If they don't, they may be overwhelmed by their feelings of grief in later years.

There are several expressions to avoid when telling children about death. Do not say, "Mother has gone on a long journey." This is untrue, and the child will learn you have lied. The child may even interpret this to mean the mother has chosen to desert the family without even saying good-bye.

Do not say, "Grandmother died because she was sick," unless the child is able to understand that all illnesses do not lead to death.

Do not say, "Mother has just gone to the hospital." When anyone has to go to the hospital in the future, the child will expect the person not to come back. This can be very frightening to a child.

The simplest way to talk to a child about death is to talk about how flowers and pets die. If you explain that death is a normal part of life, the child may be better able to accept it. The consolation and hope provided by a religious faith may also be comforting.

Widows and Widowers

Statistics show that more marriages end by death than by divorce. The widow is more often the survivor. (A *widow* is a woman whose husband has died. A *widower* is a man whose wife has died.) In the average community, there are twice as many widows as widowers. By 85 years of age, 85 percent of wives are widows.

The death of a spouse creates many crises for a person. Widows and widowers must adjust to a single lifestyle. They have to learn how to deal with their loneliness, 23-16. They must also learn to accept total responsibility for their homes. Activities that used to be shared, such as handling financial matters, cooking, cleaning, filling leisure time, and entertaining, must all be done by the survivor. See 23-17.

23-16 **A widow may enjoy sharing family photo albums with friends.**

Legal Issues of Death

All states have laws dealing with the legal issues of death. They all require that a physician or coroner examine the dead body and issue a certificate that states the time, place, and cause of death. If the cause of death is doubtful, an autopsy may be performed. An **autopsy** is a detailed physical examination of a dead body.

Living Will

A **living will** allows people to choose whether or not they want to be kept alive when there is apparently no hope for them to recover. With this legal document, people usually indicate their desire that no extreme measures be taken to prolong life. Cases in which people have been maintained for long periods on life support systems prompt people to make living wills so their wishes will be known.

Organ Banks

Some people make arrangements so that when they die all or parts of their bodies are donated to medical science or placed in an **organ bank**. The organs and tissues from organ banks are then used in transplant operations to help critically ill patients. Organ donors believe that in this way they are contributing to the continuation of life.

Organs that can be donated include the kidneys, heart, liver, lungs, and pancreas. Some of the tissues that can be donated include corneas, skin, bone, heart valves, and blood vessels.

Cholla Runnels

23-17 **Widowed individuals find that mealtimes previously shared with a spouse are now spent alone.**

The success rates of transplant surgery have improved remarkably over the years. This has led to a growing shortage in the supply of organs and tissues available for transplantation. Many people who need transplants cannot get them because of these shortages. The United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS) maintains a national waiting list for vital organs. When an organ becomes available, the list is reviewed to determine who will receive the organ. Time is often critical in the transplantation process. Kidneys are the most needed organs on the waiting list. Over 50,000 people are currently waiting for kidney transplants.

It is important that you discuss your wishes with your family so they know if you want to be an organ donor upon your death. Most states ask you to indicate your wishes on your driver's license.

Funeral Arrangements

A *funeral* is a ceremony that honors the person who has died. Funeral services allow people to express concern and support for the survivors. A funeral causes people to confront the reality of death and helps them prepare to say a final good-bye to the dead person.

Some people make the arrangements for their own funerals while they are still living. They may even pay for their funerals in advance. Preplanning eases the minds of these individuals and of the people who will be the survivors.

If the funeral has not been preplanned, the family will choose a funeral director shortly after the death. The funeral director will make all the necessary arrangements in consultation with the family.

The deceased may have expressed wishes concerning disposal of the body. If so, these wishes should be followed, 23-18. If the deceased did not express any wishes, the family will have to decide if the body should be buried or *cremated* (reduced to ashes by burning).

The family will need to make decisions about a wake and the funeral service. A *wake* is a watch held over the body of a dead person before burial. It gives people a chance to pay their last respects and to offer emotional support to the survivors.

23-18 **A person may have made arrangements to be buried in his or her family's cemetery plot. If so, the person's wishes should be followed.**

The Legal Will

A **will** is a legal declaration of a person's wishes concerning the way his or her property will be distributed after death. The will names the **beneficiaries**, or those who will receive the property. It states how much property each beneficiary will receive and the conditions under which they will receive it. Wills can also name legal guardians for minor children. This is one of the most important reasons for young parents to be sure to have a will.

Dying **intestate** (without a will) creates problems for survivors. They will have the inconvenience and expense of extra attorney services and court procedures. Without a will, the estate taxation will be heavier, and the property may simply be distributed according to the laws of the state. Only with a will can a person be sure the best interests of loved ones will be met.

There are different methods of making a will. Do-it-yourself forms are available, but they are not generally recommended. A *holographic will* is written completely in the handwriting of the person making the will. A *nuncupative will* is an oral will. This type of will needs one or more witnesses, and even then it may be unacceptable. The safest type of will is one that is written by a lawyer in consultation with the client. Two witnesses are required to sign the will in addition to the client.

A person should keep a copy of his or her will in a safe-deposit box. The lawyer will usually keep another copy. The will should be kept up-to-date. Additions or changes may be needed if the person's financial matters, state of residence, family responsibilities, or beneficiaries change. If a new will is made, all copies of the old will should be destroyed to prevent confusion.

apter 23 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Aging is a process that begins at birth and continues throughout life.
- The young-adult years are the years from the early 20s to age 45. They typically involve the challenges of establishing oneself in a satisfying career and forming one's own household or family.
- Intergenerational caregiving is often required of middle-age couples. They may have to provide for both adult children who return home and elderly parents who need care.
- Middle age and old age introduce new emotional, physical, and financial aspects to a person's life.
- People who eat balanced meals, exercise regularly, have regular medical checkups, and maintain a positive attitude about life are likely to feel the effects of aging more slowly than others.
- Many older persons list finances as their greatest worry. Housing for aging persons should provide safety and comfort as well as socializing opportunities.
- Grandparents can enjoy new types of social contacts with their grandchildren and their adult children.
- Retirement is generally more pleasant for those who begin planning for it early in life and develop interests and activities they can pursue.
- Death is a part of the human life cycle and must be accepted as a reality of life. The dying person will generally pass through these stages: denial, anger, bargaining, depression, and acceptance.
- People in the grieving process will pass through similar stages as they learn to adjust to the loss of a loved one.
- A funeral helps people confront the reality of death.
- Having a legal will enables a person to designate how property will be distributed after his or her death.

Review

1. What is the average life span of people in the United States?
2. Briefly describe what is meant by the "sandwich generation."
3. Why has intergenerational caregiving become a factor in the lives of many middle-aged couples?
4. Which of the following statements is true?
   - A. All humans age uniformly.
   - B. Humans begin to age physically at the age of 50.
   - C. Skin wrinkles as it loses its elasticity.
   - D. Bones change in length and chemical composition as a person ages.
5. Explain why loneliness may be a factor in the nutritional problems of elderly persons.
6. The reproductive "change of life" is known as _____ for women and the _____ for men.
7. Name four general factors to consider when planning retirement.
8. What is a hospice? Describe hospice care.
9. In which stage of dying does the patient resent the fact that others will remain healthy and alive while he or she must die?
10. In which stage of grieving does the survivor begin to make plans for his or her life without the deceased?
11. True or False. When someone you love dies, you should try to forget about the person and the times you shared.
12. True or False. The explanation, "Mother has gone on a long journey," is a good way to tell a child that his or her mother has died.
13. A _____ _____ is a legal document that states whether or not a person wishes to be kept alive by life support systems when there is apparently no hope for recovery.
14. Why should a person have a legal will?

React

1. Discuss changes in our society that have created new responsibilities for middle-aged parents.
2. Work in groups to design collages on the following concerns of elderly people: recreational activities, family ties, physical health, types of housing.
3. Role-play scenes depicting aging individuals. Include both positive and negative aspects of aging.
4. On a separate sheet of paper, write five adjectives that come to your mind when you think about death. Compare your list with those of your classmates.
5. Write a short skit in which a child is told about the death of a grandparent. Perform the skit in class.
6. Identify the stages that people go through when they are mourning the death of a loved one. How do these stages compare with the stages of dying?
7. Investigate the costs of various types of funerals and compare the costs of burial and cremation.
8. Have a class discussion about why people use "soft" words and phrases when talking about death. (Examples include: "passed away" instead of died and "resting place" instead of grave.)

Reflect

1. How would you feel if you were a middle-aged parent and your 22-year-old child asked to continue to live with you? Would you charge him or her rent? What about "house rules"?
2. What do you think you will be doing 50 years from today? Include physical health, career goals, financial status, leisure-time activities, and family relationships.
3. List three things you can do now to help plan for your retirement.
4. Your 7-year-old niece is grieving her grandmother, who has just died. What would you say to comfort your niece?
5. Would you want to be an organ donor? Why or why not?

Part VII

Managing Family Living

Chapter 24
Providing for the Family's Physical Needs

Chapter 25
Protecting the Family's Resources

Chapter 26
Using Banking Services

Chapter 27
Managing Your Finances

Chapter 24

Providing for the Family's Physical Needs

Terms to Know

- needs
- consumer
- advertising
- recall
- natural resources
- ecology
- environmental responsibility
- recycled
- biodegradable
- impulse buying
- convenience foods
- comparison shopping
- net income
- lease
- assign a lease
- sublet
- security deposit
- condominium
- mortgage

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- ✚ distinguish between needs and wants.
- ✚ list consumer rights and responsibilities.
- ✚ describe environmentally responsible behavior.
- ✚ make wise consumer decisions regarding food, clothing, housing, transportation, and use of leisure time.
- ✚ explain how to plan and shop for family meals.
- ✚ describe methods of acquiring, selecting, and maintaining clothing.
- ✚ evaluate the pros and cons of renting versus buying a home.
- ✚ identify transportation alternatives and list the costs of buying and maintaining a car.
- ✚ list ways in which leisure-time activities can enhance family life.

The next few years of your life will be exciting ones. During these years, you will make decisions that may change the pattern of your whole life. You will decide how much education you need and what career you will begin. You will establish buying patterns for necessities such as food and clothing. Choosing a place to live will be a major decision for you. You may decide to marry and begin a family. Each of these decisions brings greater responsibilities. Therefore, these decisions deserve your careful study and thought.

You and your future family will be setting goals based on your personal priorities and standards. You will be evaluating your resources to determine how best to reach your goals. You will utilize your decision-making skills many times as you use resources to reach your goals.

Needs Versus Wants

You and your future family will have many individual and family needs that must be satisfied. **Needs** are items or conditions that people must have in order to survive. These include both *psychological needs* (for example, the needs for love and acceptance) and physical needs. The *physical needs* are for food, water, air, rest, and protection. These needs are met through your choices of food, clothing, and shelter and your use of resources.

Resources are used to satisfy not only needs, but wants. It is important to appreciate the difference between the two. *Needs* are necessities, such as clothing or transportation to work, 24-1. *Wants* are items that are nice to have, but not strictly necessary. Examples of wants might be an expensive prom outfit or a sports car.

Unfortunately, most people do not have unlimited resources. Human resources, such as time and energy, as well as nonhuman resources, such as money, are all limited. People who do not understand the difference between needs and wants may run into problems. The satisfaction they seek from a "want" may be lost if they must deal with the consequences of overspending. A person who overspends on luxury items will probably end up with financial worries. A person who lavishes time on a hobby may do so at the expense of time needed for activities with a spouse or children.

A variety of resources may be available to satisfy a want or need. Some resources, such as skills and abilities, may be waiting to be recognized or developed. Although buying an expensive prom dress, for example, might be impossible, a family member or neighbor may have sewing skills that can be used to create an elegant dress. While the purchase of a new sports car may be out of the question, automotive and mechanical skills can be used to recondition an older model.

You and your family will need to identify all of the resources that are available to you. You can then decide how best to use your resources to satisfy your family's needs and reach its goals.

24-1 Children's shoes are a necessary purchase because they quickly outgrow their shoe size.

Factors Affecting Consumer Decisions

A **consumer** is someone who buys goods and services. Your consumer choices influence, and are influenced by, market conditions and marketing priorities. The purpose of this market is to produce goods and services to satisfy consumers. Thus, your buying practices have a great deal to do with our economy.

Teenagers have a tremendous impact on our economy. Each year, teenagers in the United States spend millions of dollars. Manufacturers and advertisers are aware of teens' buying potential. They want to capture a part of this potential for two reasons. One reason is, of course, immediate financial gain. The second reason is that they want teens to establish the habit of buying their products. Habit is the largest single motivator for buying, 24-2. Studies show that buying habits established during youth will probably continue throughout a person's life.

24-2 Once you establish the habit of stopping at a certain grocery store, you will probably continue to do so.

Consumer Rights and Responsibilities

Years ago, the marketplace was characterized by the attitude, "Let the buyer beware." The consumer was responsible for choosing good products. Consumers who made poor choices could blame only themselves.

In recent decades, an opposite attitude has emerged. A "Let the seller beware" attitude gives merchants and manufacturers the responsibility of selling good products. With this attitude, consumers who buy defective products can blame the manufacturer for producing them. Thus, manufacturers have had to recall products that were not safe and retract false advertising claims for fear of being sued by dissatisfied consumers.

Consumers and merchants must work together to make sure consumers receive good and safe products. Merchants must be honest in telling consumers exactly what they are buying. Consumers need to be informed enough to compare products and choose the ones that best fit their needs.

These basic consumer rights were first outlined by President John F. Kennedy in 1962. Additional rights were added by later presidents. They include the following:

- *The right to safety.* Consumers have the right to be protected from goods and services that can be harmful to their health or life.

- *The right to be informed.* Consumers are to be given true facts and information about products so they can make wise choices.
- *The right to choose among products and services.* Consumers have the right to select the goods and services they want to buy in the places they want to shop.
- *The right to be heard when dissatisfied.* Consumers have the right to speak out if they feel the products they buy are unsatisfactory, and they should expect appropriate action to be taken by the supplier.
- *The right to redress.* Consumers should receive a fair settlement of disputes, including some form of compensation, if a product or service is unsatisfactory.
- *The right to consumer education.* Various types of consumer education programs now exist to help the public buy wisely.
- *The right to a healthy environment.* This refers to the people's right to live and work in an environment with pure water and clean air. It also includes efforts to preserve natural resources for future generations.

In addition to these rights, consumers must be willing to accept certain responsibilities. The people who make and sell goods and services expect the following from you, the consumer:

- to use products safely and to guard against carelessness
- to seek out and use information when buying
- to buy wisely from the wide variety of sellers
- to let legitimate dissatisfactions be known to the manufacturer by calling or writing

When consumers, merchants, and manufacturers work together, consumers should be happy and satisfied, and merchants and manufacturers should make a profit.

The Role of Advertising

Advertisers try to stimulate sales of goods and services by **advertising**—providing information that will influence consumer behavior. Studies show that the average consumer comes in contact with hundreds of advertisements each day. They are seen or heard by way of television, radio, Web sites, magazines, newspapers, billboards, posters, and direct mail. Wherever you go, you see words such as "sale," "markdown," and "special buy" that are used to influence your purchases, 24-3.

Advertising itself is a big business. Billions of dollars are spent each year to convince you to buy everything from toothpaste to cars. This money is not spent haphazardly. Even the most negative or insulting ad has been carefully designed and produced.

ENTIRE
ALL MUST GO
DRASTIC
REDUCE
LOW
Discount
PRICES
Clearance
SALE
LE

24-3 Eye-catching words are used in advertising to convince you to stop, shop, and buy.

Forms of Advertising

Advertisers conduct motivational research to discover the psychological reasons people buy certain products. They learn which "hidden needs" consumers are unconsciously satisfying when they make purchases. See 24-4. The results of this research are used as a basis for selling strategy. For instance, advertisers might use *sex appeal* in their ads. They know men often buy colognes they hope will enhance their masculinity and sex appeal. Thus, most ads for men's colognes are based on this hidden need. The ads show rugged men who fit some people's ideas of masculinity and sex appeal.

Advertising can fool you if you are not an alert consumer. In *bait-and-switch*, an item (the "bait") is offered at a very low price to get you to come into the store. Once there, the merchant may try to redirect ("switch") your attention to other more expensive items.

Puffery advertising makes an exaggerated claim that attracts the reader or listener. An ad may suggest, for example, that if a woman uses a certain hand cream, she is sure to become a bride soon. Advertisers also use *testimonials* by "real people" who have used their products or services with great success. When these real people are famous personalities, such as well-known actors or sports figures, they are called *endorsements.*

Hidden Needs

- Creating personal image of masculinity.
- Creating personal image of femininity.
- Calming feelings of anxiety or frustration.
- Fulfilling need for security.
- Fulfilling need for self-esteem.
- Achieving a status symbol.
- Receiving a feeling of youth.
- Receiving a feeling of maturity and sophistication.

24-4 Consumers often base their purchases on a "hidden need."

Pseudo-truths are false statements made to sound as if they were true. No proof is offered to substantiate them. In fact, the statements are not even meant to be believed. Advertising that shows a white tornado sweeping through a kitchen and cleaning it could not literally be true. However, it might attract your attention to a certain brand of kitchen cleanser.

"Infomercials" and "advertainment" reflect attempts to blur the lines between advertising and education or entertainment. *Infomercials* typically advertise a product under the guise of a product demonstration or expert interview. *Advertainment* attempts to "hide" advertising in the form of some type of entertainment, such as a short story. No matter how convincing the expert or how appealing the entertainment, it is important to remember that infomercials and advertainment are still just forms of advertising.

Advertising is not all bad. In fact, it has several important functions. Through advertising, consumers learn about available products and services, 24-5. Advertising can bring new and better products to the consumer. It helps producers market their goods and services efficiently. In addition, it expands the consumption of goods and the circulation of wealth, thus helping the economy grow.

When reading advertisements, however, do so with caution. Watch for words such as "free," "one time only," and "valued at." These should alert you to

World Kitchen, Inc.

24-5 **Attractive photos of new products encourage consumers to buy. This display shows the various pieces available in the set.**

possible deceptions. If an ad sounds too good to be true, it quite often is. Don't let ads persuade you to buy what you do not need or cannot afford.

Consumer Protection Agencies

Though the consumer has the right to complain directly to a manufacturer if a product is defective, certain federal, state, and local agencies can also come to a consumer's aid. The United States has over 300 consumer protection agencies at the state, county, and city levels. Every state has at least one. Many of these agencies are associated with the office of the state attorney general or district attorney. Agency staff members are familiar with local consumer laws and can answer any questions you may have. They can also act as mediators between consumers and businesses.

Some consumer protection agencies function at the federal level. They rarely become directly involved in specific cases, but they can still help you. Sometimes just threatening to contact them will make a business listen to you more carefully. Sometimes the informal opinion of a representative of a federal agency is all you need to win your argument.

Three major federal agencies offer help and protection to consumers:

- The *Food and Drug Administration (FDA)* investigates complaints about the safety of food, drugs, and cosmetics.
- The *Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC)* watches for hazardous products such as malfunctioning appliances. This commission can tell you whether or not a certain product has been recalled. A manufacturer's **recall** is a public call for the return of a product that may be defective. The CPSC can also tell you how to get the repair, replacement, or refund the manufacturer is offering.
- The *Federal Trade Commission (FTC)* protects consumers from unfair trade practices and false advertising. It enforces mail-order regulations, warranty legislation, and fair credit and billing laws.

Most large cities have a *Better Business Bureau (BBB).* This nonprofit agency, supported by area businesses, promotes advertising and selling practices that are fair to both businesses and consumers. The BBB guards against frauds and misrepresentations. It provides consumers with free informational brochures. Consumers can ask the BBB questions regarding certain merchants through the mail, by telephone, or in person. The BBB can help resolve buyer/seller complaints through mediation and arbitration.

Many industries have established associations or councils that can handle consumer questions and complaints in their fields. Examples are the Major Appliance Consumer Action Program (MACAP), the Automotive Consumer Action Program (AUTOCAP), and Toy Manufacturers of America.

Environmental Responsibility

In recent years, the responsible use of **natural resources** (such as air, water, and soil) and the preservation of environmental quality have received increased attention worldwide. Americans have become more conscious of themselves not only as users of natural resources, but as protectors of them, 24-6.

Ecology, the science of relationships between living things and their environments, also has received greater emphasis. Most Americans have come to view themselves as part of a fragile *ecosystem* (community of living things together with their physical environment). Accordingly, many people have a heightened sense of **environmental responsibility** (feeling of personal accountability for protecting the environment). This sense of responsibility may increase as pollution and global warming become more pressing international concerns.

24-6 Protecting environmental quality is of concern to increasing numbers of Americans.

Conserving Energy

Careful use of energy is becoming a priority in many families, not only for environmental reasons but for financial reasons. Fuel costs, both gas and electric, account for a large portion of living expenses. To save energy and keep your budget under control, you need to make wise use of your energy dollars. The following tips may help you.

Keep your heating and cooling system running efficiently. Have them checked by a competent service representative. Keep filters clean and replace them when needed.

A great deal of energy is wasted by heat leakage out of your home in cold weather and into your home in hot weather. Insulate the walls and attic and use weather stripping on doors and windows. Close blinds and draperies to block out extreme cold or intense sunlight.

Set your thermostat at the most efficient setting to keep your home comfortable. Modern thermostats can be programmed to lower temperature overnight, during vacation trips, and at other times when energy can be saved without sacrificing the family's comfort.

For every degree you lower the thermostat in the winter, fuel usage is reduced by two to three percent. The reverse is true for air conditioning. An exterior exhaust fan will help eliminate hot air in the attic during summer.

Use your appliances efficiently. Save energy by using small appliances for small jobs.

Environmentally Responsible Consumption

Consumers who are environmentally aware can save energy and contribute toward environmental quality in other ways, too. One important practice involves buying items that are safe for—or minimize damage to—the environment. The other practice is to sort items so that they can be **recycled** (used again to produce new products).

When buying an item, ask yourself, "How will I dispose of this when I am finished using it?" It is easy to think, "That's easy. I will simply throw it away." Environmentalists, however, point out that there is no "away." See 24-7. Once an item exists on this planet it is here to stay—whether it exists on your cupboard shelf, in a city dump, or on a barge in an off-shore landfill. The only exceptions occur if the item is **biodegradable** (decomposes by natural biological processes) or if it can be recycled to make new products.

GE Plastics

24-7 Students in this school use refillable plastic milk bottles to reduce lunchroom trash by 60 percent.

Try to buy products that are either biodegradable or recyclable. Most paper products, for example, are biodegradable under normal circumstances, whereas plastic, aluminum, and glass are not. If a product is not biodegradable, it may be recyclable. Try to purchase products that are labeled "post-consumer recycled." These products are made from items that a consumer once bought and then turned in for recycling. Some manufacturers use the term "recycled" on products that use scrap left over from the manufacturing process—a standard business practice.

Recycling

Glass bottles, aluminum soda cans, and plastic foam containers are examples of consumer items that will not biodegrade in your lifetime or in many lifetimes. However, they can all be recycled and made into new products that may themselves be recyclable.

The key to successful recycling is simply to make a habit of it. Separating glass, plastic, aluminum, and paper products for recycling should become as routine a household practice as cleaning up the kitchen after a meal, 24-8. Taking these items to the recycling center or other repository should become a regular practice. Today, many communities pick up recyclable materials from people's homes at the same time as they pick up the trash.

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Thinking Environmentally: Ten Tips

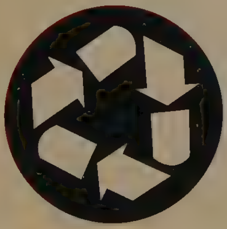
As concerns over environmental quality increase, many Americans are asking, "What can I do to help preserve the environment?" Here are some tips:

- Use car pools or public transportation rather than your own car to commute to work or school.
- To avoid automobile-based pollution, keep your car well tuned and recycle used antifreeze and motor oil after tune-ups.
- Avoid purchasing disposable items unless they can be recycled.
- When you go grocery shopping, bring your own tote bag or other container. This reduces the use of paper or plastic bags supplied by the store.
- Use cloth rags rather than paper towels for clean-up jobs.
- Wash and reuse plastic dishes and utensils whenever possible.
- Pack sandwiches in reusable plastic containers rather than disposable plastic bags.
- To reduce use of packaging materials, buy food in bulk rather than in individual packages.
- Be sure to recycle items that are recyclable.
- Look for the recycled and recyclable symbols on consumer items (see below).

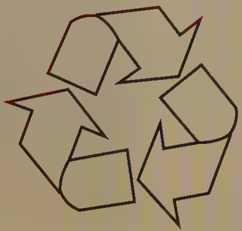
The *recycled* symbol identifies items made solely or mostly from recycled materials.

The *recyclable* symbol identifies materials that can be recycled.

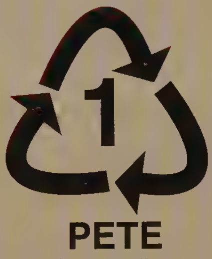
The *plastic recycling* symbol is usually found on the bottom of plastic containers. The numbers and letters will vary according to the type of plastic used.



The recycled symbol



The recyclable symbol



The plastic recycling symbol

David Hopper

24-8 Many families make a habit of collecting their aluminum products for recycling.

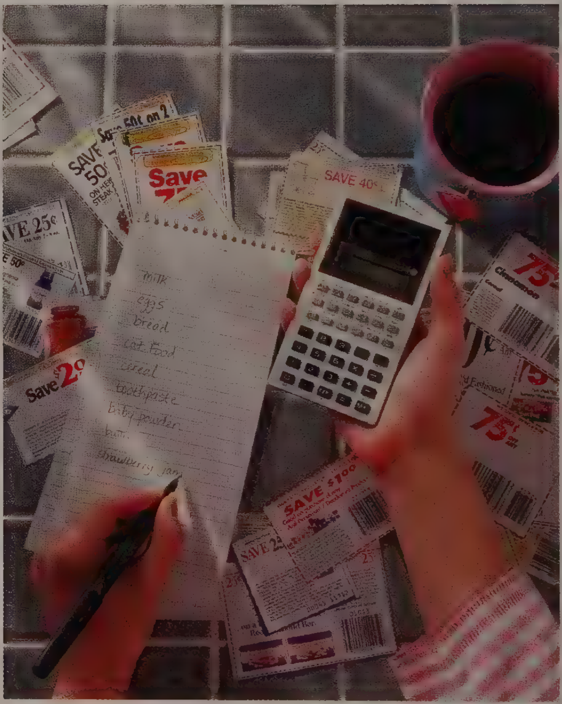
Food Decisions

The people who take responsibility for planning and shopping for the families' meals have important jobs to do. The decisions they make are essential to the diets of their families and therefore to their physical health. Their purchasing decisions can also affect the financial "health" of the family.

Planning Meals

Most people like to plan and shop for meals on a weekly basis. Even experienced meal planners usually use a shopping list rather than trusting their memories. Using a shopping list helps you make sure you have everything and also curbs impulse buying, 24-9. **Impulse buying** is unplanned or "spur of the moment" buying. You see something you like and buy it without thinking about the cost or whether or not you need it. Buying on impulse can be expensive and result in unbalanced, haphazard menus.

It is a good idea, especially when you are first planning family meals, to write out the week's menus. This allows you to plan around meals eaten away from home and to plan special meals (for example, a birthday dinner). It also helps you make sure you have thought about each meal and that your menus meet the nutritional needs of each family member.



24-9 Making a shopping list and using coupons can help you manage your spending.

Using the Computer in Menu Planning

Menu-planning software for the computer can help you create interesting, nutritionally balanced meal plans. The software can provide you with a variety of recipes tailored to individual dietary needs or restrictions (for example, low-calorie or low-sodium). You can also use it to keep records of successful menus you have prepared in the past. Some software provides cost estimates for individual ingredients and recipes so you can make budget-conscious meal choices.

If you have food on hand that you would like to use up (perhaps a bushel of fruit given you by a neighbor or leftovers after a holiday meal), you can do a search for recipes that use the food item. After specifying the desired number of servings, you can print a list of ingredients for the recipe, adjusted for quantity. The software can also provide nutritional information about various recipes and foods.

You can use computer software to develop and print a shopping list that is customized to your specifications. After selecting certain recipes, you can print a list that includes the necessary ingredients. Your list also can be organized by type of food (fresh produce, bakery items, etc.). Some software programs will even organize your list according to the aisle in your food store where each item is located!

You can also use your computer to go online and visit food-related Web sites. Many of these sites offer menu-planning advice and provide recipes. Some Web sites allow people who have made the recipes to rate them.

Planning for Nutrition

To make sure you are planning well-balanced meals, go to MyPyramid.gov and print out a personalized eating plan for each member of your family. For each day's menus, select foods from each of the five food groups: (1) grains; (2) fruits; (3) vegetables; (4) meats and beans; and (5) milk. Because people's needs differ, check to make sure that each family member will get the necessary amounts of food from each food group.

Planning for Appeal

Most people consider the food that constitutes the major protein source to be the centerpiece of the meal. They then plan the remainder of the meal to complement and harmonize with this dish. Most people prefer meals that include a variety of colors and shapes. For example, a plate of baked fish with carrots and broccoli will have more color and therefore more visual appeal than baked fish with mashed potatoes and cauliflower. A plate of roast turkey with sweet potatoes and green beans presents a more interesting variety of shapes than a plate of macaroni and cheese, hash browns, and hominy.

Try to incorporate a variety of flavors and textures, with not too many sauces poured over various foods. A plate of sliced ham with sweet potatoes and crisp vegetables, for example, has more varied flavors and textures than a plate of fish, potatoes, and cooked vegetables, all covered in cream sauce.

Planning Within Time Constraints

Preparation time is another major consideration in meal planning. In today's fast-paced world, most families cannot afford to devote large amounts of time to meal preparation. Although exceptions may be made for holiday or other special meals, most people prefer meals to consist of a few simply prepared dishes. The menu should require little clean-up so that time can be devoted to other activities.

Often the cook has less than an hour to prepare a meal from the moment he or she returns from work until dinnertime. How does dinner get made when time is this short? Some cooks make heavy use of **convenience foods**, which have been partially or fully prepared in order to save time. Examples of convenience foods are frozen dinners, muffin mixes, and brown-and-serve rolls. Other cooks prepare food during the weekends, freeze it, and then reheat it at dinnertime. Still others get food partially ready before leaving for work. Then they ask a teenage family member to put the dish in the oven when he or she comes home from school. Each family works out the methods that suit it best.

It is an unwritten rule in many families that if one member cooks, others take care of the clean-up. This practice distributes the workload more evenly. It helps the cook avoid exhaustion and the feeling that he or she is having to do all the work.

Cooking responsibilities can also be rotated or shared, depending on the family's preference and skills. Some cooks feel overburdened by food preparation chores and would like others to share them. Cooking methods can be learned by most family members. A positive emotional climate should be provided for the new cook or cooks, 24-10. Cooks who share their knowledge of cooking with other family members may find they are helping others learn an important, creative new skill.

Shopping for Food

Once you have decided on your week's menus, you are ready to develop your shopping list. Grouping similar items together on your list will result in quicker, more efficient shopping.

In deciding on a food store, balance the lower prices to be found in larger supermarkets with the convenience of neighborhood grocery stores. Many people prefer to shop for their major food items in supermarkets. They use convenience stores, where prices are generally higher, only for occasional or unexpected needs.

In some communities, you can order groceries online and have them delivered

24-10 Helping other family members learn to cook can be a positive experience.

to your home. An *online grocery shopping service* provides you with the computer software needed to use the service. You select the items you need from a list provided on screen. You then send your order electronically to the store, where professional shoppers fill your order and deliver the items to your home. The service and delivery charges are added to your grocery bill. Many people, especially those with limited mobility, appreciate the convenience of online grocery shopping. Other people choose the service because of the limited time they have to shop.

Understanding Food Labels

Before you buy a food item, read the label on the item to be sure of what you are getting. Much information can be obtained by studying the list of ingredients. The first item indicates the major ingredient, with subsequent items appearing in decreasing order of quantity. For example, you may wish to compare two dried beef soup mixes. In reading the labels, you may find that "hydrogenated vegetable fat" is the second ingredient listed on one label, and the seventh on the other. If you are watching calories and cholesterol, as most Americans should, you will want to purchase the second product—the one with the least hydrogenated fat.

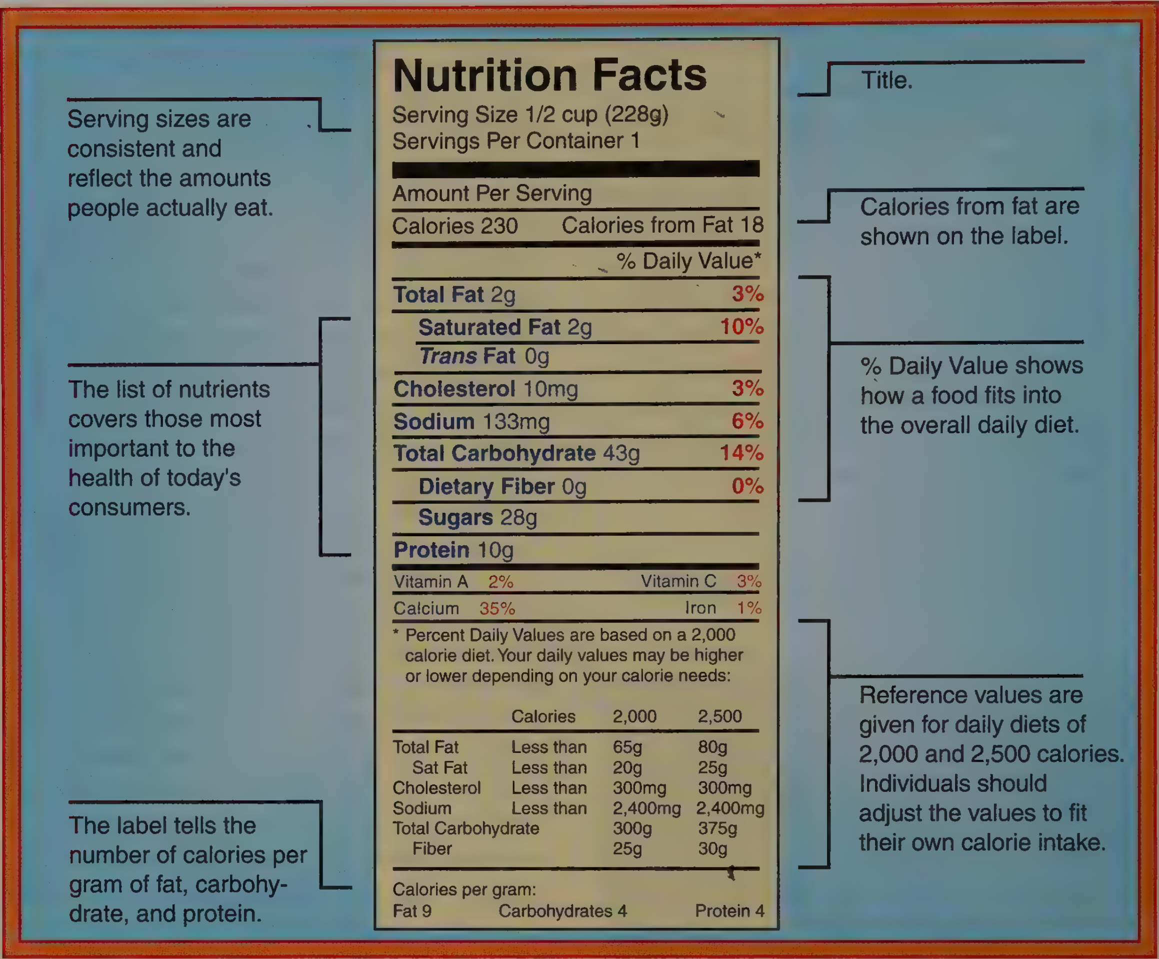
Recent legislation requires that specific types of nutritional information appear on food labels. Under the heading *Nutrition Facts*, labels must now include the standard serving size and the number of servings in the container. Labels must also include total calories and number of calories derived from fat as well as total fat, saturated fat, trans fat, cholesterol, sodium, total carbohydrate, dietary fiber, sugars, protein, vitamin A, vitamin C, calcium, and iron, 24-11. Manufacturers may voluntarily include information on other nutrients as well.

Another part of the new food label centers on the term Daily Value. *Daily Values* are reference figures on food labels that help consumers see how the food products fit into a total daily diet. The label specifies the percentage of a nutrient, such as protein, that consumption of a standard serving of the product contributes to the total day's recommended intake.

The reference of Daily Values given at the bottom of the nutrition label indicates the greatest amount of fat, saturated fat, cholesterol, and sodium people should consume each day. It also shows the smallest amount of total carbohydrate and dietary fiber people should consume. The percent Daily Values given are based on a 2,000 calorie diet, which is recommended for most women and teenage girls and for some inactive men. Daily Values for a diet of 2,500 calories are also provided on the label. This diet is nearer to the recommended caloric intake of active men and women and teenage boys.

The guide must be adjusted according to the caloric intake required by each individual. Some people, such as elderly individuals, inactive women, and children, need a daily diet of fewer than 2,000 calories. Because the nutrient percentages are based on a 2,000 calorie diet, these individuals would want their percentages of Daily Values to total less than 100 percent. By using the food label, you can add up the percentages of the nutrients you consume each day to make sure you do not exceed the recommended amount.

Many consumers use the food label to identify products that are low in fat and



Nutrition Facts

Serving Size 1/2 cup (228g)
Servings Per Container 1

Amount Per Serving
Calories 230 Calories from Fat 18

	% Daily Value*
Total Fat 2g	3%
Saturated Fat 2g	10%
***Trans* Fat** 0g	
Cholesterol 10mg	3%
Sodium 133mg	6%
Total Carbohydrate 43g	14%
Dietary Fiber 0g	0%
Sugars 28g	
Protein 10g	

Vitamin A	2%	Vitamin C	3%
Calcium	35%	Iron	1%

* Percent Daily Values are based on a 2,000 calorie diet. Your daily values may be higher or lower depending on your calorie needs:

	Calories	2,000	2,500
Total Fat	Less than	65g	80g
Sat Fat	Less than	20g	25g
Cholesterol	Less than	300mg	300mg
Sodium	Less than	2,400mg	2,400mg
Total Carbohydrate		300g	375g
Fiber		25g	30g

Calories per gram:
Fat 9 Carbohydrates 4 Protein 4

Serving sizes are consistent and reflect the amounts people actually eat.

The list of nutrients covers those most important to the health of today's consumers.

The label tells the number of calories per gram of fat, carbohydrate, and protein.

Title.

Calories from fat are shown on the label.

% Daily Value shows how a food fits into the overall daily diet.

Reference values are given for daily diets of 2,000 and 2,500 calories. Individuals should adjust the values to fit their own calorie intake.

24-11 The food label contains much nutritional information that the consumer can use to evaluate the product and eat a healthful diet.

saturated fat and to monitor their daily fat intake. Your daily diet should contain no more than 30 percent of calories from fat, and no more than 10 percent of calories from saturated fat. (People with some health conditions are advised to consume less in each category.)

Some food labels contain terms implying healthfulness, such as "light" or "lite." Recent legislation sets specific criteria for the lawful use of these terms and others such as "free," "good source of," "high," "less," "more," and "reduced." Specific terms for the designations of "lean" and "extra lean" have now become available for fish, game, meat, and poultry.

Controlling Food Costs

As you become more experienced at shopping, you will develop your own techniques for making the most of your food dollars. Some of the following tips may help you.

Allow extra money in your food budget for nonfood items. Paper products, cleaning aids, cosmetics, and grooming supplies can add up to 25 percent or more of your "food" dollars.

Plan for part of your food budget to be spent on meals eaten away from home. The amount will depend on your lifestyle.

Plan at least "skeleton" menus, and then make your grocery list. A grocery list will help you avoid impulse buying. Check newspapers for advertised food specials. Take advantage of these lower prices when planning your meals.

Buy nutritious food that you know your family likes, 24-12. New items are fun to try occasionally, but they are sometimes wasted if your family doesn't like them. Know the nutritional value of foods. Try to get the most nutrition for your food dollar. For instance, sources of protein that usually cost less than meat include eggs, poultry, beans, and legumes.

24-12 **Buy nutritious food that you know your family likes.**

Group items on your list with the layout of the store in mind. This will help you shop faster and avoid backtracking.

Do some comparison shopping. **Comparison shopping** is looking at different brands of the same or similar products within a store or among several stores. Compare price and quality. Often, a store's brand is as good in quality as a nationally advertised brand and costs less.

Buy the correct size for your use. Giant sizes may be the most economical for large families. Generally, larger sizes are priced less per unit of measure. However, if you live alone or have limited storage space, giant boxes of items may not be practical.

Buy the right grade and the right pack for your use. If you are planning to make chili, for example, buy stewed tomatoes rather than expensive fancy whole tomatoes.

Beware of fake specials. Check to see how much the price has actually been reduced. Also check the expiration date, and make sure the item is in good condition.

Clip and use coupons for items you need, but do not get carried away. Buying something or a more expensive brand of something just because you have a coupon reflects poor logic. Computer software can help you keep track of coupon expiration. If you can develop good food-shopping skills, you will be able to enjoy the best use of your food dollars.

Handling and Storing Food Safely

If you are preparing food for others, you have a responsibility to maintain high standards of cleanliness and food safety in the kitchen. If you do not, the people who eat the food you have prepared may become ill. Follow these guidelines:

- Wash your hands thoroughly with soap and dry them using a clean towel before you begin to cook. Wash your hands again, as necessary, while you prepare, serve, and store the food you are preparing.
- Wash your hands carefully after handling raw fish, meat, eggs, or poultry. Never just wipe your hands on a towel. If you accidentally do so, wash your hands and replace the towel. If knives or other utensils are used in preparing these raw foods, wash them before using them in preparing other foods that will not be cooked before eating.
- Keep everything in the kitchen clean. This means kitchen counters, dishcloths, towels, and other items such as knives and cutting boards that come into contact with food.
- Make sure your refrigerator is set to 41°F or below. This will help keep food fresh and slow the growth of most bacteria.
- Do not serve raw or undercooked fish, meat, eggs, or poultry. Cook these foods thoroughly.
- If you use a spoon to taste something you are preparing, do not put the spoon back into the food.
- Before serving, keep cold food cold and hot food hot. After serving, refrigerate hot food as soon as possible. Do not allow it to cool at room temperature.

These rules may seem difficult to remember at first, but after a while they will become a habit. When it comes to food safety, do not take any chances.

Eating in Restaurants

Dining out in restaurants is becoming more common as dual-career families become more typical. Many couples coming home after long hours at work find dining out an attractive option. In doing so, however, they must watch their spending as well as their intake of fat, cholesterol, sugar, and salt.

In choosing and preparing menu items, restaurateurs may or may not have your good health in mind. Large portions of high-calorie items prepared in high-calorie ways appeal to many people and therefore bring in the highest sales. Although it is usually possible to eat healthfully in restaurants, a good deal of self-control is needed, 24-13. Most restaurants, however, do offer healthy items on their menus, and may feature these foods. Some healthy-eating tips include the following:

- Order foods that are steamed, broiled, baked, roasted, poached, or stir-fried.
- Ask that the food be served without gravy, sauces, or butter.
- Don't feel you have to eat everything served. Ask for a take-home container and save leftovers for another meal.
- Ask for salad dressing "on the side" and use only a small portion.

Dining out is usually more expensive than cooking and eating at home. Many budget-conscious couples go out to eat only as a "special treat" every week or two. Others choose to do so during especially busy periods when time to prepare meals is at a premium.

Clothing Decisions

You wear clothes for modesty, comfort, and protection from the elements. Clothes

24-13 **Healthful restaurant eating is possible if diners make sensible choices.**

also help you look attractive, and they help you tell others about yourself. Clothes provide clues to your personality, self-image, status, gender, and age.

Different clothes work in different situations. For instance, you could wear jeans to a picnic and feel great. However, if you wear jeans to a job interview, you may remain unemployed!

Methods for Acquiring Clothing

There are many sources of clothing. In some families, clothing is handed down from one child to another as the children "grow into" and "grow out of" clothing. Others have discovered the cost savings in sewing their own clothes.

Most people, however, buy most or all of their clothes. Types, size ranges, and prices of clothing vary widely from store to store. Examples of places from which to buy clothes include department stores, specialty stores, factory outlets, discount stores, used-clothing stores, mail-order catalogs, and shopping online. If you visit a variety of clothing stores, you will get a better sense of what types of clothing are available at what cost, 24-14.

Bass
Bass
SHOES

24-14 **Visit a variety of different types of stores to compare prices and services offered.**

Department stores carry clothes and accessories in various styles, sizes, qualities, and price ranges. In addition, they usually provide many customer services.

Specialty stores limit their merchandise to specific items such as handbags or shoes. Their prices are generally in the medium to high range. If they carry the kind of items you like, they can make shopping easier, saving you time and energy.

Factory outlet stores offer items that represent extra merchandise from normal production. Some items may contain flaws—some of which are barely visible. Such clothing may be available at reduced prices.

Discount stores generally offer lower-quality goods at low prices, with few customer services. However, alert consumers can sometimes find good-quality items at bargain prices.

Consumers wishing low prices may also frequent used-clothing stores, which are also called *thrift shops*. The range of styles, colors, and sizes at these stores tends to be limited. However, they can be a source of bargains as well as of "antique" or "funky" clothing from another fashion era.

Mail-order businesses provide convenience for people who prefer to shop at home or who lack access to certain kinds of stores, 24-15. Catalogs, often viewed online using a computer, allow you to shop for clothing and other household items at your leisure. However, you cannot examine or try on garments or other items before buying them. Some people find it expensive and time-consuming to return merchandise that does not fit or that looks different from the catalog depictions.

To address this problem, some mail-order businesses offer you the opportunity to create an online model of yourself and to try their clothes on the model. You can access customized fashion advice and conduct searches for clothes that maximize, minimize, or camouflage various bodily features. You also may browse for clothes online with a friend. Other Web sites allow you to try on eyeglass frames and visualize new hairstyles, hair colors, and cosmetics.

Whatever the clothing sources you choose, be sure to understand each store's policies on alterations, returns, and delivery charges. The best choice of store is the one that meets your needs best at a price you can afford.

24-15 Some people prefer to shop from home where they can often call in their orders at any time of the day or night.

Clothing Selection

Because clothes are so important, you will want to plan your wardrobe carefully. Here are some tips to help you.

Take a wardrobe inventory of the clothes you have. Make a list. Decide which garments you can keep and which ones need to be replaced. Try new combinations of old clothes to create new outfits. Also try to create new outfits by adding a few new accessories. Then make a list of items you would like to add.

When you are shopping for clothes, you may wish to wear or bring the shoes you are planning to wear with your new outfit. When trying on clothes, be sure you see yourself in a three-way mirror if possible. This way you can spot problems with fit or quality and can see yourself as others will. The garment should fit you without any wrinkles, sags, or puckers.

Be sure to pay attention to quality characteristics. Seams should be flat and even in width. Stitches should be short, straight, continuous, and securely fastened at the ends of the seams. If the fabric ravels, the seams should be finished in some way. Hems should lie flat. They should be even in width and invisible on the right side. Trim, buttons, snaps, and hooks and eyes should be firmly attached and properly spaced.

Some garments such as suit jackets and skirts usually need linings. These give the garments body and help them keep their shape.

Garment durability is important in clothing and accessories that you will wear often and perhaps over a number of years, such as coats and handbags. If you choose classic styles that will not go out of style, it often pays to purchase top-quality items.

Durability, however, is not as important in a fad item that may be out of style before you will wear it out. People who frequently buy fad items may find themselves with a wardrobe of "gimmicky" clothes and little money for longer-wearing ones.

Controlling Clothing Costs

To stretch your clothing dollar, try to build your wardrobe around one or two basic color groups, such as black, brown, or gray. To make your wardrobe seem larger than it really is, use mix-and-match separates that can be combined in a variety of ways.

Look for versatile garments, 24-16. Choose basic styles that can be dressed up or down with jewelry, scarves, or other accessories, depending on the occasion. Buy accessories that you can wear with several different outfits. Also choose garments and accessories in colors and fabrics that can be worn year-round. A black purse and shoes, for example, can be used throughout the year.

Significant cost savings can be obtained by waiting until an item goes on sale before purchasing it. However, be sure you buy only sale items that you really need.

Understanding Clothing Labels

All clothing made in the United States must bear a label that provides information on the fiber or fibers used in the garment as well as the proper care of the item. Fibers fall into two basic categories: natural and synthetic (manufactured).

24-16 **Choose basic garments that can be dressed up or down with different accessories.**

Natural fibers, such as cotton and wool, are made from sources found in nature such as the cotton plant or sheep. *Synthetic fibers,* in contrast, are fibers not found in nature, but manufactured. Examples of such fibers include nylon and polyester.

Sometimes natural and synthetic fibers are used together in a fabric in order to take advantage of the best characteristics of each type. For example, a shirt or blouse may be made of a cotton/polyester blend. This garment combines the comfort and absorbency of cotton with the wrinkle resistance of polyester. The percentage of each fiber used in the fabric must be stated on the label.

The *Care Labeling Rule* requires that all clothing labels give clear, uniform, and detailed instructions for care and maintenance of the item. For example, the method of washing, water temperature to use, and drying method must be included on the label. Always check the care label before you buy an item of clothing. If the garment must be dry cleaned, keep this extra cost in mind. If the garment must be hand washed, be sure you will have the time to do this. Before buying a garment, also consider other costs that the purchase will involve, such as new accessories or undergarments.

Housing Decisions

Housing will be one of your largest expenses as an adult living on your own. Your housing decisions will greatly affect your financial well-being. At some point in your life, you will probably have to choose between buying and renting. In order to do so, you will need to determine how much money you have available to spend on housing. An understanding of housing costs will help you in your decision making.

Housing Costs

Housing costs vary from region to region just as other living costs do. Housing costs include more than just rent or mortgage payments. They include costs for utilities, maintenance, and repairs, 24-17.

As a rough guide, you should try to limit your monthly housing costs to no more than one-third of your monthly net income. **Net income** is the money you receive after social security, income tax, and other deductions have been taken

24-17 **The costs of housing include the equipment (and energy) required to maintain your home.**

from your paycheck. Deductions vary from job to job and from state to state.

This guideline is not absolute. The amount you can afford to spend for housing depends on your situation. If housing is your top priority, you may want to spend more on housing and less on cars, clothes, and entertainment. If you expect your salary to grow, you may be able to spend more. If you have many debts or if housing is a low priority, you will not want to spend as much.

Renting a Home

Most young people rent their first homes. The main advantage of renting is flexibility. Renters can move from place to place fairly easily. Another major advantage is that renters do not need a large sum of money. They pay for their housing in monthly installments.

Renters also have the advantage of knowing just how much their housing will cost. They do not have to worry about hidden costs such as new plumbing or heating systems. Others are responsible for any needed repairs. Since renters do not own their homes, they do not have to spend their money on permanent home improvements.

If you decide to rent, you will have many questions to answer. Do you want to rent a house, a townhouse, or an apartment? Do you need to live near a bus or subway line? Do you need to live close to school or close to your job? Do you want to be near your family or friends? Do you want a furnished or unfurnished apartment? How much can you afford to pay for rent and utilities?

Once you have answered these questions, you are ready to start hunting for housing, 24-18. Always visit an apartment

CLASSIFIEDS
RED TAG SALE

Christi Edgar

24-18 **When looking for a place to rent, follow up on leads in newspapers. Check the conditions, features, and leases of several different places.**

before you rent it. Take some time to check the condition of the apartment. Turn on the shower and flush the toilet. Open and close doors, closets, and windows. See if any repairs are needed. Ask about the maintenance service, security measures, pest-control services, and laundry facilities. Ask whether rodents, cockroaches, or other pests are a problem. Take notes so you will be able to compare the apartments you see.

The Lease

Once you decide on the place you want to rent, you will have to consider lease arrangements. A **lease** is a written, legally binding rental agreement. Most leases are for one year. Be sure the lease includes the specific address of the rental unit, the date of occupation, the length of time covered by the lease, and the cost of the rent. It should also include a statement concerning who is responsible for such expenses as water, electricity, gas, lawn care, and repairs.

Beware of an automatic renewal clause in your lease. Under this clause, you must tell the landlord if you plan to move when your lease is up. According to the terms of your lease, you may have to give this notice 30 or even 60 days before the lease expires. If you don't do this, the landlord can hold you responsible for another year's rent.

A lease may have restrictions on children, pets, and excessive noise. Be prepared to live with such restrictions if you sign the lease.

Look for a clause that allows assigning the lease or subletting the rental unit. It may come in handy if you want to move out early. To **assign the lease**, you transfer the entire unexpired portion of the lease to someone else. Once that is done, you can no longer be held responsible for the lease. To **sublet** the property, you let someone else rent it for a period of time. Both you and the other person would be responsible for all terms of the lease.

A lease should include a statement concerning the **security deposit**. This is a sum of money, usually one month's rent, that you pay the landlord before moving into the rental unit. It insures the landlord against financial loss in case you damage the unit or fail to pay the rent.

Before you sign a lease, you should know how the security deposit will be handled. Some landlords see this as money they can use for cleaning. Most simply return the money to you after you have moved out if you left the apartment in good shape.

Buying a Home

For some people, home ownership is the fulfillment of a dream, 24-19. It gives them a sense of independence, security, and stability.

Many Americans own their own homes. Some say they own their homes so

24-19 Home ownership is still the dream of many Americans.

they can have more freedom and privacy. Some need space for growing families. Others decide to use home ownership as a financial investment.

On a long-term basis, buying a home is likely to cost less than renting. When you rent, none of the money you pay will be returned. When you buy, you are investing your money and will probably realize a return on your investment when you sell the home. If you buy a well-built home in a good neighborhood and take good care of it, your investment is likely to be a good one.

Another financial benefit of home ownership is that you can take advantage of certain tax deductions. However, you cannot weigh the decision to rent or buy strictly on a dollars and cents basis. Your personal happiness, for now and the future, has to be a factor.

Condominium Ownership

Some people want to own their own housing, but prefer to live in a multi-unit building. For them, condominium ownership may suit their needs. The word **condominium** means common ownership. When you buy a condominium unit, you own the unit and also a share of the common areas such as stairways and hallways. Condominium units are found in a variety of structures, from duplexes to high-rise buildings.

A condominium complex may provide many facilities and services such as swimming pools, tennis courts, and lawn care. The owner is not directly responsible for the cost of these "extras." Instead, he or she pays a monthly maintenance fee that pays for them indirectly.

Condominium owners have many of the benefits that owners of single-family houses have. They are investing their money with the hope of getting a good return. They can also take advantage of the same tax deductions.

Buying a condominium unit is much like buying a house. However, you need to take some special precautions. When you compare prices, be sure to look at both the purchase price and the monthly maintenance fee. You will also want to read the declaration of ownership carefully. It states the special rules and regulations of the particular condominium complex. Be sure you understand all the legal issues involved before you buy.

The Process of Buying

Buying a home or condominium is a long and sometimes complex matter. Most people seek the help of a real estate agent and a lawyer to handle many of the details, 24-20.

Whether you are planning to buy or rent, access to a personal computer can be very helpful in locating sale or rental properties that meet your needs and wants. Your computer can print lists of dwellings tailored to specifications such as cost, geographic area, number of bedrooms, and distance to public transportation, among others.

Mortgage Loans

Once you have found a house or condominium unit and have settled on a price, you will probably need a mortgage. Most people have to borrow money in order to buy a house. A **mortgage** is a contract between a lender and a borrower that lists the home as security for the borrowed money. The mortgage loan is repaid in monthly installments.

You can get a mortgage loan from a bank, a savings and loan association, a mortgage company, or a private individual. Comparison shopping is extremely important and can save you significant

OUSE
SOLD
742-614

24-20 **A real estate agent may be able to help you find a house that will fit your needs and your budget. The agent can also help you settle many of the detailed matters involved in your purchase.**

sums of money. Mortgages differ in the following three areas:

- *Down payment*. The down payment is the initial payment you make to buy the home. The amount is usually a percentage of the total purchase price. It is made in one large cash payment. The institution from which you get your mortgage will probably state the minimum amount of your down payment. Some people want to make as large a down payment as they can afford and thus reduce the size of their mortgage. However, you should be careful not to deplete all your cash resources.
- *Interest rate*. In the past, almost every mortgage was a fixed-rate loan. That meant that the interest rate and monthly payments remained constant until the loan was completely repaid. Fixed-rate mortgages are still popular, but other types are also offered. Interest rates and monthly payments vary according to the terms of the mortgages.
- *Length of time to repay*. This is determined by the type of mortgage you get and your earning ability. The longer you take to repay, the smaller your monthly payments will be. However, you will be paying more interest than you would if you made larger payments over a shorter time.

Transportation Decisions

In our highly mobile society, transportation needs seem more important than ever for most people. The types of transportation you choose involve a variety of financial, environmental, and societal considerations. Where you live and how much you travel are the main factors in determining your transportation costs.

Types of Transportation

A number of methods can be employed to move people from one place to another. Walking, bicycles, motorcycles, automobiles, buses, airplanes, trains, subways, and other types of transportation all accomplish this objective. However, various modes of transportation involve differing financial, environmental, and other costs. See figure 24-21 for the advantages and disadvantages of various forms of transportation. Each consumer must choose the mode of transportation that best balances his or her personal, financial, and environmental concerns.

Costs of Buying and Owning a Car

The most common method of transportation—the personal automobile—involves the highest costs of all. To many people, one's first car is an important milestone of growing up. Some individuals invest a great deal of their personal identity in the choice and upkeep of their cars. Others view their cars as "just wheels." Regardless of your emotional investment, car ownership involves a number of costs and responsibilities.

The first cost that you will encounter is the purchase price of the car. Whether you buy the car new or used can make a big difference in your financial outlay. Some people value a brand-new car very highly. Other people willingly settle for a used car. Used cars that are chosen carefully can yield excellent value, 24-22.

Transportation Choices

Forms of transportation	Advantages	Disadvantages
Moped	✚ Less expensive than a car or motorcycle. ✚ Appropriate for traveling short distances. ✚ Better mileage than a car.	✚ Not desirable in climates with frequent rain or snow. ✚ Safety is a factor.
Bicycle	✚ Least expensive of two-wheel vehicles. ✚ Inexpensive to operate–no fuel costs. ✚ Inexpensive to maintain and repair	✚ Requires human energy. ✚ Not desirable in climates with frequent rain and snow. ✚ Safety is a factor.
Carpooling	✚ Economical. ✚ Reduces traffic congestion. ✚ Minimizes parking problems. ✚ Offers companionship.	✚ Inconvenience–allows little flexibility since needs of all must be considered. ✚ Doesn't answer transportation needs outside of carpooling.
Bus	✚ Convenient. ✚ Less worry than owning other vehicles. ✚ The overall cost is less.	✚ Adjusting your schedule to bus schedule. ✚ Getting to and from bus to home during bad weather.

Goals for Living, Nancy Wehlage

24-21 Each transportation choice involves advantages and disadvantages.

24-22 **Whether you are buying a new or a used car, automobile ownership involves a large outlay of money.**

The costs associated with automobile ownership are significant. There is the cost of insurance, for which young people pay higher premiums. There are the costs of a driver's license, annual registration and tag renewal, and—for many urban dwellers—residential parking stickers. There are the costs of gasoline and maintenance, including new tires, repairs, tune-ups, and oil changes. There may be other expenses as well, such as parking fees and the cost of maintaining a car that will meet state safety inspection requirements.

The environmental costs of car ownership are also high. Gasoline is a nonrenewable (cannot be renewed or recreated) natural resource, which is a fact of concern in and of itself. In addition, fumes from automobile exhaust are a major source of air pollution.

In recognition of this pollution, environmentally aware consumers try to use their cars only when necessary. They carpool or take public transportation (bus, train, or subway) the rest of the time, 24-23. To save gasoline, accelerate slowly, brake gently, and obey speed limits. Avoid excessive idling of the engine. Maintain your car well and have engine tune-ups regularly. Change the oil as needed, and check the air pressure in the tires often.

Leisure-Time Decisions

Some people find themselves in careers that demand a great deal of overtime work. For good mental health, however, it is important to find some time for relaxation. Families who share leisure-time activities are likely to be stronger.

Many people spend their leisure hours on hobbies, social outings, volunteer work, reading, television viewing, chatting online, listening to music, or other activities. These choices reflect personal tastes and priorities.

Time for Family

It is important that family members find time to be together as a family.

Courtesy of Asea Brown Boveri

24-23 **Using public transportation rather than driving your own car reduces environmental pollution.**

Leisure time should not be filled with activities that take each member of the family off in a different direction doing his or her own thing. At the same time, your free time should not be spent just taking children to various lessons and activities. Instead, the family should spend some part of their leisure time in activities together. In busy families, this time may have to be scheduled.

Shared leisure time is important for the health and well-being of the family. Participating together in recreational activities can help to pull families together. Communication is sometimes easier when family members are enjoying relaxing activities. Parents and children who find recreational activities that they all enjoy are drawn together because of their mutual interest and enjoyment. As children enter their teen years, this mutual interest can help to sustain a bond that will keep teens from drawing away from their parents.

Americans are increasingly seeing themselves as members of the global family in a world of limited natural resources. As their priorities change to reflect greater concern for their environment, their leisure-time decisions may reflect these concerns, 24-24. They may show more restraint in using energy-intensive leisure equipment, such as snowmobiles and power boats.

24-24 Your decisions about the use of leisure time involve environmental implications as well as personal considerations.

In choosing leisure-time activities, people must find the right balance between personal fulfillment and the responsibilities they have as members of a larger community. The choices you make are uniquely personal, but they affect the society in which you live.

Chapter 24 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Needs are items or conditions that people must have to survive. Wants are items that are nice to have, but not strictly necessary.
- Consumers have rights and responsibilities. Manufacturers and merchants must work together to make sure consumers receive good and safe products. Merchants must be honest in telling consumers exactly what they are buying.
- Advertising can serve as a source of information, but it can also stimulate unnecessary expenditures. Thus, advertising can work both for and against consumers.
- Environmentally responsible consumption includes at least two practices: buying items that are safe for the environment and recycling nonbiodegradable materials.
- Food, clothing, housing, and transportation costs account for a large portion of your budget. Wise consumer practices can help you keep these costs under control.
- The food label on food products conveys important information, including ingredients, nutrition facts, percentages of Daily Values per serving, and other data.
- Sources of clothing include department stores, specialty stores, factory outlets, discount stores, thrift shops, mail-order, and shopping online.
- Clothing labels provide information about the fiber content of the product as well as instructions for the proper care of the item and other facts.
- People who plan to move often, who do not have a large sum of ready cash, who are not skilled in home maintenance, and who place a low priority on home ownership will probably choose to rent their homes.
- People who plan to stay in one area for several years, who enjoy home maintenance, who have growing families, and who want to have the benefits of home ownership might choose to own their homes.
- Consumers should be certain they understand the legal aspects of signing a lease or buying a home before proceeding with these transactions.
- Transportation decisions include choosing among several forms of transportation. If choosing to own a car, the buyer should be aware of the many costs involved.
- Leisure-time decisions include finding ways for family members to spend time together, as well as finding time for individual leisure pursuits.

Review

1. Name four consumer rights and four consumer responsibilities.
2. What type of advertisement uses a well-known personality to promote the product?
3. Name the agency being described in each of the following statements:
    A. Watches out for hazardous products such as malfunctioning appliances and has information on product recalls, repairs, refunds, and replacements.
    B. Investigates complaints about the safety of food, drugs, and cosmetics.
    C. Protects consumers from unfair trade practices and false advertising and enforces mail-order regulations, warranty legislation, and fair credit and billing laws.
    D. Promotes and maintains advertising and selling practices that are fair to both businesses and consumers.
4. State three things your family can do to conserve energy.
5. What does environmental responsibility mean?
6. Which of the following statements about food labels is true?
    A. Only low-cholesterol, low-fat foods have labels.
    B. Ingredients are listed in no particular order.
    C. Labels must designate the number of servings that are included within the container.
    D. The Daily Values are based on a 3,000 calorie diet.
7. Which of the following clothing sources is likely to offer the greatest number of customer services?
    A. factory outlets
    B. department stores
    C. thrift shops
    D. discount stores
8. What is a security deposit, and what purpose does it serve?
9. A contract between a lender and a borrower that lists the home as security is a _____.
10. Name five costs associated with automobile ownership.
11. True or False. Participating together in recreational activities can help to pull families together and encourage better communication.

React

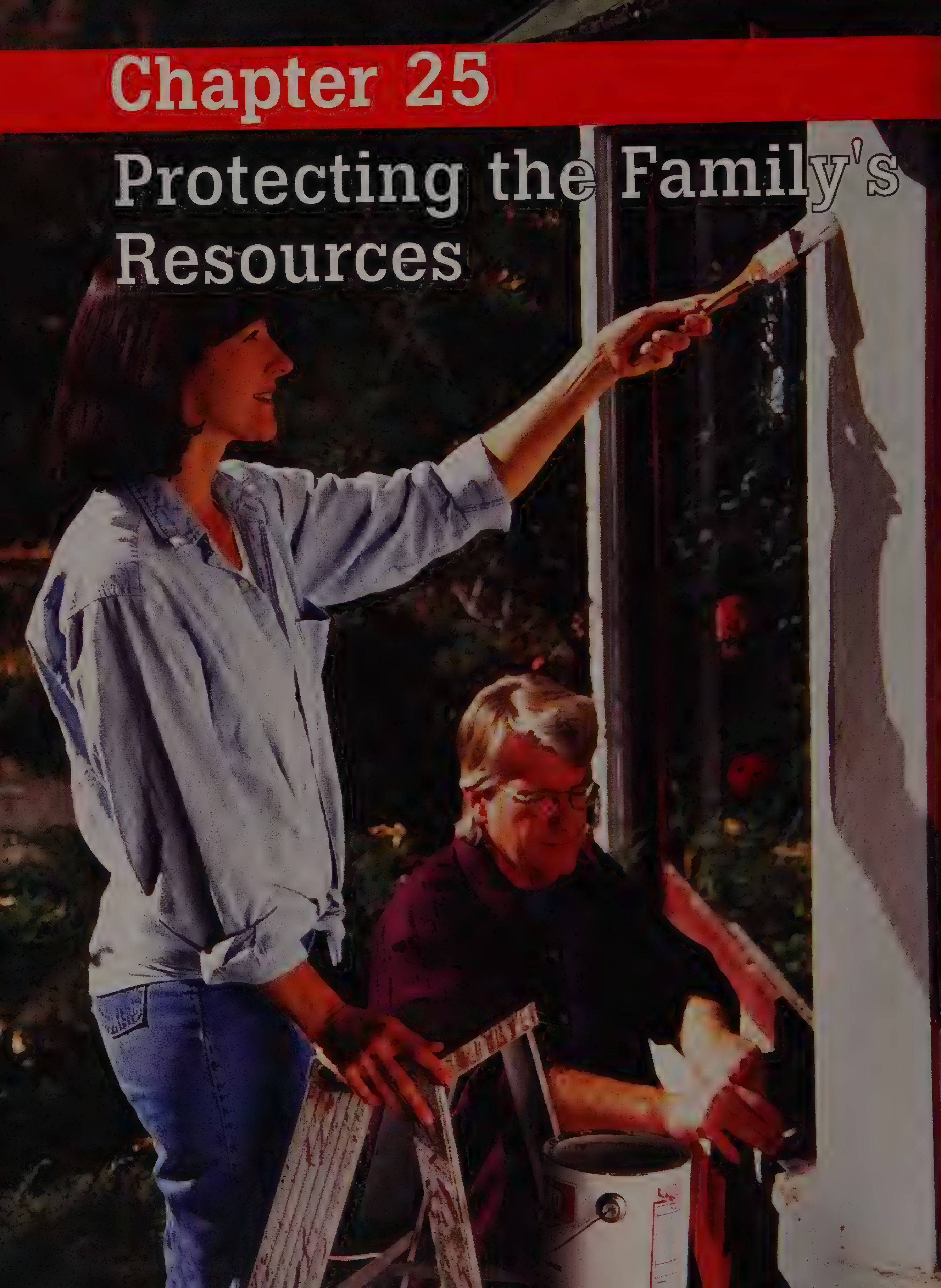
1. Bring advertisements aimed at various hidden needs to class. Display these on a bulletin board, and ask class members to name the hidden needs they believe are depicted in the ads. Find examples of the various types of advertisements discussed in this chapter.
2. Research the various consumer protection agencies and associations in your area. Ask a representative to visit your class to discuss consumer rights and responsibilities.
3. Work in small groups to do comparison shopping in food stores. First, prepare a list of 15 common products sold in food stores. Give a copy of this list to each group. Ask each group to visit a different store in your area to record the prices of the 15 products. Also compare different brands of the same product within each store. Compare the total costs.
4. Divide the class into small groups and ask each group to visit a different apartment complex in your area. Interview the resident manager to obtain information on the rental cost, utility costs, number of rooms, recreational facilities, laundry facilities, storage space, furnishings, appliances, and security-deposit rules. Compare the findings of the group with those of other groups.
5. Ask a representative of a community environmental advocacy organization to visit your class. Request that he or she make a presentation on "Environmental Awareness," "Tips for Environmentally Aware Household Management," or a related topic.
6. Compare costs of renting and buying a home in your area. Check local rental fees, purchase prices of houses, and interest rates. Compare 30 years of rental costs with a 30-year mortgage. Discuss the results of your findings, including strengths and weaknesses of both options.

Reflect

1. Name a consumer right, and explain how you have practiced this consumer right.
2. Describe two cigarette ads. What needs are they designed to meet? Why should people resist the message of these ads?
3. What items do you recycle regularly? What items could you recycle if you made an extra effort?
4. Name three leisure-time activities that are relatively easy on the environment, and three that stress or harm the environment.

Chapter 25

Protecting the Family's Resources



Terms to Know

- life insurance
- policy
- premium
- beneficiary
- face amount
- cash value
- term life insurance
- whole life insurance
- adjustable life insurance
- universal life insurance
- variable life insurance
- basic medical insurance
- major medical insurance
- disability income insurance
- long-term care insurance
- health maintenance organization (HMO)
- preferred provider organization (PPO)
- no-fault auto insurance
- homeowner's insurance

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- ✚ identify different types of life and health insurance.
- ✚ describe various types of auto and homeowner's insurance.
- ✚ list the advantages and disadvantages of various types of life, health, auto, and homeowner's insurance.
- ✚ appraise your family's needs for life, health, auto, and homeowner's insurance.

Common sense and numerous statistics tell us that people experience both fortunate and unfortunate events during their lifetimes. Some events can be anticipated and sometimes avoided, but other events are beyond our control.

No one likes to think of all the catastrophes that can happen in life. The fact is that you could get very sick, you could have a car accident, or your home could burn. If something like this happened to you, insurance would help you and your family through the financial crisis. It could protect you from financial ruin. In the meantime, even if nothing bad happens, insurance gives you security and peace of mind.

Spending money on insurance is not as much fun as buying a new car, new clothes, or new furniture. You have nothing but a piece of paper to show where all your money went. However, buying insurance can be one of the smartest ways to use your money.

Life Insurance

Life insurance protects against loss of income due to the death of the insured. Life insurance is one of the most misunderstood aspects of financial planning. However, it is an important part of a sound financial program. You may want to consider a life insurance policy as an adult, especially if you have dependents. One reason is that life insurance will take care of immediate expenses at the time of death. No one likes to think of death, but it is a reality everyone has to face. Final expenses are high, and when a death occurs, the family is faced with an immediate need for cash to cover the costs. Life insurance will provide funds at this stressful time.

Another reason for having life insurance, especially if you are married, is that it can help a family maintain an adequate level of living if a wage earner dies, 25-1. It

25-1 If a wage earner dies, life insurance benefits can help the family of the deceased meet living expenses.

takes time for a family to work out a new plan for meeting daily living expenses. Until they can do this, they may need money from a life insurance policy to keep them going. Even if the family receives social security payments and benefits from the deceased's former employer, they may need additional funds to meet their living expenses.

The study of life insurance requires knowledge of the following terms:

- **policy**—the legal contract issued by the insurance company in your name
- **premium**—the amount of money you pay for your insurance
- **beneficiary**—the person you designate to receive the benefits of the policy upon your death
- **face amount**—the amount of money that will be paid to the beneficiary upon your death
- **cash value**—the amount of money you, the policyholder, would receive if the policy is surrendered before your death or when it matures

Types of Life Insurance

You will need to determine the best insurance plan for your needs. Be sure to check with several companies before you buy life insurance. Prices and benefits vary widely. You should do some comparison shopping. Find a reputable agent with a good company that can provide a policy that meets your needs, 25-2. You will want to look at the following types of life insurance.

Term Insurance

Term life insurance covers the life of the insured for a specified term or period of time. Once the term expires, the person is no longer insured. Term insurance has the lowest premiums, but it does not build a cash value. Term insurance is designed to offer protection during a time when financial responsibilities are great, but money to pay premiums is limited. For instance, when people buy a house, they often buy enough term insurance to cover their mortgage. Then if the policyholder dies before the mortgage is paid, the life insurance will cover the mortgage payments.

25-2 A reputable agent can help you set up an insurance program designed to meet your needs.

One variation of term insurance is *renewable term insurance*. When this type of policy expires, the insured can renew it without taking another physical examination. However, the premium increases each time the policy is renewed.

Another variation of term insurance is *decreasing term insurance*. At the start of the term, the face amount is large. The face amount gradually decreases to nothing by the end of the term. The premium remains constant throughout the term of the policy. This is designed to provide coverage for debts such as a mortgage. As the debt is repaid and the need decreases, the policy's face amount is reduced.

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens

Do Young Adults Need Life Insurance?

Some unmarried young adults with no dependents wonder whether they need life insurance. Insurance agents may point out that healthy young adults qualify for policies with very low premiums. Agents also may urge young people to get a policy while they are still healthy enough to qualify.

Many financial experts, however, question the need for life insurance for young people at this stage of life. Death rates among young adults are low. If the young person is working, the wages lost by his or her death are unlikely to be missed by other family members.

It is true that healthy young adults may have an easy time qualifying for insurance. On the other hand, few adults applying for life insurance later in life are turned down for health reasons.

Some financial counselors advise young people to consider a small policy to cover the costs of a final illness and burial. Others believe that funds for insurance premiums are put to better use elsewhere, for example, for savings or continued education.

Whole Life Insurance

Whole life insurance is designed to cover a person's entire life and to build a cash value. This type of insurance is also called "permanent" life insurance because the coverage doesn't end. The earlier you buy a whole life policy, the lower the premiums will be. The premium amount is based on your age when you buy a policy. It remains the same throughout your life.

The advantages of whole life insurance are that it offers protection for your entire lifetime and that it builds cash value. The cash value provides an important asset for a family. It can be used as collateral for a loan. (However, until the loan is repaid, benefits are reduced by the amount of the loan.) It can be left to grow, earning interest, to form the basis for a retirement plan. It can also be cashed in if the insured wants to change or eliminate life coverage.

Today, many whole life policies are interest-sensitive. They offer a current-yield interest rate of return that varies with trends in the economy.

Other Types of Life Insurance

As today's financial options have become more varied, new kinds of life insurance have emerged. The emphasis is on flexibility. A flexible policy can combine term and whole life insurance to give you coverage that changes along with your insurance needs. Benefits can be increased or decreased. Premiums can go up and down. Your insurance can vary to match events in your life such as the birth of a child or the purchase of a home, 25-3. With

25-3 Your insurance can vary to match life events such as the birth of a child.

a flexible policy, you can cut premiums by reducing the benefits or by switching from whole life to term. When your financial situation changes again, you can increase benefits and switch back to whole life.

Adjustable life insurance is flexible insurance that allows the insured to alter the coverage as the need for protection and the ability to pay for it change. Within limits, the policyholder can raise or lower the premiums, the face value, and the premium payment period.

Universal life insurance also offers varying degrees of protection and savings. Its main feature is that the two parts—protection and savings—are clearly separated and that the amounts of both parts can be changed. You can increase or decrease the amount of protection (the death benefits of the policy). You can add or withdraw money from the savings part. Savings are generally invested to earn interest at current market rates.

Variable life insurance also offers both protection and savings. You pay a fixed premium. Part of the money goes toward protection. The rest goes into savings invested in equity products. *Equity product investments* include owning stock in a company from whose growth and profits you hope to benefit. The policyholder can select and periodically change the type of equity products used for the savings part of the plan. Unlike a *fixed return investment* with a stated amount of interest, the equity product investments earn a variable return. If the investments perform well, your cash value goes up. If the investments perform poorly, your cash value goes down. However, the face amount of the insurance policy never falls below the original amount stated.

Who Should Be Covered?

Anyone who is financially responsible for someone else needs life insurance. The primary wage earner in a family certainly needs life insurance. Any other wage earner in the family needs life insurance if the family depends on his or her income. A full-time homemaker needs life insurance if the family depends on him or her for child care and household tasks that would otherwise have to be purchased. All adults, whether single or married, may want to build equity through life insurance.

Health Insurance

A major illness can plunge an uninsured family into financial crisis. You are not immune to an accident or to a sickness that would cause you to need money for your care, and medical costs have soared in recent decades, 25-4. Thus, it is clear that health insurance should be a part of your budget.

25-4 **High medical costs make health insurance a necessity. Without it, a major illness could cause financial disaster for a family.**

Health insurance typically works on a fee-for-service basis. You pay set premiums. When you are ill or injured, you go to the doctor or a hospital. The insurance will help you pay for the health care you receive according to the terms of your policy.

There are hundreds of health insurance companies. Each offers several different combinations of coverage. When you shop for health insurance, compare the policies of several reputable companies. Take time to study the details of various types of policies. Talk to an agent you feel you can trust, and choose the coverage that best fits your needs.

Understanding Health Insurance

Costs of health insurance vary a great deal according to the kind of protection, the number of people covered, and the ages of those covered. **Basic medical insurance** generally pays for hospitalization, which includes room, board, and nursing services. Some basic coverage includes services such as X rays and lab tests. Medications are usually covered.

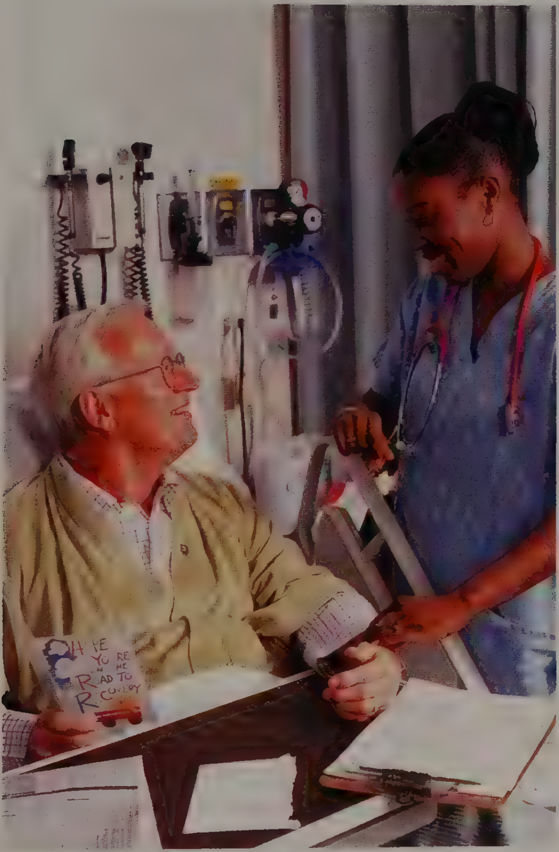
Major medical insurance is designed to begin paying when the basic coverage stops. It may extend your basic policy and pay for additional days of hospital care due to major illness or serious injury. It also covers many out-of-hospital costs. *Catastrophic insurance* is often included in major medical insurance polices. It helps the policyholder pay the costs of intensive care, heart surgery, or long illness. The purpose of this type of insurance is to protect individuals and families against huge medical bills that could ruin them financially, 25-5.

Health insurance policies may include the following clauses:

- *deductible*—the insured will pay an agreed-on portion of the total expense, which may be the first $250, $500, or even $1,000 of the bill. The insurance company will pay the balance. The smaller the deductible amount is, the higher the premiums the insured will have to pay.
- *coinsurance*—the policyholder will pay a certain percentage of the costs, perhaps 20 to 25 percent, while the insurance company pays the remaining portion of the costs.
- *stop-loss protection*—limits your out-of-pocket coinsurance medical expenses.

Typically, it limits expenses, after the deduction, to $5,000 in any one calendar year.

- *guaranteed renewable*—the company cannot cancel your policy just because you submit many claims.
- *right-to-transfer*—gives you the right to continue your group policy even if you leave the group. This clause could also mean that if the policy was in the name of your spouse, and you divorced, you could continue to be covered by the policy.


Hope You're Road To Recovery

25-5 **A serious medical problem that requires long-term hospitalization can lead to huge medical bills unless adequate insurance has been provided.**

- *maximum benefits clause*—sets a limit on the benefits that you can collect over your lifetime. It may be as small as $100,000 or as high as $1,000,000. Many policyholders prefer a maximum limit of at least $350,000.

Disability Income Insurance

Disability income insurance is another kind of health insurance. It protects a person or family from loss of income due to a disabling illness or injury. Although some financial help is available through social security to disabled individuals who qualify, many people want additional coverage.

Disability income insurance guarantees the continuation of a portion of the wage earner's salary during the time he or she is unable to work. Short-term disability income insurance generally provides six months of income. Long-term coverage generally provides income for at least two years or until age 65.

Long-Term Care Insurance

Many couples save throughout their lives to attain financial security in retirement, only to lose their assets to the costs of special care after a lengthy illness. The spouse who requires long-term care first may exhaust the couple's savings, leaving very little for the surviving spouse.

Long-term care insurance is designed to help people protect their assets in the event of a prolonged illness or convalescence. People pay premiums to purchase various levels of long-term care, depending on their insurance plan.

Some people may purchase a plan that covers the costs of nursing home or home health care only. Others may wish their coverage to include assisted-living care in a community-based setting as well. People typically collect benefits when they are no longer able to handle the tasks of daily living or have a long-term illness such as Alzheimer's disease.

Group Health Insurance

Group insurance policies are usually less expensive than individual policies. Most employers now offer group health insurance to their employees, with the employers often paying a share of the cost and sometimes all of it. Most group health insurance is offered as an HMO or a PPO.

Health Maintenance Organizations (HMOs)

One way of receiving and paying for health care is through a **health maintenance organization (HMO)**. When you belong to an HMO, you pay a set fee on a regular basis. Since HMO membership is most often offered to groups of employees, your employer may pay part of the fee. When you need health care, you go to a physician associated with the HMO. You receive whatever care you need, usually with no deductible and no coinsurance payment.

Before joining an HMO, ask about the fees and what they cover. Find out what services and facilities are available to members, 25-6. Check the qualifications of the health care professionals. Then compare the HMO to other forms of health care and health insurance.

Preferred Provider Organizations (PPOs)

A **preferred provider organization (PPO)** has characteristics in common with both HMOs and fee-for-service health insurance. Like an HMO, it offers lower-cost care. It also allows the freedom of choice that fee-for-service plans offer.

In a PPO, an employer has a contract with a group of doctors. These doctors agree to provide medical care for employees at what is essentially a group discount rate. Although employees are not required to use participating doctors, they are given incentives to do so. In most cases, this means the insurance company will waive your deductible and pay all or most of the bill if you go to a participating doctor. It will usually pay some, but substantially less, if you go to a nonparticipating doctor.

Auto Insurance

Each year, thousands of people die and millions are injured in auto accidents in the United States. More than one-third of the drivers involved are under age 25.

Auto insurance is a necessity for several reasons. Without insurance, financial losses due to an accident could wipe out a family's resources. The law requires all drivers to be financially responsible for any damage or injuries they cause, 25-7. In many states, you cannot register an automobile without showing proof that the vehicle is insured.

Auto insurance rates vary according to many factors. The amount of coverage you want; the year, make, and model of your car; and your driving record all affect the amount you pay. Rates are also affected by overall accident statistics. Therefore, people in urban areas generally pay more than those in rural areas. Young people pay more than older people. Men pay more than women. Single people pay more than married people.

25-6 One way of receiving and paying for health care is through a health maintenance organization or HMO.

Some companies allow discounts if you or the vehicle meet certain requirements. For instance, if you passed a class in driver's education or if you are a good student, you may qualify for a premium discount. If your car is equipped with certain safety and antitheft features, you may also be eligible for a discount.

Basic Types of Coverage

Most auto insurance policies provide six basic types of coverage to protect you from the financial risks related to owning and driving a car. These include the following:

- *Bodily injury liability insurance* pays for damages and legal defense if you or a

25-7 As a driver, you are responsible for any damage or injury you cause.

member of your family injures others while driving. Most policies limit the maximum amount the insurance company will pay for any one injury and the maximum amount that will be paid for any one accident.

- *Medical payments insurance* pays for the medical expenses resulting from accidental injury. It covers all passengers for any type of auto accident, 25-8.
- *Uninsured motorists insurance* applies to bodily injuries caused by an uninsured motorist or a hit-and-run driver. It covers everyone riding in your car.
- *Property damage liability insurance* pays for legal defense and the damage your car causes to the property of others. It does not cover damage to your car.
- *Comprehensive physical damage insurance* protects you against financial loss caused by something other than another vehicle. Some of the most common perils are fire, theft, hail, water, vandalism, glass breakage, falling objects, or collision with a bird or animal.
- *Collision insurance* protects you against financial loss when your car is damaged by collision with another vehicle or object or as a result of turning over.

25-8 **Medical payments insurance covers your medical expenses if you are injured in an auto accident.**

No-fault Insurance

Accident settlements can be lengthy, costly, and frustrating. In determining who is at fault, and therefore legally liable, both sides may hire lawyers. Because of the huge number of cases, trials are often delayed for long periods of time. Another problem is that court decisions and jury awards are inconsistent and sometimes unfair.

Many states have adopted no-fault auto insurance to solve these problems. In theory, **no-fault auto insurance** eliminates the legal process of proving who is at fault in an accident. This allows the injured persons to receive payment from the insurance company much sooner. Each person's financial losses are paid by his or her own insurance company without concern for who is at fault.

Auto Insurance Claims

The purpose of auto insurance is to help you when you have an accident. You should know how much and what kinds of coverage you have. If you have collision and/or comprehensive coverage, you should know what the deductible is. You should also know if your state has no-fault insurance. Do not wait to review your insurance coverage until you need to file a claim. By then, it is too late to change your coverage.

If you are involved in an accident, try not to panic. Chart 25-9 explains what you should do if you are involved in an accident.

What to Do When You Are in a Car Accident

- Get help for anyone injured. Call the police or highway patrol, and they will notify the nearest medical unit.
- Provide the police with whatever information they require. Also ask them where you can obtain a copy of the police report. You may need it to support any insurance claim.
- Try to protect the accident scene. If possible, protect your car by moving it off the road.
- Write down the following:
  - Names and addresses of all drivers and passengers involved in the accident
  - License number, make, and model of each car involved in the accident
  - Driver's license number and insurance identification of each driver
  - Names and addresses of as many witnesses as possible
  - Names and badge numbers of police officers or emergency personnel
- If you run into an unattended vehicle or object, try to find the owner. If you can't, leave a note with your name, address, and phone number.
- If necessary, arrange to have your car towed to a repair shop.
- Call your insurance agent or company representative as soon as possible. Ask them how to proceed. Tell them where your car has been taken so an insurance adjuster can inspect it and appraise the damage.
- Supply all information your insurer needs and copies of any legal papers you receive.
- Keep records of your expenses for possible reimbursement and copies of all paperwork.

Insurance Information Institute

25-9 If you are involved in a car accident, don't panic. Just follow these procedures.

Homeowner's Insurance

If you own your home, you will also need homeowner's insurance. **Homeowner's insurance** covers damage to (or loss of) your home as well as the personal property inside your home. Most policies also include liability insurance to cover the medical costs of someone injured on your property.

Homeowner's insurance also provides coverage for personal property such as jewelry, clothing, furniture, china, and silver. It protects the policyholder from financial loss due to property damage from such perils as fire, smoke, wind, hail, vandalism, and theft. Some policies cover more perils than others. Read a policy carefully before you buy it.

If you rent your home, you still need to carry personal property insurance. This is often called *renter's insurance.* The building is insured by the owner, but your individual property is your responsibility. See 25-10.

Some property insurance policies offer *replacement cost* for property that is destroyed or stolen. With this coverage, you will be able to replace what you have lost with items of similar value at today's prices. Other policies use the *actual cash value*—the value of items depreciated according to their age. For example, a $500 TV set that is five years old might have a depreciated value of only $200. If the set were destroyed, you would receive only $200 from the insurance company. Be sure you know which your policy provides.

25-10 Whether or not you own your home, you need property insurance to protect your personal property.

Re-evaluating Your Insurance Needs

The insurance needs of individuals and families may vary according to many factors. For instance, an owner of an older used car does not need the same amount of collision insurance coverage as the owner of a new car. If the value of a home increases, so must the level of insurance coverage for that property. Young adults who complete their educations and no longer qualify under their parents' health insurance policies need to get their own coverage.

Keeping track of insurance coverage is essential to protecting the family's resources. Families' insurance needs will vary throughout the life cycle as their financial and health situations change. You can increase your knowledge about insurance through such activities as reading financial periodicals, taking courses in family finance, and talking to insurance professionals.

hapter 25 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- Insurance coverage is essential to the protection of family resources.
- Life insurance offers financial protection for families in case a wage earner dies. Some policies also provide a means of saving.
- Every family faces the risk of illness or injury. Health insurance can prevent financial difficulties resulting from such misfortunes.
- Group insurance policies are usually less expensive than individual policies. Most employers provide health insurance for their employees through HMOs or PPOs.
- All drivers must be financially responsible for any damage or injuries they cause. Thus, auto insurance is a necessity. In some states, it is required by law.
- Many states have adopted no-fault auto insurance plans, which eliminate the need to prove who is at fault in an auto accident.
- Homeowner's insurance protects against financial loss resulting from damage or liability in connection with your home and its contents.
- Renters need personal property insurance to replace lost or damaged possessions.
- Families' insurance needs tend to vary over time, as their financial and health situations change.

Review

1. Fill in the blanks with terms related to life insurance.

   Sue and Dan bought a _____ policy, which will protect them for a five-year period but will not build up any savings for them. They pay a monthly amount, called a _____. Sue is named as the _____. If Dan dies, she will receive $20,000, the _____ _____ of the policy.
2. Which of the following statements is (are) true?
   - A. Term life insurance provides both protection and a means of saving.
   - B. Universal life insurance offers no flexibility.
   - C. Group health insurance policies are usually more expensive than individual policies.
   - D. Property damage liability insurance pays for legal defense and the damage your car causes to the property of others, but it does not cover damage to your car.
   - E. No-fault insurance eliminates the legal process of proving who is at fault in an auto accident.
   - F. Homeowner's insurance protects personal property from such perils as fire, smoke, wind, hail, vandalism, and theft.
3. _____ insurance is designed to cover the cost of intensive care, heart surgery, or long-term illness.
4. Explain the difference between a deductible clause and a coinsurance clause.
5. Explain one way in which HMOs and PPOs are similar and one way in which they differ.
6. List five factors that affect premium rates for auto insurance.
7. Name six basic types of coverage provided by auto insurance policies and briefly explain the function of each.
8. If you were buying renter's insurance, which would you prefer—a policy that provided replacement value or actual cash value? Explain your answer.

React

1. Talk with various life insurance agents in your area. Set up realistic insurance programs for a young single person and for a young married couple.
2. Research the basic features of a proposal for national health insurance reform. How would it work? Summarize your findings in a written or oral report.
3. Ask an automobile insurance agent to visit your class. Ask him or her to explain the levels of coverage appropriate for a "beater," a late-model midsize sedan, and a brand new sports car.
4. Invite an insurance agent and/or the resident manager of a nearby apartment building to your class. Request their opinions as to whether renters need property insurance. What specific types of coverage do they recommend?

Reflect

1. Evaluate the following statement: "I don't want to even consider getting life insurance because it means I have to think about the fact that I will die someday."
2. Which type of health insurance do you personally prefer? Why?
3. Think about a car accident in which you or someone you know has been involved. Did everyone at the scene of the accident behave correctly? What, if anything, could have been done differently?
4. Young men have the highest rate of car accidents. Why do you think this is? What kinds of behavior would young men have to change in order to bring the rate down?

Chapter 26

Using Banking Services

Terms to Know

- deductions
- gross income
- net income
- exemptions
- Social Security
- commercial bank
- savings and loan association
- mutual savings bank
- credit union
- cashier's check
- certified check
- money order
- traveler's checks
- debit card
- interest
- endorse
- direct deposit
- overdraft
- Automated Teller Machines (ATMs)
- certificate of deposit
- money market account
- individual retirement account (IRA)
- Keogh plans

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- differentiate between gross income and net income.
- explain the types of payments that typically are collected through payroll deductions.
- compare various types of financial institutions and the services they provide.
- describe the use of a checking account.
- summarize ways to save and invest money.

You will work hard for your money all your life. If you manage your money well, it will work hard for you and help you enjoy life.

When you are living on your own for the first time, you will have to learn to manage your income so it covers your living expenses. Sometimes this is difficult to do with your first job. Your beginning salary may be low, and you may have to struggle to meet your everyday living expenses. With time and hard work, however, your income level is likely to rise, and you will find it easier to pay your bills.

The typical family has periods when money is plentiful and when money is scarce. One period of plenty occurs when a husband and wife are both employed and have no children. Another occurs when the couple's children have grown and left home and at least one spouse is still working. The scarce stages are usually the childrearing years, the college education years, and the retirement years. The retirement years can be especially difficult if the couple has not planned carefully for this period of life. Families who manage their money wisely will be able to take advantage of their times of plenty to help them through the scarcer times.

Your Income

Your wages for work done on a job are likely to be your greatest source of income, 26-1. Every job has a certain wage. Some people are paid an hourly wage. Some are paid a monthly or yearly salary, regardless of the amount of time they spend at work. Others, such as salespeople, are paid on a commission basis. A *commission* is a percentage of the amount of sales that are made.

26-1 For this woman, and for the majority of people, the greatest source of income is the wages received for work.

Jobs have fringe benefits that are often overlooked as an income source. These may include sick leave, vacations with pay, savings plans, retirement funds, and contributions toward health and life insurance. In today's competitive world, businesses often attract potential employees with their fringe benefits. You should assess what these benefits will mean over the years when you compare job offers.

Your Paycheck

Most people who are employed receive a paycheck every week, every two weeks, or every month. Your paycheck may not be as large as you expect it to be. Some amounts of money are subtracted from your wages before you receive them. These amounts are called **deductions**. They are recorded on the stub of your paycheck.

The income you accumulate before deductions are made is called **gross income**. The amount of money you receive after deductions have been made is called **net income** or take-home pay. Your personal financial plan should be based on your net income because this is the money that is available to you for spending or saving.

The two most common deductions are for federal income tax and Social Security. If you live in a state that has a state income tax, this will be another deduction from your paycheck. If you participate in a group insurance plan—either life or health—you may have yet another deduction.

The reason deductions are made from your paycheck is that they help you pay necessary expenses. If all your income tax, all your Social Security contributions, and all your insurance premiums were due at one time, you would probably have trouble paying them. These expenses are easier to meet when a little is taken from each paycheck.

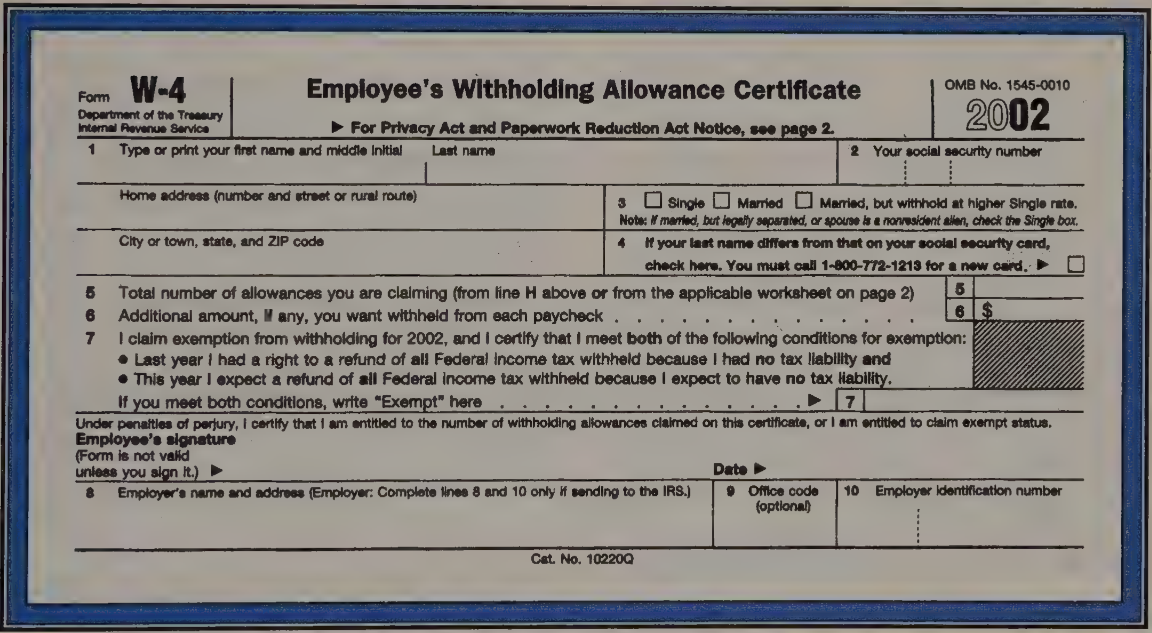
Federal Income Tax

Citizens of the United States who earn money pay taxes based on a *graduated income scale*. This means that people who make more money generally pay a higher proportion of their income in taxes. The amount of income tax deducted from your paycheck is based on your taxable income.

Your *taxable income* is your net income minus an amount representing the number of exemptions you are allowed. **Exemptions** are sources or amounts of income that are not taxed. Every taxpayer can take a personal exemption. Additional exemptions are allowed for people who are blind, for people over 65, for a spouse, and for dependents.

When you begin a job, your employer will ask you to fill out a W-4 Form like the one in 26-2. This *W-4 Form* tells your employer how many exemptions you are allowed. It also tells of any special situations that might alter your tax obligations. From this, your employer determines how much of your gross income should be deducted from your paycheck and withheld for taxes.

The withheld pay will be sent by your employer to the Internal Revenue Service (IRS). During the year, this will accumulate in your name and will help pay your income tax.



Form **W-4**
Department of the Treasury
Internal Revenue Service

Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate

▶ **For Privacy Act and Paperwork Reduction Act Notice, see page 2.**

OMB No. 1545-0010
2002

1 Type or print your first name and middle initial | Last name
2 Your social security number
Home address (number and street or rural route)
3 ☐ Single ☐ Married ☐ Married, but withhold at higher Single rate.
Note: *If married, but legally separated, or spouse is a nonresident alien, check the Single box.*
City or town, state, and ZIP code
4 **If your last name differs from that on your social security card, check here. You must call 1-800-772-1213 for a new card.** ▶ ☐
5 Total number of allowances you are claiming (from line **H** above or from the applicable worksheet on page 2) 5
6 Additional amount, if any, you want withheld from each paycheck . . . . 6 $
7 I claim exemption from withholding for 2002, and I certify that I meet **both** of the following conditions for exemption:
- Last year I had a right to a refund of **all** Federal income tax withheld because I had **no** tax liability **and**
- This year I expect a refund of **all** Federal income tax withheld because I expect to have **no** tax liability.

If you meet both conditions, write "Exempt" here . . . . ▶ 7

Under penalties of perjury, I certify that I am entitled to the number of withholding allowances claimed on this certificate, or I am entitled to claim exempt status.
Employee's signature
(Form is not valid
unless you sign it.) ▶
Date ▶
8 Employer's name and address (Employer: Complete lines 8 and 10 only if sending to the IRS.)
9 Office code (optional)
10 Employer identification number

Cat. No. 10220Q

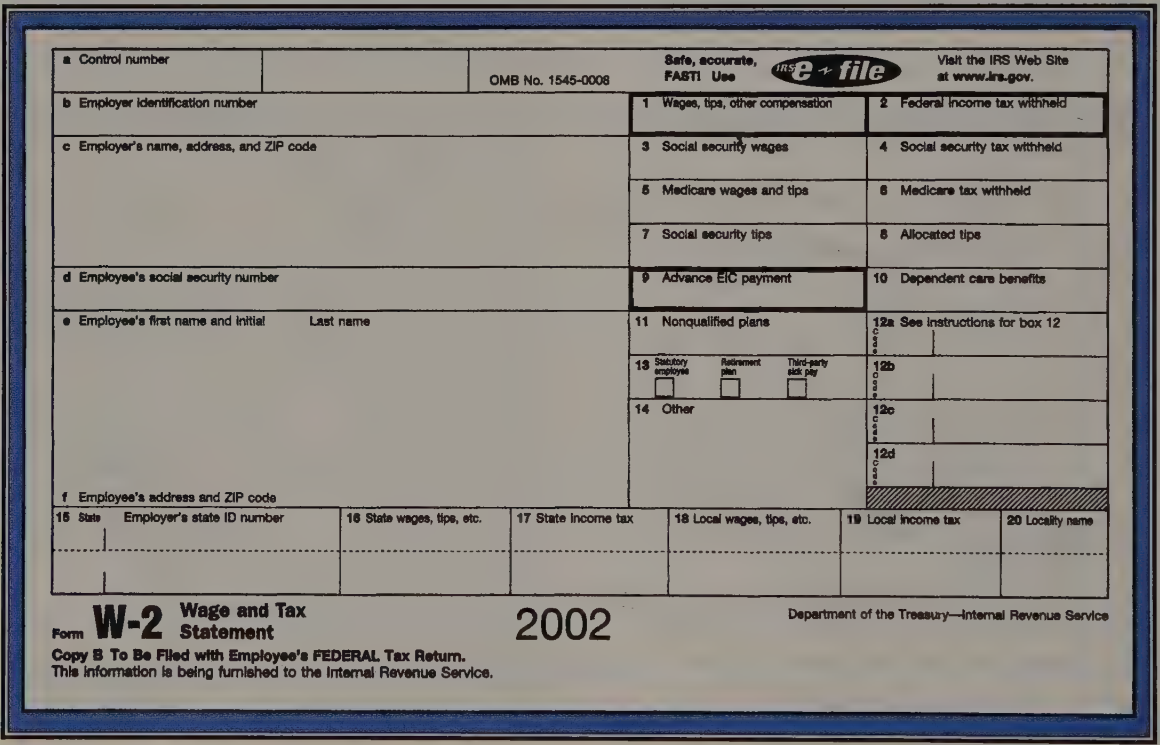
26-2 Form W-4 gives your employer the information to determine the amount that should be withheld from your paychecks.

In January, your employer will give you a W-2 Form like the one in 26-3. The *W-2 Form* shows how much money the federal government withheld from your paychecks the previous year. It is your proof of payment. You use it when you fill out your federal income tax return. If your income tax return shows that too much was withheld from your paychecks, you will be due a refund. If you have not had enough money withheld to pay your full tax bill, you will have to make up the difference.

Social Security

Your job will probably place you, along with nine out of every ten United States citizens, in the **Social Security** program. The theory behind Social Security is simple. Employees, their employers, and self-employed people pay Social Security taxes. These taxes are used to pay benefits to millions of eligible people. When a worker's earnings stop or are reduced because of disability, retirement, or death, monthly cash benefits are paid to replace part of the earnings the family has lost. In practice, however, the Social Security program is complex, with many requirements and limitations.

When you are employed and you qualify for the program, you must pay Social Security taxes according to the Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA). The amount you pay is a percentage of your



a Control number

OMB No. 1545-0008

Safe, accurate, FAST! Use IRS e-file

Visit the IRS Web Site at www.irs.gov.

b Employer identification number

1 Wages, tips, other compensation

2 Federal income tax withheld

c Employer's name, address, and ZIP code

3 Social security wages

4 Social security tax withheld

5 Medicare wages and tips

6 Medicare tax withheld

7 Social security tips

8 Allocated tips

d Employee's social security number

9 Advance EIC payment

10 Dependent care benefits

e Employee's first name and initial Last name

11 Nonqualified plans

12a See instructions for box 12 Code

13 Statutory employee ☐ Retirement plan ☐ Third-party sick pay ☐

12b Code

14 Other

12c Code

12d Code

f Employee's address and ZIP code

15 State Employer's state ID number

16 State wages, tips, etc.

17 State income tax

18 Local wages, tips, etc.

19 Local income tax

20 Locality name

Form **W-2** **Wage and Tax Statement** 2002

Department of the Treasury—Internal Revenue Service

Copy B To Be Filed with Employee's FEDERAL Tax Return.
This information is being furnished to the Internal Revenue Service.

26-3 Form W-2 states the amount of money the federal government withheld from your checks the previous year.

gross earnings. The percentage varies as determined by Congress. Congress also sets a maximum limit on the amount of a person's earnings that are subject to the tax. You will not have to pay the tax on any income you receive over this limit.

For every dollar you put into the Social Security system, your employer also puts in a dollar. Thus, your employer matches the Social Security taxes you pay.

Financial Institutions

As you earn income, you will need the services of financial institutions. Commercial banks, savings and loan associations, mutual savings banks, and credit unions are all financial institutions that can help you manage your money. Other companies, such as insurance companies and brokerage firms, also offer a wide range of financial services. The main differences between the many types of financial institutions involve ownership and insurance.

A **commercial bank** is owned by stockholders and operated for profit. In most commercial banks, deposits are insured up to a specified limit by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC). This means that depositors will not lose their money if a bank goes bankrupt or suffers serious financial losses.

A **savings and loan association** may be a mutual company (owned and operated for the benefit of its depositors) or a stock company (operated for profit much the same as a commercial bank). In most savings and loan associations, deposits are insured up to a specified limit by the FDIC.

A **mutual savings bank** is owned by its depositors. After deducting operating costs and cash for reserves, earnings are divided among depositors in the form of dividends. Accounts in these banks may be insured up to a specified limit by the FDIC or by state-sponsored insurance.

A **credit union** is a nonprofit financial institution owned by and operated for the benefit of its members. Since a credit union is not for profit and is run by its members, it may lend money at lower rates and pay higher rates on savings than other financial institutions. The National Credit Union Association (NCUA) insures most credit union accounts up to a specified limit.

Financial Services

The services a financial institution offers depend mainly on its size and the needs of its customers. The following is a list of some of the services provided by many financial institutions:

- checking accounts and savings accounts
- money market accounts
- certificates of deposit
- retirement accounts
- credit card accounts
- personal loans for autos, education, vacations, and other needs, 26-4
- home mortgages
- farm and business loans
- cashier's checks, certified checks, money orders, traveler's checks, and debit cards
- U.S. savings bonds and other securities
- trust, investment, and estate management
- automatic bill-paying plans
- direct electronic paycheck deposit and funds transfer
- overdraft protection

- automated teller machines
- automated telephone banking
- safe-deposit boxes
- financial counseling

Financial institutions can provide checks (other than personal checks) that can be used to transfer money. These include cashier's checks, certified checks, money orders, and traveler's checks. These checks are available at most financial institutions, usually for a small fee.

If you are paying a large sum of money, a cashier's check may be a more acceptable form of payment than a personal check. A **cashier's check** is drawn by a bank on its own funds and signed by a bank officer. Therefore, the receiver of the check doesn't have to worry about whether the payer's account has sufficient funds to cover the check.

Another alternative to a personal check is a certified check. A **certified check** is essentially a personal check that carries a bank's guarantee that the check will be paid. When a financial institution certifies a check, the amount of the check is immediately subtracted from the payer's account.

People who do not have checking accounts can use money orders to make payments safely by mail. A **money order** is an order for a specific amount of money payable to a specific payee. Money orders are sold in a number of places. However, it is wise to buy them from reputable sellers such as insured financial institutions and post offices.

When you are traveling, traveler's checks allow you to avoid carrying large amounts of cash. **Traveler's checks** can be cashed at most places around the world. They can be replaced if they are lost or stolen.

Another way to transfer money from your account into another account is with a debit card. A **debit card** is used like a credit card to make a purchase, but is actually a way to transfer money from your bank account to a store's account. The debit card is scanned electronically by the merchant, 26-5. You then enter a personal identification number (PIN) into the terminal of the store in which you are making the purchase. The bank's computer verifies that there is enough money to cover the purchase, and the sum is deducted from your checking account immediately. It is important that you record these money transfers in your checking account as if you had written a check.

26-4 A personal loan can often be arranged through a local financial institution where you have your checking account.

Checking Accounts

When you begin to earn and spend money, you will want to set up a checking

26-5 A debit card is scanned electronically and the funds are transferred from a personal checking account to the store's account.

account with a financial institution. Being able to write checks will give you a sense of security and will help you handle monthly bills. It will also provide you with detailed spending records, which are necessary to document your tax and investment expenditures.

Financial institutions usually offer more than one type of checking account. Some accounts earn interest if you maintain your balance at a specified level. (**Interest** is a specified annual percentage of the amount of money in the program.) Some accounts require you to keep a minimum balance, and other accounts charge for each check written. You will need to compare the requirements, limitations, service charges, and advantages of each. Then you can choose the type of account that best fits your needs.

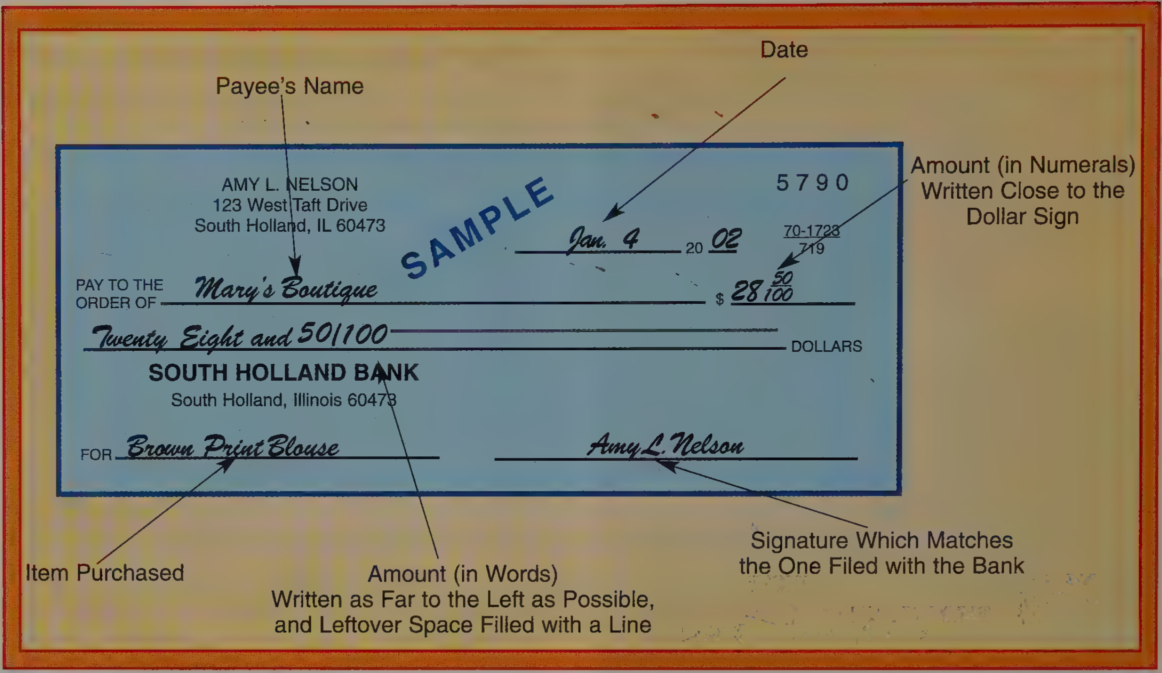
If you are married, you might want to consider a *joint bank account.* This allows both spouses to make deposits and withdrawals. In the event of severe illness or injury, money is not tied up and bills can be paid. If one spouse dies, the other will still have access to the account, though in some states the account is frozen for a period of time. The main problem with this method is one accurate running balance has to be kept by two people. If one spouse writes a check and fails to record it in the running balance, the couple may find themselves overdrawn at the bank.

When you open a checking account, your bank or financial institution will require that you sign a signature card for their records. This shows the name you will use in signing all financial transactions. This will be the only signature the financial institution will honor on your checks and withdrawal slips. If you are opening a joint checking account, both people will need to sign signature cards.

Writing Checks

When you write a check, you are telling your financial institution to take a certain amount of money out of your account and pay it to whomever you name. You should be careful to write checks correctly to avoid costly and embarrassing mistakes.

A blank check has space for quite a bit of information. When you write a check, you will want to fill each of the spaces correctly. See 26-6. The following tips may help you.


Date
Payee's Name
SAMPLE
Amount (in Numerals) Written Close to the Dollar Sign
Item Purchased
Amount (in Words) Written as Far to the Left as Possible, and Leftover Space Filled with a Line
Signature Which Matches the One Filed with the Bank

AMY L. NELSON
123 West Taft Drive
South Holland, IL 60473

5790

Jan. 4 20 02

70-1723/719

PAY TO THE ORDER OF Mary's Boutique $ 28 50/100

Twenty Eight and 50/100 DOLLARS

SOUTH HOLLAND BANK
South Holland, Illinois 60473

FOR Brown Print Blouse

Amy L. Nelson

26-6 **Checks should be written carefully and neatly to avoid errors.**

- Always use ink.
- Date the check the day it is written, even if it is a Sunday or holiday. Some people postdate a check (write in a future date), thinking that they will deposit money to cover the check before it is posted at the bank. As a rule, financial institutions will not cash a check before the date that is written on the check. Most businesses will not accept a postdated check as payment. Another problem related to postdating a check is that you might not be able to get the money to the bank in time to cover the check.
- In the blank after the words "Pay to the order of," write the name of the payee (the person or organization whom you are paying). Spell it correctly, and do not use any abbreviations that may cause confusion. If you want to withdraw money from your account, write your own legal name in this blank.
- Record the amount of money to be paid clearly in the space after the dollar sign. Never leave a space between the dollar sign and the numerals. This might allow someone to alter the amount. (For instance, $ 15 could be changed to $115.) Write the cents as a fraction of 100.
- On the next line, write out the amount of dollars in words. Then write the word "and," followed by the number of cents written as a fraction of 100. Start writing at the extreme left of the blank. Fill any leftover space with a line. This prevents anyone from changing the amount.
- Most checks have the word "for" or "memo" and a blank in the lower

Contemporary Topics of Interest to Teens

Banking at Home

Families with personal computers are choosing to do much of their banking from home. Bank-at-home programs promise to make many transactions quicker, more efficient, and more convenient for busy consumers.

Using simple software programs, consumers can check their account balances and pay bills. They can also review credit card purchases and automated teller machine withdrawals; stop payment on checks; order checks and traveler's checks; and complete many other banking tasks.

Consumers benefit primarily from the convenience and flexibility provided by remote banking. They are able to avoid long lines in banks and can do their banking outside of normal business hours if they wish.

Banks gain cost savings associated with greater efficiency. Fewer employees are needed to handle face-to-face consumer transactions in the bank. Instead, banks are able to redirect their resources toward providing a wider range of services (for example, financial counseling and investments) more competitively.

left-hand corner. You do not have to fill in this blank, but doing so will help you keep clearer records. When you write a check for a purchase, make a note of what you have bought. When paying a bill, write the number of your account with the company on this line to be sure your payment is credited to your account.

- Finally, there is a blank for your signature. Always use the same signature you filed with your financial institution. Be sure you have written the name of the payee and the amount to be paid before you sign the check. Once you have signed it, it is negotiable. Any blank spaces could be filled in by anyone in any way.

Immediately after writing a check, make a note of it on your check stub or in your check register. Write the check number, the date, the payee, and the amount. This is necessary for complete and accurate records. Keeping a running balance of your expenditures in your check register will help you avoid overdrawing your account. You will always know exactly how much money you have.

Do not change or cross out any part of a check. If you make a mistake, write the word "VOID" across the check and tear it up. Then start again with another check. Be sure to make a note of the void check on the check stub or in your check register.

If you make out a check to someone and it is lost or stolen, you should report this immediately to your bank. Give the bank representative the check number, the date, and the payee as well as your name, address, and account number. The bank will then stop payment of the check. You typically will be charged a fee for this service.

It is wise to keep your blank checks in a locked drawer or other safe place. If your checks are lost or stolen, contact your bank immediately.

Endorsing Checks

To cash a check, you must endorse it. To **endorse** a check, write your legal signature on the back of the check, on the end opposite the dollar amount. This tells the bank that the correct payee is receiving the money.

A problem may occur when the payee's legal name is not used on the face of the check. In this case, the payee should write two signatures on the back of the check. The name that appears on the face of the check should be written first. Directly below this, the payee's legal name should be signed. For instance, a check could be written to Mary Brown. To endorse the check, she would write *Mary Brown* on the back of the check. Directly below this, she would write her legal signature, *Mary L. Brown*.

Once Mary had endorsed the check, anyone could cash it. One way to prevent this from happening is to endorse a check just before it is cashed. Another way is to write *for deposit only* below the legal signature. If you do this, the total amount of the check will be deposited in your account, regardless of who takes the check to the bank.

Suppose Mary's check was for $10, and she wanted to pay Sam $10. Perhaps Mary was busy and wanted Sam to cash her check for her. In either case, she would endorse the check like this:

Pay to the order of
Samuel D. Smith
Mary L. Brown

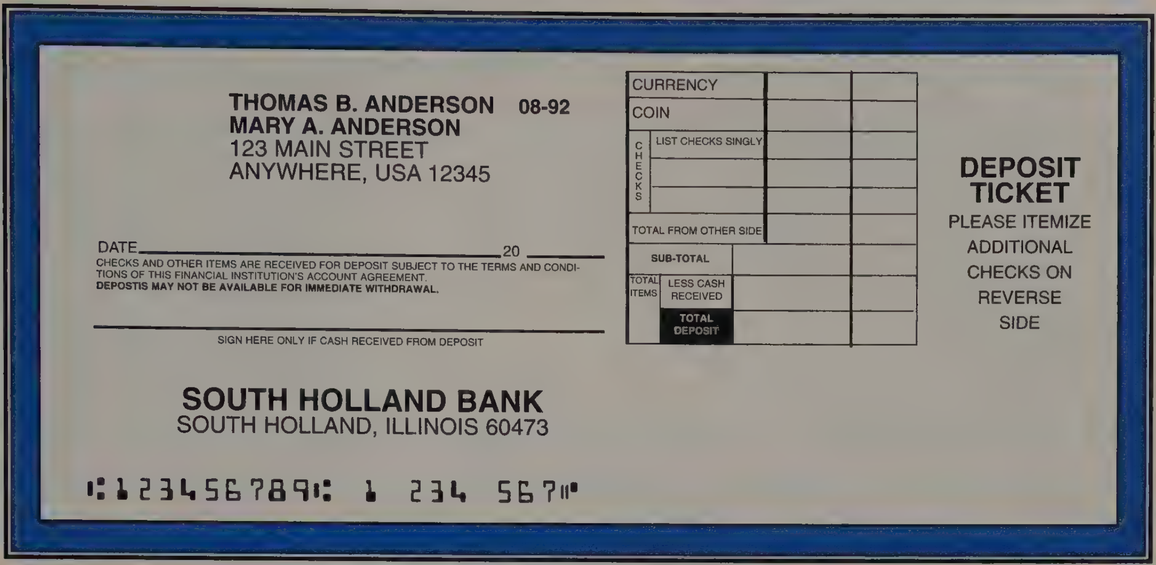
Then Sam could endorse the check by writing his legal signature under Mary's and could cash the check.

Depositing Money in Your Account

Your checkbook will include printed deposit tickets, as shown in 26-7. When you add money to your account, you will need to fill out one of them.

The date of the deposit and your legal signature should be written in the blanks at the left. On the right is a small chart. If you are depositing cash, write the number of dollars you have in paper bills beside the word "currency." Write the amount of money you have in coins beside the word "coin." If you are depositing a check, write the check number in one of the blanks next to the word "checks." Then write the amount of the check in the space to the right. If you have more checks than the chart will hold, write the additional information on the back of the deposit ticket. Add all the amounts to find the total amount of money you will present to the bank teller. If you want to receive some of the money in cash, subtract this amount from the total. This will give you the "total deposit," or the amount that will be added to your account.

The teller will give you a receipt for your deposit. Keep this for your records. In addition, make a note of the deposit on your check stub or in your check register. Write the date of the deposit and the



THOMAS B. ANDERSON **08-92**
MARY A. ANDERSON
123 MAIN STREET
ANYWHERE, USA 12345

DATE ______________________ 20 ____

CHECKS AND OTHER ITEMS ARE RECEIVED FOR DEPOSIT SUBJECT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS FINANCIAL INSTITUTION'S ACCOUNT AGREEMENT.
DEPOSTIS MAY NOT BE AVAILABLE FOR IMMEDIATE WITHDRAWAL.

SIGN HERE ONLY IF CASH RECEIVED FROM DEPOSIT

SOUTH HOLLAND BANK
SOUTH HOLLAND, ILLINOIS 60473

⑆123456789⑆ 1 234 567⑈

CURRENCY			
COIN			
CHECKS	LIST CHECKS SINGLY		
TOTAL FROM OTHER SIDE			
SUB-TOTAL			
TOTAL ITEMS	LESS CASH RECEIVED		
	TOTAL DEPOSIT		

DEPOSIT TICKET
PLEASE ITEMIZE
ADDITIONAL
CHECKS ON
REVERSE
SIDE

26-7 **You need to fill out a deposit slip when you add money to your checking account.**

source and amount of each check. If you need to verify the deposit of a certain check later, you will have the necessary information.

Many businesses now offer **direct deposit** service to their employees. The employer's payroll monies are electronically transferred directly into their employees' personal checking or savings accounts. There are several advantages to employees whose companies offer direct deposit. If you are unable to be at work on a scheduled payday due to a business trip, a vacation, or an illness, your wages will still be deposited into your bank account. Direct deposit service eliminates the need for you to make a trip to your bank to deposit your paycheck. You will not have to worry about your paycheck being lost or stolen. Of course, you will still have to remember to enter the deposit in your check register. Your employer will give you a statement showing your gross pay, deductions, and net pay—the amount deposited into your account.

Your Bank Statement

As the checks you have written come into the bank, they will be posted against your account. At the end of every month, the bank may send your canceled checks to you, together with your bank statement. This will show a record of every deposit and every check that passed through your account during the month.

In recent years, as more Americans have gained access to personal computers, many banks have discontinued the practice of sending monthly statements to customers who have checking accounts. Instead, banks offer customers the option of accessing their statements online along with their current balances.

When you receive or access your bank statement, check it against your check stubs or register, 26-8. To do this, write the balance given on the bank statement on a sheet of paper. Add any deposits you have made since the closing date of the statement. Then subtract the amounts of the checks that have

26-8 **Check to see the balance listed in your bank statement agrees with the balance listed in your check stubs or register.**

not cleared or that you have written since the closing date. Circle the final figure. The next step is to subtract any bank service charges or add any interest earned to the balance in your check register. At this point, the figure you circled should be equal to the balance in your check register. If it is not, double-check your math. If you cannot find an error, ask someone from your bank to go over your records with you.

Overdrafts

An **overdraft** occurs when you write a check on an account with insufficient funds. Overdrawing your account results in returned (bounced) checks. The bank usually charges a penalty fee for each "bad" check. Creditors may call you wanting to know when they will receive payment.

Overdrawing usually results from failure to keep track of the amount of money in your account. If overdrafts occur frequently, your credit rating will probably be affected.

To avoid overdrawing, be careful to keep an accurate and ongoing record of the amount of money in your account. You may also wish to look into automatic overdraft protection through your bank.

Overdraft protection may involve several options. Under one option, the bank transfers funds into your account to cover overdrafts and then charges you interest on this "loan." Under another option, the bank transfers funds from your savings or money market account into your checking account.

Automated Teller Machines

Automated Teller Machines (ATMs) offer convenience by facilitating banking transactions at a number of locations 24 hours a day, 26-9. To start a transaction, you insert a plastic card (provided by your bank) into a designated slot. This card may also be used as your debit card. Then you enter your personal identification number (PIN) and interact with a computerized menu of choices. For example, you may wish to deposit funds, inquire about your account balance, or withdraw cash.

To avoid being a victim of theft, observe several precautions when you use an ATM. Do not share your PIN with anyone, and do not write it down in a place where others can find it. Avoid using ATMs late at night or in poorly lighted or isolated locations. It is better to use ATM

26-9 **Automated Teller Machines allow you to make deposits and withdraw cash at any time of the day or night.**

machines inside stores or malls. If you feel that you are being observed as you enter your PIN, discontinue the transaction and leave. When using an ATM from your car, stay inside with your door locked and quickly drive away.

Remember to keep records of your ATM transactions by entering them in your checkbook. If your card is lost or stolen, notify the bank immediately to limit your liability.

Saving and Investing Money

Saving and investing money is important whether you are single or married. Setting aside money helps you finance future goals such as a college education, a down payment on a car or home, or a financially secure retirement. Money placed in a savings program earns interest. Savings and investments also provide you with a cash reserve that you may need during a period of unexpected illness or loss of income.

Most financial institutions offer at least five forms of savings and/or investment plans. These include savings accounts, U. S. savings bonds, certificates of deposit, money market accounts, and retirement accounts.

Savings Accounts

A savings account (sometimes called a passbook savings account) permits you to make deposits and withdrawals in varying amounts at any time. The money in the account earns interest. A savings account can be opened with only a few dollars, and money can be withdrawn easily without penalty. Although a savings account is a convenient form of saving, it pays a low rate of interest. Features to compare when choosing a savings account include interest rates, service charges, minimum required balances, and frequency of crediting interest to the account, 26-10.

U.S. Savings Bonds

Another way to save money is by buying United States savings bonds. Savings bonds are issued by the U.S. Treasury in various denominations. After September 11, the Treasury began to issue war bonds to people who wanted to support antiterrorism actions. Purchasers of Series EE bonds pay half the face amount. For instance, you would pay $50 for a $100 bond. Interest is earned over time. If the bond is held to the maturity date, it will be worth the full face amount. Bonds can be redeemed earlier, but some interest will be lost.

Series EE bonds that are held at least five years earn a flexible interest rate. They earn a market-based variable rate or a minimum guaranteed rate, whichever is higher. If bonds are redeemed before five years elapse, the interest earned is based on fixed interest rates rather than on market-based rates. No federal income tax is due on interest earned until the bonds are cashed in. Also, the interest they pay is exempt from state and local income taxes.

U.S. savings bonds are guaranteed by the government. They are a safe way to save money, but their yields are lower than those of some other investments.

A Comparison of Interest Rates

If you save $10 a month at compound interest* of

	10 Years	15 Years	20 Years	25 Years
2%	$ 1338	$ 2108	$ 2957	$ 3895
3%	1408	2278	3287	4456
4%	1482	2465	3660	5115

If you save $50 a month at compound interest

2%	$ 6691	$10,538	$14,786	$19,476
3%	7040	11,390	16,433	22,279
4%	7409	12,323	18,302	25,576

*Compound interest is interest which is computed on the sum of the deposits and the accumulated interest. The information in this chart is based upon interest which is compounded monthly .

26-10 **Do some comparison shopping before you start a savings program. A small difference in interest rates can make a big difference in interest earnings.**

Certificates of Deposit

If you have money you can deposit for a set period of time, you can buy a certificate of deposit (CD). With a **certificate of deposit**, you agree to leave your money on deposit in a savings institution for a specific period of time. A CD may pay a higher rate of interest than a savings account or U.S. savings bond. However, it requires you to commit your money for a set period of time such as six months or five years. A minimum deposit is usually required. If you cash in the certificate before the time period is over, you lose a significant amount of interest.

Money Market Accounts

A **money market account** is a type of account that pays interest rates that change with prevailing rates on short-term investments. The rate of interest earned on money market accounts is not a set rate—it changes daily.

A money market account has some advantages. It can provide savers with high returns. If interest rates are going up, a money market account will pay higher interest than accounts with set rates of return. Checks can be written on these accounts. Part or all of the account can be withdrawn at any time. A money market account opened through a bank or savings and loan association is federally insured by the FDIC.

Money market accounts have some disadvantages, too. A large minimum deposit is usually required to open an account. If interest rates go down, so does the rate of return on the account.

Money market funds are slightly different from money market accounts. They are offered by private investment firms. They usually offer a higher rate of return than money market accounts. However, they are not federally insured.

Retirement Accounts

Retirement accounts are long-range savings accounts designed to provide income after retirement. Such resources can be an important part of planning for the retirement years, 26-11.

Many employers offer retirement pension plans to their employees as part of employees' fringe benefits. People who either do not have this benefit or wish to increase their retirement income above the amounts their employers offer may open retirement accounts. Financial institutions offer these accounts as part of their services.

Retirement accounts have tax advantages that other savings accounts do not have. In most cases, money deposited into these accounts is not taxed until it is withdrawn. The interest earned on these accounts is also not taxed until the money is withdrawn.

There are also disadvantages to retirement accounts. In order to get tax-favorable treatment by the IRS, certain federal regulations apply. One of these restrictions prohibits the withdrawal of money from these accounts prior to retirement age. If money is withdrawn early, penalty taxes must be paid.

Several types of retirement accounts are offered by financial institutions. Examples are Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) and Keogh plans.

26-11 **Money is often scarce in the retirement years. Wise money management is needed to meet living expenses.**

Individual Retirement Accounts

An **Individual Retirement Account (IRA)** is an account to which taxpayers may make annual contributions up to a set amount. Taxes may or may not be paid on the contributions, but interest earnings are not taxed until the money is withdrawn. IRAs are open to every American receiving earned income or alimony. A person under the age of 50 may contribute up to $3,000 per year to this account. Contributions are tax deductible for people (1) with annual incomes of less than a specified amount or (2) who are not covered by a company-sponsored pension plan. Interest accumulates on a tax-deferred basis until the funds are withdrawn at retirement. During the retirement years, most people have lower incomes and are therefore likely to be in a lower tax bracket than they were in their wage-earning years.

Keogh Plans

Keogh plans are designed to help self-employed people establish tax-deferred retirement plans for themselves and their employees. Contributions are tax-deductible, and interest accumulates on a tax-deferred basis until retirement. Different types of plans are available for people of various income levels. The maximum contribution is $30,000 per year or 20 percent of earned income, whichever is less.

Employees of financial institutions will provide counseling to help you determine which type of account to open. They can also provide details on current tax regulations and restrictions.

Be sure to compare accounts and plans at different financial institutions. Such institutions offer a wide range of services, types of accounts, and interest rates.

The more money you have to save and invest, the more you can lose as a result of poor financial decisions. That is why it is so important to research your options carefully.

hapter 26 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- You will work for money all your life. You can learn how to manage money so that money will work for you.
- Gross income is the total amount of money you earn. Net income is the money left after taxes, Social Security, and any other deductions have been taken from your paycheck.
- The U.S. tax structure is based on a graduated income scale. Generally, the more money you earn, the more taxes you pay.
- During the years you are employed, you have to pay into the Social Security program. When your earnings stop or are reduced, monthly cash benefits will be paid back to you out of this fund.
- Financial institutions offer a variety of services, such as checking accounts, savings accounts, personal loans, home mortgages, and safe-deposit boxes. The services a financial institution offers depend mainly on its size and the needs of its customers.
- A check should be written carefully and completely, in ink, on an account with sufficient funds to cover the check. If you make a mistake while writing the check, tear it up and start over.
- To endorse a check, write your name on the back of it. Once a check is endorsed, anyone can cash it.
- A deposit to your checking or savings account must be accompanied by a filled-out deposit slip. Be sure to record your deposit on your check stub or check register.
- When you receive your bank statement, check it against your check stubs or register to account for all funds.
- Common savings and investment plans include savings accounts, U.S. savings bonds, certificates of deposit, money market accounts, and retirement accounts.
- Retirement accounts are long-range savings accounts designed to provide income after retirement. Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) and Keogh plans allow people to earn interest on a tax-deferred basis until the funds in the account are withdrawn at retirement.

Review

1. List four possible deductions that could be subtracted from your wages.
2. True or False. The income you accumulate before deductions are made from your check is your net income.
3. True or False. A commercial bank is a nonprofit financial institution.
4. List five services provided by most financial institutions.
5. Name the federal agency or act being described in each of the following statements:
   - A. Insures most credit union accounts up to a specified limit.
   - B. The legislation that requires the payment of Social Security taxes on employment income.
   - C. Insures accounts up to a specified limit in most banks and in most savings and loan institutions.
   - D. The federal agency that handles matters related to income taxes.
6. Explain the theory behind Social Security.
7. What should you do if your checks are lost or stolen?
8. True or False. Once a check is endorsed, anyone can cash it.
9. Name the savings or investment plan being described in each of the following statements:
   - A. Purchasers pay half the face amount; if held until maturity, can be cashed for the full amount.
   - B. Examples are IRAs and Keoghs.
   - C. Can be opened with only a few dollars, and deposits and withdrawals (without penalty) are possible at any time.
   - D. Requires investor to commit money for a set period of time, such as six months or five years.
   - E. Usually requires a large minimum investment; deals in short-term investments, with interest rate varying daily.
10. True or False. Once you put your money into a retirement account, you can withdraw it any time you wish without penalty.

React

1. Refer to the classified section of a Sunday newspaper in your area. Select job listings comparable to your career goals and survey the jobs available. Evaluate salaries, fringe benefits, and other characteristics that are described.
2. Choose one job listing from the previous activity. Use current income tax and FICA figures to estimate the net income provided by the job. Assume you are married but have no children.
3. Research various sources of savings in your area. Set up a savings plan for yourself assuming you would save $5.00 a week for the next 20 years. How much savings would accumulate?
4. Arrange a field trip to a local commercial bank. Investigate all the banking services that are available. Compare these services with those offered by savings and loan associations, mutual savings banks, and credit unions.
5. Invite a personal financial planner to visit your class. Ask him or her to explain the differences in the total savings you would accumulate by age 65 if you were to start saving for retirement at the ages of 20, 30, 40, and 50.
6. Ask a representative from an area agency on aging to visit your class. Request that he or she discuss typical financial expenses of retired people as well as the adequacy of the usual sources of income (such as Social Security) to meet these expenses.

Reflect

1. If you had a full-time job, would you prefer to be paid weekly, biweekly, or monthly? Why?
2. If you were receiving a paycheck, would you prefer to have the maximum withheld for taxes and possibly get a refund at tax time? Would you prefer to have less withheld, invest it, and be prepared to pay a higher balance at tax time? Give reasons for your answer.
3. Which would you prefer—depositing your paycheck at the bank yourself, or having your employer deposit your paycheck in the bank of your choice electronically? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each method?

Chapter 27

Managing Your Finances

Terms to Know

- budget
- fixed expenses
- flexible expenses
- credit
- installment credit
- finance charges
- noninstallment credit
- revolving credit
- credit bureau
- credit rating
- collateral

After studying this chapter, you will be able to

- create a budget for managing your income and expenses.
- identify various types of credit.
- recognize benefits and pitfalls of credit use.
- evaluate various sources of loans.

You have studied the many choices you have for managing your personal finances. Now you are ready to determine how this information can help you. Your challenge is to use the money you earn to meet your financial obligations and reach your goals.

Once you have landed a job and have an income, you will have to decide how to handle your money. If you are single, you will set up your bank accounts in your own name, manage your own money, and pay your own bills.

If you marry, you will want to determine the most workable method for handling your money as a married person, 27-1. Family income may come from one or both spouses. How to control the spending and how you should set up your banking records are decisions you will have to make as a couple.

Budgeting

Planning ahead is the key to successful personal money management. For many,

27-1 When you marry, you and your spouse should be in agreement about the methods you use to manage your money.

the best way to do this is to follow a budget. A **budget** is a plan for managing income and expenses.

Why Budget?

A budget will help you use your income to meet your needs and reach your goals. If you establish a workable budget and follow it, you will have the peace of mind of knowing that your expenses can be met.

The savings you set aside as a part of your budget will give you a sense of security in facing the future. You will know that funds are available for emergencies. You will also be able to look forward to the day when financial dreams become realities. You will have a sense of competence and control when it comes to financial matters.

A budget should be viewed as a management device, not as a terrible burden. A good budget does not require complicated math, nor should it mean you can't ever splurge on something. A spending plan simply helps you recognize where your money is going. It helps you reach both your short- and long-term goals.

Setting up a Budget

There are several steps to follow in setting up a budget. Whether you are single or married, you will want to follow the same procedure. If you are married, you and your spouse will want to work through these steps together. Budgeting software programs can be useful in helping you allocate funds, keep records, and track progress toward your financial goals.

Define Your Goals

The first step in budgeting is to define your present and future goals. Ask yourself what you need and want now. Then think about what you will need and want during the next year, the next 10 years, and even 20 years from now. How much will you need to save to achieve your long-term goals? If you are married, you may find that your priorities differ from those of your mate. You may need to make some adjustments and compromises. Clearly defined goals may provide you with the incentive to make your financial future secure.

Determine Your Income

The next step in making your budget is to determine your monthly net income or take-home pay. Working with monthly figures is recommended because most household bills are paid once a month. (A few bills are paid only quarterly, semiannually, or annually. These expenses can be averaged on a monthly cost basis for purposes of budgeting.)

Your income may not be based on a regular monthly amount. Perhaps you are paid on a commission basis. In this case, your salary depends on the amount of sales you make. You will therefore have to estimate an average monthly income.

Identify Your Spending Needs

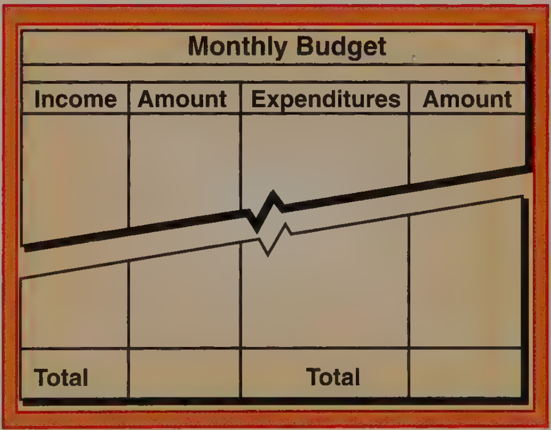
When you live on your own for the first time, or when you first marry, you may have no idea of what your expenditures will be. To be realistic, you would be wise to keep records of your income and expenditures for a month or two before actually setting up a budget. You could use a simple form like the one in 27-2.

It is helpful to divide your expenses into two categories: fixed and flexible. **Fixed expenses** are costs that are predictable and that recur regularly. Examples include monthly rental payments or semiannual insurance payments. **Flexible expenses** fluctuate in amount and may occur less regularly. Examples of flexible expenses include clothing, food, transportation, medical care, and personal and recreational expenditures.

Once you have a good idea of your spending needs, you can list all your income and expenses on a more detailed budget form. See 27-3. Budget books with similar forms are available at many office supply stores. Some financial institutions give them to their customers.

The following are some suggested limits for major categories of spending. You should remember, however, that no two families' incomes or needs are identical.

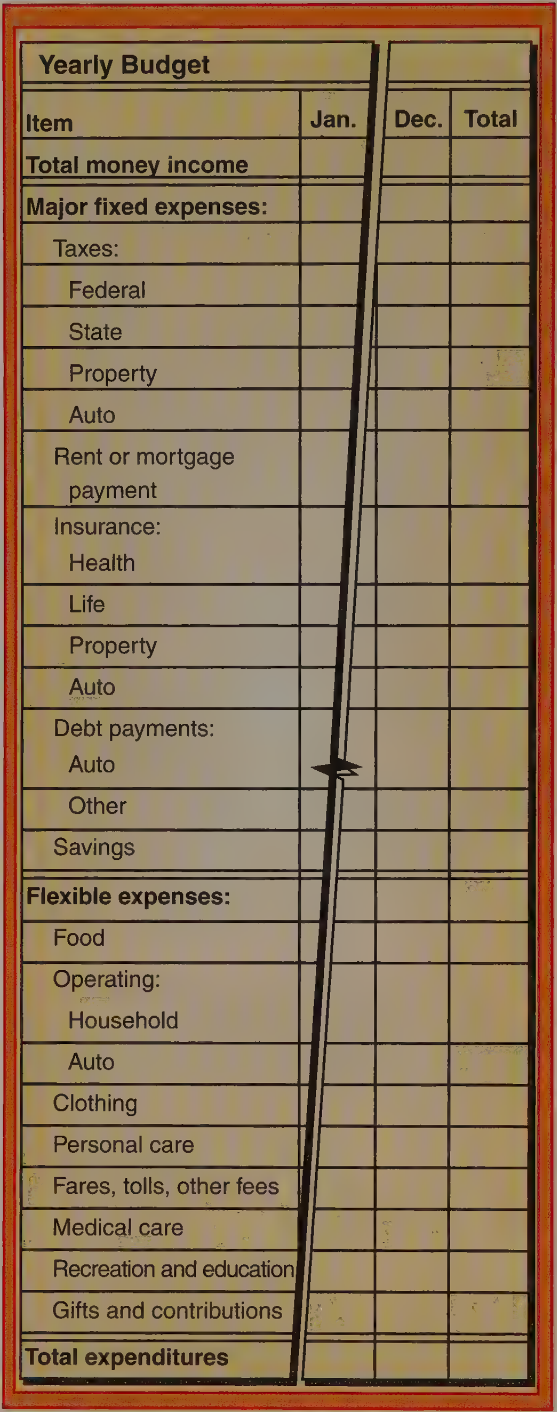
- ***Food.*** The average American family spends between 15 and 20 percent of its net income for food. The amount depends on income, size of family, and individual needs. The percentage spent for food decreases as income increases.
- ***Housing.*** Your housing will cost about 25 to 35 percent of your net income. This includes mortgage or rent, utilities, insurance, and home maintenance costs.
- ***Transportation.*** This runs about 10 percent. If you have two cars and both are used for work, transportation costs may be more than 10 percent of your budget. Carpooling or use of mass transit services may help cut these expenses.
- ***Clothing.*** About 7 percent of your net income will probably be spent for



Monthly Budget

Income	Amount	Expenditures	Amount
Total		Total	

27-2 **Keep a simple list of all income and expenditures for a month or two when you first marry. This will give you a good basis for preparing a budget.**



Yearly Budget

Item	Jan.	Dec.	Total
Total money income			
Major fixed expenses:			
Taxes:			
Federal			
State			
Property			
Auto			
Rent or mortgage payment			
Insurance: Health			
Life			
Property			
Auto			
Debt payments: Auto			
Other			
Savings			
Flexible expenses:			
Food			
Operating:			
Household			
Auto			
Clothing			
Personal care			
Fares, tolls, other fees			
Medical care			
Recreation and education			
Gifts and contributions			
Total expenditures			

27-3 You can use this typical budget form as a guide. You may need to add or delete certain categories to make it fit your personal financial plan.

clothing. This includes new purchases and care of your existing wardrobe. The exact amount may depend on whether you work and the type of clothes you need for work.

- ***Health care.*** Medical insurance and bills vary widely according to your age and state of health. Health insurance is a necessary expense. If you have expenditures associated with special health problems, such as an allergy, these costs should be included. Dental checkups and treatment should also be included.
- ***Savings.*** You should try to save at least 10 percent of your net income. This includes cash savings as well as your life insurance savings. Be sure to increase your savings as your salary increases. Typical long-term goals for which people save include a house, college education, and retirement.
- ***Miscellaneous.*** Miscellaneous costs comprise the most flexible budget category. Educational costs (such as coursework, books, newspapers, and magazines), hair care and grooming supplies, recreational expenses, and charitable contributions should be included in this category. A personal allowance should also include a small sum for each person to spend for whatever he or she pleases, 27-4.

Evaluate Your Budget

Once a month, compare the budgeted figures in each budget category with the amounts that were actually spent. It can be interesting to see where your money has gone. How do you feel about the expenditures? Was the benefit you received from spending in a given category (for example, restaurant meals) worth the expense, or

27-4 A portion of your budget can be set aside for a personal allowance to spend as you please.

would it have been just as easy to have spent less (by planning a few more meals at home)?

Revise Your Budget as Needed

If you find that your expenditures exceed budgeted levels, look for places to cut back in the following month. Often the easiest way to accomplish this is to decrease spending a little in each of several categories.

Deliberately underspending in a category for several months may allow you to spend more at a later time. For example, some people like to postpone expenditures on higher-cost clothing items (such as coats and suits) until these items go on sale and then to make major purchases.

A good budget can help you make financial decisions. If you find you are spending too much, you will be able to review your records and find the items that are out of line. If you have extra money, you may want to look into investments in addition to a savings account.

Your spending plan has to be uniquely geared to your needs. Do not be discouraged if it does not always fit perfectly with reality. The important thing is you learn to control your finances and plan ahead. As time goes by, you will become more experienced in monitoring and modifying your budget.

Using Credit

Another way of achieving goals may involve the use of credit. When you use **credit**, you are spending future income for goods and services you are receiving now. "Buy now, pay later" has almost become a way of life in this country. We often live in a state of controlled debt, buying things on time with wallets full of credit cards, 27-5. Buying on credit is not necessarily bad. Wisely used credit can lead to a higher level of living. However, credit used unwisely can lead to misery.

Types of Credit

Credit can be used to pay for almost anything you wish to buy, including houses, cars, clothes, and vacations. You can choose from a variety of types of credit, depending on your needs and preferences.

When you use **installment credit**, you agree to pay for a purchase in several

27-5 **People use credit cards for many daily purchases. They are using cash less often.**

regular payments. This type of credit is generally used for personal loans or for large purchases such as cars, appliances, or furniture. A plan of installment payments is set up to cover the cost of the item plus **finance charges** (the dollar amount the credit will cost you). Finance charges consist primarily of interest payments. Interest is a charge made for using borrowed money.

With **noninstallment credit**, you do not pay for the item or service as you receive it, but you pay the full charge in one payment. Examples of noninstallment credit include 30-day charge accounts, single payment loans, and credit extended for services from doctors, dentists, and utility companies. The amount may or may not include interest, depending on the goods and services you have received.

On a **revolving credit** plan, you are allowed to make purchases up to a specified amount, called your *line of credit*. You pay a percentage of the balance each month, plus interest charges, to keep the account "revolving." You can continue to charge on this account as long as you pay the interest charges and the total bill remains within the specified limit. You might use revolving credit to make purchases at stores, gas stations, and restaurants.

Credit Cards

Credit cards are the most common type of credit used in the United States. See 27-6. They operate on the basis of either noninstallment credit or revolving credit. They offer both advantages and disadvantages.

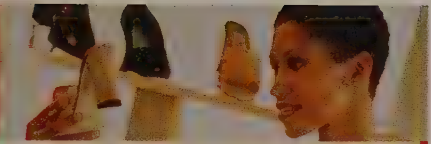
Advantages of Using Credit Cards

The main advantages of credit cards are the following:

- They are convenient.
- They are safer since they eliminate the need to carry a lot of cash.
- They allow you to pay bills once a month. The statements and receipts provide you with a record of many of your expenses and payments.

27-6 **Credit cards represent the most common type of credit. They can be used to buy everything from gasoline to plane tickets.**

Contemporary Concerns of Today's Teens



Your Credit Card: Staying in Control

Due to strong competition among credit card companies, young people are finding it easier to get credit cards—often before they have sufficient financial experience to use them wisely. Consumers with credit cards have opportunities to spend beyond their means. If they overspend, however, they must pay a price—not only in interest but in financial worry.

Financial counselors suggest the following tips for staying in control:

- Keep careful track of each purchase you charge to your credit card each month, so that you are less tempted to overspend.
- If at all possible, pay off the entire balance each month. This allows you to avoid interest charges and indebtedness. It also gives you peace of mind because you know that the maximum amount of credit will be available in case of an emergency.
- Beware if you find yourself making only the minimum monthly payments on your balance. This often shows that you are headed for trouble.
- If necessary, put away your credit card for several months to get out of the habit of overusing it.
- Avoid getting too many credit cards. Each credit card means another opportunity to overspend. Moreover, the number of credit cards you own becomes part of your credit history. Consumers with too many cards are viewed as greater credit risks.

Consumers who abuse credit cards can plunge themselves into debt and financial worry. Used wisely, however, credit cards can play a constructive role in their personal and family finances.

- You can have the item or service right away and pay for it later, which is especially helpful in an emergency.

Disadvantages of Using Credit Cards

Credit cards have some disadvantages. Your credit cards can be stolen or lost. If someone else uses them, you may be held responsible for part of the cost.

Consumers purchasing merchandise from a company on-line must be especially careful about providing their credit card numbers. To be safe, confidentiality must be guaranteed. Many companies will also guarantee that you pay nothing if unauthorized charges are made to your card.

Credit cards cost money. Lenders charge interest on the money they loan you. The longer you take to pay off credit card debt, the more interest you will pay. The *minimum finance charge* is the least amount you will have to pay each month if you have a balance on a credit card. A *grace period* is the length of time you have to pay your bill before interest is charged on your purchases. Most companies offer 25-day grace periods. Also, there may be *transaction fees.* These are fees you have to pay for cash advances, late payments, or charging over your credit limit. In addition, there may be an *annual fee.* This is a charge you pay once a year for the right to use the credit card. Not all creditors charge an annual fee.

A serious disadvantage of credit cards is that spending becomes so easy, you may overspend. You may find yourself with a debt so large that you make only the minimum payment each month—at the high interest rates typical of credit cards. It may take you months or even years to recover from a spending spree.

If you decide to use one or more credit cards, try to avoid sinking into debt. To resist the temptation to overspend, some consumers strictly limit the number of credit cards they own. Others resolve to use their credit cards only for emergencies or for rare, large one-time purchases. People who abuse their credit card privileges often find these privileges—as well as their cards—have been revoked. They may find it difficult to obtain credit in the future.

How to Obtain Credit

Before a company decides to extend you credit, it must be certain you are a good risk. You will have to complete an application and provide information about your financial history. Then the company will investigate your background and check on your ability to pay by contacting a credit bureau. **Credit bureaus** collect information on the credit practices of individuals and make this information available to businesses. This protects stores and businesses from phony or misleading applications.

If you have previously had credit, your **credit rating** is determined by how promptly you have paid your debts. Your credit rating is determined by your bill payment history, current unpaid bills, available credit, and other related information. If you do not have a credit record, the issuing company will weigh several factors. They will consider your employment status, whether you are a student, and your assets (such as a savings account or car). Suggestions for getting first-time credit are presented in 27-7.

If you are rejected for credit, you have the right to check your credit report for damaging information. The credit bureau must show you your file. If you claim the information in your file is false, the credit bureau must reinvestigate within 30 days. If you are right, everyone who received the bad report in the past six months will get a correction at your request.

Making Credit Work for You

Credit is convenient to use. It also allows you to enjoy your purchases while you pay for them. However, it can be expensive. Before you use credit, you should be sure you will be able to manage the payments without sacrificing other important needs.

Think before you buy something with credit. Don't buy an item just because it is

Getting First-Time Credit

- Open checking and savings accounts. Responsible management of bank accounts is a sign of good financial character. Besides, savings can sometimes be used as collateral for a loan.
- If you are old enough to qualify, accept a standard credit card that may arrive unsolicited in the mail and use it responsibly.
- Open a charge account at a store where your parents already have an account. Many stores offer special teenage accounts with low credit limits.
- If your parents belong to a credit union, check their rules. Many credit unions automatically grant membership to the children of members.
- Offer to make a big down payment. A lender might be more willing to let you make installment payments if you can pay a large sum of money "up front."
- Get a cosigner for a loan. A parent, relative, or other adult might agree to "guarantee" that your credit is good. If you repay the money on time, the store may be willing to give you credit by yourself next time.

27-7 Getting credit for the first time can be difficult for young people. These tips may help you.

easy to use your credit card. Instead, be sure that it is something you really want or need. For a major purchase, consider convenience versus cost. Do you need to have it now? Is it worth the cost of credit, or can you wait until you have saved enough money to buy it with cash?

The main cost of credit is for interest. Because interest can be figured in different ways, comparing credit costs is difficult. To help consumers, the federal *Truth-in-Lending Act* was passed. Under this act, all creditors must give you the same kind of information, which makes comparison shopping easier. You must be told the interest rate or the annual percentage rate (APR). APRs on credit cards can vary from 8 percent to 21 percent. You must also be told the number and amount of payments you will have to make, the total amount you will have paid after making all the payments, and the finance charge. It is to your advantage to shop around. Consider several different credit sources. Compare the information you receive, and choose the best deal. This kind of shopping can save you a lot of money. See the examples given in 27-8.

Before you sign a credit contract, read it thoroughly. If you have questions, do not be afraid to ask them. Be sure you understand everything in the contract. Also check to see that the contract contains the same information you were given earlier as you were comparison shopping. After you have signed the contract, be sure to get a copy of it. Keep it in your files so you can refer to it if necessary.

Once you have established a credit history (good or bad), it is likely to follow you. Protect your credit rating by keeping the promises you made when you signed the credit contract. Make your payments on time and in the correct amount. If for some reason you must miss a payment, contact the creditor at once to make special arrangements.

Credit managed well can be a big help to consumers. Managed poorly, however, credit can cause major financial problems.

Loans

Sometimes it is wise or necessary to obtain a loan. You may want, for example, to borrow money to buy a home or invest in further education. Besides knowing the types of credit that can be used, you need to know what loan sources are available. This will help you comparison shop for your best deal. The following are possible sources of loans:

- *Life insurance.* You can borrow from your life insurance if it is a type that builds a cash value. If you repay the loan (with interest) and continue to pay premiums on your policy, your death benefit will remain the same. If you do not repay the loan, this amount will be deducted from the amount paid to the beneficiary at the time of your death. The interest rate is generally low for this type of loan.
- *Credit unions.* Credit unions for employees of a company or members of a union or professional organization provide loans for their members. They usually offer a low interest rate.
- *Financial institutions.* Banks and savings and loan associations may offer lower interest rates than many of the other sources. They also give you the convenience of completing most of your financial transactions under one roof, 27-9.
- *Store dealer financing.* If you buy an item such as a car from a dealer, you may be able to finance it through the same company. However, the cost of the credit may be high. The dealer earns a profit from the loan as well as from the merchandise sold to you.
- *Finance companies.* Money is often available (with less checking of your credit history) from a finance company. Usually you are able to borrow money quickly, but the interest rate is extremely high—sometimes over 45 percent.
- *Pawnbrokers.* If you have an item to use as **collateral** (security for a loan) and you need money quickly, you can seek credit from a pawnbroker. If you do not repay the loan within the stated time with the accompanying high

Six Ways to Buy a $750 TV Set

Buying Method	Annual Percentage Rate	Monthly Payments Over Two Years	Total Finance Charges	Total Cost
Cash				$750.00
Credit Union	10.5%	$ 34.78	$ 84.77	834.77
Commercial Bank	12%	35.31	97.32	847.32
Store Loan or Contract Plan	19%	37.81	157.35	907.35
Credit Card	21%	38.54	174.93	924.93
Finance Company	27%	40.79	228.85	978.85

27-8 Buying an item with credit can be costly. Compare loan information from various sources to get the best deal.

interest, the pawnbroker can sell the item you gave as collateral.

- ***Family and friends.*** If a family member or friend offers you a loan and you accept, arrange it as a legitimate business deal. Both of you should sign an agreement that states the interest rate and all the other terms. Using family and friends for sources of money is not always the wisest choice, even if they make the original offer. In such cases, resentments or perceptions of personal obligation may complicate a relationship.

27-9 **Local banks can be a convenient source of credit.**

Chapter 27 Check Your Knowledge

Summary

- There are a variety of options for managing financial matters. The best arrangement is the one that works best for you and your family.
- A budget is a plan for managing income and expenses. It helps you recognize where your money is going.
- Before constructing a budget, you may need to record your expenses for a few months so you know what your spending needs are.
- By evaluating your income and expenses through budgeting, you will be able to manage your money more successfully to meet your wants and needs.
- Using credit can allow you to enjoy a higher level of living, but it can also lead to major financial problems.
- Common types of credit include installment, noninstallment, and revolving credit.
- Before a company decides to offer you credit, it will investigate your credit history. Your credit rating is influenced by your record of debt repayment in the past.
- The main cost of credit is interest. The Truth-in-Lending Act requires every creditor to give you the same kind of information so you can compare various arrangements more easily.
- Before you sign a credit contract, read it thoroughly. If you have questions, do not be afraid to ask.
- Typical loan sources are life insurance policies, credit unions, banks, store dealers, finance companies, pawnbrokers, and family and friends. Using family and friends is not always the wisest choice because of the relationship complications that can result.

Review

1. Name three reasons for following a budget.
2. What should you do for a month or two in order to set up a realistic budget?
3. Explain the differences between fixed expenses and flexible expenses.
4. True or False. When you use installment credit, you agree to pay for a purchase in several regular payments.
5. Describe a revolving credit plan.
6. State two advantages and two disadvantages of using credit cards.
7. In addition to interest charges, what other charges might credit card companies add to your bill?
8. What is the function of credit bureaus?
9. True or False. If you are rejected for credit, you have the right to check your credit report for damaging information.
10. Once you have been given credit, how can you protect your credit rating?
11. True or False. Finance companies usually offer loans at low interest rates.

React

1. Set up a budget for families in three different stages of the life cycle. Consider the various wants and needs of each family as you prepare a suitable budget for each.
2. Select a car you would like to buy. Compare the costs of purchasing it with cash, a loan from a financial institution, or the financial services of the dealership.

(continued)

3. Invite a speaker to class to discuss credit bureaus. Prepare a list of questions to ask the speaker, such as the following:
    - What background information on credit users is kept on file?
    - How is information made available to businesses?
    - If a person has never bought anything with credit, how can credit be established?
    - What information can be damaging in a file?
    - If a mistake has been made concerning a person's financial transactions, what can be done?
4. Ask a family financial counselor to visit your class to discuss
    - how families get into financial trouble (for example, high levels of indebtedness)
    - what strategies can be used to help families recover from financial trouble
    - how a family can avoid developing financial problems

Reflect

1. How do you feel about having a budget? What are the major factors influencing your attitude?
2. Evaluate the following statement: I never use credit, so I don't need a credit card.
3. Some people sink so far into credit card debt that they can only manage to make their monthly minimum payments, leaving thousands of dollars unrepaid each month at a high rate of interest. If your friend or relative were in this situation, what advice would you give?
4. Many credit card companies offer credit cards to beginning college students. Why do you think they do this? What problems can result?
5. As a young adult, would you borrow money from your parents? As a parent, how would you feel if your young-adult child came to you and asked for a loan?

Glossary

A

abstinence. Choosing to refrain from some activity, such as using drugs or having sexual intercourse. (9)

accommodation. Form of marital adjustment in which two partners recognize and accept differences in each other. (14)

acquaintance rape. Occurs when a person the victim knows and trusts forces or pressures the victim into nonconsenting sexual intercourse. (11)

acquired traits. Human traits developed as a result of environmental factors. (1)

active listening. Type of listening in which a person indicates to the sender that a message has been heard and understood, encouraging further communication. (10)

addiction. The abuse of any drug that results in a physical or psychological need for the drug. (8)

adjustable life insurance. Flexible insurance that allows the insured to alter the coverage as the need for protection and the ability to pay for it change. (25)

advertising. Information about goods and services given to consumers in order to stimulate sales. (24)

agency adoption. Procedure in which the birthparents relinquish their child to an adoption agency rather than directly to adoptive parents. The agency then places the child with a carefully selected adoptive family. (9)

AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome). Condition that develops when the HIV virus attacks the immune system of the body, creating a weakness to infections. (9)

alcoholic. A person who suffers from a condition manifested by compulsive, obsessive drinking that is beyond the person's control. (8)

alimony. Money paid by the primary wage earner to the other marriage partner during and after a divorce. (20)

allowance. Money given by parents to children for their personal needs. (19)

ambivalence. Being attracted to and repelled by someone at the same time. (11)

amniocentesis. Process in which a long, thin needle is inserted into the uterus and part of the fluid surrounding the fetus is drawn out and analyzed for abnormalities. (16)

amnio-chorionic membrane (bag of waters). A membrane formed by the joining of two membranes, the amnion and chorion, that form around the developing fetus. (17)

amniotic fluid. Fluid that completely surrounds the fetus. (17)

amotivational syndrome. Behavior pattern typical of long-term marijuana users in which they have trouble remembering things and concentrating. They become apathetic and lethargic, adopting a "drop-out" personality. (8)

anabolic steroids. Synthetic testosterone-like drugs that have tissue-building properties. (8)

anemic. Condition in which people have a low level of hemoglobin in their blood caused by a deficiency of iron in the diet. (9)

annulment. A court order stating a legal marriage never took place. (22)

anorexia nervosa. An eating disorder in which people have an intense fear of being obese and a distorted image of their bodies. They therefore starve themselves. (7)

apprenticeship. A formal, registered program for training an individual in a skilled craft or trade. (6)

aptitudes. Potential for special talents. (6)

artificial insemination. Method of treating infertility in which a physician places sperm directly in the upper part of a woman's vagina or uterus. (16)

assertive. Sure and confident, expressing feelings directly, asking for what one wants, and refusing what one doesn't want. (10)

assign the lease. To transfer the entire unexpired portion of a lease to someone else, thus giving up any responsibility for it. (24)

atheist. One who denies the existence of a god. (12)

attitude. A feeling or mental position that causes a person to react to a situation, concept, or object in a characteristic way. (4)

authority figures. People who make final decisions, such as parents, teachers, and the police. (3)

Automated Teller Machines (ATMs). Convenient computerized machines that facilitate banking transactions at numerous locations 24 hours a day. (26)

autonomy. The freedom of self-direction achieved by learning to make decisions for oneself and taking pride in one's accomplishments. (4)

autopsy. Detailed physical examination of a dead body usually performed to determine the cause of death. (23)

autosomes. Any chromosome that is not a sex chromosome. (2)

B

Babinski reflex. Reflex exhibited by newborns that causes them to extend their toes when the soles of their feet are touched. (18)

bailout. Money loaned by family or friends to finance gambling debts. (21)

bait-and-switch advertising. Type of advertising in which a store offers an item (the bait) at a very low price to get you to come into the store. Once there, the store owner may try to redirect (switch) your attention to other more expensive items. (24)

bank statement. A record of every deposit and every check that passed through an account during a month. (26)

basic medical insurance. Health insurance that generally pays for hospitalization (room, board, and nursing services), medications, and sometimes X rays and lab tests. (25)

beneficiaries. Persons designated by a life insurance policyholder to receive the benefits of the policy upon the policyholder's death; also a person who is named in a will to receive a deceased person's property. (23)

bigamy. Crime in which a person enters a second marriage before the first one is dissolved. (13)

bigots. People who have strong prejudices. (4)

biodegradable. Decomposes by natural biological processes. (24)

blood pooling. The accumulation of blood in the large muscles of the legs, which causes the heart and brain to be deprived of an adequate blood supply. (7)

blood types. One of four main groups into which human blood can be classified: O, A, B, and AB. (2)

body language. A form of nonverbal communication in which a person reveals inner feelings through gestures. (10)

bonding. Formation of close emotional ties between a mother and her baby that begins at the moment of birth. (17)

budget. A plan for managing income and expenses. (27)

bulimia. An eating disorder in which people eat large amounts of food and then feel guilty and purge themselves of the food by vomiting or taking laxatives. (7)

bullying. The infliction of physical, verbal, or emotional abuse on another person. (10)

C

career. A series of jobs, usually in the same or related fields. It often includes a progression of jobs that may lead to advancement and personal growth. (6)

career plan. A list of your short- and long-term career goals and the things you need to do to achieve them. (6)

cash value. The amount of money the policyholder would receive if the policy is surrendered before his or her death or when it matures. (25)

cashier's check. Check drawn by a bank on its own funds and signed by a bank officer. (26)

casual dating. Dating several people at the same time with no long-term commitment to one person. (11)

ceremonial wedding. Wedding performed by a religious officiate. (13)

certificate of deposit (CD). Money left on deposit for a specific period of time to earn a higher rate of interest. (26)

certified check. A personal check with a bank's guarantee that the check will be paid. (26)

cesarean section. Method of childbirth in which the walls of the abdomen and uterus are cut and the baby is lifted out of the uterus. (17)

character. A sense of right and wrong that guides a person's behavior. (1)

chasing. Attempting to win back what one has lost while gambling. (21)

child abuse and neglect. Physical and mental injury, sexual abuse, negligent treatment, or maltreatment of a child under the age of 18 by a person who is responsible for the child's welfare. (21)

child support. Payments made by the noncustodial parent for the financial support of the children. (22)

chlamydia. Widespread sexually transmitted disease that can be cured when detected, but detection may be difficult since most victims have no symptoms. (9)

cholesterol. A fat-like substance in blood strongly associated with heart disease. (7)

chosen role. Role a person voluntarily assumes, such as husband, wife, father, or mother. (15)

chromosome. Thread-like structure that carries hereditary information in the form of genes. Humans have 23 pairs of chromosomes in every cell of their bodies. (2)

citizen. A person who owes loyalty to a government and, in return, is entitled to the protection of the government. (1)

citizenship. The status of being a citizen, which gives you both rights and responsibilities. (1)

civil wedding. Wedding performed by a judicial official. (13)

climacteric. Changes that occur in men during middle age when hormone production diminishes, resulting in shifts in moods and emotions. (23)

clique. A narrow, exclusive group of people held together by common interests, views, and purposes. (10)

closed adoption. Adoption procedure in which the birthparents do not meet or know the adoptive parents. (9)

codependency. Set of maladaptive, compulsive behaviors learned by family members when the family is experiencing great emotional pain and stress. (21)

coinsurance. Clause in an insurance policy that states the policyholder will pay a certain percentage of the costs, perhaps 20 to 25 percent, while the insurance company pays the remaining portion of the costs. (25)

collateral. Security for a loan. (27)

collusion. Fraud against the court that occurs when a couple want a divorce but have no legal grounds, so they set up necessary grounds for divorce. (22)

commercial bank. Financial institution owned by stockholders and operated for profit. (26)

common-law marriage. A lifestyle in which a man and a woman live together with the intention of being husband and wife and present themselves in public as such. Common-law marriages are legally binding in some states. (13)

communication. Any means by which one person shares a message with another person. (10)

community property. Property acquired through the labors of either spouse during their marriage and owned equally by both spouses. (22)

comparison shopping. Looking at different brands of the same or similar products within a store or among several stores to compare price and quality. (24)

compensation. Using a substitute method to achieve a desired goal. (4)

complementary needs. Tendency to seek a partner who is strong in areas where you are weak. (12)

compressed work week. Option allowing employees to work 40 hours (a typical work week) in three or four days. (20)

compromise. Form of adjustment in which both partners give in and find a satisfactory agreement for both. (14)

compulsive gambler. Someone who loses control over gambling and continues to gamble despite the harmful consequences. (21)

conception. Fertilization that occurs when a sperm and egg unite and pregnancy begins. (17)

concession. Form of adjustment in which one person must win and one must lose. (14)

condominium. Common ownership of a residential property. (24)

condonation. In a divorce, once the guilty party has been condoned or forgiven for a certain action, that action cannot be the grounds for divorce. (22)

conflict resolution. A form of mediation that is used to resolve disagreements in a positive way. (10)

congenital twins. Identical twins who are born physically linked because the fertilized egg failed to split completely apart. (2)

connivance. A defense to prevent a divorce in which the person suing for divorce is found guilty of causing the condition used as grounds for the divorce. (22)

consanguineous marriage. Marriage of people related by blood. (13)

consumer. Any person who buys goods and services. (24)

contested divorce. A divorce procedure in which a person who wants to fight the divorce files an answer and tries to prove that no grounds exist. (22)

convenience foods. Foods that have been partially or fully prepared in order to save time. (24)

conversion. Act of transferring the energy of a desire one cannot express into a physical symptom or complaint; a defense mechanism. (4)

cooperative play. Form of play in which a child chooses to interact with one or more other children. (19)

cost-effective. Economical in terms of benefits yielded by money spent. (20)

cover letter. Letter sent with a resume meant to introduce the accompanying material. (6)

credit. Use of future income for goods and services currently received. (27)

credit bureau. Agency that collects information on the credit practices of individuals and makes this information available to businesses. (27)

credit rating. A rating based on how promptly a person pays his or her debts. (27)

credit union. A nonprofit financial institution owned by and operated for the benefit of its members. (26)

crisis. A crucial time or event that causes changes in a person's life and has no ready solution. (21)

culture. The total social environment of a people or group. (3)

custody. Parental right to raise the child in the home and to make decisions about the child's care, upbringing, and overall welfare. (22)

D

date rape. Occurs when a person the victim is dating forces or pressures the victim into nonconsenting sexual intercourse. (11)

debit card. A card used to transfer money from your bank account to a store's account when making a purchase. (26)

decision-making process. A method of making decisions and solving problems that is a step-by-step process. (5)

deductible. Clause in an insurance policy that states the insured will pay an agreed-upon portion of the total expense, which may be the first $250, $500, or even $1,000 of the bill. (25)

deductions. Money subtracted from a person's wages for such items as income tax and social security. (26)

default. Failure to pay back a loan. (27)

defense mechanisms. Automatic and involuntary ways people react to anxiety-producing events or threats. (4)

depressants. Drugs, also called sedatives, that slow down the central nervous system. (8)

depression. A "whole-body" illness, involving the body, mood, and thoughts. (4)

desertion. Abandoning the marital partner. (22)

designer drugs. Manufactured drugs that have slightly altered formulas, but closely resemble other illegal drugs such as cocaine. (8)

destructive quarreling. Arguments in which partners attack each other's self-esteem, weakening the relationship and not solving the problem. (14)

Dietary Guidelines for Americans. A list of recommendations developed by the federal government for making healthful food choices. (7)

direct attack. In response to a threat to a person's self-esteem, the person attacks the source of the threat. (4)

direct deposit. An employer's payroll monies are electronically transferred directly into their employees' personal checking or savings accounts. (26)

disability income insurance. Health insurance that protects a person or family from loss of income due to sickness or disabling injury. (25)

discipline. The use of different methods and techniques to teach children self-control and limits. (19)

disillusionment. The shattering of illusions or unrealistic ideas. (14)

displaced homemakers. Longtime homemakers whose husbands have left or remarried and whose children have grown and who find themselves unexpectedly dependent on their own resources for financial security. (20)

displacement. Transferring an emotion connected with one person or thing to an unrelated person or thing; a defense mechanism. (4)

divorce. A legal dissolution of the marriage contract. (22)

domestic violence. Violence between intimate friends or family members, including spouses, children, or elders. (21)

dominant. More influential or prevalent. (2)

down payment. The initial payment made to buy a home or item, which is usually a percentage of the total purchase price. (24)

drug. A substance, other than food, that has an effect on one or more systems of the body, especially the central nervous system. (8)

drug abuse. Deliberately taking a substance for other than its intended purpose and in a manner that can result in damage to the person's health or his or her ability to function. (8)

drug misuse. Taking a substance for its intended purpose, but not in the appropriate amount, frequency, strength, or manner. (8)

drug use. The taking of a drug for its intended purposes, in the appropriate amount, frequency, strength, and manner. (8)

dual-career families. Families in which both the husband and the wife are employed. (20)

dysfunctional family. Family system in which one or more family members do not fulfill their responsibilities, throwing the system out of balance. (15)

E

ecology. The science of relationships between living things and their environment. (24)

ecosystem. Community of living things together with their physical environment. (24)

embryo. Term describing the developing baby from implantation through the eighth week of pregnancy. (17)

emotional abuse. Parents continually making demands that their children are not capable of meeting, then criticizing and humiliating the children for not living up to their demands. (21)

emotional development/growth. The continuing refinement of emotions or mental states that causes a person to act in a certain way. (1, 18)

emotional neglect. The failure to provide children with love and affection. (21)

empathy. The process of seeing things from another person's view. (10)

employee-assistance programs (EAPs). Groups that counsel employees faced with problems such as alcoholism or other substance abuse, family illness, financial debt, or finding child or elder care. (20)

empty nest syndrome. Feelings of uselessness and depression some parents feel after their children have left home. (23)

enabler. Someone who unknowingly acts in ways that contribute to an addict's drug use. (21)

endometrium. Inner lining of the uterus where the fertilized egg implants. (17)

endorse. To sign the back of a check in order to transfer it to another person or institution. (26)

Enoch Arden divorce. Divorce that may be granted if a married person disappears for a stated period of time, usually five to seven years, and cannot be located. (22)

entrepreneurship. Starting and owning your own business. (6)

environment. All the conditions, objects, and circumstances that surround an individual. (1)

environmental responsibility. Feeling of personal accountability for protecting the environment. (24)

ethical standards. Standards of behavior that are based on a set of moral principles or personal priorities. These principles guide the conduct of a group or society, enabling people to live and work in a harmonious manner. (6)

exemptions. Sources or amounts of income that are not taxed. (26)

extended kinship family. Family structure in which several generations of a family, such as grandparents, parents, and children, and sometimes aunts, uncles, and cousins, live together. (15)

F

face amount. The amount of money paid to the beneficiary of a life insurance policy upon the policyholder's death. (25)

family. A group of two or more persons, related by blood, marriage, or adoption, who reside together in a household. (15)

Family and Medical Leave Act. A law that entitles workers to 12 weeks of unpaid leave per year following the birth or adoption of a child. This time can also be used to care for a seriously ill relative or to take care of a serious personal health condition. (20)

family life cycle. The five stages of change through which families pass as they expand and contract in size. (15)

family-centered childbirth. Childbirth method based on the belief that birth affects the family as a unit as well as each individual family member. (17)

family-friendly policies. Policies and programs offered by employers that help employees meet their family responsibilities. (20)

feedback. Communicating to another person how you feel about what was said. (10)

fetal alcohol syndrome. A pattern of physical and mental birth defects often present in children born of alcoholic mothers. (17)

fetus. Term describing the developing baby from the ninth week of pregnancy until birth. (17)

finance charge. The dollar amount the use of credit will cost, consisting primarily of interest payments. (27)

fixed expenses. Costs that are predictable and that recur regularly. (27)

flexible expenses. Costs that fluctuate in amount and may occur less regularly. (27)

flextime. Option allowing the worker to choose his or her own working hours, subject to certain rules. (20)

fontanel. Open space between the bones of a newborn's head that allows the bones of the baby's skull to move together and make birth easier. (18)

foster parenting. System that provides children with substitute families while their parents are unable to care for them. (15)

fraternal twins. Twins resulting from two eggs fertilized by two sperm. They are no more alike than brother and sister except that they are born at the same time. (2)

fringe benefits. Nonwage extras provided by an employer in addition to a regular paycheck. (20)

functional family. Family system in which all family members fulfill their roles and responsibilities. (15)

G

gene. The basic unit of heredity, which carries all the characteristics that will be transferred. (2)

generativity. Concern for others beyond a person's immediate family and especially for future generations. (4)

genetic counseling. Advice given by a physician to prospective parents on matters of heredity. (16)

genital warts. Sexually transmitted disease caused by a virus. (9)

given role. Role acquired when a person is born into a family, such as son, daughter, sister, or brother. (15)

goal. Something a person wants to achieve or have. (1)

gonorrhea. A highly contagious sexually transmitted disease caused by a bacterium. (9)

grasp reflex. Reflex exhibited by newborns that causes them to close their hands tightly when their palms are touched. (18)

gross income. The total income earned before deductions are made. (26)

group dating. Form of dating in which there is more emphasis on groups of people than on couples. (11)

growth pattern. Unique way a person grows; includes chronological, physical, intellectual, emotional, social, and philosophical areas of growth. (1)

H

habituation. A term used to describe psychological dependence. (8)

halfway houses. Centers where runaways can receive care as well as counseling. (21)

hallucinogens. Mind-altering drugs that cause hallucinations with frightening mental experiences. (8)

hazing. A social group's intentional infliction of physical or emotional abuse on prospective group members as the "price" for acceptance by the group. (10)

health maintenance organization (HMO). A method of receiving and paying for health care where you pay a set fee on a regular basis. When you need health care, you go to a physician associated with the HMO. You receive whatever care you need, usually with no deductible and no coinsurance payment. (25)

hemoglobin. A component of blood that carries oxygen to all the cells of the body. (7)

heredity. The sum of the traits that are passed from ancestors to descendants. (1)

herpes. Viral infections that occur in different forms, one of which is a sexually transmitted disease and may be called herpes simplex virus type 2, herpes II, or genital herpes. (9)

HIV (**human immunodeficiency virus**). Virus that attacks the immune system of the body, causing AIDS. (9)

homeowner's insurance. Insurance that covers damage to, or loss of, your home as well as the personal property inside your home. (25)

hospice. A medical facility designed for people who have only a few weeks or months to live, which provides a more homelike atmosphere than that of a hospital. Hospice-type care can also be provided in the home. (23)

human resources. Resources that come from within a person and from other people who give support in some way. They include health, energy, time, personality characteristics, and character traits. (5)

I

idealization. Valuing something far more than it is worth; a defense mechanism. (4)

identical twins. Twins resulting from a single fertilized egg that divides. They have the same hereditary factors, so they are always of the same sex. (2)

identity. Sense of who you are and what your roles are in society. (3)

immunization. Injections of vaccines that prevent people from getting certain diseases, such as diphtheria, whooping cough, tetanus, and polio. (19)

impulse buying. Unplanned or "spur of the moment" buying. (24)

incest. Sexual activity between persons who are closely related. (21)

independent adoption. Birthparents go through the legal process of placing their baby directly with adoptive parents without the assistance of an adoption agency. (9)

Individual Retirement Account (**IRA**). An account to which taxpayers may make annual contributions up to a set amount. Taxes may or may not be paid on the contributions, but interest earnings are not taxed until the money is withdrawn. (26)

infatuation. Foolish, extreme attraction that does not last. (11)

inferiority. Feelings of inadequacy and unimportance. (4)

infertility. The inability of a couple to conceive despite having intercourse regularly for at least a year. (16)

inhalants. Substances giving off fumes that may produce a sensation comparable to alcohol intoxication when inhaled. (8)

inherited traits. Human traits determined by heredity. (1)

initiative. Desire to begin action. (4)

installment credit. Credit plan in which a person agrees to pay for a purchase in several regular payments. (27)

integrity. A state of being complete and satisfied with life. (4)

intellectual development. Development in the areas of perception, attention, association, and other aspects of the mind. (18)

interest. A specified annual percentage of the amount of money in a savings program. (26) A charge made for using borrowed money. (27)

intergenerational care giving. Care provided for both older and younger generations by the middle generation. (23)

intermittency. Process of coming and going; occurring in interrupted sequences; not continuous. (14)

Internet. The worldwide network of computers. (6)

intervention. A means of forcing a person such as an alcoholic or addict to look at his or her behavior without the mask of denial. (21)

intestate. Having died without leaving a will. (23)

intimacy. A sense of familiarity that develops over a long and close association. (11)

in vitro fertilization. Process to achieve pregnancy in which an egg is removed from a woman's ovary, fertilized in a glass dish, and implanted back into the uterus. (16)

J

job. A group of tasks performed by a worker, usually to earn money. (6)

job sharing. Option in which companies allow two employees to share one full-time job. (20)

K

Keogh plans. Plans designed to help self-employed people establish tax-deferred retirement funds for themselves and their employees. (26)

L

lactation. The secretion of milk from the breasts. (17)

Lamaze method. Method of childbirth based on the theory that the pain of childbirth can be controlled by the woman. (17)

large muscle development. Improving ability to use the large muscles of the body, such as those of the trunk, neck, legs, and arms. (18)

latchkey children or children in self-care. Children who are regularly left without direct adult supervision before or after school. (19)

leadership. The ability to lead and influence others. (6)

lease. A written, legally binding rental agreement. (24)

Leboyer method. Method of childbirth focusing on making the birth experience of the baby less shocking and more comforting. (17)

legal separation. Court order that allows a couple to live in separate households but does not end their marriage. (22)

leisure time. Time free from work and other duties. (19)

life insurance. Insurance protection against loss of income due to the death of the insured. (25)

lifespan development. The changes and challenges that come with each stage of life throughout the human lifespan. (23)

lifestyle. A set of behaviors adopted by personal choice. (9)

lightening. Term applied to the sinking of the uterus downward and forward toward the end of pregnancy; allows the woman to breath more easily because it relieves abdominal pressure. (17)

living will. Legal document allowing people to choose whether or not they want to be kept alive when there is apparently no hope for them to recover. (23)

long-term care insurance. Insurance designed to help people protect their assets in the event of a prolonged illness or convalescence. (25)

long-term goals. Goals a person hopes to achieve next year or several years from now. (5)

love. A strong feeling of personal attachment between friends or family members; tender and compassionate affection shared between two people. (11)

M

major medical insurance. Policy that begins paying when the basic insurance coverage stops. It extends the basic policy and pays for additional hospital care due to major illness or serious injury, protecting people from huge medical bills that could ruin them financially. (25)

manage. To direct, control, or administer. (5)

management process. Consists of four steps: setting a goal, making a plan that includes the use of resources, carrying out the plan, and evaluating. (5)

marijuana. A product of the hemp plant that acts as a stimulant, depressant, and hallucinogen, depending on the amount used and the stability of the user. (8)

marriage of affinity. Marriage between persons related by marriage, such as stepparents and stepchildren. (13)

martyrdom. Form of adjustment in which one partner avoids trouble at all costs by always giving in to the other partner. (14)

mediator. A third party who helps in resolving a conflict. (10)

menopause. Period of time during a woman's middle years when certain biological changes occur in her body and the ovaries cease to mature a ripened egg each month. (23)

mirror imaging. Condition that sometimes occurs in identical twins. Some body details that appear on the right side of one twin appear on the left side of the other. (2)

miscarriage. The birth of a baby before it has developed enough to live in the outside world, usually before the sixth month. (17)

mitten grasp. Grasp using the palm and fingers opposing the thumb. (18)

mixed marriage. Marriage involving persons from different countries, races, or religious faiths. (12)

modeling. A method of learning behavior by which children imitate the behavior of models they admire, particularly their parents. (19)

money market account. A type of account that pays interest rates changing with prevailing rates on short-term investments. (26)

money order. An order for a specific amount of money payable to a specific payee. (26)

monogamous. Married to only one person at a time. (13)

morals. Beliefs about right and wrong behavior. (4)

mortgage. A claim against property that a buyer gives to a lender as security for borrowed money. (24)

motor development. The achievement of control over movement of different parts of the body. (19)

mutations. Chemical changes in genes caused either by spontaneous error in genetic mechanisms or through some outside influence. (2)

mutual savings bank. Financial institution owned by its depositors. (26)

MyPyramid. A tool developed by the USDA to help people make healthier food and physical activity choices.

N

narcotics. Addicting drugs, such as opium, heroin, morphine, and codeine, that induce sleep or stupor and relieve pain. (8)

natural fibers. Fibers made from sources found in nature such as the cotton plant or sheep. (24)

natural resources. Resources available to everyone, such as air, water, and soil. (24)

needs. Those items or conditions that people must have in order to survive. (24)

negotiation. Process of conferring with one another and arriving at a settlement of a matter. (14)

net income. The money received after social security, income tax, and other deductions have been taken from the paycheck. (24)

networking. Making professional contacts. (6)

nicotine. A toxic substance found in tobacco. (8)

no-fault auto insurance. A type of insurance that eliminates the legal process of proving who is at fault in an auto accident. (25)

no-fault divorce. A divorce procedure that eliminates the need for proving one partner guilty. (22)

noncontested divorce. A divorce procedure in which the spouses agree to the divorce. (22)

nonhuman resources. Resources that are not physically a part of any individual, including money, material possessions, and community resources and facilities. (5)

noninstallment credit. Type of credit in which the buyer agrees to pay for purchases or services in one single payment. (27)

nonverbal communication. Type of communication that uses factors other than words, such as gestures, facial expressions, eye contact, and body movements. (10)

nurturance. Affectionate care and attention. (19)

O

officiate. A person who can legally marry a couple. (13)

ongoing hostility. Situation in which the couple never really settle their conflicts. (14)

on-site child-care facility. Child-care facility that is provided by the employer at or near the job site. (20)

open adoption. Adoption procedure in which the birthparents and adoptive parents meet or know each other. (9)

organ bank. Place where parts of bodies are kept until they can be donated to other people. (23)

osteoporosis. Condition affecting mostly women in later life in which bone mass is lost, causing bones to weaken. Vertebrae may collapse, causing stooped posture, and bones may break easily. (7)

overdraft. Occurrence in which a check is written on an account with insufficient funds. (26)

over-the-counter (OTC) drugs. Drugs that are used to treat or prevent illness and are available without a doctor's prescription. (8)

P

parallel play. Form of play in which children like to play next to their peers but do not play with their peers. (19)

parent image. Theory that a man looks for a wife similar to his mother and a woman looks for a husband similar to her father. (12)

part-time workers. People who work less than a full work week. (20)

passive listening. Taking in another's words, but offering no sign of hearing or understanding the message. (10)

passive smoking. Inhaling second-hand smoke. (8)

pawnbroker. A person who will give collateral for an item if money is needed quickly. If the loan is not repaid within the stated time, with the accompanying high interest, the pawnbroker can sell the item given as collateral. (27)

peer group. Group consisting of persons who are similar in age or status. (3)

peer pressure. The influence of members of the peer group. (3)

personality. The group of behavioral and emotional traits that distinguishes an individual; the sum of all inherited and acquired characteristics. (1)

personal priorities. The concepts, beliefs, attitudes, activities, and feelings that are most important to a person. (5)

phobias. Exaggerated fears of everyday objects or events. (4)

physical abuse. The infliction of physical injury upon a person. (21)

physical dependence. Condition that occurs when the body chemistry of a drug user is altered by repeated use of a drug, causing the user's body to develop an actual physical need for the drug. (8)

physical development. The controlled development of physical abilities including motor coordination, which controls and balances the movement of body parts. (18)

physical neglect. The failure to provide sufficient food, clothing, shelter, medical care, education, guidance, and supervision for a child. (21)

physically disabled. Having an abnormality of body structure, function, or metabolism that interferes with the ability to walk, lift, hear, or learn. (18)

pincer grip. Grasp using just the thumb and index finger. (18)

pituitary gland. Small organ attached to the brain that produces secretions affecting basic body functions. The gland triggers the growth and changes that occur at puberty. (1)

placenta. A special organ that functions as an interchange between the developing fetus and the mother. (17)

policy. A legal contract issued by an insurance company. (25)

polygamous. Married to more than one person at a time. (13)

positive reinforcement. Rewarding appropriate behavior with a positive message so children are likely to repeat the behavior. (19)

postpartum period. Period of time following the delivery of a baby. (17)

preferred provider organization (PPO). Organization that offers lower-cost health care by providing a group discount if participating doctors are used. It pays some of the costs if a nonparticipating doctor is used. (25)

prejudices. Attitudes based on false or insufficient information. (4)

premium. The amount of money a policyholder pays for an insurance policy. (25)

preparedness. Being ready for crises that could occur. (21)

prescription drugs. Drugs available only with a doctor's recommendation. (8)

procreation. Reproduction. (15)

productive quarrel. An argument that can strengthen a marriage as partners clarify issues and realize their viewpoints are not so different. (14)

projection. Blaming other people or things for one's own failures; a defense mechanism. (4)

proximity. Nearness. (12)

pseudo-truths. False statements made to sound as if they were true. (24)

psychological dependence. Condition that occurs when a drug user has learned to use a drug as a mental and emotional crutch. The user's need is real, but it is psychological rather than physical. (8)

puberty. The time when the body changes from that of a boy or girl to that of a man or woman. (1)

puffery advertising. Advertising that makes an exaggerated claim attracting the reader or listener. (24)

Q

quality time. Time spent giving full attention to another person or persons. (20)

quickening. Active movements of the fetus felt by the mother. (17)

R

rape. Any sexual intimacy forced on one person by another. (11)

rationalization. Explaining one's weaknesses or failures by giving socially acceptable excuses; a defense mechanism. (4)

recall. A public call for the return of a product that may be defective. (24)

recessive. Less influential or prevalent. (2)

recycled. Used again to produce new products. (24)

regression. A defense mechanism in which a person reverts back to a less mature stage of development. (4)

rehabilitative alimony. Financial support for job retraining rather than lifelong support. (20)

resources. The various ways and means that a person has for reaching goals. (5)

resume. An information sheet about a person's educational and job background. (6)

retirement accounts. Long-range savings accounts designed to provide income after retirement. (26)

revolving credit. A type of credit in which the buyer is allowed to make purchases up to a specified amount, paying a percentage of the balance each month plus carrying charges to keep the account revolving. (27)

Rh factor. A specific blood element. Persons who have inherited the element are called Rh-positive. Persons who have not inherited it are called Rh-negative. (2)

role. A socially expected behavior pattern. (3)

rooting reflex. Reflex exhibited by newborns. When they are touched on one of their cheeks, they turn their heads in that direction and open their mouths. (18)

S

sandwich generation. Middle-aged couples often "sandwiched" between caring for their children and caring for their parents at a time when they would really like more time for themselves. (23)

saturated fat. A type of fat that tends to be solid at room temperature, comes from animal sources, and is a factor in high blood-cholesterol levels. (7)

savings account. An account that permits the saver to make deposits and withdrawals in varying amounts at any time. (26)

savings and loan association. A financial institution that may be a mutual company (owned and operated for the benefit of its depositors) or a stock company (operated for profit). (26)

scapegoat. In the defense mechanism of projection, the common term for the person who bears the blame for others. (4)

security deposit. A sum of money, usually one month's rent, that a person pays a landlord before moving into a rental unit. (24)

self-actualization. The realization of a person's full potential. (4)

self-concept. The way a person sees himself or herself. (1)

self-esteem. How a person feels about himself or herself. (1)

separate property. Property owned by one spouse prior to marriage or acquired during marriage by gift or inheritance and retained as separate property. (22)

separation anxiety. Emotion shown by babies when adults they love leave them for a short time. (18)

sexual abuse. Forcing a child to engage in sexual activities. (21)

sexual assault. Any form of unwanted sexual behavior forced on one person by another. (21)

sexual harassment. Unwelcome sexual advances, requests for sexual favors, or other verbal or physical conduct of a sexual nature. (10)

sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). Illnesses spread by sexual contact. (9)

shelters. Establishments that offer food and housing for people who have nowhere else to go. (21)

short-term goals. Goals reachable in the near future—the next hour, day, or week. (5)

sibling rivalry. Sense of competition between brothers and sisters. (3)

siblings. A person's brothers and/or sisters. (3)

single-parent family. Family structure that occurs as the result of divorce, separation, death, or having children outside of marriage. (15)

small muscle development. Improving ability to use the small muscles, such as those of the hands, fingers, feet, and toes. (18)

smokeless tobacco. Snuff and chewing tobacco. (8)

social development. The process of learning to relate to other people; formed by how other people affect the child and how the child affects other people. (18)

social security. Plan whereby employees, their employers, and self-employed persons pay social security taxes that are used to pay benefits to eligible people. When a worker retires, becomes disabled, or dies, monthly cash benefits are paid to replace part of the earnings the family has lost. (26)

stages of dying. Clearly defined stages in the acceptance of death. (23)

stages of grieving. The grieving process of survivors, which generally follows stages similar to the stages of dying. (23)

standards. Levels of achievement that help a person determine if goals have been achieved. (5)

startle reflex. Reflex exhibited by newborns. When they are tapped on their abdomens or when their support is suddenly removed, they respond by spreading their arms and legs apart and then bringing them together again in a bow. (18)

steady dating. Dating only one person for a period of time. (11)

stepfamily. Family structure in which either or both spouses have been married before and may have one or more children from the previous marriage. (15)

stereotypes. Widely held beliefs that all members of a group share the same characteristics. (4)

stimulants. Drugs that speed up the central nervous system and accelerate body processes, often to a dangerous degree. (8)

stress. A state of bodily or mental tension resulting from change. (7)

sublet. To let someone else rent your property for a period of time while still retaining responsibility for all terms of the lease. (24)

subliminal advertising. Flashes of suggestive advertising repeatedly shown on a television or movie screen designed to stimulate your subconscious mind. (24)

sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS). The sudden death of an apparently healthy infant during sleep. (18)

support group. Group usually made up of people with a common concern who offer emotional help, information, and the benefits of shared experience. (7)

synthetic or manufactured fibers. Fibers made from non-natural sources. (24)

syphilis. Sexually transmitted disease in which sores develop at the site of infection. (9)

T

team. A group of people who rely on the efforts of each member to achieve success or reach a goal. (6)

telecommuting. The practice of working at home—rather than commuting, or traveling, to work—by using a computer and a modem. (3)

telephone hotlines. Telephone numbers that people can call for immediate information in a crisis. (21)

temper tantrum. A violent outburst of anger. (19)

term life insurance. Type of life insurance that covers the life of the policyholder for a specified term or period of time. Once the term expires, the person is no longer insured. (25)

theist. A person who believes a god exists. (12)

timeout. Moving a child whose behavior is disruptive away from others for a short period of time, usually a few minutes, until the child calms down. A brief explanation of what rule has been broken should be given. (19)

tonic neck reflex. Reflex exhibited by infants. When babies lie on their backs, they turn their heads to one side. If they turn to the right, their right hands extend outward, and their left arms extend upward. If they turn to the left, the movements are reversed. (18)

toxemia. Condition during pregnancy that results in fluid retention, causing swelling of fingers and feet, and weight gain. (9)

traveler's checks. Checks that can be cashed at most places around the world and replaced if they are lost or stolen. (26)

two-parent family. Family structure consisting of a married couple and their biological children. (15)

U

ultrasound examination. Process using sound waves to provide an outline or picture of the fetus inside the mother. (16)

umbilical cord. Cord that links the fetus to the placenta. (17)

United States savings bond. A type of bond in which purchasers pay half the face amount and receive the full face amount if held to the maturity date. (26)

universal life insurance. A type of life insurance in which protection and savings are clearly separated and the amounts of both parts can be changed. (25)

unsaturated fat. A type of fat that tends to be liquid at room temperature and comes from plant sources. (7)

V

variable life insurance. A type of life insurance in which part of the premium goes toward protection and the rest goes into savings that are invested in equity products such as stocks. (25)

verbal communication. Form of communication that uses words to send and receive messages. (10)

violence. Any harmful physical contact that results in serious injury or death. (21)

visitation rights. Following a divorce, the legal rights of the noncustodial parent to see a child during specified times. (22)

volunteerism. Giving or offering services of your own free will. (1)

W

Web site. A location on the World Wide Web (WWW) that provides information, services, or products. Each Web site is owned and managed by an individual, company, or organization. (6)

wellness. A state of physical, mental, and emotional health. It is not merely the absence of disease, but rather robust, optimum health. (7)

whole life insurance. A type of life insurance in which the premium is based on the person's age when the policy is purchased and remains the same throughout his or her life. This type of policy builds a cash value. (25)

will. A legal declaration of a person's wishes concerning the way his or her property will be distributed after death. (23)

Index

A

Abstinence, 248
Accommodation, 362
Accomplishment (Erikson), 87, 88
Acquaintance rape, 304-307
Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS), 245
Acquired traits, 22
Active listening, 259
Addiction, 213, 535-538
Adjustable life insurance, 639
Adoption, 242, 243, 416
Adoptive families, 389, 390
Advertising, 606-608
Agency adoption, 242
Aging, 577-590
    climacteric, 586
    emotional aspects, 581-584
    financial aspects, 586, 587
    grandparenting, 588
    housing arrangements, 587, 588
    impact of the growing population of older adults, 581
    menopause, 585, 586
    middle age, 579-581
    old age, 581
    physical aspects, 584-586
    retirement, 589, 590
    young adulthood, 578, 579
Aging stage, family life cycle, 395
AIDS, 245
Alcohol, 207-212, 535-538
    causes, 536
    health consequences, 208-211
    pregnancy, 208
    saying no, 212
    social consequences, 208-210
    why people drink, 211
Alcoholic, 210, 535-538
Alimony, 506
Amniocentesis, 417
Amnio-chorionic membrane, 425
Amniotic fluid, 425
Amotivational syndrome, 216
Anabolic steroids, 216
Anemia, 237
Anger, 104-106
Annulment, 562, 563
Anorexia nervosa, 181
Apprenticeship, 152
Aptitude, 145
Artificial insemination, 416
Assertive, 266
Assign a lease, 624
Atheist, 324
Attitudes, 108
Authority figures, 67
Auto insurance, 642-644
    basic types of coverage, 643, 644
    claims, 644
    no-fault, 644
Automated Teller Machines (ATMs), 662, 663
Autonomy, 86, 87
Autopsy, 594
Autosomes, 51

B

Babinski reflex, 445
Bailout, 539
Banking services, 651-669
    Automated Teller Machines (ATMs), 662, 663
    certificates of deposit, 664
    checking accounts, 656-663
    financial institutions, 655, 656
    financial services, 655, 656

- income, 652-655
- Individual Retirement Account (IRA), 666
- Keogh plans, 666
- money market accounts, 665
- retirement accounts, 665
- savings accounts, 663, 664
- U.S. savings bonds, 664

Basic medical insurance, 640
Beginning stage, family life cycle, 390, 391
Beneficiaries in wills, 596
Beneficiary, insurance, 637
Bigamy, 341
Bigots, 109
Biodegradable, 610
Birth order, 70-72
Blood pooling, 184
Blood type, 53
Body language, 260
Bonding, 436, 437
Brain development, early, 454, 455
Breakups, 290-293
Budgets, 671-675
- defining goals, 672
- definition, 672
- determining income, 673
- evaluating, 674, 675
- identifying spending needs, 673, 674
- revising, 675

Bulimia, 181
Bullying, 275

C

Career considerations of parenting, 407
Career goals, in engagement, 334
Career plan, 146, 147
Career preparation, 143-171
- alternatives, 146
- career goals, 146
- career plan, 146, 147
- cover letter, 159
- decision making, 143-171
- definition, 143
- education, 150-154
- factors affecting choice, 144-146
- family studies and human services, 148-150
- getting a job, 156-163
- job interview, 159-163
- job success, 163-165
- opportunities, 147, 148
- resume, 159
- workplace skills, 154-156

Cashier's check, 656
Cash value, 637
Casual dating, 288
Ceremonial wedding, 343
Certificate of deposit, 664
Certified check, 656
Cesarean section, 436
Character, 33
Chasing (gambling), 539
Checking accounts, 656-663
- Automated Teller Machines (ATMs), 662, 663
- bank statement, 661, 662
- depositing money, 660, 661
- endorsing checks, 660
- overdrafts, 662
- writing checks, 657-660

Child abuse and neglect, 549-552
Childbearing stage, family life cycle, 391-393
Childbirth,
- after the baby is born, 436-438
- bonding, 436, 437
- labor and birth, 433-436
- lactation, 437, 438
- methods, 434-436
- postpartum period, 437

Child care, 484-488
- after-school, 494
- child care centers, 486-488
- church-linked child care, 487
- cooperative child care, 488
- day care for children who are ill, 488
- employer-sponsored child care, 488
- family child care, 486
- in-home care, 484-486
- nationally franchised child care centers, 487
- privately owned child care centers, 487
- publicly sponsored child care, 487
- university-linked child care, 487

Child care centers, 486-488
Childless marriage, 232, 233
Children, 467-499
- anger, 482
- anxiety and fears, 481, 482

  - creating a nurturing environment, 468, 469
  - food, 469, 470
  - health care, 470
  - parenting information online, 495
  - positive guidance techniques, 468, 469
  - preparing for another child, 483
  - preschoolers, 471-483
  - safety, 470, 471
  - school-age children, 489-495
- Children in self-care, 494
- Child support, 568
- Children with special needs, 459-462
  - mental disabilities, 461, 462
  - physical disabilities, 459-461
- Chlamydia, 248
- Cholesterol, 178
- Chosen role, 382
- Chromosomes, 47
- Chronological growth, 24
- Church-linked child care, 487
- Citizen, 35
- Citizenship, 36
- Civil weddings, 343
- Climacteric, 586
- Clique, 273, 274
- Closed adoption, 242
- Clothing, 618-622
  - costs, 621
  - labels, 621, 622
  - methods for acquiring, 619, 620
  - selection, 621
- Codependency, 537
- Collateral, 680
- Commercial bank, 655
- Common-law marriage, 342
- Communication, 257-279
  - appearance, 262, 263
  - assertiveness, 266, 267
  - cultural influences, 261, 262
  - definition, 257
  - during engagement, 333-339
  - empathy, 260
  - forms of, 258-260
  - group communication patterns, 273, 274
  - I-messages, 267-269
  - levels, 263-265
  - listening, 258-260
  - nonverbal, 258, 260-263
  - solving family communication problems, 269-273
  - teens and parents, 269-273
  - verbal, 258
  - violent behavior, 274-278
  - we-messages, 267-269
  - written, 159-161, 258
  - you-messages, 267-269
- Community, 75-79
- Community crises, 554, 555
- Community property, 568
- Comparison shopping, 617
- Compensation, 99
- Complementary needs, 316
- Compressed workweek, 510
- Compromise, 361
- Compulsive gambler, 538-540
- Conception, 425
- Concession, 363
- Condominium, 625
- Conflict, functions in marriage, 366-368
- Conflict resolution, 277, 278
- Consanguineous marriage, 342
- Consumer, 605
- Consumer decisions, 605-629
  - advertising, 606-608
  - clothing decisions, 618-622
  - consumer protection, 608, 609
  - environmental responsibility, 609-611
  - food decisions, 612-618
  - housing decisions, 622-626
  - leisure-time decisions, 628, 629
  - rights and responsibilities, 605, 606
  - transportation decisions, 626-628
- Contested divorce, 565
- Convenience foods, 614
- Conventional level (Kohlberg), 98
- Conversion, 101
- Cooperative child care, 488
- Cooperative play, 477
- Coping with crises, 532-534
- Counseling, marriage, 368-370
- Cover letter, 159
- Credit, 675-681
  - credit cards, 676-678
  - definition, 675
  - loans, 680, 681

  - obtaining, 678
  - types, 675-678
- Credit bureau, 678
- Credit rating, 678
- Credit union, 655
- Criminal attack, 542-544
- Crises, 525-559
  - addictions to alcohol and other drugs, 535-538
  - alternative solutions, 532, 533
  - child abuse and neglect, 549-552
  - community and national crises, 554, 555
  - community resources, 529-531
  - compulsive gambling, 538-540
  - coping, 532-534
  - criminal attack, 542-544
  - definition, 525
  - elder abuse, 549
  - family moves, 535
  - family relationships, 527-529
  - financial resources, 527
  - goals, 533, 534
  - hotlines, 531
  - intervention, 531
  - management of, 532-534
  - mental resources, 526
  - missing children, 552, 553
  - physical health, 526, 527
  - recognizing, 532
  - resources, 526-531
  - runaway children, 553, 554
  - sexual assault, 544
  - spouse or partner abuse, 547, 548
  - suicide, 540-542
  - support groups, 192, 531
  - support of friends, 529, 541
  - support systems, 526-533, 537, 538, 540, 547-549, 551, 552
  - unemployment, 534, 535
  - violence in families, 545-552
- Cultural diversity, 68, 69, 322
- Culture, 68, 380-382
- Custody, 567

D

- Date rape, 304-307, 544
- Dating patterns, 287-289
  - formal pair dating, 288, 289
  - functions of dating, 287
  - informal group dating, 288
- Death, 590-599
  - funeral arrangements, 595
  - hospice care, 590, 591
  - legal issues, 594-596
  - living will, 594
  - organ banks, 594, 595
  - stages of dying, 591, 592
  - stages of grieving, 592, 593
  - telling children about death, 593
  - widows and widowers, 593
  - will, 596
- Debit card, 656
- Decision making, 119-139
  - careers, 143-171
  - decision-making process, 132-135
  - education, 150-154
  - health, 173-199
  - management process, 135-137
  - resources, 127-130
  - standards, 130, 131
  - types of decisions, 131, 132
  - ways to make decisions, 132
- Decision-making process, 132-135
- Deductions, 652
- Defense mechanisms, 98-103
  - compensation, 99, 100
  - conversion, 101
  - daydreaming, 103
  - definition, 99
  - direct attack, 99
  - displacement, 101
  - giving up, 103
  - idealization, 102, 103
  - projection, 100, 101
  - rationalization, 100
  - regression, 102
- Depressants, 214
- Depression, 106, 107, 540
- Desertion, 563
- Designer drugs, 214
- Despair (Erikson), 90
- Destructive quarreling, 368
- Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 177
- Direct attack, 99
- Direct deposit, 661

Disability income insurance, 641
Discipline, 480, 481
Diseases and defects, inherited, 55
Disillusionment, 354
Displaced homemakers, 506
Displacement, 101
Diversity, 67-69, 380-382
Divorce, 561-575
    adjusting, 568, 569
    alimony, 567
    annulment, 563
    child custody, 567, 568
    child support, 568
    defenses, 566
    definition, 562
    emotional aftermath, 569, 570
    grounds, 565, 566
    legal separation, 563, 564
    legal termination of marriage, 562-569
    proceedings, 565
    property division, 568
    remarriage, 570-572
    terms, 566-568
    three stages, 564, 565
    trends and issues, 561, 562
Domestic violence, 545
Dominant gene, 48
Doubt (Erikson), 86, 87
Drug abuse, 213
Drug misuse, 213
Drug use, 213
Drugs, 213-220
    definition, 213
    depressants, 214, 215
    effects, 213, 214
    hallucinogens, 215
    inhalants, 216
    marijuana, 216
    over-the-counter, 216-218
    prescription, 216-218
    reasons people abuse drugs, 218
    saying no, 219
    sources of help, 219, 220
    steroids, 216
    stimulants, 215
    terminology, 213
Dual-career families, 505
Dysfunctional family, 383

E

Ecology, 609
Economy, 77, 78
Education, 73, 74, 150-154
    combining work with, 152-154
    families, 380
    options, 151, 152
Embryo, 426
Emotional abuse, 550
Emotional development, 27, 28, 457, 458, 478, 581-584
Emotional growth, 27, 28
Emotional neglect, 550
Empathy, 260
Employee-assistance programs (EAP), 512
Employer-sponsored child care, 488
Employment (See *Job*)
Empty nest syndrome, 581
Enabler, 537
Encouraging, 469
Ending a relationship, 290-293
Endometrium, 425
Endorse a check, 660
Energy conservation, 609, 610
Engagement, 332-341
    breaking, 339-341
    career goals, 334
    communication, 333-339
    friendships, 338, 339
    in-laws, 336, 337
    living arrangements, 337, 338
    marriage counseling, 339
    medical counseling, 335, 336
    money management, 337
    personality traits, 333
    religious commitments, 338
    revealing the past, 339
    sexual and reproductive expectations, 334, 335
    testing process, 332, 333
Enoch Arden divorce, 565
Entrepreneurship, 150
Environment, 22, 64-83
    community and world, 75-79
    economy, 77, 78
    education, 73, 74
    family, 66-72

- media, 78, 79
- occupation, 74
- peers, 72, 73
- religion, 75
- response to, 23
- technology, 75-77

Environmental responsibility, 609-611
- recycling, 610, 611

Erikson's stages of human development, 86-90
- autonomy versus shame and doubt, 86, 87
- generativity versus self-absorption, 89, 90
- identity versus identity confusion, 89, 90
- initiative versus guilt, 87, 88
- integrity versus despair, 90
- intimacy versus isolation, 89
- trust versus mistrust, 86

Esteem needs (Maslow), 95
Ethical standards, 165
Exemptions, tax, 654
Exercise, 181-184
Extended kinship family, 387, 388

F

Face amount, 637
Families, 66-72, 377-399
- adapting to change, 379, 380
- adoptive, 389, 390
- authority figures, 67
- birth order, 70-72
- changing, 378-380
- characteristics of strong families, 383, 384
- cultural patterns, 67-69, 380-382
- definition, 377
- dysfunctional, 383
- education, 380
- extended kinship, 387, 388
- family life cycle, 390-395
- foster, 388, 389
- functional, 383
- functions in various cultures, 380-382
- interactions, 69, 70
- love and affection, 380
- nurturance, 380, 381
- physical needs, 380
- procreation, 381, 382
- protection, 382
- recreation, 382
- roles and responsibilities, 382, 383
- single-parent, 384-386
- stepfamily, 386, 387
- structures, 384-390
- two-parent, 384

Family and Medical Leave Act, 512
Family and work concerns, 503-523
- changing attitudes, 504
- communication, 516
- compressed workweek, 510, 511
- delegating tasks, 515
- dual-career families, 505
- effects of family life on employment, 509, 510
- employee benefits, 511, 512
- employee-assistance programs (EAPs), 512
- employer-sponsored child care, 511, 512
- Family and Medical Leave Act, 512
- flextime, 510
- full-time homemakers, 505, 506
- impact of work on families, 508-510
- job sharing, 511
- multiple roles, 514
- organization, 514, 515
- part-time workers, 505
- patterns of work and childbearing, 507, 508
- priorities and standards, 514, 515
- quality time, 518, 519
- realities of the workplace, 512, 513
- reasons people work, 503, 504
- scheduling and planning ahead, 515
- single-parent families, 506, 507
- techniques for managing family and work, 513-519
- technology, 516-518
- types of arrangements, 504-507

Family-centered childbirth, 436
Family child care, 486
Family crises, 525-559
- addictions to alcohol and other drugs, 535-538
- alternative solutions, 532, 533
- child abuse and neglect, 549-552
- community and national crises, 554, 555
- community resources, 529-531
- compulsive gambling, 538-540
- coping, 532-534
- criminal attack, 542-544

  - definition, 525
  - elder abuse, 549
  - family moves, 535
  - family relationships, 527-529
  - financial resources, 527
  - goals, 533, 534
  - hotlines, 531
  - intervention, 531
  - mental resources, 526
  - missing children, 552, 553
  - physical health, 526, 527
  - recognizing, 532
  - resources, 526-531
  - runaway children, 553, 554
  - sexual assault, 544
  - shelters, 529-531
  - spouse or partner abuse, 547, 548
  - suicide, 540-542
  - support groups, 531
  - support of friends, 529
  - support systems, 533
  - unemployment, 534, 535
  - violence in families, 545-552
- Family-friendly work policies, 510
- Family life cycle, 390-395
- Family studies and human services careers, 148-150
- Fear, patterns of response, 106
- Feedback, 259
- Female reproductive system, 410, 411
- Fetal alcohol syndrome, 431
- Fetus, 426
- Finance charges, 676
- Finances, 671-681
  - budgeting, 671-675
  - credit, 675-681
- Financial considerations of parenting, 407-409
- Financial institutions, 655, 656
- Fixed expenses, 673
- Flexible expenses, 673
- Flextime, 510
- Fontanels, 444
- Food decisions, 612-618
  - appeal, 613
  - computer use in menu planning, 613
  - cost, 616, 617
  - food labels, 615, 616
  - handling and storing food safely, 617, 618
  - nutrition, 613
  - planning meals, 612-614
  - restaurants, 618
  - shopping, 614, 615
  - time constraints, 613
- Foster parenting, 388
- Fraternal twins, 49
- Friendship, 28, 72, 286, 287
- Fringe benefits, 511
- Functional family, 383
- Funeral arrangements, 595

G

- Gene, 48
- Generativity, 89
- Genetic counseling, 416, 417
- Genital warts, 247, 248
- Given role, 382
- Goal, 40, 124-130
  - long-term, 127
  - personal priorities, 124-126
  - short-term, 127
- Gonorrhea, 246
- Grandparenting, 588
- Grasp reflex, 445
- Gross income, 652
- Group dating, 288
- Growth, 24-29
  - chronological, 24
  - emotional, 27, 28
  - intellectual, 27
  - philosophical, 28, 29
  - physical, 24-26
  - social, 28
- Growth pattern, 24
- Guilt (Erikson), 87

H

- Habituation, 213
- Halfway houses, 554
- Hallucinogens, 215
- Havighurst's developmental tasks of adolescence, 91-93
- Hazing, 275
- Health, 173-199

- consumer choices related to, 195
- eating disorders, 181
- education, 191
- exercise, 181-184
- eyesight, 184, 185
- Food Guide Pyramid, 175
- government programs, 194
- hearing, 185, 186
- nutrition and, 175-181
- preventive health practices, 174, 175
- resources, 191-195
- rest and sleep, 184
- screening, 192
- skin, 186
- stress, 187-191
- substance abuse, 201-225
- teeth, 186
- weight control, 179, 180
- wellness, 174

Health insurance, 639-642
- disability income insurance, 641
- health maintenance organizations (HMOs), 642
- long-term care insurance, 641, 642
- preferred provider organization (PPO), 642

Health maintenance organization (HMO), 642
Hemoglobin, 175, 176
Heredity, 22, 46-63
- chromosomes, 47, 48
- definition, 22
- genes, 48
- inherited characteristics, 51-56
- process, 47, 48
- twins and multiple births, 49-51
- valuing your uniqueness, 56-58

Herpes, 247
HIV, 245
Homeowner's insurance, 645
Honeymoon, 345-347
Hospice, 590
Hotlines, 531
Housing, 622-626
- buying a home, 624-626
- condominium ownership, 625
- costs, 622, 623
- lease, 624
- process of buying, 625, 626
- renting, 623, 624

Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV), 245
Human resources, 129

I

I-messages, 267-269
Idealization, 102
Identical twins, 49
Identity, 88
Identity confusion (Erikson), 89, 90
Immunizations, 470
Impulse buying, 612
Incest, 550
Income, 652-655
- federal income tax, 653, 654
- paycheck, 652, 653
- Social Security, 654, 655

Independent adoption, 242
Independent living, 33-41, 228-230
Individual life cycle, 126, 127
Individual retirement account (IRA), 666
Industry (Erikson), 87, 88
Infants, 450-458
- emotional development, 457, 458
- intellectual development, 451, 453-455
- physical development, 451, 452
- social development, 455, 456

Infatuation, 296
Inferiority, 88
Infertility, 416
Inhalants, 216
Inherited characteristics, 51-56
- autosomes, 51
- blood factors, 53
- diseases and defects, 55
- intellectual ability, 52, 53
- longevity, 53, 54
- physical, 54, 55
- sex determination, 51, 52

Inherited traits, 22
In-home child care, 484-486
Initiative, 87
In-laws, 336, 337
Installment credit, 675
Insurance, 636-649
- auto, 642-644
- health, 639-642

  homeowner's, 645
  life insurance, 636-639
  re-evaluating insurance needs, 646
Integrity, 90
Intellectual development, 27, 451, 453-455, 473-475
Intellectual growth, 27
Interest, 657
Interfaith marriages, 323-325
Intergenerational caregiving, 579
Intermittency (of love), 355
International marriage, 322, 323
Internet, 158
Interpersonal skills, 156, 165, 277, 278, 367
Interracial marriage, 323
Intervention, 531
Intestate, 596
Intimacy, 290
  Erikson, 89
Isolation (Erikson), 89
In vitro fertilization, 416

J

Job, 143
Job advancement, 166
Job changing, 167
Job contacts, 158
Job interview, 159-163
Job research, 157, 158
Job sharing, 511
Job success, 163-165
  accept advice and learn from mistakes, 163, 164
  ethical standards, 164, 165
  interpersonal skills, 165
  work to the best of your ability, 163
Job vacancies, 158, 159

K

Keogh plans, 666
Kohlberg's stages of moral development, 96-98
  conventional level, 98
  postconventional level, 98
  preconventional level, 96, 97

L

Labor and birth, 433-436
  afterbirth stage, 434
  dilation stage, 434
  expulsion stage, 434
  lightening, 433
  onset of labor, 433, 434
Lactation, 437, 438
Lamaze method, 435
Launching stage, family life cycle, 393, 394
Laws, marriage, 341-343
Leadership, 37-39, 154-156
  community, 37-39
Lease, 624
Leboyer method, 435
Legal separation, 563, 564
Leisure-time decisions, 628, 629
  family, 628, 629
Life insurance, 636-639
  adjustable, 639
  definition, 636
  term, 637
  universal, 639
  variable, 639
  whole, 638
Lifespan development, 577
Lifestyle, 228
Lifestyle options, 227-253
  consequences, 235-248
  living together, 233-235
  marriage, 230-233
  responsible behavior, 248, 249
  single life, 228-230
Lightening, 433
Listening, 258-260
Living together, 233-235
Living will, 594
Loans, 680, 681
Longevity, 53, 54
Long-term care insurance, 641
Long-term goals, 127
Love, 293-304
  acceptance and (Maslow), 95
  communicating, 293-297
  definition, 293
  infatuation, 296, 297
  negative, 295, 296

  physical expressions, 298-304
  positive, 294, 295
  types, 294-297
Love and affection, families, 380

M

Major medical insurance, 640
Male reproductive system, 412
Manage, 135
Management process, 135-137
  carrying out the plan, 136
  definition, 135
  evaluating, 136, 137
  making a plan, 135, 136
  setting a goal, 135
Marijuana, 216
Marriage, 230-233, 315-373
  accommodation, 362, 363
  adjustments, 360-365
  age, 321, 322
  appreciation, 359
  changing name, 343
  communication, 355-358
  complementary needs, 316
  compromise, 361, 362
  concession, 363, 364
  conflict, 366-368
  counseling, 339, 368-370
  destructive quarrels, 368
  education, 320
  family background, 318
  forces affecting mate selection, 315-317
  give and take, 358, 359
  happiness, 354-359
  health factors, 319
  honeymoon, 345-347
  interfaith, 323-325
  intermittency of love, 355
  international, 322, 323
  interracial, 323
  laws, 341-343
  leisure-time activities, 320
  license, 343
  martyrdom, 364
  mixed, 322-325
  officiate, 343
  ongoing hostility, 365
  parent approval, 318, 319
  parent image, 316
  personality traits, 317, 318
  personal priorities, 317
  physical and mental qualifications, 341, 342
  problem solving, 366, 367
  productive quarrels, 367
  prohibited relationships, 342
  proximity, 316
  realistic expectations, 354
  role expectations, 316, 317
  self-esteem, 355
  sense of humor, 359
  time as a factor in making adjustments, 366
  trust, 359
  weddings, 343-347
Marriages of affinity, 342
Martyrdom, 364
Maslow's theory of human needs, 94-96
  esteem, 95
  love and acceptance, 95
  physical, 94
  safety and security, 94, 95
  self-actualization, 96
Media, 78, 79
Mediator, 277
Medical counseling, in engagement, 335, 336
Menopause, 585, 586
Mental disabilities, 461, 462
Middle age, 579-581
Middle-years stage, family life cycle, 394
Miscarriage, 432, 433
Missing children, 552, 553
Mistrust (Erikson), 86
Mitten grasp, 451
Mixed marriage, 322
Modeling, 468
Money management, engagement, 337
Money market account, 665
Money order, 656
Monogamous, 341
Morals, 96
Mortgage, 625
Motor development, 471
Moves, family, 535
Multiple births, 49-51
Mutations, 48
Mutual savings bank, 655
MyPyramid, 175-177

N

Narcotics, 214
National crises, 554, 555
Nationally franchised child care centers, 487
Natural resources, 609
Needs, 604
    Maslow's theory, 94-96
Negotiation, 367
Net income, 622, 652
Networking, 166
Newborns, 443-450
    bathing, 447, 448
    clothing, 448, 449
    crib safety, 446
    discomforts and problems, 449, 450
    feeding, 446, 447
    reflexes, 445
    schedule, 445, 446
Nicotine, 204
No-fault auto insurance, 644
No-fault divorce, 565
Noncontested divorce, 565
Nonhuman resources, 129, 130, 604
Noninstallment credit, 676
Nonverbal communication, 258
Nurturance, 467
    families, 380, 381

O

Occupation, 74
Officiate, 343
Old age, 581
Ongoing hostility, 365
Open adoption, 242
Organ bank, 594
Osteoporosis, 177
Overdraft, 662
Over-the-counter drugs, 218

P

Parallel play, 477
Parent image, 316
Parenting stage, family life cycle, 393
Parenting, 401-421, 444-495
    age of the woman, 406, 407
    career considerations, 407
    children with special needs, 459-462
    choosing, 404-406
    financial considerations, 407, 408
    infants, 450-458
    information online, 495
    newborns, 444-450
    number and spacing of children, 408
    planning pregnancy, 410-412
    preschoolers, 471-483
    roles and responsibilities, 402, 403
    school-age children, 489-495
    sharing responsibilities, 403, 404
Part-time workers, 505
Passive listening, 259
Passive smoking, 205
Peer group, 72
Peer pressure, 72, 121, 220, 221, 273-278
Personal development, 19-115
    environment, role of, 64-80
    growth, 24-29
    heredity, role of, 46-59
    personality, 22-24
    personal response patterns, 104-109
Personality, 22-24
    character, 33
    heredity, 46-63
    patterns of response, 104-110
    response to environment, 85-115
    responsibility, 33-40
    self-concept, 29-32
Personal priorities, 120-126, 317
    definition, 120-124
    formation, 121, 122
    goals, 124-126
    importance, 123, 124
    in marriage, 317
    influence over decisions, 122, 123
Personality traits,
    in engagement, 333
    in marriage, 317, 318
Philosophical growth, 28, 29
Phobias, 106
Physical abuse, 550
Physical characteristics, inherited, 54, 55
Physical dependence, 213
Physical development, 24-26, 451, 452, 471-473, 584-586

Physical disabilities, 459-461
Physical expressions of affection, 298-304
Physical growth, 24-26
Physical needs, 603-633
    families, 380
Physical neglect, 550
Pincer grip, 451
Pituitary gland, 25
Placenta, 425
Policy, 637
Polygamous marriage, 341
Positive reinforcement, 468, 469
Postconventional level (Kohlberg), 98
Postpartum period, 437
Preconventional level (Kohlberg), 96, 97
Preferred provider organization (PPO), 642
Pregnancy, 423-441
    alcohol and illegal drugs, 431, 432
    conception, 425
    diet and nutrition, 428-430
    employment during, 431
    exercise, 430, 431
    exposure to X rays, 432
    labor and birth, 433-436
    miscarriage, 432, 433
    month-by-month development, 426, 427
    myths, 236
    physician's observations, 424, 425
    planning, 410-415
    prenatal development, 426, 427
    preventing, 412-415
    signs of, 423-425
    smoking during, 431
    unplanned, 235-244
    weight control, 430
    woman's observations, 424
Prejudices, 109
    patterns of response, 109
Premium, insurance, 637
Prenatal development, 426, 427
Preparedness, 555
Preschoolers, 471-483
    emotional development, 478
    intellectual development, 473-475
    physical development, 471-473
    social development, 475-477
Prescription drugs, 218
Priorities, personal, 120-124
Privately owned child care centers, 487
Problem solving, 156, 366, 367
    in marriage, 366, 367
    in teams, 156
Procreation, 381, 382
Productive quarreling, 367
Projection, 100
Protection, families, 382
Proximity, 316
Psychological dependence, 213
Puberty, 25
Publicly sponsored child care, 187

Q

Quality time, 518, 519
Quickening, 428

R

Rape, 304-307, 544
Rationalization, 100
Recall, 608
Recessive gene, 48
Recreation, families, 382
Recycled, 610
Regression, 102
Rehabilitative alimony, 506
Relationships, 28, 91-94, 285-307
    dating patterns, 287-289
    developing, 289, 290
    ending, 290-293
    friendship, 286, 287
    serious, 290
Religion, 75
Remarriage, 570-572
    stepfamilies, 570-572
Reproduction, 410-412
    female reproductive system, 410
    male reproductive system, 412
Reproductive expectations for marriage, 334, 335
Resources, 127-130, 191-195, 526-531, 604
    definition, 127
    for crises, 526-531
    health and wellness, 191-195
    human, 129, 604
    nonhuman, 129, 130, 604

Responsibility, 33-41, 382, 383, 402, 403
  citizenship, 35-39
  families, 382, 383
  goal setting, 40
  learning to be responsible, 35
  meeting personal expectations, 39, 40
  parenting, 402, 403
  roadblocks to responsible adulthood, 40, 41
Rest and sleep, 184
Resume, 159
Retirement, 589, 590
Revolving credit, 676
Rh factor, 53
Role expectations, 316, 317
Roles, 69
  families, 382, 383
  parenting, 402, 403
Rooting reflex, 445
Runaway children, 553, 554

S

Safety and security needs (Maslow), 94, 95
Sandwich generation, 579
Saturated fat, 178
Savings accounts, 663, 664
Savings and loan association, 655
Scapegoat, 100
School-age children, 489-495
  after-school child care, 494
  developing responsibility, 491, 492
  friends, 490
  lying, 491
  money and children, 492, 493
  time for family, 489
  use of computers, 489, 490
Security deposit, 624
Self-absorption (Erikson), 89, 90
Self-actualization, 96
Self-concept, 29-32
Self-esteem, 30-32
  in marriage, 355
Separate property, 568
Separation anxiety, 456
Sexual abuse, 550
Sexual assault, 304-307, 544
Sexual decision making, 299-302
Sexual expectations for marriage, 334, 335
Sexual harassment, 278, 279
Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 244-248
  AIDS, 245, 246
  chlamydia, 248
  definition, 244
  genital warts, 247, 248
  gonorrhea, 246
  herpes, 247
  syphilis, 246, 247
Shame (Erikson), 86, 87
Shelters, 529
Short-term goals, 127
Sibling, 69
Sibling rivalry, 69
Similarity in mate selection, 315, 316
Single life, 228-230
Single-parent family, 384-386
Smokeless tobacco, 205
Smoking, 202-205
  cancer, 204
  dangers during pregnancy, 204
  emphysema, 204
  heart disease, 204
  how smoking affects health, 202-205
  life span, 204, 205
  passive smoking, 205
  smokeless tobacco, 205
  toxic effect of smoke, 204
  ways to break the habit, 205, 206
Social development, 28, 455, 456, 475-477
Social growth, 28
Social Security, 654
Special needs, 459-462
Stages of dying, 591
Stages of grieving, 592, 593
Standards, 130, 131
Startle reflex, 445
Steady dating, 289
Stepfamilies, 386, 387, 570-572
Stereotypes, 109, 110
Stimulants, 215
Stress, 187-191
  change causes, 187, 188
  definition, 187
  managing, 188-191
Sublet, 624
Substance abuse, 201-225, 535-538
  alcohol, 207-212, 535-538

  - drugs, 213-220
  - peer pressure, 220, 221
  - tobacco, 202-206
- Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 446
- Suicide, 540-542
- Support groups, 192, 526-533, 537, 538, 540, 547-549, 551, 552
- Syphilis, 246, 247

T

- Team, 156
- Teamwork skills, 156
- Technology, 75-77, 378-380, 459-461, 489, 490, 495, 516-518, 613, 620
  - influence of, 75-77
- Teen pregnancy, 237-244
  - adoption, 242, 243
  - marriage, 241, 242
  - risks, 237-239
  - single parenting, 239
- Telecommuting, 76
- Telephone hotlines, 531
- Temper tantrum, 483
- Terminating employment, 167
- Term life insurance, 637
- Theist, 324
- Time/life line, 126, 127
- Timeout, 481
- Tobacco, 202-206
  - smokeless, 205
  - smoking, 202-205
  - ways to break the habit, 205, 206
- Tonic neck reflex, 445
- Toxemia, 237
- Transportation, 626-628
  - costs of buying and owning a car, 627, 628
  - types, 626, 627
- Traveler's checks, 656
- Trust (Erikson), 86
- Twins, 49-51
- Two-parent family, 384

U

- Ultrasound examination, 417
- Unemployment, 534, 535
- United States savings bonds, 664
- Universal life insurance, 639
- University-linked child care, 487
- Unplanned pregnancy, 235-244
- Unsaturated fat, 178

V

- Variable life insurance, 639
- Verbal communication, 258
- Violence, 274-278, 545
  - bullying, 275
  - conflict resolution, 277, 278
  - gangs, 275, 276
  - hazing, 275
- Violence in families, 545-552
  - child abuse and neglect, 549-552
  - cycle of family violence, 546
  - elder abuse, 549
  - forms of violence, 546
  - legal action, 547
  - reasons people use violence, 546
  - spouse or partner abuse, 547, 548
- Visitation rights, 568
- Volunteerism, 37

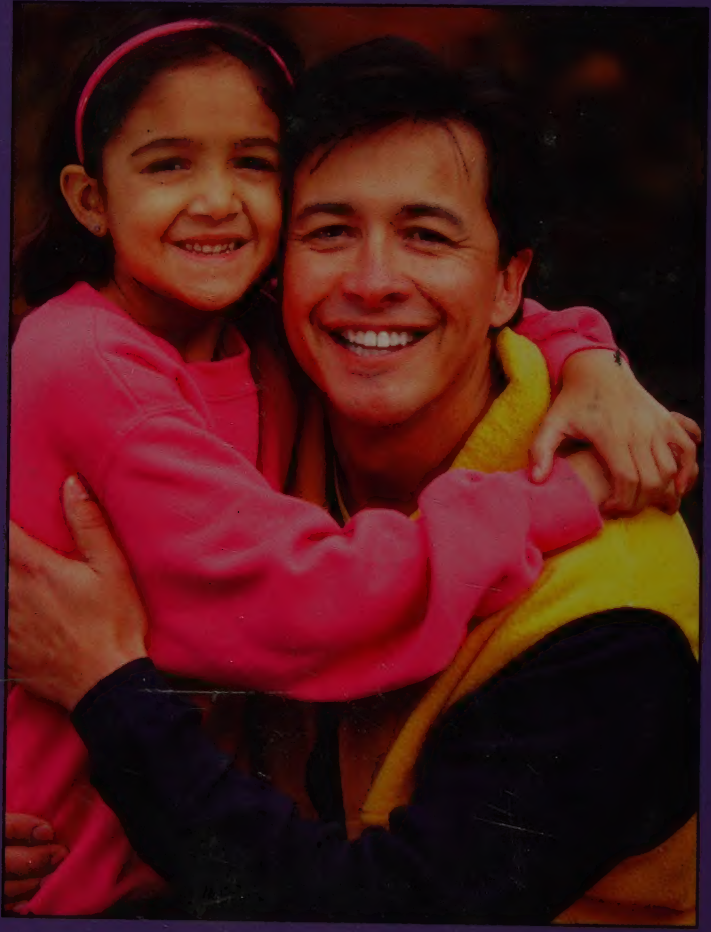
W

- Wants, 604
- We-messages, 267-269
- Web site, 159
- Weddings, 343-347
- Wellness, 174
- Whole life insurance, 638
- Will, 596
- Work and family concerns, 503-523
  - changing attitudes, 504
  - communication, 516
  - compressed workweek, 510, 511
  - delegating tasks, 515
  - dual-career families, 505
  - effects of family life on employment, 509, 510
  - employee benefits, 511, 512
  - employee-assistance programs (EAPs), 512
  - employer-sponsored child care, 511, 512
  - Family and Medical Leave Act, 512

  - flextime, 510
  - full-time homemakers, 505, 506
  - impact of work on families, 508-510
  - job sharing, 511
  - multiple roles, 514
  - organization, 514, 515
  - part-time workers, 505
  - patterns of work and childbearing, 507, 508
  - priorities and standards, 514, 515
  - quality time, 518, 519
  - realities of the workplace, 512, 513
  - reasons people work, 503, 504
  - scheduling and planning ahead, 515
  - single-parent families, 506, 507
  - techniques for managing family and work, 513-519
  - technology, 516-518
  - types of arrangements, 504-507
- Workplace skills, 154-156
  - leadership skills, 154-156
  - teamwork skills, 156

Y

- You-messages, 267-269
- Young adulthood, 578-579



ISBN 1-59070-504-1
90000
9 781590 705049

07-BWF-424